Erica Scharrer and Srividya Ramasubramanian

ROUTLEDGE

Quantitative Research Methods in Communication

The Power of Numbers for Social Justice

ROUTLEDGE SOCIAL JUSTICE COMMUNICATION ACTIVISM SERIES

"Research on issues of social justice could not be more timely, urgent, and fundamental. This volume provides clear and thoughtful guidance on how we can use and learn from social science research to utilize the power of numbers for social good. This volume takes the reader through every stage of the research process, including design, data collection, data analysis, and community-based scholarship. Undoubtedly this book will be foundational for scholars and students who want to use their research for social justice."

—**Mary Beth Oliver,** *Bellisario Professor of Media Studies, Penn State University, and President Elect, International Communication Association*

"This isn't your father's methods text, and that's a good thing. If you're focused on social justice and suspicious of quantitative methods, this book will show you how quantitative, mixed, and qualitative methods can—and should—all be marshalled to address the important questions we face today. This is an introduction to quantitative research design and execution that successfully engages with societal problems without sacrificing any of the nuance and precision expected from a first-rate textbook."

—**Larry Gross,** *Professor, University of Southern California*

"This is not just another stats book! Scholarly yet accessible and practical, Scharrer and Ramasubramanian critique the misuse of numbers and, more importantly, show us how to harness the power of numbers for social justice. This is a book that many in our field have been waiting for."

—**Sonia Livingstone,** *London School of Economics and Political Science*

"In covering the nuts and bolts of quantitative research methods while showing why and how research matters for society, this book is a tremendously valuable resource for students and scholars in Communication and across the social sciences."

—**Dana Mastro,** *Associate Dean of the College of Creative Studies and Professor of Communication, University of California, Santa Barbara*

Taylor & Francis
Taylor & Francis Group
http://taylorandfrancis.com

Quantitative Research Methods in Communication

This textbook is an advanced introduction to quantitative methods for students in communication and allied social science disciplines that focuses on why and how to conduct research that contributes to social justice.

Today's researchers are inspired by the potential for scholarship to make a difference for society, to push toward more just and equitable ends, and to engage in dialogue with members of the public so that they can make decisions about how to navigate the social, cultural, and political world equipped with accurate, fair, and up-to-date knowledge. This book illustrates the mechanics and the meaning behind quantitative research methods by illustrating each step in the research design process with research addressing questions of social justice. It provides practical guidance for researchers who wish to engage in the transformation of structures, practices, and understandings in society through community and civic engagement and policy formation. It contains step-by-step guidance in quantitative methods—from conceptualization through all the stages of execution of a study, including providing a detailed guide for statistical analysis—and demonstrates how researchers can engage with social justice issues in systematic, rigorous, ethical, and meaningful ways.

This text serves as a core or supplementary textbook for graduate and advanced undergraduate courses in research methods for communication and social sciences and fills a gap for a methods text that is responsive to the desire of scholars to conduct socially impactful research.

Erica Scharrer (PhD, Syracuse University) is Professor and Chair of the Department of Communication at the University of Massachusetts Amherst. She is co-author of three additional books, including *Media and the American Child*, and editor of the *Media Effects/Media Psychology* volume of the *International Encyclopedia of Media Studies*. Her research on the topics of media content, opinions of media, media effects, and media literacy has appeared in a number of journals.

Srividya Ramasubramanian (PhD, Penn State University) is Presidential Impact Fellow, Professor of Communication, Affiliated Professor of Women's and Gender Studies, and Director of the Difficult Dialogues Project at Texas A&M University. Her research focuses on critical media effects, diversity, anti-racism, prejudice reduction, media literacy, and social justice and has been published in several journals, books, and popular press outlets. She is also Executive Director of Media Rise, a nonprofit for meaningful media for social justice.

Routledge Social Justice Communication Activism Series
Lawrence R. Frey and Patricia S. Parker, Series Editors

Quantitative Research Methods in Communication: The Power of Numbers for Social Justice
Erica Scharrer and Srividya Ramasubramanian

For additional information on this series please visit www.routledge.com/Routledge-Social-Justice-Communication-Activism-Series/book-series/RSJCAS, and for information on other Routledge titles visit www.routledge.com.

Quantitative Research Methods in Communication

The Power of Numbers for Social Justice

Erica Scharrer and Srividya Ramasubramanian

Routledge
Taylor & Francis Group
NEW YORK AND LONDON

First published 2021
by Routledge
52 Vanderbilt Avenue, New York, NY 10017

and by Routledge
2 Park Square, Milton Park, Abingdon, Oxon, OX14 4RN

Routledge is an imprint of the Taylor & Francis Group, an informa business

© 2021 Erica Scharrer and Srividya Ramasubramanian

The right of Erica Scharrer and Srividya Ramasubramanian to be identified as authors of this work has been asserted by them in accordance with sections 77 and 78 of the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988.

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reprinted or reproduced or utilised in any form or by any electronic, mechanical, or other means, now known or hereafter invented, including photocopying and recording, or in any information storage or retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publishers.

Trademark notice: Product or corporate names may be trademarks or registered trademarks, and are used only for identification and explanation without intent to infringe.

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data
Names: Scharrer, Erica, author. | Ramasubramanian, Srividya, 1975– author.
Title: Quantitative research methods in communication : the power of numbers for social justice / Erica Scharrer, Srividya Ramasubramanian.
Description: New York : Routledge, 2021. | Series: Routledge social justice communication activism series | Includes bibliographical references and index.
Identifiers: LCCN 2020049963 (print) | LCCN 2020049964 (ebook)
Subjects: LCSH: Social justice—Research—Methodology. | Quantitative research. | Communication—Study and teaching.
Classification: LCC HM671 .S353 2021 (print) | LCC HM671 (ebook) | DDC 303.3/72—dc23
LC record available at https://lccn.loc.gov/2020049963
LC ebook record available at https://lccn.loc.gov/2020049964

ISBN: 978-0-367-55035-6 (hbk)
ISBN: 978-0-367-54785-1 (pbk)
ISBN: 978-1-003-09165-3 (ebk)

Typeset in Bembo
by Apex CoVantage, LLC

Brief Table of Contents

	Author Biographies	xv
	Preface	xvii
	Acknowledgments	xxi
1	Foundations and Definitions	1
2	Ethical Considerations	23
3	Operationalization and Otherness	47
4	Sampling and Representation	73
5	Soliciting Opinions through Survey Research	99
6	Studying Responses through Experimental Methods	126
7	Examining Communication Content in Content Analysis Research	154
8	Calculations and Complexity	182
9	Statistical Analysis: From Principles to Practice	203
10	Mixed Methods: Triangulating with Qualitative Research	276
11	Community Partnerships and Participatory Research	301
12	Communicating Research for Publication, Policy, and the Public	323
	Index	355

Taylor & Francis
Taylor & Francis Group
http://taylorandfrancis.com

Detailed Table of Contents

Author Biographies xv
Preface xvii
Acknowledgments xxi

1 Foundations and Definitions 1
Purpose of Social Science Research 2
Approaches to Social Science Research 4
Quantitative Research 4
Qualitative Research 5
Mixed Methods Research 5
Community-Based Research 6
Research Paradigms 6
Positivist and Post-Positivist Paradigm 6
Constructivist Paradigm 7
Critical Paradigm 7
Types of Social Justice Research 7
Why Do Numbers Have Power? 8
The Rise of Quantitative Criticalism 11
Key Features of Quantitative Social Science Research 13
The Principle of Objectivity 15
Aggregation of Numerical Data 18
Deductive Reasoning 18
Summary 20
Discussion Questions 20
References 21

2 Ethical Considerations 23
The Significance of Ethics within Social Justice Research 23
History of Ethical Violations in Scientific Research 26
Belmont Report and Institutional Review Boards 27
Types of Ethical Research Guidelines 33
Procedural Ethics 33
Professional Ethics 34
Personal Ethics 34

Ethics and Social Justice Research 35
Self-Reflexivity and Cultural Responsiveness in Social Justice Research 36
Avoiding Exclusion, Tokenism, and Deficit-Based Thinking 39
Ethical Considerations Specific to Quantitative Communication Research 41
Summary 44
Discussion Questions 45
References 45

3 Operationalization and Otherness 47
An Introduction to Measurement 47
Two Types of Definitions: Conceptual and Operational 49
Operationalizing Indicators and Dimensions of Concepts 49
Variables, Values, and Attributes 50
Using Closed-Ended Measures 52
Levels of Measurement 55
Categorical Variables 55
Nominal Variables 55
Ordinal Variables 56
Continuous Variables 56
Interval Variables 56
Ratio Variables 57
Deciding What Level of Measurement to Use 58
Validity 60
Reliability 63
Balancing Validity and Reliability 64
Social Justice, Measurement, and Avoiding Othering 68
Summary 70
Discussion Questions and Activities 71
References 71

4 Sampling and Representation 73
Samples and Populations 74
The Representativeness of Samples 75
Probability Sampling 79
Nonprobability Sampling 83
Getting Mathy 85
Having "Confidence" in Your Sample 88
Determining Sample Size 90
How Do You Actually Use This Information? The Realities of Research 92
Representing Minoritized Groups 93
Summary 97
Discussion Questions and Activities 97
References 97

5 Soliciting Opinions Through Survey Research 99
Advantages and Disadvantages of Surveys 100

Role of Surveys in Social Justice Research 101
Cross-Cultural Survey Research 102
Omnibus Surveys and Publicly Accessible Datasets 104
Cross-Sectional Versus Longitudinal Survey Designs 106
Trend Studies 106
Cohort Studies 107
Panel Studies 107
Creating Reliable and Valid Survey Measures 108
Are the Items Necessary, Unbiased, and Clear? 109
Are the Response Options Appropriate? 110
Are Respondents Able to Answer the Items? 111
Are Respondents Willing to Answer the Items? 111
Deciding the Order and Presentation of Selected Items 112
Organizing the Items in the Right Order 112
Making the Questionnaire Accessible 114
Pretesting Questionnaires 116
Deciding How to Administer Surveys 117
Personal or Face-to-Face Interviews 117
Telephone Interviews 117
Mail Surveys 118
Online Surveys 118
Finding Ways to Improve Survey Response Rates 119
Summary 123
Discussion Questions and Activities 124
References 124

6 Studying Responses Through Experimental Methods 126
Independent, Dependent, Control, and Confounding Variables 127
Role of Experiments in Establishing Causation and Causal Mechanisms 128
True Experiments 130
Quasi-Experiments 134
Pre-Experiments 134
Field or Natural Experiments 135
Using Experiments for Social Justice Research 136
Designing and Conducting an Experimental Study 139
Recruiting Participants 140
Obtaining Consent 140
Manipulating the Independent Variable 141
Randomly Assigning Participants to Conditions 144
Controlling for Extraneous Variables 145
Measuring the Dependent Variable 146
Debriefing 147
Improving the Internal Validity of Experiments 149
Increasing the Generalizability of Experiments 150
Summary 151

Discussion Questions and Activities 152
References 152

7 Examining Communication Content in Content Analysis Research 154
Using Content Analysis for Social Justice 156
Coding and Coders 158
Steps Involved in Content Analysis 159
Making Sound Observations 162
Sampling Considerations in Content Analysis 164
Determining Units 166
Intercoder Reliability 168
Digital and Interactive Media 175
Critiques of Big Data Analysis and Critical Approaches to Datafication 176
Summary 178
Discussion Questions and Activities 179
References 179

8 Calculations and Complexity 182
Individual Data Points Aggregated Together 183
Different Types of Statistics 187
Hypothesis Testing 188
Error, Uncertainty, and Rejection: Oh, My! 193
Making an Inference 195
Introducing the Probability Value 195
What Explains Statistical Significance? 198
Some Finer Points Regarding Statistical Significance 199
Summary 200
Discussion Questions and Activities 201
References 201

9 Statistical Analysis: From Principles to Practice 203
Steps Involved in Creating and Analyzing Quantitative Data 204
Creating a Data File in SPSS 205
Dealing with Missing Values 210
Measures of Central Tendency 211
Measures of Variability 219
Data Reduction and Transformation 226
Recode 226
Creating an Index and Testing Its Reliability 233
Compute 238
Select Cases 243
Inferential Statistics 248
Tests of Differences: T-Tests 248
Tests of Differences: Analysis of Variance 254

Tests of Relationships: Cross Tabulation with Chi Square 257
Tests of Relationships: Pearson's Correlation 262
Tests of Relationships: Multiple Regression 266
Summary 273
Discussion Questions and Activities 274
References 275

10 Mixed Methods: Triangulating with Qualitative Research 276
Triangulation: Approaching Research from Multiple Perspectives 277
Mixed Methods Approaches in Communication 278
An Introduction to Qualitative Methods in Social Justice Research 279
Types of Qualitative Methods 282
Textual Analysis 282
Ethnography 283
In-Depth Interviewing 285
Focus Group Discussions 286
Case Study Approach 287
Arts-Based Research 287
Types of Mixed Methods Approaches 289
Mixed Methods for Social Justice in Communication: Some Considerations 295
Summary 298
Discussion Questions and Activities 299
References 299

11 Community Partnerships and Participatory Research 301
Types of Communities 302
Community-Based Research in Communication 303
Socio-Ecological Approach to Social Justice Research 303
Level of Community Participation 305
Participatory Action Research 306
Community-Based Participatory Research 306
Program Evaluation Research 307
Engaged Scholarship 307
Identifying the Topic in Community-Based Research 307
Establishing Partnerships with Relevant Stakeholders 308
Developing Research Materials for Community-Based Projects 312
Implementation of Community-Based Research Projects 313
Evaluation and Feedback in Community-Based Research Projects 314
Making Research Findings Available to Communities 315
Practical Considerations in Community-Based Research Approaches 317
Summary 320
Discussion Questions and Activities 321
References 321

12 Communicating Research for Publication, Policy, and the Public 323
Writing for Publication 323
Forms of Academic Writing 324
Elements of a Journal Article 327
Peer Review 334
Limitations of the Publication Landscape 335
Writing for the Wider Public 337
Engaging with the News Media 342
Writing to Shape Policy 345
Forms and Guidelines for Policy-Related Writing 346
Examples of Quantitative Communication Research Connected to Policy 351
Summary 352
Discussion Questions and Activities 353
References 354

Index 355

Author Biographies

Figure 0.1 Dr. Erica Scharrer
Photo Credit: Matthew Medeiros

Erica Scharrer (PhD, Syracuse University) is Professor and Chair of the Department of Communication at the University of Massachusetts Amherst. She is co-author of three additional books, including *Media and the American Child* (Academic Press, 2007), and editor of the *Media Effects/Media Psychology* volume of the *International Encyclopedia of Media Studies* (Wiley-Blackwell, 2013). Her research on the topics of media content, opinions of media, media effects, and media literacy has appeared in a number of journals. She has a long-term community partnership with a local school around media literacy education, has participated in civic engagement and service learning as well as public engagement fellowships on campus, and has received the Chancellor's Outstanding Community Service Award.

Figure 0.2 Dr. Srividya Ramasubramanian
Photo Credit: Nathan Crick

Srividya Ramasubramanian (PhD, Penn State University) is Presidential Impact Fellow, Professor of Communication, and Affiliated Professor of Women's and Gender Studies at Texas A&M University. Her research focuses on media, diversity, and social justice. She has founded diversity initiatives such as *Media Rise* (a nonprofit for meaningful media), the Difficult Dialogues Project, and the Communicating Diversity Student Conference. She serves as editorial board member for twelve journals, including as associate editor for the *Journal of Applied Communication Research* and the *Psychology of Popular Media*. Her social justice scholarship has been recognized with the NCA Gerald M. Phillips Award for Distinguished Applied Communication Scholarship, NAMLE Outstanding Media Literacy Researcher Award, and the Presidential Impact Fellowship for "rising to meet the challenges of their field and demonstrating impact towards creating a better world."

Preface

We write this preface in September 2020, one day after U.S. Supreme Court Justice Ruth Bader Ginsburg has died. We write in the wake of egregious incidents of police brutality against Black people and a resulting renewed groundswell of protest and action to honor Black lives. We write as wildfires fueled by climate change rage in California, months after more than 12 million acres were similarly destroyed in Australia. We write in the midst of a global pandemic that has laid bare enormous economic, gender, and racial inequalities. We write in a time when the world's struggles are both hard to bear and impossible to ignore.

The idea for this book came years ago, however, when it became clear to us that today's social science researchers are often inspired not just by knowledge for its own sake but by the potential for research to help make a difference in the world. We have observed emerging and established researchers motivated to focus their efforts toward advancing a more just and equitable society. We have seen increasing numbers of scholars eager to engage in dialogue with members of the public and in advocacy and action toward social change. And although we write at a particularly poignant moment in history, of course, every moment in history has its own conditions in which to examine issues of (in)justice and (in)equality in society.

Under its auspices of "objectivity" and the scientific method, at first glance quantitative research may seem an unlikely set of tools to use toward social justice ends. Indeed, in Communication as in other fields, there is a much longer and stronger history of employing qualitative methods in social justice research. Quantitative research, at its heart, is about numbers, and in this book we show that numbers have an important role to play when social, economic, and political issues are at stake. We show how the numbers generated from quantitative research can be used to bring social issues and injustices to light as well as to investigate how to address them. We believe quantitative research has an important role to play, and this book is designed to provide you, the reader, with the tools needed to engage as a quantitative researcher with social justice issues in systematic, rigorous, ethical, and meaningful ways.

Despite the potential power of numbers, however, there is, of course, no magic bullet solution to the long-standing and complex issues and injustices that mark our society. And, indeed, just as we argue there is particular *strength* of numbers, there are also particular *weaknesses* of numbers and of quantitative methods in general to consider from a social justice point of view. We acknowledge and explore these limitations alongside our discussion of strengths, providing what we hope will be seen as an honest and clear-eyed account of the possibilities as well as the barriers involved in designing and using quantitative research for social justice.

In this book, we introduce quantitative methodologies to show the reader not just *how* to conduct quantitative research but also *why* to do so. To show *how*, we give step-by-step guidance in the use of quantitative methods, from conceptualization through all stages in the execution of a study. In fact, we designed this book to be a comprehensive introduction to quantitative methods that provides a level of detail (especially, but not exclusively, regarding

the use of statistical analysis) not always found in an introductory methods book. When we show *how* to do quantitative research, we do so from a social justice perspective, exploring how to design and carry out each step with care and concern for issues of access, diversity, equity, and inclusion. To show *why* to conduct quantitative research, we give examples of quantitative research positioned as a means of challenging the structures, policies, and practices that stand in the way of greater justice and equality. We illustrate ways to ensure research does not remain solely in the academy but can also be put to good use by citizens and changemakers alike. We use real-world case studies and research materials, self-reflexive interviews with scholar-activists, and an easy-to-follow writing style to introduce quantitative social scientific research methods for social justice. Overall, then, this book illustrates the mechanics as well as the meaning behind quantitative research conducted to be responsive to and even to intervene in social injustices and inequalities and to promote inclusion, equity, and justice.

We wrote this book from our position as Communication researchers, and, therefore, the examples that we highlight in this book are from the communication and media studies field. However, the principles and practices that we introduce apply well beyond Communication to other social sciences. We also write from our position as active researchers ourselves, having accrued a number of experiences relevant to the kinds of research/public engagement/activism that we introduce in this book.

The writing of this book was a true collaboration between the two authors. We split the work equally and we each poured over every sentence and every figure you will see. We supported each other and found a way forward, together, after our original publisher dropped our project when the writing was nearly done, despite a signed contract. We are thrilled to have found a home with Routledge and pleased with what we produced together. Part of our pleasure in writing this book stems from our observation that it is rare that a quantitative methods book is written by women scholars, and even more rare for one of those scholars to be a person of color.

Here is a chapter-by-chapter account of what you will find inside:

Chapter 1 focuses on defining key concepts and terms such as *social justice*, *activism*, and *community engagement*, and introduces the defining features of quantitative research. We address why Communication is a good position from which to conduct research for social justice, and we begin to explore key principles in the possibilities and limits of quantitative research in Communication for social justice. What are the assumptions in quantitative research about ways of knowing, whether the researcher is trying to be objective, whether the social world can be measured, etc.? How do the foundations of and assumptions behind quantitative research allow the researcher to work toward social justice? What constraints might those foundations and assumptions introduce?

In *Chapter 2*, we examine the ethical considerations that quantitative Communication researchers must face. What ethical considerations arise, generally, in conducting quantitative Communication research? What particular ethical considerations stem from quantitative Communication research conducted with a goal of contributing to social justice? How can researchers navigate these ethical questions and challenges? In this chapter, we introduce human subjects protections—ensuring the well-being of the people who are participating in research—and other ethical considerations involved in quantitative Communication research for social justice.

In *Chapter 3*, we move on to the first of many of the nitty gritty details of designing and implementing quantitative research projects addressed in the book. Chapter 3 deals with the practice of "operationalization." How does the researcher move from abstract definitions of concepts that they want to study to something that can be measured using quantitative methods? How can we operationalize concepts (which is what we call it when we come up

with ways to measure those concepts) and identify variables (which are the specific features of something that we are studying) in a way that recognizes the range of human differences and the complexities of human experiences? How do we measure variables in a way that is reliable, meaning it is likely to produce stable and consistent results? How do we measure variables in a way that is valid, meaning it is doing a good job of tapping into the meaning of the concept?

Sampling is the focus of *Chapter 4*. In research, it is quite rare to study the entire population of interest. Instead, we usually sample from that population to make the size of who or what we are studying a bit more manageable. What are the principles and techniques behind sampling? How can we decide which units will be examined and which will not in a way that is responsive to the principle of inclusion as well as to the scientific method? How can we determine who or what will be present or absent in our sample or in our research in general? In this chapter, we consider the interplay between the principles of sampling and the principles of social justice.

In *Chapter 5*, we take up one quite popular quantitative method, the survey, to discuss in detail. The chapter answers a number of questions, including: What are the steps involved in designing and carrying out a survey study? Why might you want to use a survey design in the first place? What are examples of survey studies in Communication that advance social justice? How can you design a survey in a way that attends to the social justice principles of diversity and inclusion? What are the weaknesses of survey research for researchers who want to conduct research for social justice?

Experiments are the topic of *Chapter 6*, defined as tools for quantitative social scientists to use to explore how people respond to a stimulus—something that they see, or an event they are asked to participate in—in the short term. This chapter provides a step-by-step guide in how to conduct an experiment and addresses why one might want to choose this method. We also discuss advantages and disadvantages of this particular method from a social justice perspective.

Similarly, *Chapter 7* examines content analysis methodology in depth. Content analysis is a research technique in which the features of texts are studied in a systematic manner, and this method, too, is quite common in Communication research. In this chapter, we take the reader through a step-by-step exploration of how to design and carry out a content analysis study, and we share examples of existing studies that illustrate representations of social groups in the media and other important social justice-related topics.

Given that quantitative research data take the form of numbers, a key step in research methods is to use statistical analysis to make sense of those numbers, imbuing them with meaning and interpretation. *Chapter 8* describes the principles associated with analyzing quantitative data, answering questions such as: How can researchers make an inference from data observed in a sample to the larger population? How do researchers know whether their hypotheses are supported? What claims can be made from statistical results, and what caveats must be kept in place?

Chapter 9 extends the principles discussed in Chapter 8 into the practical steps involved in using statistical software to analyze quantitative data. Introducing readers to SPSS (Statistical Package for Social Sciences), complete with a practice data set to use and a series of screenshots to illustrate, Chapter 9 provides a detailed guide on how to run several common statistical tests and how to make sense of the results that are produced from those tests.

Chapter 10 introduces the researcher to the possibilities that exist for combining quantitative and qualitative research, known as mixed methods research. How does the researcher design a study that combines a method from the quantitative toolkit with one that comes from the qualitative toolkit? Why might one want to utilize such an approach? We review

examples of mixed methods studies in Communication research for social justice in this chapter and discuss the advantages as well as the challenges associated with such methodological triangulation.

The final section of this book moves from research design and data analysis to ways to partner and collaborate with various publics such as community members, practitioners, and policymakers for greater impact and action. In *Chapter 11*, we discuss community partnerships and collaboration. How can we form collaborations with community organizations or other partners in our research that will last and that will satisfy each other's priorities and needs? What are the benefits and risks of doing so? What makes such partnerships strong, impactful, and mutually beneficial? This chapter discusses these sorts of collaborations that are often at the heart of Communication research for social justice activism.

Chapter 12 is about the ways that quantitative research can be written to pursue publication, to communicate with the public, and to contribute to policy making. What does a successful quantitative research paper look like? What can one expect from the publication process? How can researchers take steps to ensure that they are communicating research not just for fellow researchers but for the public? What outlets are available for engaging in dialogue about research findings that bear on issues of social, political, and cultural significance of the moment? How is quantitative Communication research used to shape policies that impact questions of social justice? The final chapter provides tools for researchers on each of these important forms and purposes for communicating research. The ability of research to make a meaningful impact depends a great deal on who can access and act on that research, and therefore this final chapter is a logical conclusion to the steps involved in carrying out research and the principles behind what such research can achieve.

In summary, we have created what we hope you will find to be a highly readable and engaging text that is both practical and meaningful. We believe that by framing each and every discussion in this introduction of the principles and practices of quantitative research design around issues and topics that really matter, we offer a uniquely valuable learning tool. Upon reading this book, we hope that readers will be both inspired and sufficiently informed to harness the "power of numbers" inherent in quantitative research to illuminate and intervene in the most pressing social issues of the day.

Acknowledgments

First and foremost, we would like to thank Stephen Warren and Emily Riewestahl, who invested countless hours and endless amounts of expertise in supporting this book. We were so fortunate to have had you as research assistants at the time of this monumental undertaking. Thank you.

We would also like to thank Lyn Uhl, who first saw the potential for this idea for a book and the promise in us as its authors. Lyn, this book bears your mark, for sure, and we are so grateful for your support and generosity. We also extend our sincere thanks to the reviewers who Lyn had originally lined up for us. We hope that each of you will see the fruits of your labor, and please know that we valued your comments and suggestions immensely.

A huge thank you to Brian Eschrich and Grant Schatzman at Routledge. Brian, we are so thankful that you believed in this project so fully and so readily, and we deeply appreciate the many ways in which you and Grant both made our path ahead smooth after such a rocky start before we connected with you.

We offer our sincere thanks, as well, to the scholars who gave their time and invaluable insights as the Spotlight Scholars for the book's chapters. Sut, Mohan, Brad, Muniba, Sasha, Brian, Travis, Dana, Shardé, Sarah, Brooke, Susana, and Karen, thank you. We would also like to acknowledge the many other colleagues and friends who inspired this project. There are too many to name and too many to have featured as Spotlight Scholars, and we do not want to leave anyone out. But, honestly, this book was created from the foundation of the work that so many of you in the field have done in bringing research together with social action.

Erica would like to extend a special note of thanks to her former professors at the Newhouse School, George Comstock, Pam Shoemaker, and Carol Liebler, for showing her she could, indeed, be a professor and for teaching her the tools of research inquiry as well as how and why to wield them. And she would like to express her deepest appreciation for her friends and colleagues, past and present, in the Department of Communication at UMass Amherst. She feels lucky, indeed, to have been hired 20+ years ago into this community of thinkers, writers, teachers, and makers whose commitments to a more just society have always been so clear and compelling. And big love to Jody and Gillian, Nama and Papa, Angela and Mike, Melissa and Andy, Lauren, Meghan, Jackson, and Emma.

Srivi would like to thank her former professors Mary Beth Oliver and S. Shyam Sundar at Penn State as well as Amy Jordan and Marty Fishbein at U of Pennsylvania for introducing her to the power of numbers in addressing important social issues. She is grateful to her Texas A&M students and colleagues who whole-heartedly supported her social justice work, inside and outside the classroom. She is deeply indebted to the camaraderie and mentorship of her research collaborators, community partners, and fellow scholar-activists of color in the academy. Finally, she would like to thank her family, especially Gautam and Sankalp, Amma and Appa, Chinnu and Karthik, and Tejas and Tapasya, for their constant support and unconditional love.

Taylor & Francis
Taylor & Francis Group
http://taylorandfrancis.com

1 Foundations and Definitions

All around us, there are serious social issues facing our global community. Injustices and inequalities span a whole spectrum of topics from everyday sexism, food insecurity, homelessness, and forced migration to bonded labor. For instance, about 40.3 million people are owned by an employer who treats them as property to be sold or bought through human trafficking (Walk Free Foundation, 2018). Over 79.5 million people have been forced to leave their homes due to conflict and persecution, and over 40% of these people are children (United Nations Refugee Agency, 2020). One in nine people around the world do not have enough food to lead an active and healthy life (Food Aid Foundation, 2019). In the United States, working women make only 81 cents to the dollar compared to men (United States Census Bureau, 2020), and systemic and institutionalized racism continues to produce conditions in which prisons are overpopulated with men of color (The Sentencing Project, 2019). Only 23.7% of U.S. congressional seats are held by women, and women make up just 29% of holders of statewide elected executive offices (Center for American Women and Politics, 2020).

Each of these startling figures that we have shared is brought to light due to quantitative research, a way to produce knowledge that uses scientific methods to observe particular phenomena. Yet, alongside the distressing numerical estimates described here, community members have also used their assets and resources to resist, challenge, and resolve social injustices and inequalities in powerful ways. The high school student survivors of the Parkland school shootings in Florida have used their voices powerfully and raised over three million dollars to challenge the role of the National Rifle Association in U.S. politics. The Women's March in 2017, as the largest single-day protest in recorded history, was a worldwide movement to bring attention to human rights and women's health, education, racial justice, LGBTQ+ rights, employment, wages, and other gender-based discrimination. LGBTQ+ activists have fought inside and outside courtrooms to battle homophobia, and same-sex marriages are now legalized in many countries around the world. The Black Lives Matter movement has succeeded in challenging the discourse surrounding police violence against people of color and has brought the language of systemic racism and anti-Black racism into the mainstream. Many institutions and organizations took steps toward anti-racism commitments and actions in the aftermath of the gruesome murder of George Floyd in the U.S. in 2020, an event that led to a global uprising. Quantitative research has documented each of these phenomena, as well.

We raise these opening points to make three observations. First, statistics can be powerful tools to use to bring sobering inequalities and injustices to light. Second, statistics and the quantitative research that produces them can mark and measure progress made toward equality and justice, as well. Third, however, as powerful as numbers such as these may be to document injustice and inequality and study steps toward change, statistics can also be considered only a partial truth. There is always more to the story than statistics can convey.

In quantitative research, numbers have a key role to play, as statistics are used to describe and explain what researchers have observed. Numbers can indeed be powerful, since they can be used to convey a broad set of truths experienced by many, as you can see in the figures and estimates we have shared. Numbers can shape public opinion, organizational decision-making, community priorities, and public policies. Of course, numbers can be fabricated, decontextualized, and misinterpreted, too. Therefore, having the ability to interpret, discern, design, and apply quantitative research is an important skill to learn as Communication scholars and practitioners.

Enter the researcher into the scene. As scholars and researchers, what is our role in addressing issues of social justice? How can we make this world a better place to live in through our scholarship and research? We believe it is important for researchers to use scientific knowledge to address important social problems at the local, national, and global levels. Developing a social justice mindset, applying it to research design, and using research results to intervene in forces and factors that create and maintain injustices is vital. Indeed, stories shared about anti-Black racism via #CommunicationSoWhite and also the #BlackintheIvory campaign started by two Communication scholars, Shardé M. Davis and Joy Melody Woods, reveal the racial injustices and White supremacy, among many other inequalities, that need to be dismantled even within academia. Rather than being out of touch with the realities of people's lives, the "power of numbers" approach ensures that researchers and the knowledge they produce are a resource for the betterment of marginalized groups, especially when stakes are high, whether inside or outside of university settings.

Purpose of Social Science Research

Research methods are techniques and approaches used to produce knowledge. Knowledge, for its part, can be created in a number of ways, each with its own underlying assumptions, values, and internal logic. There are many types of research, but this book will focus on social science research methods. **Social science research methods** focus on producing knowledge that helps us understand the social world around us.

Whereas **basic research** is mainly motivated by researchers' curiosity and interest in producing and theorizing knowledge, **applied research** seeks to solve real-world practical problems. Basic research often assumes a traditional scientific model where the focus is on scientific discovery and curiosity. Applied research focuses on how new knowledge is connected to the outside world in ways that are useful to the community. However, the relationship between basic and applied research is often quite close, with each side potentially informing the other. Not all applied research, though, can be called social justice research, unless the research is explicitly applied toward identifying and/or reducing social inequalities. As you will see later in this chapter, social justice research is focused expressly on challenging imbalances in power, position, and privilege and the conditions that produce or maintain those imbalances.

When it comes to doing research for social justice, simply creating knowledge is not always sufficient. What do we *do* with what we know? Researchers working toward social justice also want research to inspire, facilitate, or inform action that could bring about positive changes. They can do so using research that is exploratory, descriptive, evaluatory, explanatory, or transformative in nature. Sometimes within the same project, there can be multiple goals and purposes at different stages of the research process.

- **Exploration:** Social research can help explore new or fairly under-studied phenomena and social issues. Reviews of research findings and personal insights can reveal existing gaps in social justice research that need to be filled.

Figure 1.1 The idea expressed in this cartoon—that academics only study the world rather than try to save it—is an increasingly outdated notion

Source: Frits Ahlefeldt-Laurvig

- **Description:** Social research can help provide detailed descriptions and systematic observations relating to social events, practices, groups, situations, beliefs, and behaviors. For instance, content analysis, a method you will read about in Chapter 7 of this book, can help to describe patterns within media content that exclude or misrepresent social groups.
- **Evaluation:** Social research can help assess the effectiveness of a program or initiative or policy. Within social justice research, especially in community-based interventions or organizational communication, this is an important purpose for doing social scientific research.
- **Explanation:** Social research can help explain why social phenomena occur. For instance, research methods like surveys and experiments—which you will also read about in Chapters 5 and 6—help determine whether one point of view, experience, or phenomenon is related to another. If it is, we can say that knowing one helps explain the other.
- **Transformation:** Social research can be used for transformation and positive change through social action and activism to impact communities, organizations, and policies. Chapter 12 will give more detail about this.

Approaches to Social Science Research

There are many approaches to social research: (1) quantitative research, (2) qualitative research, (3) mixed methods research, and (4) community-based research. The two main types of approaches to social science research methods are quantitative and qualitative research (Figure 1.2). Mixed methods research combines qualitative and quantitative research. Community-based research involves the community as the primary setting and focus of research. There is considerable overlap among these various types of social research methods. Also, these are broad umbrella terms that encompass many specific types of methods.

Quantitative Research

Quantitative research, the subject of this book, offers one set of tools and techniques to gather data and contribute to what we know as well as what we do with what we know. It focuses on measuring variables, testing hypotheses, and explaining relationships. This approach emphasizes numerical data, categorization of data, the principle of objectivity, deductive reasoning, representativeness, and generalizability of findings, all of which are explained further in this chapter and/or throughout this book. Some examples of quantitative research methods are content analysis, lab-based experiments, field experiments, and survey methods, and each of

	Quantitative	Qualitative
Focus	Measuring variables, testing hypothesis, and explaining relationships	Understanding experiences, discovering meaning, and building theory
Values	Objectivity, deductive reasoning, representativeness, and generalizability	Subjectivity, inductive reasoning, theory building, complexity and depth
Examples	Content analyses, lab-based experiments, and survey methods	Interviews, focus groups, ethnography, and textual analyses

Figure 1.2 Quantitative vs. qualitative research

Source: Emily Riewestahl

these methods will be discussed in detail in this book as well. In the process of carrying out research with an eye toward social justice, quantitative methods pose both real challenges as well as quite fruitful opportunities. Quantitative methods have a number of distinguishing characteristics that set them apart from other ways of knowing, as you will see later in this chapter.

Qualitative Research

Qualitative research focuses on subjective experiences and meaning-making to understand and describe social phenomena. It generally uses an inductive approach to research where the ideas about what will be discovered or observed as well as the design are flexible and not fixed ahead of time (with "ahead of time" often being noted as *a priori*). The emphasis of qualitative research is on in-depth knowledge, "thick" or rich descriptions, and sense-making of the complex social world around us. This research approach includes methods such as textual analysis, ethnography, focus group discussions, in-depth interviews, case studies, and arts-based research methods. More details about qualitative research methods are covered in Chapter 10, the chapter on mixed methods.

Mixed Methods Research

Mixed methods research combines quantitative and qualitative methods into a single project. Quantitative and qualitative methods could be used sequentially at different stages of the project or can be integrated simultaneously at the same stage of the project. Mixed methods approaches are commonly used in social justice research to explore, understand, evaluate, and

Quantitative Methods
Only one in 30 takes the free ice cream. Interesting...
Free icecream
Qualitative Methods
What did you feel when you saw the free ice cream?
Excited. A little scared.
And why was that?

Figure 1.3 Quantitative research identifies numerical patterns across many cases

Source: Matt Lavoie

bring about collective action and social change. We will return to mixed methods research in Chapter 10.

Community-Based Research

Community-based research uses the community as the place or setting for knowledge creation rather than in a university, corporation, or government agency. It can incorporate quantitative, qualitative, or mixed methods approaches. Community-based research typically involves researchers forming community partnerships and collaborations. The community is often actively involved in the research design and implementation to address local social issues to improve some aspects of the community such as health care, conflict resolution, or education. It involves collaborative partnerships among community members, practitioners, and academics. The existing strengths and resources in the community are leveraged by the researcher and community members to work together to address social issues. For instance, an organizational communication scholar might organize public forums for community members on topics such as food insecurities or disputes over shared resources such as water. We devote Chapter 11 in this book to community-based research.

Research Paradigms

Essential to understanding the role of quantitative research in social justice is an exploration of the central assumptions and practices that underlie quantitative inquiry. There are many approaches to research and multiple "ways of knowing." **Epistemology** is a term that encompasses how knowledge is conceived and produced. To better understand the epistemology of quantitative research for social justice, some questions that we can raise are: How do we produce what will come to be known as knowledge? What steps will researchers take to produce knowledge in a manner that is convincing and defensible? How do we justify a claim or an observation as constituting knowledge? On what grounds does a claim of knowledge rest? What assumptions underlie such claims? Who are seen as knowledge producers and why?

These questions bring us to a discussion of paradigms and the way that they help structure research and the creation of knowledge. A **paradigm** is a "set of interrelated assumptions about the social world which provides a philosophical and conceptual framework for the organized study of that world" (Filstead, 1979, p. 34). In other words, paradigms are ways to map out different approaches by thinking about what they have in common and how they differ from one another. Communication research has largely stemmed from three paradigms: (1) positivist, (2) constructivist, and (3) critical paradigms. Each is described in detail in the following text.

Positivist and Post-Positivist Paradigm

Quantitative research has been most closely connected to positivism (Wrench, Thomas-Maddox, Richmond & McCroskey, 2008). **Positivism** is adopted from the natural sciences and involves generating predictions in the form of hypotheses and then gathering data to test those hypotheses. This is, by definition, a *deductive* process as the researcher begins with a generalized principle and then observes specific data to test that principle. It stands in contrast to an *inductive* approach that begins with specific data that will come to form a generalized principle or set of principles. Positivism traditionally imagines a single, measurable reality that sound research design can reveal, and it detaches the researcher from what and who is studied. In

other words, under assumptions of positivism, different researchers will come to just about the same conclusions if they use similar approaches to observe the world around them.

Important for the central premise of this book, for some, positivism has evolved to encompass a slightly different set of approaches, assumptions, and understandings better defined as post-positivism. **Post-positivism** retains the uses of hypotheses and deductive reasoning characteristic of the scientific method but abandons the notion of a single reality to be discovered and acknowledges that researcher subjectivity and influence are unavoidable (Popper, 1968). Although post-positivists accept that their own values and beliefs are influencing the questions they ask, where and how they ask them, and how they are interpreting results, rather than fully embracing a subjective position in knowledge creation they seek to minimize the biases that those subjectivities introduce.

Constructivist Paradigm

In contrast, **constructivism** considers multiple realities and meanings built from varied experiences and interpretations rather than a single truth that is "out there" for a researcher to discover. The researcher is much more closely connected to the research process as a subjective interpreter or even participant rather than as a detached observer striving to be objective. Researchers may not arrive at similar observations, then, since their own subjective interpretations are thought to shape how they interpret what they see. In qualitative research words, stories, texts, and images comprise the observations made, whereas quantitative research uses numbers to represent data. Qualitative approaches rather than quantitative approaches are typically a better fit for those operating within the constructivist paradigm because words, stories, texts, and images, rather than numbers, can often better reflect the potentially limitless individual meanings, experiences, and points of view of research participants.

Critical Paradigm

In the **critical** paradigm, the critique of the distribution of power and privilege in society is at the center of the inquiry, and research is positioned as a means of direct intervention in oppression, injustice, and inequality. In other words, "an emancipatory principle drives such research" (Denzin, 1994, p. 509). In Communication as well as in other disciplines and fields, critical research has been much more closely associated with qualitative rather than quantitative methods. That is because, in the critical paradigm, the researcher has a direct interest in disrupting the status quo of oppression rather than being rather detached, personally, from what is being observed. It is partly for this reason that some find critical research to be at odds with the logic, assumptions, and techniques of quantitative methods (Guba & Lincoln, 1994), a complex issue that we will take up in great detail both in this chapter and in the rest of this book.

These three paradigms (or slight variations of them) have been used to organize the intellectual space that Communication research occupies for quite some time. Yet, these paradigms have also shifted a bit as well. Paradigm shifting has been discussed extensively in regard to scientific knowledge (Kuhn, 1962). Such shifting of the rules and assumptions that underlie knowledge creation and the organization of knowledge makes space for the possibility of social justice research using quantitative methods, the subject of this book.

Types of Social Justice Research

Social justice research has the primary goal of challenging oppression, addressing social inequalities, and working to correct power imbalances (Carragee & Frey, 2016; Frey &

Carragee, 2007). It focuses on marginalized groups who are "economically, socially, politically, and/or culturally under-resourced" (Frey, Pearce, Pollock, & Murphy, 1996, p. 110). Social justice research is often interdisciplinary, multi-method, and multi-perspectival. The overarching theme amongst social justice researchers is a desire to "make a difference" (Frey, 2009). While there are many ways to make a difference through research, the important questions to ask are "Who does this research serve?" and "Why do we engage in this research?"

By nature, social justice research uses the critical paradigm in its approach. It questions power differences (Who has power and privilege? Who does not?) and works toward reducing inequalities. It challenges systems of domination such as patriarchy, heteronormativity, racism, imperialism, capitalism, and ableism that often intersect to form multiple layers of oppression shaping individuals' lived realities (Collins, 2000; Collins & Bilge, 2016; hooks, 2000). Social justice research could, for instance, highlight poor working conditions, unequal pay across genders, negative stereotypical portrayals of racial/ethnic minorities, sexual harassment in organizations, ableism in educational institutions, online anti-LGBTQ rhetoric, capitalistic motives in climate change policies, or colonial antidemocratic media flows.

There are many types of social justice research, with slight variations but some overlap among types. **Translational research** aims to make academic research more accessible and relevant to a non-academic lay audience (Tracy, 2002). **Public scholarship** is similar to translational research in its goal of educating the public about academic scholarship. However, it also seeks to listen to public voices and incorporate their feedback into scholarship. **Engaged scholarship** bridges the gap between theory and practice by making academic research more relevant to practitioners and communities. Knowledge is co-produced through collaborative processes involving academics and a variety of practitioners (Barge & Shockley-Zalabak, 2008). **Policy research** applies academic expertise to analyze, evaluate, and formulate policies addressing specific issues. **Community-based participatory research** involves the community in several aspects of the research design and emphasizes transformative actionable changes. **Activist scholarship** is a specific type of social justice scholarship that emphasizes active engagement with, advocacy for, and organizing with groups in society that are marginalized (Carragee & Frey, 2016). This could take the form of political organizing, protests, rallies, marches, campaigns, lobbying, direct action, civil disobedience, and so on. We will focus further on this type of work in the final chapter of this book.

Why Do Numbers Have Power?

In Communication, qualitative research methods—with the central position they reserve for issues of ideology, power, identity, and subjectivity—are frequent locations for social justice research. Yet, quantitative research is uniquely poised, as well, to effect change through the principles and practices of the scientific method. We have subtitled this book *The Power of Numbers for Social Justice* because we think quantitative methods available to researchers can be utilized to make strides toward a more just and equitable world. Importantly, many people are persuaded by numbers and statistical analysis (Allen & Preiss, 1997). This, in itself, shows the potential of quantitative research to raise awareness, spur concern, test proposed solutions, or otherwise address social justice issues and topics. In their book, *Feminism Counts: Quantitative Methods and Researching Gender*, Christina Hughes and Rachel Lara Cohen (2012) observe, "Quantification remains the 'gold standard' for much social science and policy-oriented research" (p. 2). This is mainly because numerical data are often assumed to be credible, reliable, relatively unbiased, and verifiable.

Data for Black Lives is an excellent example of the power of numbers, http://d4bl.org. Here is what the group says under the About tab:

> Data for Black Lives is a movement of activists, organizers, and mathematicians committed to the mission of using data science to create concrete and measurable change in the lives of Black people. Since the advent of computing, big data and algorithms have penetrated virtually every aspect of our social and economic lives. These new data systems have tremendous potential to empower communities of color. **Tools like statistical modeling, data visualization, and crowd-sourcing, in the right hands, are powerful instruments for fighting bias, building progressive movements, and promoting civic engagement.**
>
> (emphasis added).

The potential persuasiveness of quantitative data also stems from the fact that it is derived through the scientific method, as we will describe further. The public generally trusts that scientific researchers will use public resources well and will provide knowledge to both inform public policy and work toward improvements in society (Resnik, 2009). In national public opinion data in the U.S., 71% of respondents reported believing that government investment in basic scientific research pays off, and 79% said that scientific research has made life easier for most people (Funk & Rainie, 2015). Although there is some indication that trust in statistics and research is eroding (Spiegelhalter, 2017), there remains an underlying openness to the power of numbers held broadly among the public that provides an opportunity for researchers inspired by a desire to challenge the status quo.

For social justice research, in particular, quantitative analysis can be used to "bolster the impact of small sample qualitative findings by documenting the 'representativeness' of oppressive conditions in larger representative samples" (Ponterotto, Matthew, & Raughley, 2013, p. 48). In other words, one key advantage of bringing quantitative methods to bear on questions pertaining to social justice is that, as you will read later, quantitative research tends to look for phenomena occurring in larger and broader patterns compared to qualitative research. This is an important opportunity to illuminate what many people are experiencing, a potentially powerful argument in a push for social justice and social change.

All of these assumptions about numerical data and the scientific method open the door for quantitative research to be a powerful tool for social justice. On the other hand, "data" of any sort can also be used to vilify, dehumanize, and rationalize discrimination and/or mistreatment and can ultimately support rather than challenge racism, homophobia, classism, Islamophobia, sexism, and ableism. The very power of numbers that can potentially be harnessed as a force for good can be and has been a force for ill as well, as you will see in Chapter 2 on research ethics. Numbers generated and presented in a manner that ensures power will stay in the hands of the powerful have a particular force. Indeed, it is important for us to acknowledge that, for some, quantitative research has been and even continues to be seen as fundamentally and irreconcilably at odds with critical, activist, and social justice work.

But we argue in this book that research that is both scientifically rigorous and socially conscious also has the power to contribute meaningfully to both individual and social change. Users of quantitative methods who wish to put the "power of numbers" to good use for society must learn and internalize the principles and practices of both the scientific method and of social justice, developing and applying a sensibility used to design and carry out their work. This balance puts considerable pressure on the researcher, as is apparent in this quote from psychologists Kevin Cokley and Germine H. Awad: "Recognizing how quantitative methods have been used to legitimize social prejudices and perpetuate oppression, we have

argued that *the problem lies not with the methods themselves, but rather the users of the methods*" (Cokley & Awad, 2013, p. 36, emphasis added). We would point out that where there are potential "problems" with the users of quantitative methods, there are potential opportunities, as well.

Scholar Spotlight: Dr. Sut Jhally

Figure 1.4 Scholar Spotlight: Dr. Sut Jhally

Professor Sut Jhally is the Founder and Executive Director of the Media Education Foundation and Professor Emeritus in the Department of Communication at the University of Massachusetts Amherst. Professor Jhally has written six books and numerous scholarly and popular press articles on a range of topics in Communication and Media and Cultural Studies. Yet, his main body of work takes the form of educational videos. The Media Education Foundation (MEF) is a non-profit organization that "produces and distributes documentary films and other educational resources to inspire critical thinking about the social, political, and cultural impact of American mass media" (www.mediaed.org/about-mef/what-we-believe/). Founded in 1991, MEF has produced more than 70 films and videos on such topics as gender and culture, race and

representation, class and society, the culture of consumerism, the media and the Middle East, and politics and current events.

Q: *What are the ways in which research (as produced by academics or others) is utilized in creating the content of MEF films? Do you draw from research in making arguments, introducing issues, etc.? What role do you think research plays in fulfilling the mission of the MEF, "to inspire critical thinking about the social, political, and cultural impact of American mass media"?*

Dr. Jhally: The main mission of the Media Education Foundation is to translate the latest cutting edge research produced in the academy into a form and language that non-specialist audiences can engage with. Hence MEF videos are drenched in the results of academic research and presented in a way that moves the discussion forward in a productive, rational, and scientific way. Without academic research, MEF could not fulfill its mission. (*The Mean World Syndrome*, *Joystick Warriors*, *Dysfunctional Societies* are just three examples of research-based films.)

Q: *What do you think are the unique ways in which quantitative research in particular can contribute to your work at the MEF? Do you think numbers and statistics can help provide a foundation from which to spark a critical conversation? Why/How so?*

Dr. Jhally: Quantitative research is absolutely fundamental to how MEF films are produced. For example, while qualitative research can tell us a great deal about how media images/messages do their semiotic work, and the possible ideological consequences of the interaction between media environments and audiences, [only] quantitative and empirical work can establish how pervasive the messages are and whether or not large numbers of people are changed because of exposure to them.

Q: *What do you think are the chief challenges or limitations associated with the successful use of quantitative research in your work? If numbers and statistics do play a role but are supplemented by other ways of introducing issues and providing evidence, why do you consider it necessary to supplement those numbers and statistics?*

Dr. Jhally: See my earlier response. While quantitative research can establish broad patterns in media content and media effects, qualitative work is good at thinking about the mechanisms as work in the production of meaning. MEF is methodologically agnostic when it comes to research and will use different kinds of studies to shed light on the always complex, and often contradictory, processes underway in whatever is being examined.

The Rise of Quantitative Criticalism

The possibility of using quantitative methods for critical research is increasingly being pursued in several fields such as public health, education, psychology, and other largely quantitatively driven research areas (Cokley & Awad, 2013; Else-Quest & Hyde, 2016; Garcia, López, & Vélez, 2018; McLaren, 2017; Ponterotto et al., 2013). The term ***quantitative criticalist*** (Stage & Wells, 2014) has been advanced to encompass quantitative researchers who conduct research not to reveal some universal "truth" but rather to expose injustices and inequalities and bring data to bear on the structures and forces that help explain those injustices and inequalities.

Quantitative critical perspectives have shaped quantitative methods within critical race theory using "QuantCrit" approaches (Garcia et al., 2018), feminist methods (Hughes & Cohen, 2012; Sprague, 2016), and in indigenous contexts (Groh, 2018; Juutilainen, Jeffrey, & Stewart, 2019). Communication scholars such as Mohan Dutta (2010), a health communication researcher, and the second author of this book, a media effects researcher (Ramasubramanian & Banjo, 2020), have argued for combining critical approaches to quantitative social sciences for social justice. With this book, we join the growing number of social scientist voices within and outside Communication who say that quantitative researchers not only have something valuable to offer to the causes of social justice but also that they have a responsibility to think carefully about injustices and inequalities in the process of conducting their research.

We share two important definitions of quantitative criticalism:

- Counseling psychologists Ponterotto et al. (2013) suggest, "Criticalist researchers employ both quantitative and qualitative methods in establishing a dialectical stance with respect to the researcher-participant relationship that serves to empower the participants and stimulate the transformation of oppressive conditions to more equitable ones" (p. 44).
- Public health scholar McLaren (2017) contends, "Quantitative criticalists use quantitative data and methods to pursue research questions that, for example, reveal inequities and the social or institutional factors that create and perpetuate them. Critical quantitative scholarship may also question measures and analytic practices used in quantitative research, to ensure that they adequately represent circumstances and contexts, and do not themselves inadvertently perpetuate exclusion and hierarchy" (p. 391).

We point out that in discussing why this type of research is conducted, both Ponterotto and colleagues and McLaren remind us that quantitative criticalist research is partly about the *purpose* of research. In bringing up issues of empowering research participants and thinking carefully about how to measure variables and analyze data, these scholars remind us, too, that quantitative criticalist work is also about being conscientious and deliberate about the *process* of research. Finally, in discussing how research can be used and toward what ends, these authors also remind us that quantitative criticalist work is about the *outcomes* associated with research.

Decades ago, Communication scholar Mike Allen observed that "the quest for justice is not a fundamental logical component of the scientific process (as previous unethical investigations demonstrate). Scientists are guided as they may be by conscience and the desire to improve conditions, but the requirements of conducting a scientifically sound study say nothing about social justice. Thus, QSS (quantitative social science) unguided by a critical spirit poses many challenges and may be dangerous" (Allen, 1999, p. 374). Using this book as a guide, we hope that emerging Communication researchers will develop their skills at mastering the scientific method to conduct quantitative research at the same time that they develop and put into action a critical consciousness regarding equality, inclusion, and justice.

Indeed, the latter element—the critical consciousness—may be the most vital factor in conducting quantitative research for social justice action. Psychologists John G. Ponterotto et al. (2013) contend that "the social justice anchor of the research study lies in the multicultural awareness and competence of the researcher rather than with a component of the research method. Without high levels of multicultural competence of the researcher, both quantitative and qualitative procedures run the risk of further marginalizing and oppressing minority groups" (p. 57). We agree.

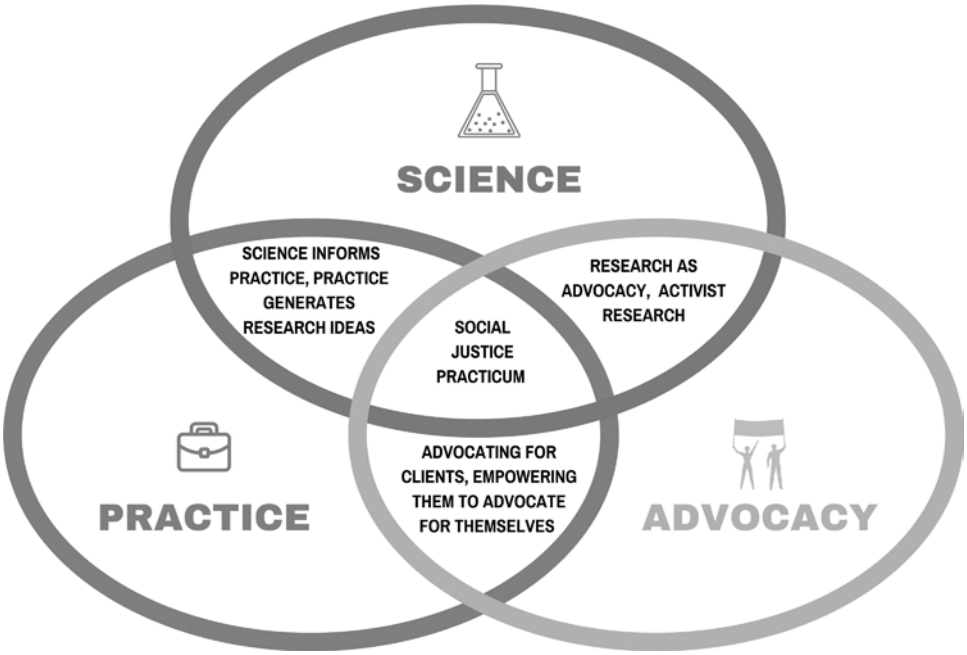


Figure 1.5 Illustrating the relationships among science, advocacy, and practice

Source: Emily Riewestahl

In summary, then, we argue that bringing quantitative criticism to Communication involves three interrelated pursuits:

- Choosing research topics that matter for social justice;
- Developing a social justice consciousness and applying that consciousness to how the research is designed and carried out;
- Attending to the important question of how, by whom, and for what purpose the knowledge that emerges from the research is used.

Key Features of Quantitative Social Science Research

Quantitative research in Communication applies the main features of the **scientific method** developed for the natural sciences for its investigation of communication-related phenomena. A quantitative research study follows a rather fixed set of steps—all of which will be outlined and discussed in great detail in this book (Figure 1.6). Each of the steps has its own possibilities and limits for researchers attempting to conduct their research from a critical and/or a social justice point of view. We will introduce the steps briefly here and return to each of them in the chapters to come.

1. Typically, a quantitative research project begins with a question the researcher would like to try to answer.
2. After identifying that question, the researcher finds out what is already known about the phenomenon they are studying through a **review of the literature**. The "literature" is

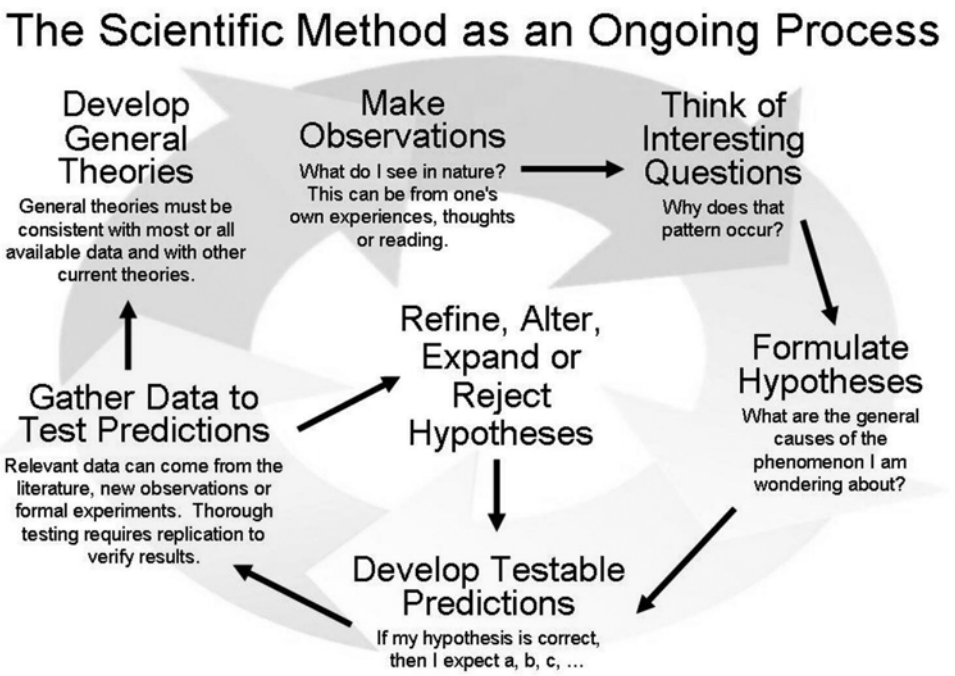

The Scientific Method as an Ongoing Process
Develop General Theories
General theories must be consistent with most or all available data and with other current theories.
Make Observations
What do I see in nature? This can be from one's own experiences, thoughts or reading.
Think of Interesting Questions
Why does that pattern occur?
Formulate Hypotheses
What are the general causes of the phenomenon I am wondering about?
Develop Testable Predictions
If my hypothesis is correct, then I expect a, b, c, ...
Gather Data to Test Predictions
Relevant data can come from the literature, new observations or formal experiments. Thorough testing requires replication to verify results.
Refine, Alter, Expand or Reject Hypotheses

Figure 1.6 The scientific method

Source: Wikipedia user named Whatiguana, https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Scientific_Method_3.jpg

the previously existing knowledge on the topic, usually found in the form of prior studies that the researcher can access to begin to understand the phenomenon of interest.

3. Next, the researcher poses **hypotheses** that use the literature and theories from prior research to make predictions about what is expected to occur in the study at hand.
4. The next step is to write a detailed **methods** section in which a roadmap for how the study will be conducted is provided alongside details about why each decision about how to proceed has been made.
5. The next stage is **data collection**, and because we are talking about quantitative research, those data take the form of quantitative values (like a research participant's response on a scale of 1 to 5). The quantitative data are subsequently analyzed using **statistical procedures** that look for associations or differences in those values and are written up in a **results** section.
6. Finally, in the **discussion** section, findings are discussed in terms of their implications for the phenomenon in question, their relationship to prior findings from the literature review, their relevance for society and social actors within, and the strengths and limitations of the study. Knowledge is generally regarded as produced incrementally, with a single study taking small steps toward revealing the contours and complexities of the phenomenon studied. In fact, quantitative studies often end with recommendations for the next steps to take in future research on the same topic.

The quantitative scientific method has a number of defining features that characterize its use as a tool in the production of knowledge, including for social justice purposes. The rest of this book will explore each feature of the scientific method in full. For now, however, we introduce three basic principles to help you begin to understand the underlying logic of quantitative research:

- The principle of objectivity;
- Aggregation of numerical data points;
- Deductive reasoning (or *a priori* design).

The Principle of Objectivity

Quantitative research is concerned with minimizing the role that the researcher's own feelings, priorities, experiences, and opinions play in shaping research results and the processes that produce them. Even post-positivists, who reject the idea of pure objectivity, will employ strategies to attempt to lessen the impact of their own subjectivity in the research. The underlying objective is that the data produced by quantitative research should be able to be **replicated** by other researchers. If two researchers use the same research procedures, as long as what they are studying is fairly stable, they should observe, more or less, quite similar findings. This is because the observation of those findings was not based wholly on their own subjective point of view.

The principle of objectivity, even if it is only partially met, has some potential advantages for doing research toward social justice ends. Sometimes, people in general or policymakers in particular are more likely to be persuaded by research that is seen as wider than one researcher's point of view. Using the scientific method, for example, the quantitative researcher is not typically viewed as engaging in selecting or "cherry-picking" observations or data for the purpose of making a particular argument. The scientific method's central goal of producing verifiable evidence that is not attributed to the researcher's own subjectivity has a long history of influencing policy and other forms of social, economic, and political change (Cokley & Awad, 2013).

Yet, striving toward objectivity can also breed detachment from those researched, and in extreme cases, even foster dehumanization. It can also breed detachment, too, from the political, economic, social, and cultural conditions in which knowledge is produced and in which we all live our lives. Since much of the goal of social justice research is to raise up the voices of the oppressed, to give voice to their subjectivities and positionalities, having researchers somehow be removed from their *own* subjectivities and positionalities can be at odds with this goal. Many scholars have written, as well, about the manner in which an allegiance to objectivity reinforces a singular perspective that reflects and reinforces White male power (e.g., MacKinnon, 1983).

Fundamentally, the development of what we have termed a "critical consciousness" *does* implicate the researcher's own subjectivity, sense of what is just or unjust, and motivation to intervene. To do research with social justice goals at the forefront is not to stand dispassionately on the sidelines, and therefore there is a built-in ideological component that is at odds with a pure sense of objectivity that needs to be recognized and acknowledged. The way forward, therefore, is likely to be a delicate balancing act, in which dichotomies of objectivity and subjectivity are rejected in favor of a negotiation of one's role in research and social action, one's positionality in relation to the people or topics studied, and one's interpretation of the data gathered through the scientific process.

Learning and applying the steps involved in the scientific method will help the researcher minimize *unintentional* bias in data collection and analysis on one side of the balancing act. Indeed, many of the components of the scientific method can be considered means of minimizing the impact of researcher subjectivity, including engaging in deductive reasoning to create and test hypotheses, producing samples with an eye toward representativeness, and reporting on aggregates rather than unique cases. Each of these conventions serves to reduce the role of researchers themselves unduly influencing the research process and the data produced. The researcher's own passions and priorities regarding what to study, how to study it, and whether and how to engage in social action regarding the issues at stake in the research on an *intentional* level is on the other side of the balancing act.

The balancing act between objectivity and subjectivity among researchers who use the scientific method to produce knowledge was on display in September 2020. At that time, the editorial board of the *Scientific American* decided to endorse a U.S. presidential candidate for the first time in its 175-year history. At that time, as well, a scathing editorial about U.S. President Donald Trump's handling of the COVID-19 pandemic was published in the journal, *Science*. In an interview for *Wired* magazine following the editorial, *Science* editor H. Holden Thorp was quoted as saying, "You know, there is no apolitical science. Science is done by human beings in political environments funded by the federal government. The notion of apolitical science has never been real to begin with" (Rogers, 2020).

In Communication, not all research is funded by the federal government. However, the first part of Thorp's quote would certainly apply. In Communication, as in any field of study, "Science is done by human beings in political environments." That simple but profound acknowledgment already begins the balancing act of objectivity and subjectivity.

The question of objectivity in research was challenged even more powerfully in a June 2020 editorial in *Scientific American* endorsed by 500 women scientists whose identities were not provided in order to protect them from any potential negative consequences for their careers regarding what they wrote. Here is what they had to say:

> If scientists don't explicitly say #BlackLivesMatter, if they don't speak up on justice and social issues, they risk overlooking solutions, discarding talent, and perpetuating toxic power dynamics. We must all hold ourselves and each other accountable to dismantle the systems of oppression that persist in our society, the very systems that claimed the lives of George Floyd and countless other Black people. That work should start by denouncing racial injustice and violence in no uncertain terms, but it cannot end there. . . . Addressing racism in science has to include fundamentally changing the scientific institutions themselves, anything short of that is just lip service. Silence is never neutral. Neither is science.
>
> (500 Women Scientists Leadership, 2020)

Research in Action

Facebook made headlines in 2014 when it introduced a custom function in which U.S. users could specify their gender identity using about 50 different options (Figure 1.7a). One year later, Facebook changed the custom feature to allow users to type in any description of gender identity that users wanted to include, rather than trying to anticipate the full range of possibilities (Figure 1.7b). This is an excellent illustration of how difficult it can be to anticipate and fully account for the entire range of human experiences and identities.

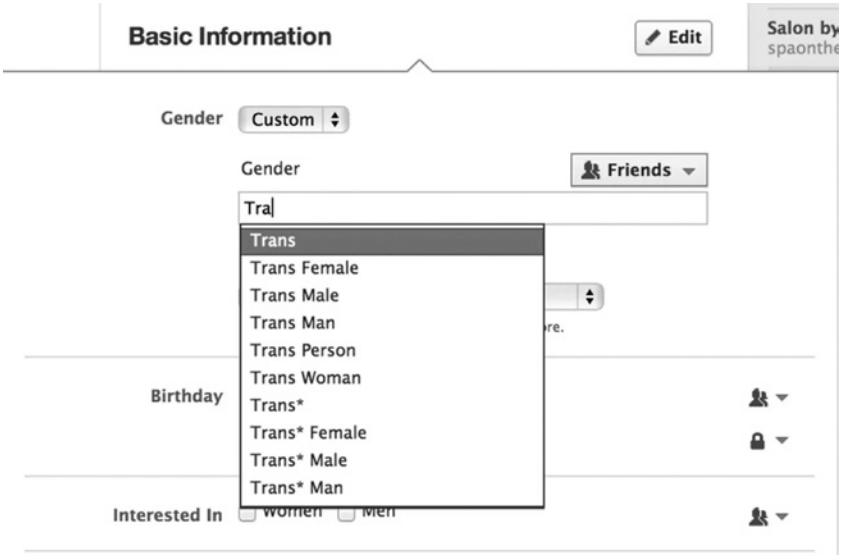


Figure 1.7a Gender categories

Source: Screenshot from Facebook.com

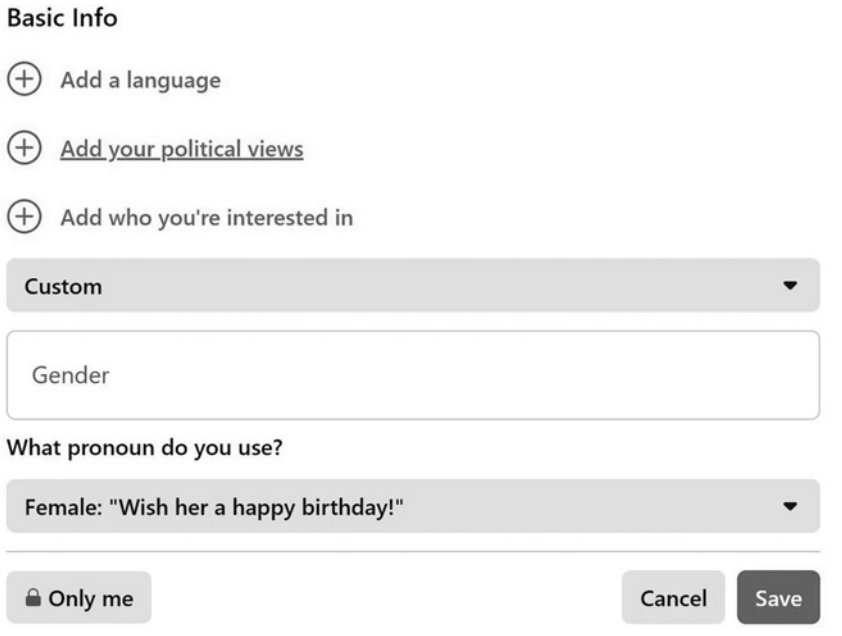


Figure 1.7b Gender pronouns

Aggregation of Numerical Data

As we mentioned, in quantitative research, data take the form of numbers. So, rather than ask a research participant who is filling out a survey to use words to explain an opinion that they have, for instance, the quantitative researcher measures opinions (or anything else) numerically. Measurement of opinions and other variables will be the topic of Chapter 3. But to illustrate this point for now, imagine that the research participant is given a statement that expresses an opinion and is asked to select a number that will represent more or less agreement with that statement. For example, a survey item might state, "Racism is the most important social issue in the United States," and the person filling out the survey might circle an option from the following set of choices: 1 = strongly disagree, 2 = disagree, 3 = neither agree nor disagree, 4 = agree, and 5 = strongly agree. In this way, then, the data gathered in the research takes shape from the numerical values chosen by each person who participates.

Typically (but not always) in quantitative research, data are drawn from the individual and then aggregated—combined to form groups of individual data points about whom/which conclusions are drawn. In using **summary statistics**, for example, individual data points are transformed into **averages** (like the mean response when you ask people to report their household income) or **frequencies** (like the percentage of the sample who said, "Yes, I use social media to follow politics regularly"). Rather than reporting on each individual's answer to each individual question used to study something, we aggregate or combine those answers to simplify the data and find patterns.

Aggregation is generally considered a necessary process in quantitative research, which is more often concerned with broad patterns and not necessarily with the details of each case of individual variation that occurs outside of broad patterns. In a quantitative study, it is often impractical and therefore unadvisable to provide the exact responses of each of the potentially hundreds of research participants. Therefore, we use summary statistics that are aggregated from individual responses to report averages in the sample or to report most common responses. All individuals are included in averages, of course, since averages themselves are derived from all of the data. Yet, by focusing on average responses, we run the risk of obscuring experiences, points of view, and responses outside of the norm.

If one is concerned with voice, inclusion, and power relations, the use of the aggregate rather than the individual can reify dominant rather than marginal positions. In other words, if quantitative research focuses on the majority—through reporting, for instance, that 73% of students on a given college campus have not experienced discrimination—we may lose track of the 27% who have. Their experiences are not the majority but are likely to be the most important aspect of the phenomenon to bring to light through the research. Even in the process of aggregation, then, the quantitative researcher working to be responsive to issues and questions of social justice must remember that there are real people and real stakes behind those numbers. Researchers should remain open and curious about even non-majority positions and points of view. We will return to this issue later in this book.

Deductive Reasoning

As we have introduced in this chapter, hypotheses are usually derived from applying the findings of prior studies and the principles of existing theories to the new set of circumstances that an individual study explores. Then, the data are gathered to see whether those hypotheses find support, deducing from the data whether the prediction holds in the new circumstances. This is the principle of **deductive reasoning** that is at the heart of quantitative research. In order to achieve this, the researcher has to anticipate the full range of responses that research participants will have to the conditions and materials (such as a

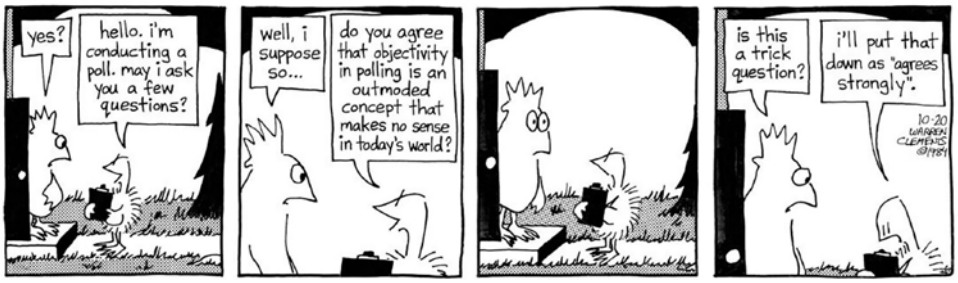

yes?
hello. i'm conducting a poll. may i ask you a few questions?
well, i suppose so...
do you agree that objectivity in polling is an outmoded concept that makes no sense in today's world?
is this a trick question?
i'll put that down as "agrees strongly".
10-20
WARREN CLEMENTS

Figure 1.8 A cartoon about the concept of objectivity in research

Source: From the comic strip "Nestlings" by Warren Clements

survey) that they will encounter in the study ahead of time and devise a way of assigning each potential response a number. This is known as an ***a priori* design**, with *a priori* meaning that the predictions of what will be observed in the study are made before the observations themselves are collected.

Have you ever taken a survey and thought to yourself, *I can't find a response option that accurately reflects how I feel about this topic*? That is an issue with the *a priori* nature of quantitative research, in which the researcher has to anticipate and have a way of organizing everything that a survey respondent might want to report. If a survey respondent feels that their views are not represented among the options a researcher has decided to include for a survey question, the researcher has not adequately anticipated the full range of options that would correspond with the complexity of opinion or experience that exists.

Failure to have a complete list of options that fully correspond to the entire range of possibilities in what you are studying is not only faulty social science, it also has negative implications for social justice. Individuals who do not see an option that corresponds with their opinion, experience, sense of self, etc. have the potential to feel marginalized by the research, since the implication is that their opinion, experience, sense of self, etc. was not apparent or valued enough by the researcher to be included in the study's design. In fact, sometimes quantitative researchers might include an option labeled "other" as a catch-all category in a survey so that they can be assured that they have anticipated all possibilities exhaustively ahead of collecting data. But, similarly, circling an "other" option can result in feeling excluded, undervalued, and pushed to the margins.

Consider the complex matter of measuring the gender identity of research participants. Not to be conflated with biological sex (that is assigned at birth), nor with sexual orientation or sexual identity (that correspond with romantic and/or sexual attraction), gender identity is a person's view of the self that can reflect various positions on a continuum of societal and cultural definitions anchored by the concepts of masculinity and femininity, or the person may think outside of those definitions entirely. How might a person who is gender non-conforming, for instance, feel when completing a survey and only being presented with two options to report their gender, man and woman? How would they answer? To read more about this important issue, research by Gloria Fraser (2018) shares several examples of best practices for more inclusive language around gender-related measures in social sciences.

As you saw in the Research in Action feature of this chapter, Facebook made headlines in 2014 when it introduced a custom function in which U.S. users could specify their gender identity using about 50 different options. One year later, Facebook changed the custom feature to allow users to type in *any* description of gender identity that users wanted to include, rather than trying to anticipate the full range of possibilities. This is an excellent illustration of how difficult it can be to anticipate and fully account for the entire range of human experiences and identities.

Summary

In this chapter we learned about key concepts within social justice scholarship and quantitative research methods. Research methods are techniques and approaches to produce knowledge. Social science research methods focus on producing knowledge that helps us understand the world around us. Basic social science research is motivated by researchers' curiosity and interest in theorizing about the world. Applied social science research aims to address and solve real-world problems relating to the social world we live in. Social science research can help explore, describe, evaluate, explain, and transform the social world around us. There are four main approaches to social science research: quantitative, qualitative, mixed methods, and community-based research. Quantitative research uses numerical data to test hypotheses, measure variables, and explain relationships. Qualitative research emphasizes more subjective experiences, "thick" or in-depth descriptions, and sense-making of the social world. Mixed methods approaches combine quantitative and qualitative methods. Community-based research has the community as the location or setting for research. These methods are situated within three main research paradigms: (post)positivism, constructivism, and critical approaches.

Social justice research is a type of applied research within the critical paradigm whose goal is to attend to and address social inequalities, power imbalances, and oppression. There are many types of social justice research such as translational research, public scholarship, engaged scholarship, policy research, community-based participatory research, and activist scholarship. Communication, with its emphasis on practical theorizing and history of critical scholarship, provides a valuable perspective from which to approach social justice research. While qualitative research has long played a central role in Communication social justice scholarship, quantitative research is poised, as well, to inform such efforts.

Quantitative methods for social justice use the "power of numbers" and the scientific method for social good to bring about meaningful and measurable social change. Quantitative criticalists use the power of numbers and quantitative research methods to expose and address social injustices and inequalities. They develop a critical consciousness that is used to question methods, measures, and practices of how research is conducted. Quantitative methods are rooted in the scientific method, which starts with reviewing the literature, posing hypotheses, determining the methods to test the hypotheses, collecting quantitative data, analyzing the data using statistical procedures, and discussing the implications and limitations of the findings. Quantitative research methods have three key features: the principle of objectivity, aggregation of numerical data points, and deductive reasoning. However, we have shown in this chapter how each of those features has nuances and complexities for social justice research.

Discussion Questions

1. What does social justice mean to you? What topics and issues motivate you to engage in research? What are some research questions that Communication scholars, especially quantitative criticalists interested in social justice, are well-positioned to address?

2. Do you agree with the "power of numbers" central argument put forth in this chapter? Do you think quantification, numbers, and data have a particular persuasive force among the public and among policymakers? Why or why not?
3. What is your opinion about the role that objectivity can or should have in research? Does your opinion change if the research is social justice-oriented?
4. What do you anticipate would be the greatest challenge of doing quantitative research for social justice? What do you think is the greatest opportunity?

References

Allen, M. (1999). The role of meta-analysis for connecting critical and scientific approaches: The need to develop a sense of collaboration. *Critical Studies in Mass Communication*, *16*, 373–379.

Allen, M., & Preiss, R. W. (1997). Comparing the persuasiveness of narrative and statistical evidence using meta-analysis. *Communication Research Reports*, *14*(2), 125–131.

Barge, J. K., & Shockley-Zalabak, P. (2008). Engaged scholarship and the creation of useful organizational knowledge. *Journal of Applied Communication Research*, *36*(3), 251–265.

Carragee, K. M., & Frey, L. R. (2016). Communication activism research: Engaged communication scholarship for social justice. *International Journal of Communication*, *10*, 3975–3999.

Center for American Women and Politics. (2018). *Women in the U.S. Congress 2018*. Retrieved from https://cawp.rutgers.edu/women-elective-office-2020

Cokley, K. O., & Awad, G. H. (2013). In defense of quantitative methods: Using the "master's tools" to promote social justice. *Journal for Social Action in Counseling and Psychology*, *5*(2), 26–41.

Collins, P. H. (2000). *Black feminist thought: Knowledge, consciousness, and the politics of empowerment* (2nd ed.). New York: Routledge.

Collins, P. H., & Bilge, S. (2016). *Intersectionality*. Cambridge, UK: Polity Press.

Denzin, N. K. (1994). The art and politics of interpretation. In N. K. Denzin & Y. S. Lincoln (Eds.), *Handbook of qualitative research* (pp. 500–515). Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage.

Dutta, M. (2010). The critical cultural turn in health communication: Reflexivity, solidarity, and praxis. *Health Communication*, *25*(6–7), 534–539. doi:10.1080/10410236.2010.497995

Else-Quest, N. M., & Hyde, J. S. (2016). Intersectionality in quantitative psychological research: Theoretical and epistemological issues. *Psychology of Women Quarterly*, *40*(2), 155–170. doi:10.1177/0361684316629797

Filstead, W. J. (1979). Qualitative methods: A needed perspective in evaluation research. In T. D. Cook & C. S. Reichardt (Eds.), *Qualitative and quantitative methods in evaluation research* (pp. 33–48). Beverly Hills, CA: Sage.

Food Aid Foundation. (2019). *Hunger statistics*. Retrieved from www.foodaidfoundation.org/world-hunger-statistics.html

Fraser, G. (2018). Evaluating inclusive gender identity measures for use in quantitative psychological research. *Psychology & Sexuality*, *9*(4), 343–357. doi:10.1080/19419899.2018.1497693

Frey, L. R. (2009). What a difference more difference-making communication scholarship might make: Making a difference from and through communication research. *Journal of Applied Communication Research*, *37*(2), 205–214.

Frey, L. R., & Carragee, K. M. (2007). *Communication activism: Communication for social change*. New York: Hampton Press.

Frey, L. R., Pearce, W. B., Pollock, M. A., Artz, L., & Murphy, B. A. (1996). Looking for justice in all the wrong places: On a communication approach to social justice. *Communication Studies*, *47*(1–2), 110–127.

Funk, C., & Rainie, L. (2015, January 29). *Public and scientists' views on science and society*. Pew Research Center for Internet and Technology. Retrieved March 18, 2018, from www.pewinternet.org/2015/01/29/public-and-scientists-views-on-science-and-society/

Garcia, N. M., López, N., & Vélez, V. N. (2018). QuantCrit: Rectifying quantitative methods through critical race theory. *Race Ethnicity and Education*, *21*(2), 149–157. doi:10.1080/13613324.2017.1377675

Groh, A. (2018). *Research methods in indigenous contexts*. Cham, Switzerland: Springer International.

Guba, E. G., & Lincoln, Y. S. (1994). Competing paradigms in qualitative research. In N. K. Denzin & Y. S. Lincoln (Eds.), *Handbook of qualitative research* (pp. 105–117). Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage.

Hooks, B. (2000). *Feminist theory: From margin to center* (2nd ed.). Cambridge, MA: South End Press.

Hughes, C., & Cohen, R. L. (Eds.). (2012). *Feminism counts*. London: Routledge. doi:10.4324/9781315874944

Juutilainen, S. A., Jeffrey, M., & Stewart, S. (2019). Methodology matters: Designing a pilot study guided by indigenous epistemologies. *Human Biology*, *91*(3), 141–151. doi:10.13110/humanbiology.91.3.06

Kuhn, T. S. (1962). *The structure of scientific revolution*. London: University of Chicago Press.

MacKinnon, C. A. (1983). Feminism, marxism, method, and the state: Toward feminist jurisprudence. *Signs*, *8*(4), 635–658.

McLaren, L. (2017). A space for critical quantitative public health research? *Critical Public Health*, *27*(4), 391–393. doi:10.1080/09581596.2017.1326214

Ponterotto, J. G., Matthew, J. T., & Raughley, B. (2013). The value of mixed methods designs to social justice research in counseling and psychology. *Journal for Social Action in Counseling and Psychology*, *5*(2), 42–68.

Popper, K. (1968). *Conjectures and refutations*. New York: Harper & Row.

Ramasubramanian, S., & Banjo, O. (2020). Critical media effects framework: Bridging critical cultural communication and media effects through power, intersectionality, context, and agency. *Journal of Communication*, *70*(3), 379–400. https://doi.org/10.1093/joc/jqaa014

Resnik, D. (2009). *Playing politics with science*. New York: Oxford University Press.

Rogers, A. (2020, September 16). America's top science journal has had it with Trump. *Wired*. Retrieved September 22, 2020, from www.wired.com/story/americas-top-science-journal-has-had-it-with-trump/

The Sentencing Project. (2019). *Trends in U.S. Corrections*. Retrieved from www.sentencingproject.org/publications/trends-in-u-s-corrections/

Spiegelhalter, D. (2017). Trust in numbers. *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society, Series A*, *180*(4), 948–965. doi:10.1111/rssa.12302

Sprague, J. (2016). *Feminist methodologies for critical researchers: Bridging differences*. Lanham, MD: Rowman & Littlefield Publishers.

Stage, F., & Wells, R. (2014). *New perspectives on critical quantitative inquiry. New directions for institutional research*. San Francisco, CA: Jossey-Bass.

Tracy, S. J. (2002). Altered practice↔ altered stories↔ altered lives: Three considerations for translating organizational communication scholarship into practice. *Management Communication Quarterly*, *16*(1), 85–91.

United Nations Refugee Agency. (2020). *Figures at a glance*. Retrieved from www.unhcr.org/en-us/figures-at-a-glance.html

United States Census Bureau. (2020). *Equal pay day: March 31st, 2020*. Retrieved from www.census.gov/newsroom/stories/2020/equal-pay.html

Walk Free Foundation. (2018). *Global slavery index 2018*. Retrieved from www.globalslaveryindex.org/2018/findings/highlights/

Wrench, J. S., Thomas-Maddox, C., Richmond, V. P., & McCroskey, J. C. (2008). *Quantitative research methods for communication*. New York: Oxford University Press.

500 Women Scientists Leadership. (2020, June 6). *Silence is never neutral. Neither is science*. Retrieved September 22, 2020, from https://blogs.scientificamerican.com/voices/silence-is-never-neutral-neither-is-science/

2 Ethical Considerations

Some research methods books include a chapter on ethics at the end of the book, which can make that chapter seem almost like an afterthought. For this book, we place this chapter on ethics at the beginning to emphasize its centrality in quantitative social justice research. We also conceive of ethics broadly in this chapter, as much more than a simple checklist for researchers to use to avoid harming research participants. Rather, we demonstrate that ethics is closely connected to reflexivity, thinking through our obligations to conceive and carry out research with sensitivity and integrity.

The word ***ethics*** is derived from the Greek word *ethos*, which means character. It is closely related to concepts such as morality, integrity, and truthfulness. **Morality** is about making judgments about what is right and wrong. **Integrity** is about the alignment of actions and behaviors with one's ethical and moral codes. As you will see in this chapter, ethics, morality, and integrity are essential to use as guiding forces in social science research, and they take on greater importance if you are working toward social justice in your research.

The origins of ethical principles can be traced back to several Eastern philosophies. For instance, ***ahimsa* (non-violence)** and ***satya* (truth)** are core principles emphasized in the teachings of Buddhism, Jainism, and Patanjali's *Yogasutra* around 400–500 BCE. *Satyagraha* or nonviolent civil resistance was popularized by Mahatma Gandhi (Figure 2.1) and later adopted by Martin Luther King, Jr. in the 20th century. These ancient ethical principles continue to be relevant to modern-day research practices. Researchers in Communication and other social sciences are often motivated to shed light on "truth" and "reality" through their research inquiries. There is also a long tradition in social justice scholarship of conducting research that either implicitly or explicitly argues for non-violence, including reducing violence that is structural and systemic in nature as well as that which is interpersonal.

Another important historical marker in the codification of ethics is the Hippocratic Oath in Greece around 300 BCE, which was influenced by the Buddhist Physicians' Oath called ***Vejjavatapada***. The primary principle of this oath that has been adopted by biomedical researchers and practitioners is "Do no harm." For social researchers, given contemporary practices put in place to protect research subjects, physical harm is, thankfully, less likely to occur. Instead, risks to participants in social science research tend to involve more psychological and emotional forms of harm rather than physical and physiological forms. Yet, those risks are critically important, as well, and therefore social scientists, too, should begin with the basic principle of avoiding or minimizing harm.

The Significance of Ethics within Social Justice Research

Ethical principles govern all aspects of the research process, including what is studied and who is involved in the process. As researchers interested in human communication, it is important to foreground ethical considerations to ensure that research does no harm and, in

Figure 2.1 Mahatma Gandhi

Source: Elliott & Fry, https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Mahatma-Gandhi,_studio,_1931.jpg

fact, maximizes benefits to participants and to society at large. The value systems into which researchers are socialized shape research decisions and experiences. Intrinsic moral values such as honesty, justice, equity, caring, and fairness guide social justice scholarship.

What is discovered through research is just as important as *how* it has been discovered. In other words, the means that lead to scientific discoveries are just as important as the discoveries themselves. Social justice-oriented social scientists typically choose to study topics and address research problems that align with these values. These intrinsic moral values influence what topics are studied, which methods and theories are included, who is cited in the research, who are the collaborators and participants, how interactions with research participants are structured, how the research is written up, how the research findings are disseminated, and how the impact of such research is gauged.

Indeed, ethics is embedded in every single aspect of decision making and practice of research, especially for social justice scholars. Consider the case of a strategic communication researcher whose study passes all university regulatory compliance board requirements but aids in the marketing of unhealthy and addictive foods to vulnerable populations. Or a scenario in which researchers mine personal data from social networking sites in ways that compromise private financial information, intimate conversations, and personal opinions. Or when an intercultural communication scholar's work is co-opted for use in military operations that result in the loss of lives. These are all examples of how the ethics of the research takes on a different dimension in particular communicative situations. In this chapter, we can, at best, merely scrape the surface of this complex topic by drawing attention to a few essential guiding principles and providing direction on practical tips for the design and implementation of research in ethical ways.

There are many reasons why researchers need to be attentive to ethical issues. Israel (2015) puts forth some motivations: to protect research participants, to maintain trust so that the research process can continue, to increase research integrity, to be in compliance with professional codes of conduct, and to respond to new ethical research situations (such as online and digital participants). For example, within communication contexts, the emergence of online media and social media sites such as Twitter and Facebook is challenging the definition of "public spaces" and "research participants," further complicating how Communication scholars approach research in ethically responsive ways in a dynamic, mediated, socio-political environment.

Ethical misconduct can jeopardize the professional reputation of scholars and can result in withdrawal of funding, restriction of access to grants, and withdrawal of support for specific individuals or institutions. Although discourses about research ethics in quantitative methods revolve around issues of **misconduct**, **falsification**, **deliberate fraud**, **accidental or**

Figure 2.2 Ethics, accountability, principles, integrity, and values are closely related

intentional oversight, and **fabrication of data**, these topics are not the only areas of emphasis of this chapter. As social justice scholars, we need to push past the assumption that scholars can consider themselves ethical merely for not doing anything morally outrageous that could be considered academic misconduct or malpractice. While these violations of ethical principles are important, it is crucial to focus our discussions on the more complex and less straightforward issues where the answers are not clear cut or obvious.

In this chapter, we raise important ethical questions for quantitative social justice researchers in Communication in designing, implementing, and disseminating one's work. Some questions we will discuss are: What ethical considerations arise in conducting quantitative Communication research? What particular ethical considerations stem from quantitative social justice research within Communication research? How can researchers navigate these ethical questions and challenges? In this chapter, we apply ethical considerations and provide practical resources to help facilitate your development as ethical, quantitative, and social justice researchers.

History of Ethical Violations in Scientific Research

Unfortunately, some forms of quantitative research have a history regarding social justice that is spotty at best and sordid at worst. In 1946, the infamous Nuremberg trials (Figure 2.3) brought to light the horrific medical experiments conducted by Nazi scientists. This history of research abuses especially during World War II led to the development of the **Nuremberg Code** in 1949, emphasizing the need for **voluntary participation** of research participants. Beyond war times, unethical research violations continued.

One of the most egregious examples of research using quantitative methods that severely set back rather than advanced social justice is the **Tuskegee Syphilis Study**. Over the course of a 40-year period that began in 1932 (well after the health dangers were known and well after treatment options were available), the United States Public Health Service studied the effects of untreated syphilis among African American men (Figure 2.4). Participants were offered only very modest incentives for participating, and the researchers did not ensure that they knew what to expect, especially regarding the fact that they would be studied but not treated in the research (Jones, 1981). A rhetorical analysis of the medical reports generated from the research came to the conclusion that the principles of objectivity and detachment between the researcher and those researched within the scientific method facilitated the racism and dehumanization of suffering that allowed for that study to continue for so many years (Solomon, 1985). Observing the deterioration of the health of research participants without helping and extracting data about suffering without the participants' full knowledge and/or consent in the name of science is an unambiguously harmful use of quantitative methods.

Other examples are the infamous Milgram experiments and the Stanford prison experiments. The Milgram experiments were conducted in the 1960s by Stanley Milgram at Yale University. In the studies, electrical shock was used to test how far participants would go in terms of obeying orders to harm others. These experiments caused concerns because they caused severe psychological distress to participants. They also used deception and did not allow participants the option of withdrawing from the study. In the 1970s, the Stanford prison experiments conducted by Zimbargo and colleagues simulated a mock prison in the basement of the psychology department by assigning participants to being either guards or prisoners. The participants assigned the role of prisoners were mistreated for a two-week period and experienced severe stress, depression, and anxiety.

An example of the use of quantitative logic and data to arrive at conclusions that are antithetical to social justice that is more guileful can be found in the book, *The Bell Curve:*

Figure 2.3 Proceedings at the infamous Nuremberg Trials in Nazi Germany

Source: United States Army, https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:US_Army_51610_The_Case_Against_the_Defendents.jpg

Intelligence and Class Structure in American Life by Richard J. Herrnstein and Charles Murray (1994). Herrnstein and Murray used quantitative analyses to make claims about the role of intelligence in explaining social circumstances and economic struggle. They concluded that many experiences of inequality are explained by differential IQs which are, in turn, largely inherited, based in part on race, and therefore mainly unchangeable.

Belmont Report and Institutional Review Boards

The ethical violations and atrocities such as the first few examples just described led to the establishment of the National Commission for the Protection of Human Subjects and the **Belmont Report** (National Commission for the Protection of Human Subjects of Biomedical and Behavioral Research, 1979) to prioritize the rights of human participants. The central principle is that research participants be viewed as people first and then as research participants.

Based on the Belmont Report, **Institutional Review Boards (IRBs)** were set up across the United States, including at colleges and universities given that they typically employ researchers. IRBs review protocols and plans for research to ensure those protocols and plans

Figure 2.4 Tuskegee syphilis experiment

Source: National Archives Atlanta, GA (U.S. government) https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Tuskegee-syphilis-study_doctor-injecting-subject.jpg

meet ethical requirements, and they do so before that research is allowed to be conducted. They continue to be an important part of social science research ethics. They typically include a minimum of five members including at least one scientist and another non-scientist to ensure that ethical standards are being applied. Prior to conducting a study or contacting research participants, researchers need to apply for IRB review. As the first step, all researchers need to complete ethics training every few years in order to be certified to conduct research with human participants. Such training is often available online at several institutions of higher education.

The institutional ethics review boards and related ethics training focus on three main principles: respect, justice, and beneficence, which were established as part of the Belmont Report. **Respect** is about treating research participants as autonomous agents and taking steps to protect the rights of those with diminished autonomy. **Justice** focuses on making sure that the risks and benefits of research are distributed fairly to all participants. **Beneficence** emphasizes the ethical principle of ensuring that harm is minimized and benefits are maximized in the research process. These principles are enacted into practice through review of IRB application forms that typically include the researcher reporting information about the research purpose, the process used to inform participants about what the research will entail and to obtain their consent to participate, a description of recruitment processes, provisions for confidentiality,

analysis of possible risks versus benefits of the study, consideration of participants' rights, and compensation to participants (if any).

In line with the Belmont Report, participation in research studies should be **voluntary** and not involve any **coercion**. Participants should have the right to withdraw from the study for any reason during the course of the research project without fear of repercussions or rebuke. Let's say that you are conducting a study on the prevention of cyberbullying with middle school children, using the school as the setting, and participation in the study leads to extra credit for the students. You should clearly assure the children that participating in the study is optional and that there will be no negative consequences such as losing grade points or disappointing their teachers for those who choose not to participate. It is important to also let the kids know that even if they have already started participating in the study, they can stop at any time without penalty. An alternative activity such as writing an essay on cyberbullying prevention should be made available to non-participants so that they can still earn the extra credit even if they decide not to participate. In taking these steps, the researcher is making sure not to be coercive, even if the coercion is unintentional.

Obtaining **informed consent** from participants is important from a participant perspective as well as for researchers. Informed consent is the idea that potential participants should be made aware of what they will be asked to do if they choose to participate in the research and can then make up their own minds about participation. Informed consent can be communicated and obtained through face-to-face meetings, email, video chats, social media, phone, websites, blogs, and other mediated technologies that are relevant and culturally appropriate for the population that is being studied. Some groups such as minors below the age of 18 years are considered to be unable to give informed consent (such as the school children in the cyberbullying study example we mentioned). In these cases, a parent or legal guardian must give consent for the young people to participate in the study, and the young people themselves should agree to participate, as well, giving what is called their **assent**.

Even if participants have provided initial written consent to participation, researchers should pay attention to **process consent.** At every stage of the research process, researchers should check in with participants to review consent issues to ensure that the participants understand that their participation is voluntary, that they have the right to withdraw from the study, and to ensure that they are not experiencing any harm or stress from the research process. Process consent is especially important to consider in studies that are longitudinal in nature—meaning that they take place over time—and involve multiple steps to complete. For instance, if we are interested in studying how victim-blaming on college campuses might affect the health and academic success of sexual violence survivors throughout their college education, such potentially sensitive topics will likely involve collecting data over multiple years. At every step of the research study, it would be wise for the researcher to check in with the participants to ensure that they continue to be okay with participating in the research.

If the topic is particularly sensitive, then it is possible that even obtaining the signature of participants might put them in some danger. Under such cases, researchers can request a **waiver of informed consent** as an exception to the usual need to get a signed indication of consent. For instance, let us say that you want to conduct a survey on how college student organizations devoted to LGBTQ+ rights on campuses use communication strategies to spread awareness about their causes. However, it is possible that some LGBTQ+ students might not want to be identified even through signatures on the written consent form. Under these circumstances, researchers can request other forms of consent such as verbal consent rather than written consent.

In the following text we provide you with a sample informed consent form. This is a fairly standard template likely to reflect some of the common components of a consent form. Some sections may not be applicable for all types of research. This form can and should be modified for your specific research project. Note that the informed consent form should be written in simple language that is readable and easily understood by someone with an 8th-grade reading level. When working with participants in multilingual contexts, it is also important to make the informed consent form available in multiple languages.

You will notice, as well, that the standard form has a place for the research participant to sign, indicating their voluntary decision to take part in the study. As we just mentioned, under some circumstances, however, you may not need to have research participants sign their names, since doing so involves giving up their anonymity. In some cases, then, pending IRB approval, you may be able to replace the signature part of the consent form with a statement such as "By continuing on to complete this survey, you are indicating your voluntary consent to participate."

Research in Action

Sample Informed Consent Form

Title of Research Study:

Name of Investigators:

Why are you being invited to take part in a research study?

[Examples: You are invited because you are attending the online dialogue event. You are invited because you are enrolled in COMM 101: Introduction to Communication. You are invited because you are a member of the Black Students' Council.]

What should you know about a research study?

- Someone will explain this research study to you.
- Whether or not you take part is up to you.
- You can choose not to take part.
- You can agree to take part and later change your mind.
- Your decision will not be held against you.
- You can ask all the questions you want before you decide.

Why is this research being done?

[Insert the purpose here. Here is an example: The purpose of this project is to examine experiences pertaining to media use as it relates to various identities. We seek to gain an understanding of perceptions regarding the modern media environment via survey questions regarding media use and views regarding social identity.]

How long will the research last?

You will be in this research study for about [insert duration of study].

How many people will be studied?

We expect to enroll about [insert sample size] people in this research study.

What happens if I say, "Yes, I want to be in this research"?

With agreeing to this consent form, you agree to participate in a [insert duration]-long study [insert location: such as via phone, video chat, online survey, etc.]. [Share details about the procedure. For example, "You will complete an anonymous feedback form," "You will participate in a focus group discussion," or "You are agreeing that the session will be audio-recorded."]

What happens if I do not want to be in this research?

[Give details of alternatives: For example: You can leave the research at any time without penalties. You can complete an alternative writing assignment instead of participating in the study.]

What happens if I say "Yes," but I change my mind later?

You can leave the research at any time and it will not be held against you. If you decide to withdraw from the study, please contact the investigator to grant permission regarding the use of data collected to the point of withdrawal.

Will I be paid to be in this study?

[Insert information: "No, you will not be paid to be in this study," "If you participate in the online survey, you have the option of entering a raffle for a gift card worth $25. Two such cards are available in the raffle," "During the focus group discussion, you will be provided with a pizza meal and soft drinks," or "You will not be paid to be in this study but can earn extra credit points of 1% of our course in COMM 101 if you participate in this study.]

Are there any potential risks to me in participating in this study?

[Explain potential risks. For example: "There are no potential risks associated with your participation in this study. If at any point you do not feel comfortable continuing, you may refuse or discontinue the survey at any time," "The things that you will be doing have no more risk than you would come across in everyday life," or "Although the researchers have tried to avoid risks, you may feel that some questions/procedures that are asked of you will be stressful or upsetting. You do not have to answer anything you do not want to."]

Will being in this study help me in any way?

[Insert details about any benefits. For example: "We cannot promise any benefits to you or others from your taking part in this research," "Your participation in this study may help to inform you on how to use online technologies for facilitated conversations, and you will learn about some resources related to COVID-19," or "You will have the opportunity to learn more about critical perspectives on media studies."]

Will information from this study be kept private?

[Insert information: For example: "Study information will be kept confidential. We will delete all identifying information. We will protect all participants' identities by using pseudonyms."]

Will audio or video recordings of me be made during this study?

[Explain your answer. For example: "The researchers will make an audio recording during the study so that the conversation can be transcribed for analysis. If you do not give permission for the audio recording to be obtained, you cannot participate in this study."]

_____ I give my permission for audio recordings to be made of me during my participation in this research study.

_____ I do not give my permission for audio recordings to be made of me during my participation in this research study.

Whom can I talk to in case of questions?

If you have questions, concerns, or complaints, or think the research has hurt you, please contact [name of researcher] by email at [insert email address]. This research has been reviewed and approved by the Institutional Review Board (IRB). You may talk to them at [insert phone number] or by email at [insert email], if:

- You cannot reach the research team.
- The research team does not answer your questions, concerns, or complaints.
- You want to talk to someone besides the research team.
- You have questions about your rights as a research participant.
- You want to get information or provide input about this research.

Statement of Consent

I agree to be in this study and know that I am not giving up any legal rights by signing this form. The procedures, risks, and benefits have been explained to me, and my questions have been answered. I know that new information about this research study will be provided to me as it becomes available and that the researcher will tell me if I must

be removed from the study. I can ask more questions if I want. A copy of this entire, signed consent form will be given to me.

_____ _____

Participant's Signature Date

_____ _____

Printed NameDate

Investigator's Affidavit

Either I have or my agent has carefully explained to the participant the nature of the above project. I hereby certify that to the best of my knowledge the person who signed this consent form was informed of the nature, demands, benefits, and risks involved in his/her participation.

_____ _____

Signature of Investigator Date

_____ _____

Printed NameDate

Types of Ethical Research Guidelines

Ethical principles within Communication are guided by legal regulations, professional codes, and researchers' personal values. **Procedural ethics** are legal regulations and policies that govern the ethics of research within a particular institution, state, or nation. For example, in some countries, it could be legally required for researchers to disclose any sexual violence or harassment information that is revealed to them. **Professional ethics** are ethical guidelines and principles set within professional organizations, which for Communication scholars could include organizations such as the International Communication Association or the National Communication Association. **Personal ethics** are the researcher's own set of moral values and an ethical compass that guide their research, such as an ethics of care or a commitment to fairness, that may or may not always overlap with laws, institutional ethical policies, and professional ethical guidelines. We will elaborate on each of these in the following text.

Procedural Ethics

Legal regulations include any institutional, state, national, or international laws and policies that govern research ethics. For instance, Glass and colleagues (2018) point to how research ethics review boards can sometimes take a very narrow view on what ethics means. In this minimalistic view of research ethics, the focus is simply on "avoiding harm" to participants. Guillemin and Gilliam (2004) call this **procedural ethics**, where research ethics is viewed mainly as bureaucratic paperwork to be completed by researchers. Such forms of procedural ethics tend to be legalistic and documentation-orientated. It is important for social justice scholars to pay greater attention to ethics and integrity beyond compliance with institutional review boards (IRBs). Taking the IRB process as a vitally important opportunity—or even

obligation—to think carefully about the possible experiences of research participants, the potential intrusiveness of the research process, and the various ways that the new knowledge gained in the research can be used for good or for ill is a necessary starting place for any researcher, and it is especially critical when the research is specifically rooted in social justice.

Professional Ethics

Many social science disciplines have their own **professional code of ethics**. Within Communication, there are numerous professional organizations such as the International Communication Association (ICA), Association for Education in Journalism and Mass Communication (AEJMC), National Communication Association (NCA), Rhetoric Society of America (RSA), the International Association for Media and Communication Research (IAMCR), and the Association of Internet Researchers (AoIR). Not all of them have a professional code of ethics explicitly stated. Those that do have ethical codes vary greatly in the depth and breadth of issues covered.

Generally, professional codes of ethics within Communication research discuss issues such as plagiarism, protection of research participants from harm, integrity in data collection and analysis, accurate and objective reporting of research, fair authorship and mentoring practices, conflict of interest, and confidentiality and fairness in reviewing research manuscripts for publication in academic journals. Some associations also discuss professional codes of conduct for interpersonal communication, especially at conferences, such as being respectful, considerate, inclusive, and courteous. Organizations such as RSA not only go into detail about various offensive, harassing, disruptive, and inappropriate behaviors that will not be tolerated at their conferences but also discuss how such behaviors should be reported and what the consequences are for unacceptable behavior, which include banishment from future conferences.

As the profession develops, new situations and research challenges arise which need to be addressed. For example, NCA's code of ethics was adopted in 1963 (when it was still called the Speech Association of America) and reaffirmed in 2011 and edited again in 2017. Their current "Credo for Free and Responsible Communication in a Democratic Society" endorses freedom of speech, harm reduction, maximization of good, respect for precision and accuracy, and evidence-based reasoning (National Communication Association, 2017). ICA's updated ethical code includes ethical considerations for social media use. It aims to create more awareness about the citation of unfinished works-in-progress, privacy breaches, and politically motivated personal attacks on researchers via social media. It suggests that audio and visual recordings of conference proceedings not be made without the explicit consent of all panelists and seminar speakers, that live-tweeting and use of the ICA hashtag does not include unprofessional language, and other specific guidelines for fair quotation of research through social media.

Personal Ethics

Research ethics is also influenced by intrinsic values and the researcher's moral compass. Researchers who have centered social justice within their scholarship have developed more personalized and aspirational codes of ethics that go beyond satisfying IRB requirements. A commitment to a more just university and society at large, then, translates into examining the core principles of how research ethics itself is institutionalized within structures in research organizations.

For instance, Maria K.E. Lahman (2018) calls for researchers to go from procedural ethics that focus on minimalistic codes of ethics to aspirational ethics that stem from the researcher's

personal aspirational ethics standards, over and above those of the required procedures. Aspirational ethics emphasizes the highest ethical standards that the researcher tries to achieve rather than fulfilling the minimal ethical requirements. While regulatory or compliance-oriented ethics are governed by questions of legality, it is important to remember that legality is usually determined by power and authority rather than integrity and social justice. In fact, slavery was legal at some point in time, just as apartheid and the Holocaust were all lawful acts within the contexts of the nations where they were practiced. Therefore, researchers should be guided, as well, by their own inner moral compass even if not required by their legal regulatory boards or professional organizations.

Ethics and Social Justice Research

Ethical dilemmas in social justice activist scholarship are often difficult to anticipate, complex, and culturally rooted. As individuals who are committed to dismantling oppression and making the world more peaceful, just, and sustainable, it is important for researchers to act with sensitivity, respect, and honesty in making our contributions to scholarship. This means working with integrity by being careful, responsible, and transparent about every step in the research process: from setting the research agenda to designing the research, collecting data, analyzing data, and disseminating findings.

WE MARCH FOR JOBS FOR ALL NOW!
WE DEMAND VOTING RIGHTS NOW!
WE DEMAND
UAW SAYS:
END SEGREGATED RULES IN PUBLIC SCHOOLS
WE MARCH FOR JOBS FOR ALL A DECENT PAY NOW!
WE DEMAND EQUAL RIGHTS NOW!

Figure 2.5 Social justice movements have deeply influenced research ethics

Source: U.S. Information Agency, Press and Publications Service (ca. 1953–ca. 1978) https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:March_on_washington_Aug_28_1963.jpg

The social justice movements of the 1960s and 1970s (such as the civil rights movement, feminist movement, and LGBTQ+ rights movement; Figure 2.6) played a crucial role in shaping values and bringing about significant changes in scholarship and research. Critical communication scholars started not only paying increasing attention to inequalities in private and public spheres, in mediated and non-mediated spaces, and in local and global contexts, but they also started examining the ways in which such historical inequalities manifest within academia as well. This self-reflexive examination of power within the discipline and social sciences as a whole meant greater awareness about the ways in which researchers collude with and reproduce social hierarchies of oppression such as racism, sexism, homophobia, xenophobia, and ableism. These considerations vastly shaped research priorities and agendas within the field, which were further facilitated and solidified in the last decade or so within Communication.

There was a reexamination of topics such as the role of power, agency, structure, and ideology, leading to the rise of critical studies in various disciplines, including Communication. Feminist scholars such as Carol Gilligan and Annette Baier distinguished normative ethics from what they framed as the **ethics of care**. Normative ethics emphasizes more abstract reasoning such as individual rights, universal values, and utilitarian approaches. In contrast, the ethics of care focus on maintaining nurturing relationships, emotional responses, and the importance of context. Incorporating an ethics of care means acknowledging that situational ethics often depend on affective "gut" reactions such as compassion and sympathy rather than calculated, rational, moral decision making. For instance, perhaps a Communication scholar who is studying the #metoo movement on Twitter notices that those who are sharing stories of sexual harassment are being constantly trolled, attacked, and even blamed for the violence they have experienced. Although it is not part of the research study, they might file a complaint or report hateful messages to authorities.

Self-Reflexivity and Cultural Responsiveness in Social Justice Research

Quantitative ethical frameworks largely stem from biomedical and physical scientific approaches, which assume relatively objective and "neutral" stances of the researcher and prioritize objectivity, rationality, truth, and neutrality. The relationship between quantitative researchers and their participants typically characterizes the researcher as a neutral observer who maintains a distance from the participants in order to protect the integrity of the data. Such values might seem to be at odds with social justice scholarship that is explicitly political and therefore not value-neutral.

As we have seen in Chapter 1, for quantitative criticalists (Stage & Wells, 2014), social justice research is neither neutral nor apolitical since it explicitly aims to break down oppressive structures of inequalities in society. Rather, quantitative criticalists are committed to and invested in using the power of numbers to bring light to important social issues. It is vital that in doing so, researchers see themselves not as experts with superior knowledge to impart to others but as partners with participants and other stakeholders committed to using research to minimize social inequalities and maximize the benefits to marginalized groups in society. Researchers should avoid "othering" of marginalized groups, disregard for alternative perspectives, and a lack of cultural competency in designing and implementing quantitative research studies. They need to start by acknowledging that knowledge, interventions, and methods are not value-neutral and rather that they reflect power structures and interests within society.

Lahman (2018) advocates for a culturally responsive approach to research ethics that incorporates cultural responsiveness, relational ethics, and self-reflexivity. **Cultural responsiveness** means that researchers understand the dynamic nature of the shared meanings, values, and beliefs of the groups and topics they study within their specific historical, political, social, and economic contexts. They value, validate, affirm, and sensitively accommodate the worldviews of their research participants. They constantly examine their cultural assumptions in the research process. **Relational ethics**, which draws from feminist ethical approaches, fosters mutual respect and dignity between researchers and participants. **Reflexivity** is a critical self-awareness about how the researcher's cultural values, socio-economic background, political orientation, assumptions, and worldviews might impact the research process. A researcher who is reflexive pays careful thought and attention to how their own roles and actions in the research process might enhance or inhibit ethical knowledge creation.

When conducting research with under-resourced and underrepresented groups, researchers should approach them with **cultural humility** rather than a sense of arrogance or cultural superiority, especially if they come from privileged backgrounds. It is important to remember that Communication researchers are a diverse group, as are the research participants they study. Social justice researchers are often a part of the marginalized communities they study. Not all research projects on social justice focus on under-resourced groups, either. They can also study those in powerful positions of authority that lead to social inequalities and injustices.

Figure 2.6 Communication as listening

Source: Photo by Cliff Booth from Pexels

Figure 2.7 Scholar Spotlight: Dr. Mohan Dutta

Scholar Spotlight: Dr. Mohan Dutta

Dr. Mohan J. Dutta is Dean's Chair Professor of Communication, and Director, Center for Culture-Centered Approach to Research and Evaluation (CARE) at Massey University. He served as the Head of Department of Communications and New Media at the National University of Singapore, where he led curriculum revision, industry engagement, and a strategic footprint for communication studies in Asia, and Courtesy Professor of Communication at Purdue University. At National University of Singapore (NUS), he was the Founding Director of the Center for Culture-Centered Approach to Research and Evaluation (CARE), directing research on culturally centered, community-based projects of social change. The following section is re-posted with permission from Dr. Dutta's (2017) blogpost on "Teaching our students the ethics of the heart" accessible at https://culture-centered.blogspot.com.

The pedagogy of communication in the backdrop of the dramatic inequalities we witness across the globe has to be grounded in an **ethic of the heart**. How to build communicative practices that embody this ethic of the heart is the key question for culture-centered scholars working on social justice projects from/with the margins.

The journey of culture-centered pedagogy begins with this realization: to address the global challenges we are in the midst of, communication has to be placed at the center—not the forms of communication that simply serve as the loudspeakers for the 1%, but communication that is fundamentally transformative. Such transformative practices of communication begin by turning toward communities at the margins

as entry points to discursive sites, discursive processes, and discursive articulations—communication that begins not from the predetermined agendas of those in power, but instead from the very margins that are reproduced by the consolidation of power in the hands of the global elite.

The basis of this renewed emphasis on communication is grounded in a commitment to developing practices and processes that seek to build infrastructures for communication where the poor participate, enact their agency in deliberating over decisions and reasons that are meaningful to them, and find avenues for these decisions to be enacted. The pedagogy of the culture-centered approach grapples with this challenge of how best to build infrastructures of communication that open up discursive sites to the agentic possibilities from the margins.

An ethic of the heart works through the concepts of friendship and listening as anchors to learning to do relationships, dialogues, and participatory practices, attentive to the margins that are (re)produced by contemporary social systems and seeking to undo the social structures that reproduce marginalization.

To work from the concept of friendship is to first and foremost change the very basis of the relationship with the margins, from one of unequal power to one that seeks equality in the relationship, deeply aware of the inequalities that are fundamental to the nature of relationships between academic-activists and communities at the margins. An ethic of friendship seeks to understand through conversations with the margins the practices that produce the margins from the standpoint of those at the margins, reflect upon the productions of privilege through these conversations, and participate in communicative processes to change the inequalities that produce the margins in solidarity with communities at the margins. To be in solidarity is to lend one's body to the struggles of the margins, placing the body amid the risks and challenges that come with communication that seeks to transform structures.

The concept of communication as friendship with the margins works alongside the concept of **communication as listening**. The work of the academic-activist as a listener foregrounds the role of communication in building theories from the margins through collaborations at the margins. The struggles of the margins amid the global dissemination of the ideology of neoliberalism as the basis for global organization disrupts the pseudoscience of neoliberal claims-making. Listening thus becomes the basis for challenging and transforming the theories disseminated in global structures of neoliberal governance. The unfounded bases of the claims that form the foundations of the free market ideology are disrupted through stories from the margins, building evidence that "makes impure" the dominant knowledge structures.

For more information visit the CARE website: www.massey.ac.nz/~wwcare/

Avoiding Exclusion, Tokenism, and Deficit-Based Thinking

As we will discuss further in Chapter 4, **inclusive research samples** are one way in which voices of underrepresented groups are prioritized within the research process. Here, researchers seek out samples beyond majority group populations who are easy to access for research studies. For instance, while conducting an experiment on how to design a message for a health campaign on heart disease prevention within Singapore, this could mean making sure that input and feedback are received from a wide range of potential audiences. Instead of

simply focusing on educated middle-class heterosexual working families, these groups could include ethnic Tamils and Malays, immigrant laborers, domestic workers, the elderly, and those from LGBTQ+ groups, all of whom might typically not be included in such a study.

Within Communication, groups such as those from economically exploited social classes, people with disabilities, transgender individuals, religious minorities, indigenous communities, and those from the Global South continue to be underrepresented within research projects. Therefore, researchers should consider identifying and including voices such as these that are not typically centered within traditional research. By being more mindful of which populations are being included in the research process, theoretical perspectives are broadened by asking completely new research questions that would have otherwise not been considered. However, it is also important to avoid tokenism. Tokens are a small number of minoritized group members who are employed in positions traditionally occupied by dominant group members (Jackson, Thoits, & Taylor, 1995; Kanter, 1977). They are treated as representatives of the group that they belong to rather than as individuals in their own right. **Tokenism** involves small symbolic acts to appear to be inclusive without a serious commitment to it. Adding a female presenter to an all-male opening plenary session conference at the last minute is an example of tokenism.

The dominant modes of theorizing and conducting research within Communication are themselves shaped by dominant Euro-centric Anglo-centric male perspectives. These cultural perspectives shape the research paradigms, structures, and interpretations from research questions, theories, methods, and dissemination of research. Researchers should move from **deficit thinking** to **asset-based thinking** when it comes to working with research participants, especially when those from privileged backgrounds are conducting research within underserved communities (Alper, Katz, & Clark, 2016). Deficit-based thinking frames minoritized groups as lacking and inferior compared to dominant cultural groups. Communication research and theories might be biased in how they frame and represent these groups as they are often developed within Western Eurocentric patriarchal contexts. Within deficit ways of thinking, inequalities are often implicitly blamed on the marginalized groups due to perceived personal individual deficits rather than structural social factors.

While working with marginalized groups, it is important to acknowledge and incorporate their cultural beliefs, perspectives, and experiences into the research process. One common way in which deficit thinking works is to blame the victims for their abuse or to frame poverty and homelessness as caused by laziness. For example, seeing communities of color as "difficult," "challenging," or "risky" populations to study reflects deficit thinking among researchers. For example, health communication scholars interested in obesity research among urban high school students might reinforce the individual deficit model by anchoring their research on low self-esteem, educational deficits, and poverty without taking into consideration factors such as cultural identity, structural issues, and socialization. Or those studying mental health issues might emphasize medical treatment without examining how illnesses, healing, and treatment themselves might not be problematized the same ways in all communities, nor is access to health care a given for all. Often researchers interpret their results in ways that pathologize underserved communities and confirm existing stereotypes of the groups rather than challenging or confronting them.

Since language is central to Communication scholarship, it is especially important to use **culturally inclusive language** in designing research materials. The language that is used in creating written and verbal communication such as questionnaires, materials to be used in an experiment, and consent forms should be sensitive to socio-political and cultural contexts. It is important to consider how research participants are characterized by research documents. For example, simple linguistic techniques, such as use of culturally appropriate pronouns (For

instance, members of the LGBTQ+ community instead of *gay populations*, depending on the context in which the research is being conducted), could make a huge difference in making research participants feel welcomed and included in the research process.

While it is crucial to avoid potentially offensive expressions, it is equally important to ensure that the language used in research is mutually understandable. For instance, including a bilingual/multilingual survey option for populations where there is more than one language spoken is an important practice. Beyond the written documents, all interactions with research participants should be guided by principles of cultural responsiveness. When conducting research with groups that might differ from the researchers in terms of factors such as social class, race, ethnicity, religion, nationality, and education, it is vital to employ cultural sensitivity and inclusive communication strategies. For example, while scheduling lab-based experiments in the evenings, it would be best to make sure that participants who need childcare have access to it or that the dates of the experiment do not coincide with popular religious holidays for minority groups.

We can even see the role of quantitative research in Communication showing the ways in which researchers of color have an unequal opportunity to become published authors and be referenced by other authors in the Communication field. In a study cleverly titled "#CommunicationSoWhite," Paula Chakravarrty, Rachel Guo, Victoria Grubbs, and Charlton McIlwain (2018) use quantitative methods to determine that a disproportionate number of White authors have their studies published in Communication journals and have their studies referenced by other authors, as well. Specifically, the authors found: "In general, non-White scholars are underrepresented among the published first authors in communication journals, authoring only 746 of 5,262 (14%) documents published from 1990 to 2016" (p. 259) and that "articles authored by non-White scholars are cited significantly fewer times, on average, than White authors (1.7 to 2.5, respectively)" (p. 259). Not only do these data lay bare the importance of inclusion in academic writing and publishing, they also demonstrate, once again, the power of numbers. Without the ability to identify these patterns across a wide swath of published studies—in the 5,262 articles from 12 major academic journals over a period of 26 years that were examined in the study—possible only with quantitative research methods, the claims of bias and unequal access made by Chakravartty and colleagues would likely have been much less persuasive.

Ethical Considerations Specific to Quantitative Communication Research

Quantitative Communication research is empirical and data-driven by nature. Because quantitative research typically involves collecting and storing large amounts of data, like hundreds of completed surveys, for instance, questions about where that data is housed, who has access to it, and what types of security measures are in place to assure confidentiality for those who provided the data are important considerations. Communication researchers, just like researchers in other fields, might have to report to IRBs that they will store data on a password-protected computer in a locked office that only they can access, for instance. When possible, researchers might also plan to remove any identifying information (names, places of residence, or any other details that might potentially reveal participants' identities) from computer files containing the data.

Increasingly, however, this issue is made more complicated in Communication and other fields that deal with "big data"—including massive amounts of data often so large that traditional computer processing is not sufficient to process that data. As Dove and colleagues (2016) point out, there is little guidance currently on data-intensive projects that are located in

multiple sites, especially across various nations. It becomes challenging when big data analyses involve international collaborative data-sharing where data are collected in one location but stored, linked, and accessed from other sites over long periods of time. It is crucial to have prior, ongoing, and sustained discussions with research institutions, ethics regulatory boards, and government bodies to create clear and transparent agreements of understanding. These discussions should include topics such as personal data breaches, monitoring and reporting of **data use and storage**, and procedural alignment across various governing and regulatory bodies.

Increasingly, quantitative research is moving toward multi-site, multi-nation, multi-method approaches that involve collecting large-scale data, often including biometric and material data.

Bioethics is an especially important consideration in quantitative Communication research, given the direction which several subfields have taken toward mobile health and online health initiatives, the collection of biophysiological data such as fMRI, skin conductance, heart rate, and even DNA and telemedicine. Some health communication scholars, for instance, are using DNA screening as data to interpret and track health conditions. The emergence of "empathetical technologies" means that mobile devices can sense and track media users' moods and emotions just by the ways in which they physically and physiologically interact with technologies. While the power of mobile, sensory, and digital technologies has enabled better diagnosis, healing, and treatment, there is also potential for unintended harm to participants through violation of **privacy** and confidentiality, which needs to be taken seriously. Recently, revelations that law enforcement officials have used DNA databases intended for tracing genealogy for criminal investigation purposes raises important ethical questions for issues of privacy and confidentiality.

Another emerging trend within quantitative Communication scholarship is the **computational analytics** that include internet-based studies and the study of social media platforms for analyzing large-scale data. Currently, most Communication scholars using Twitter data are presenting conference papers and journal articles by assuming that such data are "**public data**." However, it is questionable whether such data can be seen as anonymous and can be used for research without informed consent. An example of a study with an ethically murky design can be found in the case of Cornell University researchers working with Facebook to manipulate the news feed posts of over 600,000 people in 2012 to expose them to positive or negative messages in order to study emotional contagion without their explicit consent.

A large percentage of tweets include personal information such as location, health information, etc. All research participants have the right to determine what information about themselves can be considered private and proprietary. Participants have the right to not share information, to withhold personal information, and to maintain secrets. In other words, researchers should respect the autonomy of participants and honor their preferences.

Research in Action

Applied ethics or situational ethics goes a step further to resolve specific moral issues using case studies, examples, and particular settings (Ellis, 2007). Here we share some case studies from Communication research for social justice. They are not only cases about protecting research participants, but they also consider ethics more broadly in terms of broader research practices within social sciences. These case studies have been

adapted from real-life experiences by the second author of the book (identities and locations have been changed). Case studies, like real life, might be ambiguous and not include all the information that you might want about the full scenario before you make a decision on how to proceed. As you analyze these case studies, feel free to make your own assumptions as you identify the key ethical issues to be resolved. To be clear, there are no right or wrong answers for these case studies. Use the ethical principles discussed in this chapter to analyze these cases. Some principles that could be helpful are non-violence, truth, justice, beneficence, respect, confidentiality, voluntary participation, informed consent, asset-based thinking, inclusion, ethics of care, the ethic of the heart, cultural responsiveness, relational ethics, bioethics, reflexivity, and privacy.

Case 1: "You can either be a real scholar or a real activist, but not both."

You are an undergraduate health communication researcher in South Korea. You are presenting your research poster at a major conference. It is an analysis of sexual health conversations among LGBTQ+ teens of color. Another conference participant who stops by your poster says that you should reconsider your research area. He says that social science methods are diametrically opposite to critical social justice issues: "You can either be a real scholar or a real activist, but not both," he says. He worries that every text you analyze is seen as sexist, racist, colonial, or classist and you are not defending your work with real data or logic. What are the ethical issues in this case study? How would you respond?

Case 2: "Going virtual": Conducting lab-based experiments in a crisis

You are a Latina B.A. Communication student who is conducting research on gaming for your honors thesis at a Texas university. Your participants come to your lab to measure skin conductance and heart rate as they play various types of games. In the middle of data collection, COVID-19 pandemic greatly affects Texas, including in the location of your research. What ethical issues do you have to consider as you decide whether or not to continue with the study? What is the role of legal, professional, and personal codes of ethics in making these decisions? Are there any conflicting values and principles? Who are the stakeholders to consult as you move forward in resolving the situation?

Case 3: "Conducting race research is painful, tricky, and challenging.": A primer by an all-White research team

A White male researcher from a European country writes to you, an African American researcher in the United States, about a primer on race research that he is writing up. He says, "We are a team of eight White scholars who are writing about how to conduct race research. We were wondering if you might be interested in reviewing this article and giving your feedback since you are an expert on race. If you are interested, we can also add you as a co-author. We are happy to share that the editor of a peer-reviewed International Communication Association journal has told us informally that they will be happy to publish this article. Their editorial term is ending in a couple of months.

So we are trying to get this piece to the journal as soon as we can before their tenure is over." When you open the research paper, the abstract says that "Conducting race research is painful, tricky, and challenging. We were never taught how to approach this topic while in graduate school. Therefore, we are writing this piece to help other scholars like us." What are the ethical issues in this case study? How should you respond? What could the European researcher have done differently?

Case 4: "Can I just sit in your group meeting?"

You are an undergraduate Arab Muslim researcher in New Zealand. You conduct an online focus group discussion via Zoom about discrimination against Arabs and Muslims. At the beginning of the dialogue session, you announce: "This session is meant to be a safe space for Arab Muslim students to discuss Islamophobia. If you don't self-identify this way, this might be a good time to leave this group." Later on, in the small-group discussion, one of the participants says, "Actually I don't identify as Muslim or Arab, but I just wanted to sit in your session. I am a White Christian digital religion scholar. I am writing a book on these topics." What are the ethical issues in this case study? How would you respond if faced with this situation? What could you have done differently in designing this research study?

Case 5: "I cannot afford to publish here."

You are a researcher in India who specializes in media literacy among youth. You receive an email from a professor in the Netherlands asking you to consider submitting your conference paper, which won a top paper award, to a journal that they edit. Since you are studying the role of gender in various media platforms such as TikTok and Snapchat in India, your research paper would be an excellent fit. You wish to browse through the recent issue of the journal. However, it is behind a paywall and your library does not have access to it. You write to the professor in the Netherlands requesting that they send you a copy of the current issue of the journal, which they do. As you browse through these articles, you notice that other researchers have conducted their work in media labs using expensive equipment or using nationally representative samples whose costs you cannot afford. You also notice a small sentence at the end of the message that says, "Since this is an open-access journal, the authors will have to pay a publishing fee of $1,000 if their paper gets accepted for publication." What are the ethical issues in this case study? How would you respond if faced with this situation? What can be done to address such issues?

Summary

This chapter examines the core ethical principles that shape quantitative social justice research. The primary underlying ethical principle when working with research participants is to "do no harm." *What* knowledge is created through research is just as important as *how* such knowledge is created, especially for social justice researchers. Ethics are often discussed mainly in terms of data collection in working with human participants. However, intrinsic ethical values

govern all aspects of research topics, questions, methods, participants, instrumentation, data collection, analysis, and dissemination.

Egregious ethical violations such as those that happened during World War II, the Tuskegee Syphilis study, Milgram electric shock studies, and the Stanford prison experiments illustrate the history of such misconduct within social sciences. Ethical misconduct such as data falsification, fraud, oversight, and mistreatment of research participants can have severe consequences for both individual researchers as well as for the institutions of which they are a part. Institutional Review Boards (IRBs) were set up in response to the Belmont Report, which focuses on three main principles: respect, justice, and beneficence. Research participation should be voluntary and not coerced. Informed consent protects both researchers and participants. It includes information on what participants will be asked to do in a research study, the risks and benefits of participation, compensation, and procedures so that participants can make an informed decision about whether or not to consent to participating.

Research ethics are influenced by procedural ethics, professional codes, and personal values. Procedural ethics focus on regulations and policies that govern research in an organization, state, or nation. Professional ethics are about codes set by professional organizations and networks that a research belongs to. Personal ethics are about the individual researcher's aspirational and individual moral principles. Especially for quantitative criticalists, it is important to be self-reflexive about one's positionality and assumptions about power differences in conducting social justice research. Researchers should center ethics of care, be intentional about including underrepresented populations in research, and avoid tokenism and deficit thinking in research with minoritized groups.

Within Communication, there are several interdisciplinary and international ethical considerations in various communicative contexts including ethical considerations in conducting internet research, social media, public data, bioethics, and computational analytics. The chapter concludes with several applied case studies that focus on situational ethics not just in terms of protecting research participants but also pertaining to the process as a whole.

Discussion Questions

1. What ethical dilemmas do you anticipate within research projects that you are working on or would like to work on? How might you plan to resolve them?
2. How are procedural ethics different from personal (aspirational) ethics? What would your research project look like if you adhered to procedural versus personal (aspirational) ethics?
3. Are there codes of ethics for professional organizations that you are a part of? What are your thoughts and opinions about these ethics principles? How would you modify them, if need be, and ensure that they are being followed?
4. Reflecting on your own positionality as a researcher, what would it look like to be more culturally responsive, to be a humble listener, and to be more inclusive in your research approach?
5. How do evolving technologies and media shape ethical considerations in research?
6. What are some key ethical challenges to consider and overcome while conducting social justice research using new media technology and in online spaces?

References

Alper, M., Katz, V., & Clark, L. (2016). Researching children, intersectionality, and diversity in the digital age. *Journal of Children and Media*, *10*, 107–114. doi:10.1080/17482798.2015.1121886

Chakravartty, P., Kuo, R., Grubbs, V., & McIlwain, C. (2018). #CommunicationSoWhite. *Journal of Communication*, *68*(2), 254–266. doi:10.1093/joc/jqy003

Dove, E. S., Towsend, D., Meslim, E. M., Bobrow, M., Littler, K., Nicol, D., & Knoppers, B. M. (2016). Ethics review for international data-intensive research. *Science*, *351*(6280), 1399–1400.

Dutta, M. (2017, August 30). *Teaching our students the ethic of the heart*. Culture-Centered Approach Blog. Retrieved July 4, 2018, from http://culture-centered.blogspot.com/2017/08/teaching-our-students-ethic-of-heart.html

Ellis, C. (2007). Telling secrets, revealing lives. Relational ethics in research with intimate others. *Qualitative Inquiry*, *13*(1), 3–29.

Glass, R. D., Morton, J. M., King, J. E., Krueger-Henney, P., Moses, M. S., Sabati, S., & Richardson, T. (2018). The ethical stakes of collaborative community-based social science research. *Urban Education*, *53*(4), 503–531. doi:10.1177/0042085918762522

Guillemin, M., & Gilliam, L. (2004). Ethics, reflexivity, and "ethically important moments" in research. *Qualitative Inquiry*, *10*, 261–280.

Herrnstein, R. J., & Murray, C. (1994). *The bell curve*. New York: The Free Press.

Israel, M. (2015). *Research ethics and integrity for social scientists: Beyond regulatory compliance* (2nd ed.). London: Sage Publications.

Jackson, P. M., Thoits, P. A., & Taylor, H. F. (1995). Composition of the workplace and psychological well-being: The effects of tokenism on America's Black elite. *Social Forces*, *74*(2), 543–557. doi:10.1093/sf/74.2.543

Jones, J. H. (1981). *Bad blood: The Tuskegee syphilis experiment*. New York: The Free Press.

Kanter, R. M. (1977). Some effects of proportions on group life: Skewed sex ratios and responses to token women. *American Journal of Sociology*, *82*(5), 965–990.

Lahman, M. K. E. (2018). *Ethics in social science research: Becoming culturally responsive*. Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage and University of Northern Colorado.

National Communication Association. (2017). *Credo for free and responsible communication in a democratic society*. Retrieved from www.natcom.org/sites/default/files/pages/2017_Review_Credo_for_Free_and_Responsible_Communication_in_a_Democratic_Society.pdf

National Commission for the Protection of Human Subjects of Biomedical and Behavioral Research. (1979). *The Belmont report: Ethical principles and guidelines for the protection of human subjects of research*. Retrieved from www.hhs.gov/ohrp/regulations-and-policy/belmont-report/read-the-belmont-report/index.html

Solomon, M. (1985). The rhetoric of dehumanization: An analysis of medical reports of the Tuskegee syphilis project. *Western Journal of Speech Communication*, *49*(4), 233–247. doi:10.1080/10570318509374200

Stage, F., & Wells, R. (2014). *New perspectives on critical quantitative inquiry. New directions for institutional research*. San Francisco, CA: Jossey-Bass.

3 Operationalization and Otherness

Equipped with a sense of why a researcher may choose to select a quantitative methodology from the social science toolkit and how to use that methodology ethically as seen in Chapters 1 and 2, we are now ready to get into some of the nitty-gritty details about designing and carrying out such a project. There are many principles and practices that will help to ensure your research is both rigorous—that it is good science—and in line with social justice research—that it is good for society. Chief among those important considerations is deciding how you will define and measure the concepts you are interested in exploring in your research.

We have called this chapter "Operationalization and Otherness" because **operationalization**, as you will read, is key to the process of arriving at ways to measure the topics and themes that interest you as a researcher. ***Otherness*** is a word used to signify how identities are shaped by social groups, with dominant groups (generally defined as those that have more economic and political power) typically set up in the center and non-dominant groups (those that have less economic and political power) often pushed to the margins. To "other" someone is to make them feel excluded, left out, or otherwise diminished, which, in turn, protects and reinforces the power and privilege of those at the center. As researchers working toward social justice, we must do our best to be vigilant about whether decisions regarding how to measure concepts fall into the trap of othering people or failing to represent them and their opinions and experiences at all.

The title of this chapter, then, is meant to suggest that the ways that we measure concepts have consequences, sometimes unintended ones. It is our responsibility to think through those consequences and be as responsive to human difference as possible when we are engaged in the measurement or operationalization stage of research design. We will return to this as we explain how operationalization is done in quantitative research and raise considerations and provide guidance about how to engage in the process as conscientiously as possible.

An Introduction to Measurement

Imagine that as a researcher you are interested in the ways that Latinx youth engage in "code switching"—changing how they converse based on the social context in which they are interacting. How will you know code switching has occurred in the young people's conversational exchanges? To answer this question, you first need to define the concept, "code switching." You need a careful, precise definition of what types of interactions or conversational turns you will decide fall both within and outside of its scope. Unless you have a clear definition of what counts as code switching and what does not, it would be hard to study it.

Alternatively, perhaps you are interested in Communication education research, such as how undergraduates establish a deeper sense of their surrounding communities through civic

engagement and service learning. How will you decide whether that sense of the surrounding community has been achieved? What does it mean to have a deeper sense of the community? How will you know it when you see it? In addition to figuring this out, you will also have to come up with a plan for knowing whether Communication students engaged in civic engagement and service learning in the first place. In this example, then, as in most research studies, multiple concepts must be measured.

Or maybe you would like to study how LGBTQ+ adolescents use social media to connect with other members of sexual minority groups and thereby explore and develop their own sexual identity. For this example, you will first have to determine how you will know whether LGBTQ+ adolescents are, indeed, connecting with others online and then decide how to measure whether they are developing their own sexual identity. You will also have to figure out how to measure use of social media as well as measuring LGBTQ+ identity.

In order to answer research questions effectively, spending time upfront thinking about and clarifying how you will define and measure each of the key concepts in your study is crucial. **Conceptualization** is the process of defining terms used in a study, and **operationalization** is deciding how to measure or observe them. Social science methods expert Earl A. Babbie (2010) explains, "In social research, the process of coming to an agreement about what terms mean is **conceptualization**, and the result is called a concept" (p. 127). **Concepts**, then, can be a bit abstract and somewhat fuzzy, but they represent relatively shared and widely accepted notions of what terms mean. Operationalization moves our understanding of concepts from relative abstraction and ambiguity toward something much more specific and concrete. To operationalize concepts involves determining the specific steps the researcher will take to observe how concepts take shape in the social world (Figure 3.1).

The task of measuring concepts is so important as to solicit this observation from psychologist Kevin Cokley: "The integrity and trustworthiness of all research findings are only as good as the measurement devices used to generate the results" (2007, p. 226). Indeed, **measurement** is vital to quantitative research that is both scientifically and ethically sound.

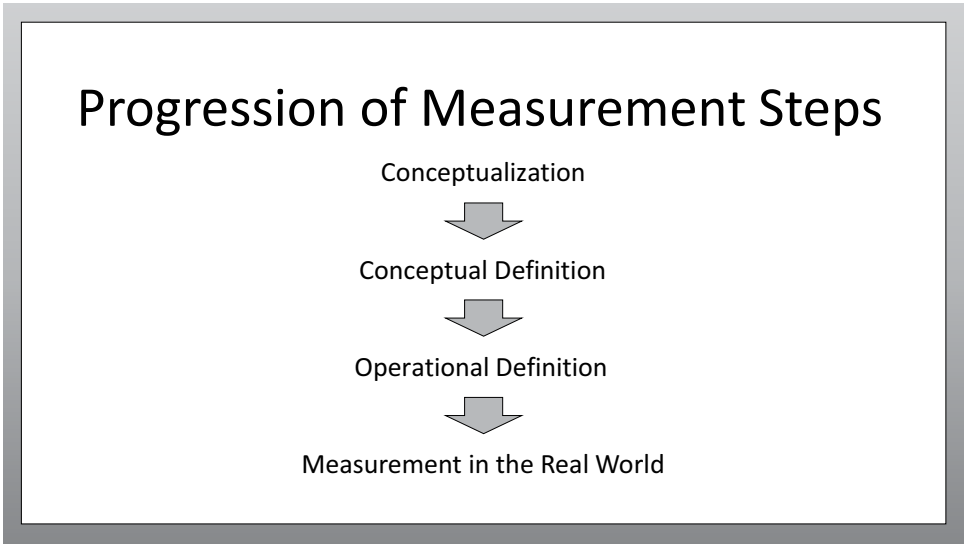


Figure 3.1 Measurement steps

Source: Stephen Warren

Two Types of Definitions: Conceptual and Operational

Two types of definitions are required when progressing from identifying the concepts that you would like to explore in your research to the ways in which you will measure those concepts. First, a **conceptual (or theoretical) definition** allows you to put into words the basic meaning of a concept. This is similar to a dictionary-type definition, and it represents the widely shared meaning of the concept. In developing a conceptual definition, you may want to draw from what prior researchers have come up with if your concept has been studied before, as long as you think those other researchers have done a reasonable job of capturing the meaning of the concept.

If you are measuring hate speech encountered by individuals online, for instance, you likely have at least a hazy definition of hate speech in mind. Hate speech is the concept of interest. Yet, you also want to be sure that your conceptualization of the concept captures as much of the full range of meanings associated with the term as possible. You would be wise, therefore, to look up how others have defined hate speech in the scholarly literature. Then you can either apply a conceptual definition advanced by others or come up with one of our own if you find those lacking. In the particular example of hate speech, you might find some variation in how others have defined it, since it is a difficult concept to define. Ben-David and Matamoros-Fernández (2016), for instance, report that social media companies themselves have legal latitude to define and self-regulate hate speech on social media platforms. They have found that Facebook's community standards prohibit "content that directly attacks people based on their: Race, Ethnicity, National origin, Religious affiliation, Sexual orientation, Sex, gender, or gender identity, or Serious disabilities or diseases" (Facebook, n.d., Section 2, para. 3). Perhaps that Facebook language is a good starting place for a conceptual definition of hate speech if you were to do a study in which you try to measure it.

It is not enough, however, to develop and articulate conceptual or theoretical definitions for your concepts. You must also come up with **operational definitions** to plan for the exact and precise way you will measure each concept. Doing so will move your treatment of each concept from something somewhat vague and ambiguous to something concrete and identifiable. In the Ben-David and Matamoros-Fernández (2016) study, they narrowed the concept of hate speech to a specific context (extreme right-wing Facebook users in Spain) and to particular expressions found online. Hate speech was operationalized as including negative targeting of blame toward groups such as immigrants as well as the use of slurs and insults related to these groups. From the broad concept of hate speech, therefore, Ben-David and Matamoros-Fernández use more specific and measurable observations to operationalize the concept.

Operationalizing Indicators and Dimensions of Concepts

When concepts are broad or rather ambiguous, one useful approach in their measurement is to think of aspects of the concept you can observe that would indicate the presence or absence of the concept. Rather than try to get at all of the many meanings and manifestations of a broad concept in a single measurement, for instance, the social science researcher can determine aspects or manifestations to observe that would indicate that the concept is operating in the social world. Particular observations that show the presence or absence of a concept are called **indicators**.

To add even more richness to ways to measure a concept, we might consider dimensions of the concept, as well. **Dimensions** are aspects of concepts that group together logically, sort of like subgroups operating within the overall meaning of the concept. The concept of

aggression might have dimensions that include physical aggression and verbal aggression, for instance. The concept of prejudice might be broken down into affective (involving emotions and attitudes) and cognitive (involving thoughts and conceptualizations) components. The same concept, therefore, can have components that are distinct from each other but still tap into the same, shared overall concept.

Complex concepts may take on many forms, and therefore the measures you use to observe those concepts may well reflect multiple dimensions and/or might rely on the use of multiple indicators. For instance, in one of the first author's prior studies, she was interested in studying "hypermasculinity" in characters that appeared in magazine ads for video games (Scharrer, 2004). Based on prior research and theorizing, she began with a conceptual definition of hypermasculinity as being tough, callous, aggressive, and physically imposing. She looked closely at an operationalization that Mosher and Sirkin (1984) had created to measure hypermasculinity as a personality type in individuals. She adapted the Mosher and Sirkin operationalization of the personality traits of hypermasculinity to the ways that characters appearing in the ads for video games were depicted. To do so, rather than just asking, "Is this character hypermasculine?"—which would call for a very broad application of a complex concept—she looked at **indicators** of hypermasculinity. Those indicators included depictions of the characters using or holding weapons, making threats, or being very muscular. Given the conceptual definition of hypermasculinity, there would likely be widespread agreement that any one of those particular depictions could be understood as indicators of the concept. In fact, prior researchers (Hall, 1992; Mosher & Sirkin, 1984) had identified four components of hypermasculinity in their measures of the concept: having callous attitudes, especially about sex; perceiving violence as "manly;" being drawn to danger and thrill; and suppressing emotions that might be perceived as weak. These components of the concept demonstrate its **dimensions**, and in the study of video game ads, Scharrer made sure to measure indicators of each dimension.

Variables, Values, and Attributes

In order to delve into the topic of measurement, we must introduce the definition of a variable. A **variable** is any concept of interest in a study that *varies*, taking on more than one value. The opposite of a variable in quantitative social science is a **constant**, something that does not vary. For instance, if you are interested in exploring views of news coverage among Muslims living in the United States, Muslim identity is not a variable in your study; it is a constant. All of your research participants identify as Muslim. Or if you show a group of research participants a public service announcement (PSA) about organ donation and then seek to measure whether they are persuaded to become donors themselves, exposure to the PSA is a constant since all participants experienced it in the research design.

Unlike constants, variables take on multiple **attributes**, the range of qualities or characteristics that constitute a variable. For instance, imagine that you are studying whether high school-aged students have different opinions about the March for Our Lives protest of 2018 (a student-organized protest against gun violence in the United States spurred in large part by school shootings) compared to older research participants. You could use "high school-aged students" and "those older than high school-aged students" as the attributes of a variable to classify research participants into each group. Or, if you are conducting an analysis of the depiction of women starring characters in action films, gender of the starring characters is an important variable. That variable can take on multiple attributes, including woman (a category that can include cisgender—those whose biological sex matches their gender identity—and transgender— women those whose biological sex does not match their gender identity),

man (again, including cisgender and transgender), non-binary, or gender fluid. Once you have established how to determine the character's gender, you will also need a mechanism for determining whether the character is in a starring role. The starring role variable might have two attributes: yes or no.

When you study opinions using survey methodology, to operationalize variables you have to decide both how to phrase the survey item itself and what options you will use for respondents' answers. The operationalization is the combination of the two (the survey item and the response options for the survey item). For instance, gathering data about charitable giving during the quarantine following the COVID-19 pandemic, you might include "It is important for me to provide financial support to the local food pantry to help those in need during the pandemic" as your survey item and have response options of "strongly agree," "agree," "neutral," "disagree," and "strongly disagree." In this example, respondents have five different options to use to indicate their opinion. Each of those five options is an attribute of the variable measuring the degree to which respondents found supporting the food pantry to be important.

The final step in operationalizing variables is to transform attributes into **values**, which are the numerical properties assigned to each variable for the purpose of statistical analysis. In quantitative research, ultimately, as we established in Chapter 1, the data generated must be *represented by numbers* rather than words and phrases. Opinions on surveys may be expressed as scores measuring agreement on a scale of 1 (strongly disagree) to 5 (strongly agree), for instance. Or a numerical value may be generated by numbering options on a continuum, asking, for instance, how much of an introvert or an extrovert research participants consider themselves to be, using values that include: 1 = very introverted, 2 = introverted, 3 = neither introverted nor extroverted, 4 = extroverted, and 5 = very extroverted. Or, research participants might report, for example, an estimate of the number of minutes per day that they spend on social media. Features of texts may be quantified by counting up the number of instances in a set of media content that share a common trait, like the number of acts of aggression in trailers for films with top box office receipts or the number of Asian characters that appear in recurring roles in Netflix original programs. Features of texts might also be represented numerically by noting the presence or absence of some attribute—where, for instance, a 1 is used to indicate that a recorded face-to-face conversation includes some form of conflict and a 0 indicates that it does not. Regardless of whether people or texts are being studied, the data that is gathered and analyzed by quantitative researchers is always expressed numerically.

Representing data numerically has its pros and cons, in general, as well as in terms of its implications for advancing the goals of social justice. Numbers have a fairly cut and dried, straightforward, widely accepted meaning. So when a person on a survey reports, for instance, watching TV for an average of three hours per day, we all know what three hours per day means. We can contrast this way of knowing about television exposure with an approach that uses words and phrases to collect information. If a respondent says they watch "a lot" of television or "not much at all," we might have varying interpretations of what those words and phrases mean, which introduces some ambiguity. Numbers, then, are precise and have widely shared meaning, which allows for a fairly consistent interpretation.

On the other hand, that exact same precision also has its downsides. In being precise, using numbers as a means of collecting information about people and texts can also be narrow and confining, not sufficiently responsive to richness of detail and complexity. If a researcher is interested in studying people's opinions about a particular issue, for example, they may use a **closed-ended measure** with a predetermined and finite list of possible responses like, "I think climate change is one of the most pressing concerns in society today" with a range of choices provided, such as 1 = strongly disagree, 2 = disagree, 3 = neither agree nor disagree,

Figure 3.2 A cartoon about quantification

Source: Serg, http://lightbulbcartoon.com/Research.html

4 = agree, and 5 = strongly agree. Or they may use an **open-ended measure** like, "What is your opinion about the importance of climate change as a contemporary issue? Please explain" and provide respondents with the space to write in a detailed answer. Provided that respondents do, indeed, take the time and care necessary to respond, we would likely know more about the nuance, fullness, and depth of their views in this open-ended way of posing the question compared to the closed-ended measure.

For social justice research, researchers must be careful to ask questions or pose statements and provide a variety of potential responses that do the best job possible of capturing as much of participants' views, experiences, and responses to the question as possible. The concept of **voice** is a crucial element of social justice research—who gets to speak, who will be listened to, and whose input matters. Therefore, making sure the options available to capture the voice of research participants are imbued with as much meaning and importance as possible is a key way forward for the critically conscious quantitative researcher. If the study is with people, like a survey or an experiment (more on those forms in subsequent chapters), always remembering that the numbers in the data represent real people whose voice we have a responsibility to represent in our studies is vitally important. No one wants to feel like a number, and no one should have to do so.

Using Closed-Ended Measures

Because quantitative research uses data represented by numbers, to measure variables it typically employs closed-ended measures with a predetermined selection of values rather than

open-ended measures in which responses or observations are filled in using words. This puts the onus on the researcher to anticipate any possible response and come up with a full range of options to cover all responses.

Imagine that you have asked research participants to read a news article on the controversy surrounding the U.S. Supreme Court nomination of Brett Kavanaugh, who was accused of sexual assault by Dr. Christine Blasey Ford in 2018. You want to know whether they think the news article is biased. You can try to find that out using an open-ended item such as: *After reading the news article provided, please use the space below to explain whether you think the news story is fair or whether you think it is biased in some way.*

Or you can try to find out whether participants think the news article is biased using a closed-ended item: *After reading the news article provided, please consider each of the following statements, circling the response that best reflects your view of the news story you read.*

This news story is fair.
strongly agree agree neither agree nor disagree disagree strongly disagree
This news story is biased.
strongly agree agree neither agree nor disagree disagree strongly disagree

Quantitative research usually uses closed-ended items because they are easier to translate into numerical values. The choice for the research participant of one fixed response from a set of closed-ended items is less open to interpretation by the researcher compared to the interpretation needed to handle open-ended responses. For our example here, for instance, the "strongly agree" can be a 1, "agree" a 2, etc., and the assignment of those values is straightforward and requires very little researcher interpretation. Any researcher will look at the closed-ended data in the same way (e.g., assigning a "strongly agree" choice with a 1), which strengthens claims of objectivity. As we discussed in Chapter 1, research that strives to be objective can sometimes be persuasive to people in policy making or other decision making roles, which can, in turn, bring about change.

But it is possible to quantify answers to the open-ended item, too, actually, and there are some potential advantages to using open-ended items for some research topics or the measurement of some concepts. Open-ended items can make the possibility of othering people (making them feel outside of the norm) a moot point since respondents choose how to represent themselves rather than having to answer within the response options determined by the researcher. They have the benefit of allowing the person to describe something using their own terms and in their own words.

However, on the downside, for quantitative research, the responses to open-ended measures such as these incur an additional step, **coding** those responses, which means interpreting the responses and imposing a way to categorize them and then assigning numbers to those categories. Not only does this take additional time, but this step also introduces the potential for the researcher to misinterpret or misrepresent the responses, as it requires the researcher's judgment about how to code the responses. Coding open-ended responses into numbers also inevitably reduces some of the complexity that open-ended measures invite. Using the example of the news story on the Supreme Court nominee, a quantitative researcher using the open-ended measure would summarize a respondent's thoughts by grouping those thoughts together with similar thoughts expressed by others in the sample and then assigning that group a number in common. For instance, the researcher may classify all of the respondents who said the news story was biased but did not give a reason with a 1 and all of the respondents who said the news story was biased and did provide a reason a 2. Finally, open-ended measures are also more time intensive for research participants who have to fill them in, and given that

they do take time, research participants may be tempted to sidestep these items or shorten their answers.

There are two basic requirements when operationalizing variables in a closed-ended manner. The values provided in response to the item must be **mutually exclusive**, meaning that the values for the variable should not overlap. For most variables, it is ideal to have only one response that represents the best possible option, so that, for instance, survey respondents are not registering their opinion as both "agree" and "disagree" if they really mean "neither agree nor disagree" or that they feel "neutral." And the values must be **exhaustive**, so that there is a mechanism to record every possible response. There should never be a case where there is no way to record what the survey respondent would like to say about the issue. Every possible value that the variable may take on should be anticipated.

Imagine that an organizational communication scholar would like to ask survey respondents to estimate the number of minutes they spent reading the organization's sexual harassment policy. She uses the following operationalization to do so:

> *About how many minutes would you say you spent reading your company's sexual harassment policy?*
>
> *1–5 minutes*
> *5–10 minutes*
> *10–15 minutes*
> *15–20 minutes*
> *More than 20 minutes*

These response options might look OK at first glance but this example actually violates both of the principles of variable construction. The response options are not mutually exclusive. Rather, they overlap. If a respondent wanted to indicate that they spent 5 minutes on the policy, for instance, there are two options they could select rather than just one, given that the first and second option both have 5 minutes listed. The same problem would occur for respondents who want to report that they spent 10 or 15 minutes. Also, the response options are not exhaustive. The scholar wisely used "More than 20 minutes" to cover any number of minutes beyond 20 that was spent on the policy. But what if the respondent did not read the policy at all? The scholar should add a "0 minutes" or "I did not read the policy" option in order to exhaust all possible responses.

The corrected operationalization, therefore, would look like this:

> *About how many minutes would you say you spent reading your company's sexual harassment policy?*
>
> *I didn't read the policy.*
> *1–5 minutes*
> *6–10 minutes*
> *11–15 minutes*
> *16–20 minutes*
> *More than 20 minutes*

Now the response options are both mutually exclusive and exhaustive.

On occasion, there is an exception to the general rules of variable construction regarding the mutual exclusivity "requirement." You *can* factor in the possibility that two or more values rather than just one might be at play in a single operationalized variable. For instance, in a survey item, you can invite respondents to "Check all that apply" in a list of response options or to "Rank these five reasons for supporting renewable energy from 1 for least important to 5 for most important." In using techniques such as these, you do not have to force respondents into just one response and, in some cases, you can better account for the complexity of experience and opinion. For the most part, however, the principle is that one and only one option should be selected for each variable.

Levels of Measurement

Once you begin experimenting with the operationalization of concepts—deciding how, exactly, you will measure your variables—a key consideration is deciding what **level of measurement** to use. Researchers have identified four different "levels" that variables can take on. An understanding of levels of measurement is one of the most important building blocks in learning quantitative research methods, so please read and consider this section of the chapter carefully. Commit to practicing and internalizing the logic of levels of measurement, and when it comes time later to learn the principles and techniques of statistical analysis, you will be glad you know how to determine levels of measurement.

Categorical Variables

A **categorical variable** is any variable that uses categories for values. In categorical variables, values are grouped together. Here is an example: *About how many texts would you say you send each day, on average? 0 texts, 1–10, 11–20, 21–30, 31–40, more than 40.* For this way of measuring the frequency of sending texts, those who would have answered anywhere between 1 and 10 are categorized together as are those who would have answered any number between 11 and 20, etc. There are two levels of measurement for categorical variables, nominal and ordinal level variables.

Nominal Variables

A **nominal** level of measurement is used when the values of the variable are arbitrarily assigned to numbers in order to classify responses based on a shared characteristic. The numbers assigned, however, are only used "nominally" (thus the name!) and do not actually signify more or less of something. For example, if you have participants in an experiment, you might use the label 1 to classify those in the control group and 2 to classify those in the treatment group, but you could easily reverse those labels and that would be equally valid. The control group does not have to use the label of 1. Giving them a 1 is an arbitrary decision. Here is another example. If you adopt the Pew Research Center's response options for measuring religious identity, you could use the following labels to classify individuals: 1 = Christian, 2 = Muslim, 3 = Hindu, 4 = Buddhist, 5 = Jewish, 6 = Unaffiliated, 7 = folk religions, 8 = other religions. But, once again, you could mix up the order of the numbers, too, and nothing meaningful would be changed. The numbers assigned to nominal level variables are arbitrary and they do not represent some mathematical quantity. Nominal measures are the lowest form of measurement because they are the most basic, but as we will see they can be quite handy in Communication research.

There is also a particular type of nominal level variable called a dichotomous variable. A variable that has just two values is called a **dichotomous variable**. For example: *Have you ever been cyberbullied? Yes or No* has just two options and therefore can be called dichotomous.

Ordinal Variables

An **ordinal** level of measurement does not use arbitrarily assigned values but rather uses values that ascend or descend, with changes in values in this form of measurement representing greater or lesser quantity of whatever is being measured. In other words, there is an order or a ranking to the values used for an ordinal level variable. In media research, for instance, we might ask about the frequency with which survey respondents spend time with a particular form of media, like YouTube or cop shows or public affairs programming. We might ask: "How frequently do you watch YouTube videos? Please select the option that most closely matches your response" with response options that include, "Several times a day or more," "About once a day," "Once or twice a week," "About once a month," and "Less than once a month." In this case, the response options have a logical order, beginning with the most frequent and ending with the least frequent response, with each response in between following the logic of descending frequency. Ordinal level variables, therefore, both classify responses into groups (like nominal) and order the values of the variable, thereby providing a useful way of remembering how to recognize this type.

Continuous Variables

The opposite of a categorical variable is a **continuous variable,** which is also known as (using the term in Figure 3.3) a **metric variable**. A continuous or metric variable allows specific and precise numerical values to be recorded rather than utilizing groups of values or categories. *About how many texts would you say you send each day, on average? ____ texts* is an example of a continuous measure. Respondents can write in any number from 0 to goodness knows how many! Ultimately, their answers could be arrayed on a continuum from lowest to highest (thus the name *continuous*). There are two levels of measurement for continuous variables: interval and ratio.

Interval Variables

For the **interval** level of measurement, the logic used in determining the values is similar to an ordinal level variable in that response options can be ranked in ascending or descending order, and just like both nominal and ordinal variables, an interval level variable classifies values. Yet, in an interval level of measurement, unlike in ordinal, the distance between each response option is known, fixed, and assumed to be equal. In other words, the values of the variable are placed at equal intervals, thus the name. However, by definition, an interval level variable also does not have a meaningful value of zero that would signify the complete absence of the variable. A frequently cited example is IQ (see Babbie, 2016, for instance). You could say the difference between an IQ of 90 and 100 is the same as the difference between an IQ score of 75 and 85 (each varying by ten-point intervals), but an IQ of 0 is not possible since everyone will have some sort of score on the IQ.

In Communication, researchers treat Likert scale variables as measured at the interval level (Keyton, 2015). The **Likert scale** is the commonly used survey research technique in which a statement is provided to respondents, and they are asked to provide their level of

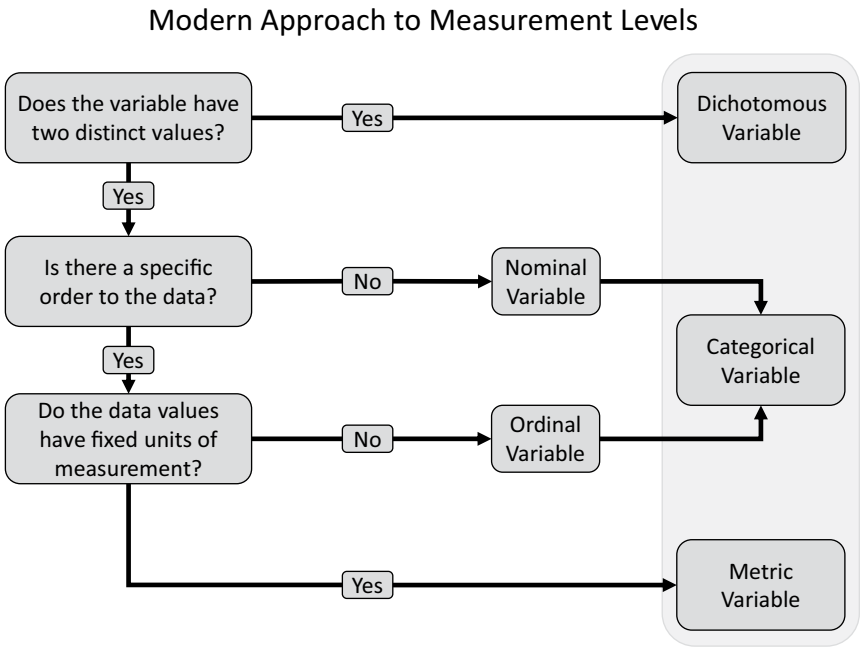


Figure 3.3 Modern approaches to measurement levels

Source: Stephen Warren

endorsement of that statement with response options such as "completely disagree," "somewhat disagree," indicate that they "neither agree nor disagree," "somewhat agree," or "completely agree" (Figure 3.4). In Communication research (as in many other fields), we assume the distance between, say, "completely agree" and "somewhat agree" is the same as the distance between "somewhat agree" and "neither agree nor disagree," etc., thereby meeting the requirements of the interval level of measurement. You can change the number of response options in a Likert scale from five to seven or more, but many analysts contend that you should use an odd number so that there is a neutral point in the middle with equal numbers of options on either end. You should also keep in mind that if you use too many options, it may be difficult for those answering to parse their sentiments into such fine distinctions (like, deciding whether to select a 5 or a 6 on a 7-point scale if they are moderately in favor of the statement).

Ratio Variables

Finally, the most precise level of measurement is the **ratio** level. Ratio level variables share the qualities of the preceding levels of measurement in that they classify, order, and have equal intervals. For ratio level variables, however, unlike for interval level variables, a value of 0 does, indeed, mean the absence of this variable. For example, you could count up the number of U.S. mainstream news stories that use the words *terrorism* and *Muslim* together and compare that number across different sources. Perhaps news channel one had zero such simultaneous

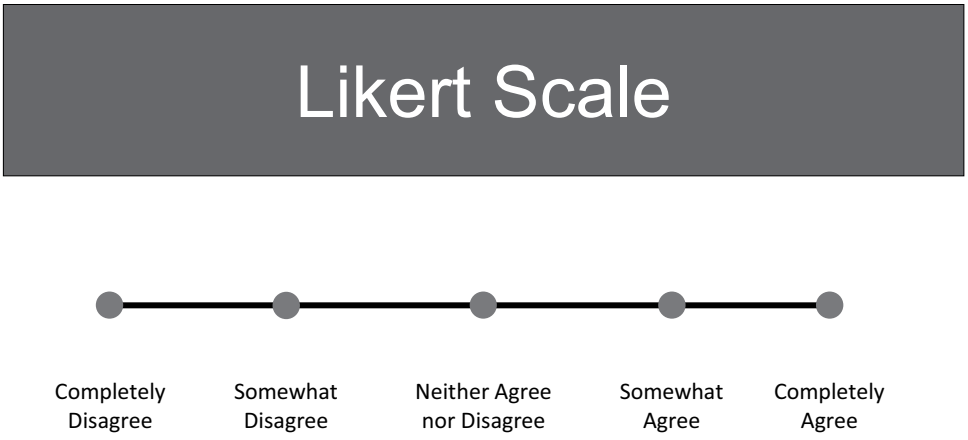


Figure 3.4 Likert scale

Source: Stephen Warren

references, but news channel two had 10 and news channel three had 20. In this case, the zero is meaningful. It means there were no times in the news channel one content in which the terms *Muslims* and *terrorism* were used together. And you can say that news channel two had half as many such references as news channel three.

One particular example of a ratio level measure format used fairly commonly in public opinion research is the feeling thermometer. A **feeling thermometer** asks respondents to indicate how warmly (favorably) or coldly (unfavorably) they feel about someone or something, using a physical representation of a thermometer. Each respondent can select a precise value between 0 (for the coldest possible feelings) and 100 (for the warmest possible), and therefore there is considerable potential for variation in the exact selections expressed by a sample of respondents. As you can see in Figure 3.5, the Pew Research Center used a feeling thermometer to compare how Republicans and Democrats in the United States feel about each other as well as about other groups like military personnel, atheists, and elected officials in Washington, D.C. We can interpret the data in the figure to indicate that although those in both major political parties in the U.S. have favorable feelings toward military personnel, feelings diverge by political party affiliation for other groups.

In practice, the difference between interval and ratio level variables has been somewhat difficult to determine and is also rather a moot point, since as we will see in Chapters 8 and 9, many common statistical tests treat interval and ratio level variables interchangeably. Therefore, some prefer considering interval and ratio level variables together and calling them either continuous or metric variables.

Deciding What Level of Measurement to Use

Many times there are multiple ways to operationalize a variable that cut across more than one level of measurement (as you can see with the frequency of sending texts examples we used earlier). Researchers may have a decision to make, therefore, about what level of measurement to use (Figure 3.3).

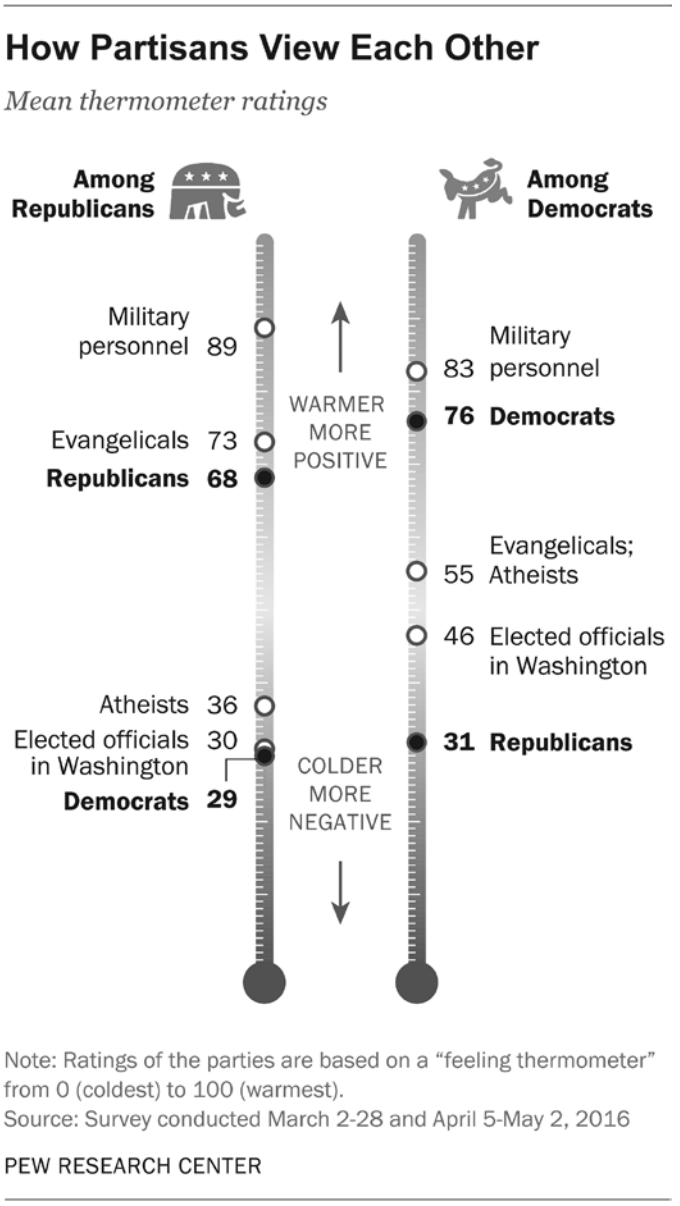

How Partisans View Each Other
Mean thermometer ratings
Among Republicans
Among Democrats
Military personnel 89
Evangelicals 73
Republicans 68
Atheists 36
Elected officials in Washington 30
Democrats 29
WARMER MORE POSITIVE
COLDER MORE NEGATIVE
Military personnel 83
76 Democrats
Evangelicals; Atheists 55
Elected officials in Washington 46
31 Republicans
Note: Ratings of the parties are based on a "feeling thermometer" from 0 (coldest) to 100 (warmest).
Source: Survey conducted March 2-28 and April 5-May 2, 2016
PEW RESEARCH CENTER

Figure 3.5 Feeling thermometer

Source: "Partisanship and Political Animosity in 2016." Pew Research Center, Washington, D.C. (June 22, 2016) www.pewresearch.org/politics/2016/06/22/partisanship-and-political-animosity-in-2016/

To measure age, for instance, you can ask research participants: "How old are you?" and provide a blank with a label giving the metric with which you would like participants to answer, like this: "____ years old." (It's important to provide the metric rather than just a blank line to fill in—in this case, specifying that you want folks to answer in years—so that, for instance,

some smart aleck refrains from writing "Really old!"). This is a ratio level variable. Each participant will put in a specific age in years, and the ages of all of the participants could be displayed on a continuum from youngest (the minimum value for age) to oldest (the maximum value for age). Registering an age of 0, although quite rare in practice, is a meaningful possibility, since infants younger than one year of age would have this value for age (of course, we would have to assume someone else is answering the survey item on their behalf!). Conversely, you could use the age groups that the Nielsen company uses most often to measure television viewing and ask, "How old are you?" and provide categories of responses, such as "18–34," "35–49," and "50+." This would place all research participants into just these three groups (assuming you are not studying those under the age of 18) and would be considered an ordinal level of measurement since the responses ascend but at unequal intervals.

In general, when you are faced with multiple ways to measure the same variable and you only want to or can use one, it is usually best to use a higher level of measurement like interval or ratio for three reasons. First, higher levels of measurement provide the most information. You know more about your research participants, for example, if you know the full range of their exact ages than if you categorize them into three age groups. In research, it is usually best to gather more precise and detailed information when you can. Second, you can always go from more precision to less precision by later categorizing a variable that was measured as a continuous level variable, but you cannot do the reverse. You cannot make a categorical variable continuous. In other words, if you do ask for precise ages but later you want to see whether various age groups differ from each other, you can use that ratio level age variable to place each participant into age groups. But if you only had the three age groups to begin with, you have no way of knowing exact ages.

Finally, as you will see in Chapter 9, higher level variables allow for more complex statistical procedures in data analysis compared to lower level variables. This is primarily because lower-level variables do not allow for the calculation of an average. For nominal level data, for instance, since the numerical values of the response options are arbitrarily decided and have no mathematical value, an average does not make sense. Somewhat similarly, for ordinal level data, since the distance between each value is not equal, calculating an average is likely to be unwise, as well. If you measured frequency of checking social media accounts as "almost constantly," "many times per day," "a few times a week," and "less than a few times a week," the interpretation of the average would be very fuzzy, indeed. Metric variables have meaningful averages and allow for the largest number of mathematical functions.

Validity

In this book, we refer often to "social justice research," and in Chapter 1 we provided a basic definition of what that entails. By advancing Frey and Carragee's (2007) assertion that social justice research involves challenging oppression, social inequalities, and power imbalances faced by marginalized groups, we provided a conceptual definition of social justice research, giving some sense of what we mean by the term. Yet, social justice is an example of a concept that is complex, broad, and multifaceted, and there might be many different understandings of the term.

If you could somehow visualize and map out every person's entire understanding of a complex concept such as social justice, perhaps that visualization would take the shape of an enormous cloud with hazy and ambiguous edges, somewhat similar to the word cloud image that we have included here (Figure 3.7). No single measure used in social science research will get at all of that complexity or will reproduce the whole cloud. However, the duty of the researcher is to try to get at as much of the content of the cloud as they can. When readers

Research in Action

The Operationalization of Race and Ethnicity in the U.S. Census

The U.S. Census uses five categories for respondents to report their race:

American Indian/Alaska Native
Asian
Native Hawaiian or Other Pacific Islander
Black or African-American
White

and **two categories for respondents to report their ethnicity:**

Hispanic/Latina(o)
non-Hispanic/Latina(o)

Since 1997, the federal definition allows respondents to select more than one category for these.

⋆*Source: U.S. Office of Management and Budget, Directive 15 Race and Ethnic Standards for Federal Statistics and Administrative Reporting, https://transition.fcc.gov/Bureaus/OSEC/library/legislative_histories/1195.pdf*

Here's a table showing the percentage of individuals who characterized their race and ethnicity using the U.S. Census categories **the same way** in both the 2000 and 2010 censuses.

Non-Hispanic Whites	97%
Non-Hispanic Blacks	94%
Non-Hispanic Asians	91%
American Indians or Alaska Natives	53%
Native Hawaiians or Pacific Islanders	48%
Hispanics	41%
Non-Hispanic Multiracials	23%

⋆*Source: Liebler, Carolyn A., Sonya Rastogi, Leticia E. Fernandez, James M. Noon, and Sharon R. Ennis. 2014. America's churning races: Race and ethnic response changes between Census 2000 and the 2010 census. Revision of Center for Administrative Records Research and Applications (Census Bureau) Working Paper 2014–09, Washington, D.C.*

Questions to consider:

How well do you think the U.S. Census operationalization captures the concepts of race and ethnicity? Why do you think members of some racial or ethnic groups varied in how they reported their race or ethnicity? Do you think it matters that there is this variation in how U.S. residents report their race and ethnicity? Why or why not?

Figure 3.7 Social justice word cloud

Source: Stephen Warren made using Wordclouds.com

of a study learn of how the researcher conceptualized and operationalized the concept in the study, those decisions should make sense to the readers. Readers should find at least some connection—albeit potentially imperfect—between their own understanding of the concept and the ways the concept was treated in the research.

This is the concept of **validity**, which is traditionally defined in social science research as whether researchers are measuring what they purport to be measuring, whether their measures are doing a reasonable job of tapping the meaning of the concepts at play. It is helpful to think of validity as closely related to accuracy. Are the measures used to capture a concept zeroing in on that concept's meaning accurately? There are a number of types of validity, and researchers can use those types as guidelines in research design to consider the validity of their measures.

First, **face validity** is the degree to which the measurement maps on to a common understanding of the concept. Does the operationalization appear to make logical sense by reflecting at least some of the shared meaning attached to the concept it measures? If so, it is valid "on its face" and has adequate face validity. This is the easiest form of validity to achieve, since it simply has to do with whether measures appear logically to tap into the concept of interest.

Second, you can determine whether the measurement relates in a logical manner with another variable outside of your study. This is called **criterion-related validity**. Communication researcher Barbara A. Ritter (2014), for example, came up with new measures to study perceptions of the online environment and sexual harassment in cyber settings. Because they were new, she took steps to determine whether those measures were valid. She tested criterion-related validity by comparing one of the new measures she had created to a previously existing measure designed to tap a similar phenomenon. If the new measure Ritter created was valid, it should be correlated with the already existing measure, and it was.

Finally, **content validity** refers to the degree to which the full range of meanings of the concept are being reflected in the measurement and how the components all relate to each other. If researchers say they are measuring the degree to which female action heroes can be considered feminist role models, for instance, they should consider multiple ways in which "feminist role models" might take shape, and those various components should relate to one another. For instance, the degree to which female action heroes rescue others should relate to whether they display self-reliance if both are good indicators of being feminist role models.

Reliability

In addition to validity, an equally important element of research design is the **reliability** of measurement, defined as the degree to which the same measurement procedure would yield the same result if put into place multiple times. Does the measure lead to generally quite stable and consistent patterns? If so, it is reliable. Or does the same measure produce results that vary wildly across different contexts? That is the sign of an unreliable measure. If you ask the same research participants the degree to which they support equal pay for equal work regardless of the worker's gender at two different points in time, for example, you will hope that their responses would be more or less the same both times. If they are, we would consider our means of generating this data—the way we have asked the question—to be reliable.

In their book *Quantitative Research Methods for Communication*, James S. Wrench, Candace Thomas-Maddox, Virginia Peck Richmond, and James C. McCroskey (2008) note, "If we measure something on several different occasions and never get anywhere near the same score, there are only two conclusions we can draw: either the thing we are measuring is constantly changing or our measuring instrument is worthless" (pp. 201–202). The second possibility is related to reliability, and Wrench and colleagues point to three factors that can contribute to issues with reliability.

- First, **the way that items are created** can be ambiguous or unclear. Generally, we can expect more reliable data when measures are clear and precise. Contrast asking research participants the degree to which they support "equal pay for equal work regardless of the worker's gender" with their support for "gender and labor justice." The former is fairly specific, whereas the latter is broader and more open to interpretation. We would expect answers to the former to vary less within participants across multiple iterations of being asked compared to answers to the latter, given the specificity and clarity of the phrasing.
- Second, Wrench and colleagues (2008) suggest that **the length of the research instrument** can impact reliability. Generally, multiple items rather than single items used to measure a concept will produce more reliable results. This is because any single item can produce "error" in that it may be unclear or confusing to research participants. So, using more than one item helps protect against such errors highly impacting the data. But, of course, you do not want your study to take too much of your research participants' time. If they are burned out, bored, or frustrated, that can produce unreliable results, as well.
- Third, **the manner in which the research is administered** is important. Providing research participants with clear instructions or guidelines is vitally important, for instance, as is establishing a professional setting for data collection.

Just like with validity, there are a number of ways to formally test reliability. You could employ the **test-retest method**, which simply means asking the same question (or set of questions) twice to

see the degree to which responses vary, as we have illustrated with our equal pay for equal work example. Or, if you have a number of indicators of your concept, you could use the **split-half method** to verify whether any randomly selected half of the items used to measure a concept will produce the same results (more or less) as the other half. Pablo Davanzo and colleagues (2004), for instance, undertook a Spanish translation of the Child Depression Inventory and tested its reliability when administering it to a sample of Spanish-speaking youth. The items on the questionnaire were numbered from 1 to 27. To conduct a split-half test of reliability, Davanzo and colleagues compared the children's responses to the items with an odd number to their responses to the items with an even number. Because they found a high correlation between the two groups of scores, their claims that the Spanish translation was reliable were strengthened. In other words, the children in the sample responded similarly to the odd-numbered items and the even-numbered items, suggesting that both sets of items were producing reliable results.

If you are categorizing responses to open-ended questions as we discussed earlier in this chapter, comparing your judgments to the judgments of others can provide a check and balance on the potential for your own subjectivities to threaten reliability. In fact, in our chapter on content analysis (Chapter 7), we will learn about **intercoder reliability**, a means of comparing observations about texts across different observers. For example, if your study calls for determining how much objectification of women occurs in music videos, you will want to show that the research design you have developed for studying that question produces more or less the same results no matter who is actually making the observations. And finally, if you are using multiple items to measure the same concept, you can run reliability statistics like **Cronbach's alpha** to determine whether the items do, indeed, have what we call "**internal consistency**," meaning whether they relate well together as a group. We will explain those statistics more in Chapter 9. For now, all that is important to keep in mind is that each of these checks on reliability can tell researchers how well they have achieved the goal of using measures that produce consistent, trustworthy, and dependable results.

Balancing Validity and Reliability

One choice researchers often have to make is whether they will use **existing measures** that other scholars have developed and put into practice already or whether they will try their hand at coming up with their own. Each option has potential advantages and disadvantages. You might find that using existing measures is more reliable since those measures have been tested already and perhaps have already been shown to work well. Yet, designing your own measures might be more valid if existing measures only partially get at the phenomenon you are trying to explore. If you design your own measures, you can tailor them specifically to the concepts and topics you are studying, and therefore they may have greater claims on validity compared to those that were generated by others for a different purpose.

The question of whether to use existing measures or design them yourself relates to a broader discussion of the ways in which validity and reliability are balanced in research design. In fact, oftentimes in practice, validity and reliability are at odds with each other. When we attempt to make a measure simple, precise, specific, and straightforward to bolster reliability, we are simultaneously threatening its validity as we run the risk of oversimplifying a complex concept. Earl Babbie, the author of one of the most popular textbooks on research methods, *The Basics of Social Research* (2016), describes the tension between reliability and validity as a "persistent and inevitable dilemma," by pointing out that:

> Most of the really interesting concepts we want to study have many subtle nuances, and it's hard to specify precisely what we mean by them. . . . Very often, then, specifying

> reliable operational definitions and measurements seems to rob concepts of their richness of meaning. . . . Yet, the more variation and richness we allow for a concept, the more potential we create for disagreement on how it applies to a particular situation, thus reducing reliability.
>
> (p. 158)

In Figure 3.8, you can see that studies that are strong on reliability but weak on validity consistently produce similar results but those results are off the mark regarding what the study is trying to illuminate. Conversely, studies that are strong on validity but weak on reliability are within the conceptual target but are scattershot, and therefore it is unclear exactly what they are illuminating. As you would imagine, low validity combined with low reliability is no help in illuminating a topic whatsoever.

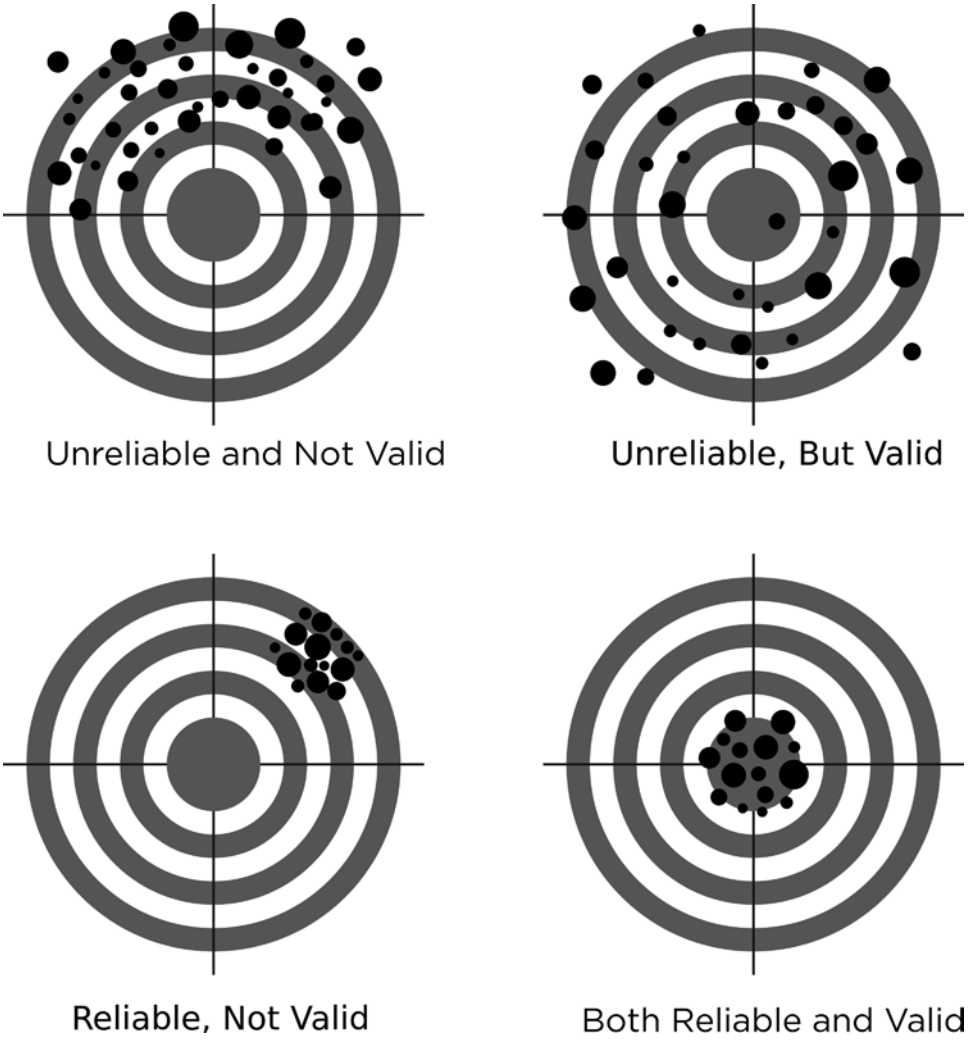


Figure 3.8 Reliability validity dartboard

Source: Nevit Dilmen, https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Reliability_and_validity.svg

Alas, there is no way out of this inherent tension. Quantitative methods have been critiqued for sacrificing validity in favor of reliability, and, indeed, qualitative methods—with their interpretation of words and phrases rather than numbers—have a built-in ability to capture a fuller range and depth of meanings in concepts. Our best advice for the critical quantitative reader is to be aware of this critique and do all that you can to honor a range of meanings in your research and acknowledge the ways in which you may fall short. We would also remind the reader that reliability is a key advantage of quantitative methods given its ability to point toward patterns that are larger and more persistent than any one experience. Indeed, the emphasis on reliability in quantitative research is one of its chief strengths in intervening in social injustices since that emphasis helps encourage research that is verifiable and trustworthy. This, in turn, can persuade and compel policy makers, activists, and other agents of social change. With a commitment toward validity, the reliable quantitative researcher has much to offer.

Figure 3.9 Scholar Spotlight: Dr. Bradley J. Bond

Scholar Spotlight: Dr. Bradley J. Bond

Bradley J. Bond, Department of Communication Studies, University of San Diego, studies media effects related to identity and well-being, primarily among gay, lesbian, and bisexual adolescents. He has examined depictions of LGBTQ+ characters and celebrities in the media, parasocial relationships, and the role of media exposure in

sexual identity development and socialization. His research has appeared in *Journal of Communication*, *Communication Research, Media Psychology*, *Mass Communication and Society*, and *Journal of Children and Media*, among other scholarly journals.

Q: In your research, what are some of the most important concepts to measure, and how do you go about measuring them?

Dr. Bond: My research investigates the relationships between media exposure, identity development, and emotional health outcomes among adolescents, particularly teens who identify as lesbian, gay, or bisexual. Outcome variables such as self-esteem, social connectedness, and well-being are very important to my work. Predicting how these constructs differ in intensity among sexual minority teens can shed light on the mechanisms that would help this population better navigate their identity development. I live by the motto "adopt and adapt" for many of the emotional health variables I measure. That is, I employ previously validated measures, but I adapt them in ways that would increase their reliability and validity among the populations I study. For example, Rosenberg's self-esteem scale has been widely accepted as a reliable and valid measure of self-esteem. However, for younger populations some items may need to be reworded to ensure that youth will comprehend their intent. There is no need to reinvent the wheel, but sometimes the wheel needs to be aligned—adopt and adapt.

Q: Are there any concepts that you have found particularly challenging to measure? Why or how so? Please give an example.

Dr. Bond: I find that measurement is more often challenging than not. As social scientists, we are often attempting to measure abstract, complex constructs that require human interpretation to both measure and interpret. Quantifying identity development is an onerous task. Determining the conceptual definition of identity complexity or identity satisfaction is deeply important to how we, as researchers, then operationalize the variables. This becomes even more difficult if we are relying on self-report: Can participants reflect on their selves in such a way that allows them to accurately report their identity attributes? Even variables that may seem easier to quantify can sometimes require more nuance than novice researchers realize. Sexual orientation should be an easy-to-categorize, nominal variable: Do you identify as heterosexual, gay, lesbian, or bisexual? However, recent research suggests that young people are rejecting these labels; they see their sexualities as more fluid and less rigid in definition. How do we capture that? How do we quantify a variable required for analysis while respecting the population being studied? These are questions I find myself asking as I engage in study design.

Q: How are validity and reliability addressed in some of the measures that you have used in your research?

Reliability and validity are essential to good measurement and, more broadly, good science. Reliability is most often addressed through measures of internal consistency. If the study design allows for it, test-retest reliability is also common in the justification for measures related to identity development and emotional health. I always consider the face validity of scales as a starting point, but then try to address convergent validity for established measures, and concurrent validity when developing new measures.

Q: What do you think quantitative methods offer to the study of adolescents' sexual identities, health, and relationships with media, which is the subject of your scholarly expertise?

Dr. Bond: The benefits of investigating these topics with quantitative methods are numerous, but I would argue that the efforts to draw conclusions that are scientifically objective and generalizable to a larger population are primarily why I'm attracted to social scientific methods. Studies on lesbian, gay, and bisexual adolescent development have historically been conducted from a critical, interpretive lens. Though these studies have made remarkable contributions, their samples are typically very small and their conclusions cannot speak to generalizable patterns or trends within the population. Sexual minority adolescents are a hidden population and, as such, garnering a truly random sample is not practical, so any arguments about generalizability have to be heeded with caution. However, objective analyses of surveys with samples composed of several hundred lesbian, gay, and bisexual teens tell us so much about the population, their experiences, and their well-being that we did not previously understand, and that may ultimately be employed in schools, public health settings, and community groups to help sexual minority youth lead happy, productive, emotionally stable lives.

Social Justice, Measurement, and Avoiding Othering

You can see from this chapter that the researcher has choices to make when defining and operationalizing concepts. Rarely is there only one way to measure a variable. Rather, because concepts are typically broad, multifaceted, and complex, the quantitative social scientist has to think carefully about how to measure the concept in a way that reflects as much of the complexity and richness of its meaning as possible but also is able to be recorded reliably within a standardized set of values determined by the researcher. This is a sticking point among those who find qualitative research and quantitative research to be incompatible. Critics of quantitative methodology feel that the human experience is too complex, contextually determined, and even idiosyncratic to be reduced to the sorts of numbers-as-data measures that quantitative scholars employ. The fact that quantitative researchers themselves typically predetermine the range of values that will be used to measure a concept is also the subject of critique. To do so places the researchers in a more powerful, all-knowing position and requires that they anticipate any possible response, which is a daunting task since researchers themselves are inevitably limited by their own experiences, knowledge, and points of view.

As we have seen, quantitative research frequently uses categories to make sense of how different people might have different experiences or views and/or different responses in surveys or experiments. For instance, conventional practice in survey research is to include **demographic questions** that measure key features of respondents' identities, such as their gender, race, ethnicity, religion, age, class, sexual identity, or other characteristics. Sometimes these factors are at the heart of the research, when, for instance, the researcher is asking research questions pertaining to differences that might be explained by these forms of social group formations. Yet, other times, survey researchers include demographics so that they can see whether relationships between two or more variables at play in their study hold across these forms of social group formation. In either case, however, the researcher likely uses categories to determine whether participants' identification with any number of social groups plays a part in the phenomena observed.

For instance, consider a health communication scholar interested in whether those who identify as women might be more persuaded to become organ donors based on the particular features of a persuasive media message compared to those who identify as men. That scholar may use categories to measure gender identity, placing research participants into groups that include, for instance, "cisgender men," "transgender men," "cisgender women," "transgender women," "third gender/non-binary," "gender fluid," etc. Or a media scholar may be testing whether audiences who vary by race are more or less likely to experience positive mood states after seeing the movie, *Black Panther*. This researcher will need to measure research participants' race in order to test their hypothesis, and they may well employ categories to do so. The Research in Action box has more points to consider about the measurement of race and ethnicity, in particular.

Although this may seem logical and valid, there are a number of important considerations and even limitations when one uses categories to explore or to describe human experience. One important issue is that there is most certainly **variation within those that fall into the same category** so that, for instance, not all Black respondents will feel the same way toward the film *Black Panther*, and not all of those who identify as women will respond the same when encountering a persuasive attempt aimed at organ donation. An important pitfall to try to avoid, therefore, is engaging in essentialism, assuming there is an underlying, unchangeable essence within a category (Medin & Ortony, 1989). Rather, categories can be utilized but still considered to be imperfect rather than essential, and variation within categories can be included in the discussion of results, as well.

Another important issue is that we human beings are, of course, more than just the result of our experiences within one or more forms of social categorization considered individually. Rather, we have a number of differing ways of seeing ourselves that all simultaneously coexist, so that there are multiple, "intersectional" aspects of who we are. ***Intersectionality*** is a term that has long been at the heart of feminist and critical race theory, particularly within Black feminist writing that has spoken to the multiple oppressions of gender and race experienced by women of color (Collins, 2000; Crenshaw, 1989, 1991). Cole (2009) defined intersectionality as "analytic approaches that simultaneously consider the meaning and consequences of multiple categories of identity, difference, and disadvantage" (p. 170). There is evidence that scholars across a number of fields in social science are thinking through the ways in which elements of an intersectional analysis might be advanced using quantitative methods (Choo & Ferree, 2010; Cole, 2009; Else-Quest & Hyde, 2016). Applying these ideas to quantitative research within Communication, the second author of this book has theorized about the Critical Media Effects Framework, which argues for a more nuanced understanding of identities and power relations within media effects scholarship (Ramasubramanian & Banjo, 2020).

Although categories themselves may be viewed as too artificial and too reductionist by some scholars studying intersectionality, it is possible to use multiple categories in quantitative research and recognize that they are intertwined (McCall, 2005). Yet, most agree that simply identifying and employing multiple categories—like gender and race—in research is not sufficient to position that research as intersectional. Rather, identifying ways that social structures and social contexts perpetuate or challenge the power positions and inequalities experienced must also underlie the analysis (Else-Quest & Hyde, 2016).

Another pitfall that the quantitative social scientist may fall into is using categorization to compare a dominant group to a marginalized group, which—without proper consideration of context, history, and social, economic, and cultural forces that help create and maintain those positions of dominance and marginalization—is too easily used to reinforce rather than work to dislodge inequalities. As we have seen in Chapter 1, the use of a "deficit discourse," in which the challenges of those facing oppression are the central focus and in which outcomes

of those in more privileged positions are juxtaposed against those in more marginalized positions, can serve to reify White and patriarchal dominance (Solórzano & Yosso, 2001).

With all of these challenges, then, how *does* one collect quantitative data with a critical consciousness? There are no easy answers, but there are some general suggestions.

- First, we suggest that researchers spend time with the communities they hope to study and listen to and learn from the members of those communities. This will check the researcher's ego, balance the researcher's own subjectivities and understandings of concepts and phenomena, and help come up with language that can be used in the framing of variables and their values or attributes that will be more authentic to research participants.
- Second, and somewhat similarly, conducting a pretest of measures to be used in a study among even a small group from the population of interest will similarly help identify places in which the researcher has fallen short in responding to the range of understandings and experiences reflected in the operationalization of concepts. A **pretest** is an initial inquiry into a research area that is usually less formal and smaller in size or scope compared to the ultimate study. Findings from a pretest can be used to shape the ultimate study.
- Third, researchers should consider employing some open-ended items to measure some aspects of identity such as gender identity, sexual orientation, and race or ethnicity. In doing so, there is no need to anticipate every possible response, and the research participant will not have to experience the feeling of looking in vain for an option that corresponds to their own identity. When we allow respondents to use their own words to describe their identities, the catch-all option of "other" is not necessary and therefore will not run the risk of offending or marginalizing participants. Open-ended data can later be placed into categories, as needed for statistical analysis, as discussed in this chapter.
- Fourth, researchers should consider whether research participants feel safe in participating in the study in addition to whether they feel respected and recognized in interactions with researchers and in completing the study. Measuring variables related to inequalities, oppression, the silencing or the amplification of voice, and the distribution of privilege and power is not only complex but also potentially quite personal and sensitive. Researchers have a responsibility to make sure research participants are provided with the conditions needed to respond to variables tapping some aspect of these concepts in a way that is safe and secure. As we have seen in Chapter 2, the principles and practices of informed consent help address some of the issues of assuring research participants a safe space.
- Finally, researchers must always be critical of themselves and identify and acknowledge their own limitations. There is no such thing as a perfect piece of social justice scholarship. But, as we read in Chapter 1, there is definitely a space for researchers to continually engage in the reflexive process of attempting to design and carry out their studies with integrity and a critical consciousness.

Summary

In order to conduct research with the goal of working toward a more just and equitable society, variables need to be assessed for whether their conceptualization responds sufficiently to multiple ways of knowing and experiencing the world. In coming up with ways to define concepts and develop the options used to measure them, critical quantitative researchers must do their best to avoid assuming there is a single shared understanding or that there is equal

access to the structures of power. We must remember that the identities of the people who we study are complex and their experiences play out in a broader historical, cultural, social, economic, and political context that we should carefully consider as social scientists.

Baked into the methods of quantitative research are processes and procedures in place to guide the researcher in creating data that are valid and reliable and therefore are convincing enough to help make the case for social justice and social change. Constructing variables in a manner that is precise, accurate, clear, and meaningful goes a long way in providing data that people can trust. In order to do so, researchers must be sure their operationalizations of variables meet the standards of solid research design, such as by providing options that are mutually exclusive and exhaustive and in carefully considering levels of measurement.

Researchers will want to consider the full range of meaning in the concepts they are seeking to measure, including whether those concepts have important dimensions to capture or could be best identified through various indicators. At the heart of creating new knowledge using methods from the quantitative toolkit is the balancing of validity and reliability in the research design. Carefully considering both reliability and validity will go a long way in ensuring that the research you are producing is meaningful as well as sound. Reliable and valid data are needed to challenge the structures and policies that keep some in power and some in oppression. In providing data that are both reliable and valid, quantitative researchers have a great deal to offer to policy makers, activists, and organizations working toward social justice.

Discussion Questions and Activities

1. What concepts are you interested in exploring in your own research? Identify at least one concept and then brainstorm two variables that would stem from that concept. Finally, come up with an operational definition of each variable. How, exactly, can your concept of interest be measured?
2. Is there any concept that you think is completely impossible to measure using quantitative methods? What is it? If you push yourself, can you think of at least a partial way to get at that concept through operationalization?
3. How might we measure the concept of prejudice? Come up with two or three ways you might be able to measure the level of research participants' prejudice on a survey by generating both the language for the survey items and the response options. Then, determine the level of measurement for each measure you generated.
4. Why can there be tension between validity and reliability in quantitative research? Explain this in your own words and think of an example that illustrates the tension.
5. Why are conceptualization and measurement so important in producing research for social justice?

References

Babbie, E. (2010). *The practice of social research* (12th ed.). Boston, MA: Cengage Learning.

Babbie, E. (2016). *The basics of social research* (7th ed.). Boston, MA: Cengage Learning.

Ben-David, A., & Matamoros-Fernández, A. (2016). Hate speech and covert discrimination on social media: Monitoring the Facebook pages of extreme right political parties in Spain. *International Journal of Communication*, *10*, 1167–1993. doi:1932-8036/20160005

Choo, H. Y., & Ferree, M. M. (2010). Practicing intersectionality in sociological research: A critical analysis of inclusions, interactions, and institutions in the study of inequalities. *Sociological Theory*, *28*, 129–149. doi:10.1111/j.1467- 9558.2010.01370.x

Cokley, K. (2007). Critical issues in the measurement of racial and ethnic identity: A referendum on the state of the field. *Journal of Counseling Psychology*, *54*, 224–234. doi:10.1037/0022-0167.54.3.224

Cole, E. R. (2009). Intersectionality and research in psychology. *American Psychologist*, *64*, 170–180. doi:10.1037/a0014564

Collins, P. H. (2000). *Black feminist thought: Knowledge, consciousness, and the politics of empowerment* (2nd ed.). New York: Routledge.

Crenshaw, K. (1989). Demarginalizing the intersection of race and sex: A Black feminist critique of antidiscrimination doctrine, feminist theory and antiracist politics. *University of Chicago Legal Forum*, *140*, 139–167.

Crenshaw, K. (1991). Mapping the margins: Intersectionality, identity politics, and violence against women of color. *Stanford Law Review*, *43*, 1241–1299. doi:10.2307/1229039

Davanzo, P., Kerwin, L., Nikore, V., Esparza, C., Forness, S., & Murrelle, L. (2004). Spanish translation and reliability testing of the Child Depression Inventory. *Child Psychiatry and Human Development*, *35*(1), 75–92. doi:10.1023/B:CHUD.0000039321.56041.cd

Else-Quest, N. M., & Hyde, J. S. (2016). Intersectionality in quantitative psychological research: Theoretical and epistemological issues. *Psychology of Women Quarterly*, *40*(2), 155–170. doi:10.1177/0361684316629797

Facebook. (n.d.). *Facebook community standards*. Retrieved from http.//facebook.com/communitystandards

Frey, L. R., & Carragee, K. M. (2007). *Communication activism: Communication for social change*. New York: Hampton Press.

Hall, J. A. (1992). *Development and validation of the Expanded Hypermasculinity Inventory and the Ideology of Machismo Scale* (Unpublished master's thesis). Storrs, CT: University of Connecticut.

Keyton, J. (2015). *Communication research: Asking questions, finding answers* (4th ed.). New York: McGraw Hill.

McCall, L. (2005). The complexity of intersectionality. *Signs: Journal of Women in Culture and Society*, *30*, 1771–1800. doi:10.1086/426800

Medin, D. L., & Ortony, A. (1989). Psychological essentialism. In S. Vosniadou & A. Ortony (Eds.), *Similarity and analogical reasoning* (pp. 179–195). New York: Cambridge University Press.

Mosher, D. L., & Sirkin, M. (1984). Measuring a macho personality constellation. *Journal of Research in Personality*, *18*, 150–163.

Ramasubramanian, S., & Banjo, O. O. (2020). Critical media effects framework: Bridging critical cultural communication and media effects through power, intersectionality, context, and agency. *Journal of Communication*, *70*(3), 379–400. https://doi.org/10.1093/joc/jqaa014

Ritter, B. A. (2014). Deviant behavior in computer-mediated communication: Development and validation of a measure of cybersexual harassment. *Journal of Computer-Mediated Communication*, *9*, 197–214. doi:10.1111/jcc4.12039

Scharrer, E. (2004). Virtual violence: Gender and aggression in video game advertisements. *Mass Communication and Society*, *7*(4), 393–412.

Solórzano, D. G., & Yosso, T. J. (2001). From racial stereotyping and deficit discourse toward a critical race theory in teacher education. *Multicultural Education*, *9*(1), 2.

Wrench, J. S., Thomas-Maddox, C., Peck Richmond, V., & McCroskey, J. C. (2008). *Quantitative research methods for communication*. New York: Oxford University Press.

4 Sampling and Representation

Through social research, we can provide a space for people to lend their voices and be heard. In research that involves people as participants, the researcher typically will decide who will be asked to participate in the study, thereby determining the group that provides the data. When research involves getting input from people, those chosen to constitute the research sample are given voice. They have the chance to have new knowledge built from their experiences and points of view. Research participants have direct representation in that they can speak for themselves when filling out questionnaires or otherwise providing data. And when they are selected carefully, as you will see in this chapter, research participants have the potential to indirectly represent others from the same population who do not directly participate in the research.

We saw in Chapter 3 that a single way of measuring a complex variable is likely to fall short of capturing the complete set of understandings and meanings of concepts that exist in the social world. Similarly, no one group of research participants can fully capture the entire range of experiences and points of view that operate in the wider group from which those participants are selected. However, as you will read in this chapter, there *are* ways to select research participants that do the best job possible of those participants standing in for the larger group from which they were selected, even if that ability to represent the larger group is not perfect. Carefully chosen research samples, then, can be used to extrapolate to a wider body. And when particular sampling procedures are followed, the idea of giving voice is amplified beyond those directly studied into larger populations, a unique strength of quantitative research for social justice.

Sampling is the process of "deciding what to observe and what not to observe" (Babbie, 2010, p. 189). It sounds so straightforward, and in many ways it is. But, just like with any researcher-originated decision, there are a number of key considerations and important implications when deciding how to draw a research sample. Thankfully, as we have seen with the process of operationalization, there are widely accepted guidelines, principles, and approaches, many of which are established through applying the principles of the scientific method. In this chapter, we will introduce those guidelines, principles, and approaches as well as consider the social justice implications of each.

The question of who or what will comprise the research sample is vitally important in quantitative social science research. In fact, it is one of the central elements of what we have called "the power of numbers." One of the chief strengths of quantitative research is its ability to explore patterns that are determined to be widely shared—or, conversely, are shown to be relatively rare—within a large and potentially heterogeneous group. As we saw in Chapter 1, qualitative research typically uses small samples and is not always concerned about generalizing findings to a larger population. Qualitative research, therefore, can tell us a whole lot about a relatively small body of people or of texts. But those observations may well be quite unique to that small group, and therefore their applicability to a broader body can be limited.

In quantitative research, we draw somewhat less detailed observations from a larger body of people or of texts. In doing so, we strive to say something more widespread and more general about the phenomenon we are studying. That is a major opportunity for social scientists attempting to understand and to try to change the world around them.

Samples and Populations

Almost all social science research involves sampling. If you are interested in surveying adolescents to ask whether they have encountered bullying on social media because, for instance, their gender expression does not conform to "traditional" gender roles and norms, you have to determine which adolescents to survey. If you want to study whether people experiencing threats to their mental health are depicted in popular films as violent and dangerous, you have to decide which films you will analyze to explore this question. Clearly, it is not feasible to study all adolescents who exist on the planet or even all films that have ever been made, and therefore you must decide which subset you will study.

If you *could* study all adolescents or all films, that is known as capturing the **population** in your research, with *population* defined as the entire set of research units of interest. Quantitative researchers typically want to draw conclusions about the population. Defined as "the totality of people or elements to be represented in the sample" (Anderson, 2012, p. 164) or "an entire set of objects, observations, or scores that have some characteristic in common" (Wrench, Thomas-Maddox, Peck Richmond, & McCroskey, 2008, p. 216), the population includes every single potential member of the body of people or of texts the researcher is seeking to observe (Figure 4.1). If you can gather data from the entire

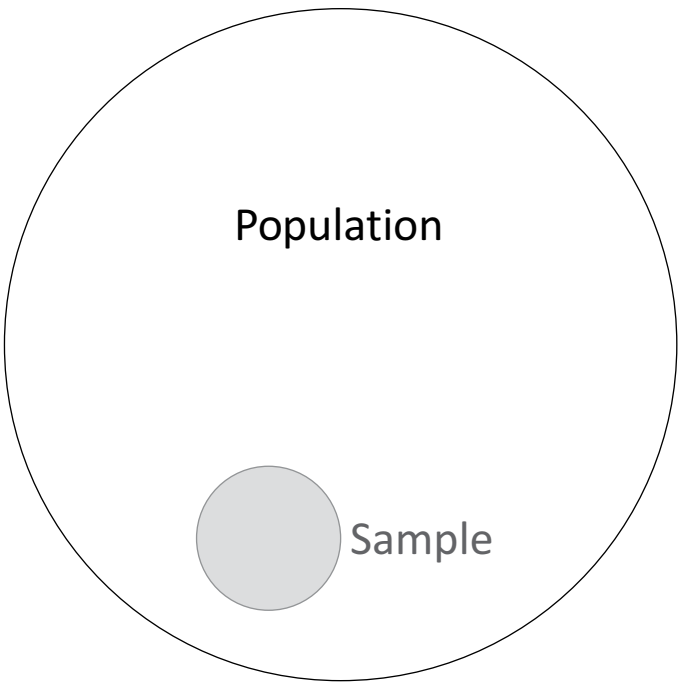


Figure 4.1 Population and sample

Source: Stephen Warren

population, sampling from that population is not necessary. Researchers who study the entire population of interest in their research have taken what is called a **census** rather than a sample.

Although it is rare in social science to be able to make observations about the population in its totality, it is not unheard of. If, in the words of Wrench and colleagues (2008, p. 216), the "characteristic in common" that defines the population is somewhat narrow, it *is* possible to study the whole population. For instance, maybe you are interested in how the decision to withdraw U.S. troops from Syria was covered in the *New York Times* in the month following the announcement. You could certainly capture all such news items in the *Times* to make your observations. Or, if you go to a rally against hate speech on your own local college campus and are interested in finding out what inspired people to attend, you could conceivably survey all those present at the rally.

For many studies, however, constraints involving lack of access, time, or funding make it difficult or even impossible to capture the entire population, and therefore the researcher must decide how to go about sampling. For quantitative research, one of the chief goals is to establish the **generalizability of findings**, or the ability of the observations made from the sample to closely match observations that would appear if the researcher *had* been able to study the entire population. It is important to be able to say that observations made within a chosen sample are likely to reflect, relatively accurately, the larger population from which the sample was drawn. It is precisely these observations of the wide social world that quantitative researchers try to make.

The Representativeness of Samples

Establishing the ability of a sample to generalize to a population is closely related to the concepts of validity and reliability that we explored in Chapter 3. As we have seen, quantitative research seeks to be both valid and reliable. It seeks to be valid in that the data it collects should tell us something meaningful and accurate about the phenomenon being studied. And it seeks to be reliable in that results should be able to be produced with a fair degree of consistency if the study were to be repeated.

One important form of validity is **external validity**, or the degree to which results can be generalized beyond the scope of the individual study. If you find a result in one sample, in order to conclude that the result is meaningful and accurate, you should be able to find the same result (more or less) in additional samples from the same population, as well. This is because a study with strong external validity is able to observe something that would actually be occurring broadly in the wider world rather than only within the study itself. A study has external validity if the observations made in the study apply beyond the specific circumstances—the people, the timing, the setting, etc.—in which it was examined.

Consider a study, for instance, that finds that, within a sample of college students, the higher the students' levels of empathy, the stronger their emotional responses to news coverage of war. It would be important to test whether that same relationship between empathy and emotional responses appears within another sample of college students before we can make decisive conclusions. Better yet, we could see if the observed relationship between the two variables (empathy and emotional responses) extends beyond students to a non-student sample that is more heterogeneous in age and education. If it did, a quantitative scholar would feel more confident concluding that empathy and emotional responses to news coverage of war were related not just in research studies but more broadly in the "real world." This is the essence of external validity.

Figure 4.2 Scholar Spotlight: Dr. Muniba Saleem

Scholar Spotlight: Dr. Muniba Saleem

Dr. Muniba Saleem is an associate professor in the Department of Communication at University of California, Santa Barbara and a faculty associate at the Institute for Social Research at the University of Michigan. She studies how media influences interpersonal and intergroup relations. Her work on media influence on the ethnic and national identities of immigrants, acculturation, and immigrants' trust in U.S. government and relations with majority-group members has been published in some of the top Communication and Psychology journals in the field. Dr. Saleem has been called upon to be an expert source for both local and national news outlets, including *NPR* and the *Huffington Post*. Her research (co-authored with Dr. Srividya Ramasubramanian, the second author of this book) was cited and discussed in *amicus curiae* briefs that were submitted to the U.S. Supreme Court and lower courts in support of the plaintiffs in *Hawaii* v. *Trump*, 585 U.S. _ (2018) opposing the executive order often referred to as the "Muslim Ban."

Q: What factors guide sampling decisions in your research? How do you strive for generalizability when drawing a research sample, for instance?

Dr. Saleem: The overall goals of the research and the design are important in guiding my sampling decisions. For instance, if I am interested in testing theoretical propositions of a model and I expect to use random assignment to compare differences between groups, I would be fine with a student or MTurk sample.[1] If however, the research question is more applied and is testing a real-world phenomenon and/or

is using cross-sectional or longitudinal designs, I would prefer a more representative sample so the findings can be generalizable.

Q: What are some of the opportunities and challenges you've encountered in sampling?

Dr. Saleem: I have worked with majority and minority racial groups in my research. Overall, working with majority group samples is relatively easier than working with minority groups. This is because these samples can easily be acquired through college subject pools, MTurk, and/or by hiring companies that can find representative numbers on the specific criteria you desire (e.g., political orientation). In addition, such work is often perceived by reviewers to be more generalizable and representative of general human behavior. Working with racial minority samples is difficult given that they are not readily available in college subject pools, MTurk, and through research polling companies. Getting access to this sample requires networking and searching for organizations through which you can reach out to this sample. Given the added effort and time required in recruiting, the cost of a research project involving racial minority samples is often more than the cost of a sample not requiring racial minorities. Even if you get access to racial minorities, they are often suspicious of whether the research is being used in a manner that targets them individually or as a group. This can lead to low recruitment, attrition, or lower quality data. Another challenge I have encountered is that reviewers are often more critical of research using racial minority samples than research that does not use racial minorities. This is, unfortunately, due to a lack of knowledge about the studied group; questions surrounding the justification for why the specific, relative to another, minority group was chosen; and/or inquiries regarding how generalizable the findings found using a racial minority sample are to the "general population."

Q: One challenge for quantitative researchers is to obtain sufficiently large samples of non-dominant or minoritized groups. What are some of the approaches you have used to include members of non-dominant groups in your studies?

Dr. Saleem: Many of my recent research questions are focused on racial minority samples. I have made extra effort to engage with the communities I am interested in studying. For instance, it is important to reach out directly to community leaders and organizations that cater to minority groups to establish communication and trust. Researchers also have to make an honest effort to understand the issues and concerns that are important to the community they aim to recruit from. This entails attending student and community events affiliated with the group, hearing the perspectives of community members, discussing the importance of research for the group, and offering to share and learn from the findings of the research study.

Q: Why do you think quantitative methods, in general, are important for studying the issues and topics you take up in your research?

Dr. Saleem: I appreciate that the data are objective and the findings that emerge are not subject to my interpretation or bias. The potential to discuss causation from experimental designs is another advantage. Finally, the ability to meta-analyze multiple studies on the same topic can uncover generalizability and limitations of a particular finding.

[1] *MTurk is an abbreviation for Amazon's Mechanical Turk crowdsourcing marketplace platform that researchers have used to pay individuals to participate in or assist with their research.*

One way of attempting to achieve generalizability of findings is carefully considering the degree to which a single sample used for a study is **representative** of the larger population from which it is drawn. Are the college students in the sample described in the earlier hypothetical study clustered around particular majors like Journalism or Communication that might already be sensitized to the topic of news coverage of war? How do the demographics of the student research participants in the study match up with the demographic composition of all of the students at the college from which the sample was selected, or even college students in the U.S. (or any location) in general? The stronger the claim that the sample used for the study generalizes to or reflects the population as a whole, the stronger the external validity of the study.

Although *generalizability* and *representativeness* are sometimes used interchangeably, it is useful to think of **representativeness** as applying to samples and **generalizability** as applying to findings (Gobo, 2004). Representative samples are generally assumed to produce generalizable findings, but such an outcome is not a guarantee. Even if you have a representative sample that does an excellent job of standing in for the larger population, you may not always produce generalizable findings that reflect what is actually present in the population (Figure 4.3). This is because other things can go awry, such as threats to validity associated

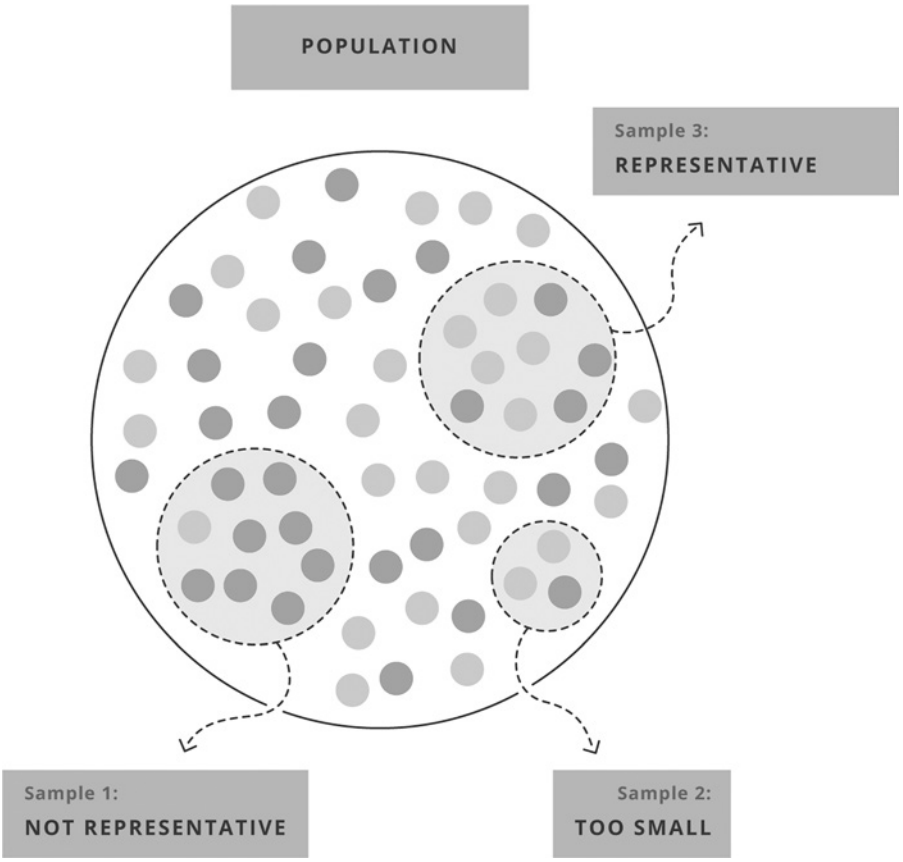


Figure 4.3 Sampling and the concept of representativeness

Source: Martyn Shuttleworth, Lyndsay T Wilson (Nov 15, 2008). What is Generalization?. Retrieved Jun 03, 2020 from Explorable.com: https://explorable.com/what-is-generalization

with operationalization or errors or biases in how participants respond to items and provide data. In order to know for sure whether results from a sample can generalize to the wider population, one would have to study the entire population. That, as we have seen, can be quite difficult if not downright impossible if the population is too large or too difficult to capture in a census.

Nonetheless, the goals of obtaining representative samples and generalizable findings are exceptionally useful when researchers want to make a case that what they are finding is not the result of a sample selection process but rather is a broader phenomenon likely to be found in the wider world. Quantitative researchers employing sound strategies to address representativeness and generalizability, for instance, cannot be accused of "cherry picking" only those cases that would support a particular conclusion. Imagine that a hypothesis is supported in a sample that was not chosen for any pre-existing connection to the phenomenon being studied. This strengthens the claim that the phenomenon is widely experienced. For social justice research, in particular, quantitative analysis can be used to "bolster the impact of small sample qualitative findings by documenting the 'representativeness' of oppressive conditions in larger representative samples" (Ponterotto, Mathew, & Raughley, 2013, p. 48). Indeed, this type of research can show that an experience of oppression—or, conversely, of dominance and/or privilege—is widely shared across members of a particular social group, which is a vitally important observation for social justice.

Probability Sampling

The primary way to ensure that a sample is representative of the population that it seeks to reflect is to use probability sampling. In **probability sampling**, every unit of the population has an equal chance of being selected to comprise the sample. This is accomplished by using **random selection**. If each unit comprising the sample is chosen randomly—meaning, once again, that each potential unit has an equal chance of being selected—the researcher can avoid **bias** or undue influence on the sampling procedure that might result in the sample being skewed in some manner.

Research methods guru Earl Babbie (2010) reminds us that, "In connection with sampling, bias simply means that those selected are not typical or representative of the larger populations that they have been chosen from. This kind of bias does not have to be intentional. In fact, it is virtually inevitable when you pick people by the seat of your pants" (p. 197). Biases can seep in consciously or unconsciously. In either case, the result is a sample that does not reflect the population, which threatens generalizability of findings.

The researcher drawing a random sample has a number of options to use. One common method of probability sampling is the **simple random sample** (Figure 4.4). In order to draw a simple random sample, the researcher must have an exhaustive list of every unit in the population, also known as the **sampling frame**. The units in that list are assigned numbers (if they do not already have them), and a random number generator selects numbers within that range to constitute the sample. For instance, to obtain a simple random sample of students on a college campus, a list of all currently enrolled students could be obtained from the registrar and then numbered. If there are, for instance, 10,000 student names, the researcher could program a random number generator to provide 100 random selections between 1 and 10,000. The students assigned to each of those 100 numbers would then comprise a simple random sample of 100 students that could be used in research to represent the larger student body.

Wondering how to access a random number generator? It used to be routine practice to print a table of random numbers in quantitative research methods books or statistics textbooks for many decades, and some of them still contain such a feature. Yet, the modern

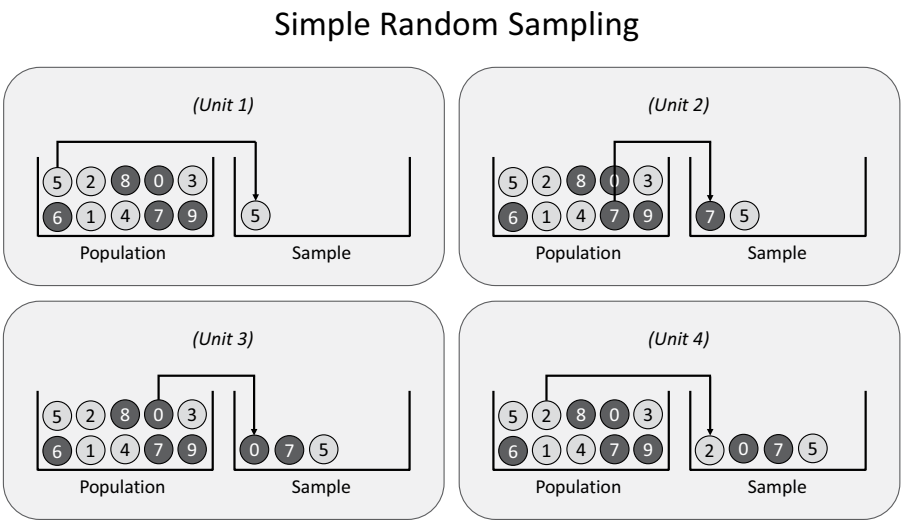


Figure 4.4 Simple random sampling

Source: Stephen Warren

researcher can also use one of many free online programs to generate random numbers within defined ranges, as well. As of this writing, random number generators can be found online at https://andrew.hedges.name/experiments/random/; randomnumbergenerator.com; or randomizer.org.

A variation on the simple random sample method is the **stratified random sample**. This technique is useful when the population can be divided into subgroups ("**strata**") that are distinct from one another and the researcher wants to obtain observations from each group. In the case of the students on a college campus, for instance, perhaps you have a research question in mind for which it is necessary to compare first-year students with seniors. You could stratify the sample by obtaining a comprehensive list of each (a list of first years and a list of seniors), and then you could draw two separate simple random samples from each list. Together, you would have the sample you need to study similarities or differences between first-year students and seniors. In the process of selection, each of the first years and each of the seniors, in turn, had an equal chance of selection for inclusion in the sample.

Importantly, to draw a stratified random sample, you need to ensure the proportion of the subgroups in the sample is the same as the proportion of subgroups in the population (Figure 4.5). For instance, if there are 3,000 first-year students and 4,000 seniors in the population and you want to create a stratified random sample that is 10% of the population, you would need to select 300 first-year students (10% of the total 3,000 first-year students) and 400 seniors (10% of the total 4,000 seniors) to include in your sample.

Another probability sampling technique that is quite commonly used by Communication researchers and other social scientists is **systematic sampling**, which is often easier to accomplish than simple random sampling. It can get quite tedious to obtain as many as 100 or more random numbers as is necessary for a simple random sample. In systematic sampling, once you have obtained a comprehensive list of population units, you choose an interval at

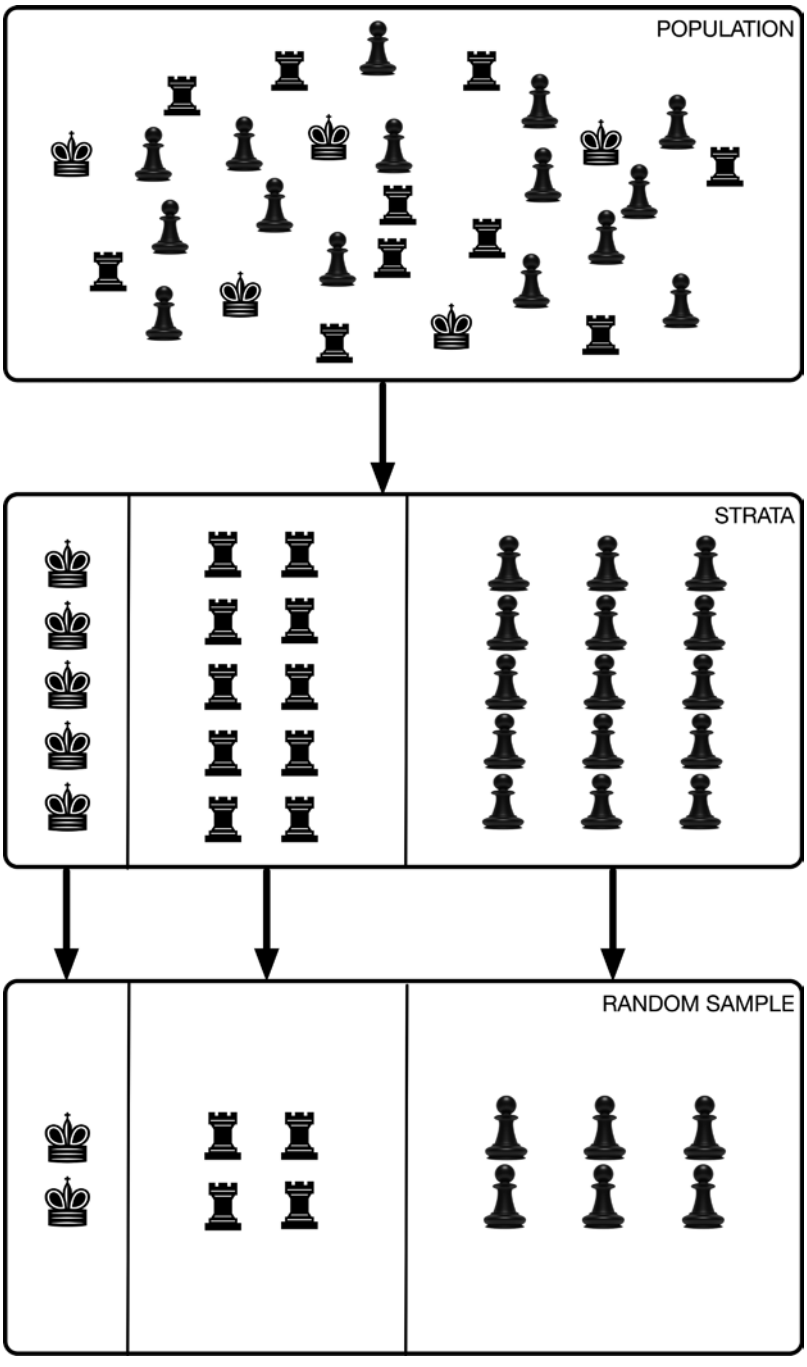


Figure 4.5 In stratified random sampling first the population is divided by specific sample characteristics. Then, from each stratum, a random sample is selected

Source: Stephen Warren

which to select units from the list rather than using random numbers. You can determine the interval based on the total number you would like to wind up with for your sample.

If you want to study about 200 comments posted to a controversial YouTube video at one particular point in time, for instance, and that video has 2,422 comments when you are doing your analysis, you could choose every 10th comment to study and end up with a sample of 242 comments. Ten would be the interval that you used to obtain your systematic sample. Or, if you had a list of 4,000 members of gay-straight alliance groups from high schools around the country, you could choose every 15th person on the list to derive a systematic sample of 266 members. Figure 4.6 shows a systematic sample in which the researcher chose a starting point (in this case, the second unit) and then chose every third unit.

These examples bring up a related term that is important to introduce. The **sampling ratio** is determined by dividing the sample size by the size of the population. A sample of 200 YouTube comments from the total of 2,422 comments, for instance, has a sampling ratio of .08 (200 divided by 2,422). A sample of 266 members of the total 4,000 members of high school gay-straight alliance groups has a sampling ratio of .07 (266 divided by 4,000). If you have a particular goal in mind for the sampling ratio, you can use that to determine what interval should be used in a systematic sample.

As long as the list has no particular pattern in it, systematic sampling works efficiently and well. Beware of whether the list *does* have a pattern. For example, consider a list of college students that for some reason was organized by listing first a first-year, then a sophomore, then a junior, and then a senior, and then repeating that pattern. If you selected every 3rd student on the list, you would end up with an entire sample of juniors rather than having a broad distribution across class years.

Another type of probability sampling is **cluster sampling** also known as **multistage sampling**, used when there is both a population and a subpopulation of interest, with the subpopulation nested within the population. Such sampling typically involves two steps, which is why it is often called multistage sampling. First, the main population elements are sampled. Then, one or more subpopulations within that resulting sample are sampled. For example, if you were interested in studying opinions among residents of a selected city, you could begin by listing all blocks in the city and then randomly select some blocks. Once you have selected

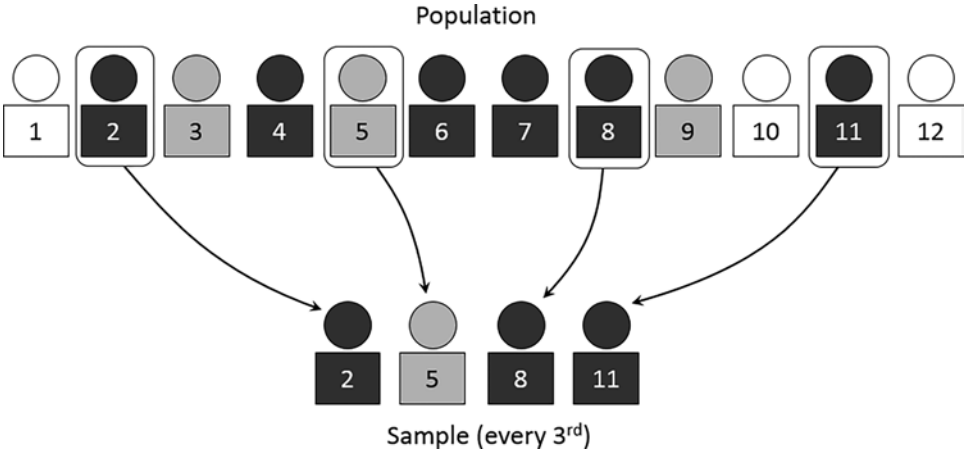


Figure 4.6 In systematic sampling, every *n*th item is selected from the population

Source: Dan Kernler, https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Systematic_sampling.PNG

those blocks, you could determine the total number of households on each selected block and then randomly select households. The households are clustered or nested within blocks in this example, and thus the sampling process takes two steps. Researchers use this approach to sampling when there are different levels of populations of interest, like a subgroup within a group, and therefore the sampling approach calls for making selections in more than one stage or step.

Nonprobability Sampling

Despite the benefits of probability sampling for adhering to the principles of the scientific method and ruling out bias in sample selection, many times obtaining a probability sample is simply not possible. Our hypothetical list of 4,000 members of gay-straight alliances in high schools across the country is an example of a list that would be exceptionally difficult to obtain. For the occasions when you simply cannot take a random selection from a comprehensive list, there are a number of **nonprobability sampling** techniques used quite commonly in Communication and other social sciences. Carefully constructed nonprobability samples can still lend important insights into the social world, so do not despair if your research takes you to this set of sampling approaches. Yet, a good principle to uphold is that when you *can* use probability sampling techniques in quantitative research, you *should* do so.

One common approach in which the researcher samples from a population in a nonrandom manner (in which potential members of the sample do *not* have an equal chance of selection) is a **convenience sample,** composed simply of what or who is available. If you are interested in exploring what people think of a Massachusetts law that protects the right to use a bathroom or locker room that corresponds with one's gender identity, for example, you

Figure 4.7 Convenience sampling is a type of nonprobability sampling where the items are selected based on ease of reach and access

Source: Emily Riewestahl

might ask a group of people to which you have access to fill out a survey on the topic. A college professor, for instance, could ask some students on campus. A college student doing their own research could ask all of the members of a residence hall who they encounter in a single day. A person could stop folks at the mall or in the center of town or any other busy place and ask them. The same convenience might apply to media texts rather than human research participants. For example, if you want to know how many Asian or Asian American actors appear in primetime television programs, you could program your DVR one night to record as many primetime shows as you can and examine the casts of the programs you capture.

It should be clear that samples such as these are inherently quite limited in their ability to represent a larger entity, and therefore findings from studies that use convenience samples are not generalizable to wider populations. All sorts of biases are likely to occur in the convenience sample examples we listed, both conscious biases and unconscious ones. What if the college professor polling students about the law regarding gender identity and bathrooms/locker rooms does so by approaching students in front of a building where only engineering majors take classes? The professor might only get the views of students within that one major rather than those from a broader cross-section of majors. What if the single night of programs recorded on the DVR was different from the other nights of primetime programming in some relevant way, like it happens to have more or less Asian or Asian American actor presence? These are just a couple of many limitations to the scenarios listed here. Fundamentally, convenience samples simply cannot accurately reflect the larger population of interest.

A nonprobability sampling option that is likely to be superior to convenience sampling (but still inferior to probability sampling) is **purposive sampling**. In purposive sampling, samples are selected because the researcher has logically determined that they reflect the characteristics that form the basis of the research. This type of sample is useful when there is "a small subset of a larger population in which many members of the subset are easily identified, but the enumeration of them all would be nearly impossible" (Babbie, 2010, p. 193). In other words, you know who (or what) you would like to study and you can access some members of (or units in) that group of interest, but you cannot obtain a comprehensive list of all members of (or units in) the group.

For example, if you are interested in whether adolescents experience body image disturbances from seeing beauty ideals presented through social media, you could visit a local high school and secure permission to survey a few classes. The classes are chosen strategically to yield adolescents of the age you have determined to be of interest for the study, but there is no random selection involved in selecting either students or classes that would provide the data. In a content analysis example of purposive sampling, Susan Mello (2015) set out to study the health information that new and expecting mothers were receiving about environmental risks to infants' health. Mello first informally polled new mothers and mothers expecting a child to find out where they were most likely to receive health information. From their identification of sources (magazines, websites, and general news), Mello selected content from "parenting websites with the highest traffic rates during the prior year. . . , parenting magazines with the highest circulation rates during the prior 6 months" (p. 1247) and news stories found in the database LexisNexis over a 6-month period. The selection of this content was purposefully chosen, as you can see, but it did not contain a random selection element.

A third type of nonprobability sampling is **quota sampling**, an approach that starts with the identification of attributes of the population of interest (like percentage of the population that are women and/or people of color) and then selects participants (without a random selection process) until the sample contains the same proportions of those attributes as the population does. In other words, researchers set a quota for a desired number of participants

who meet the attribute they are focusing on and then invite participants to the study until that quota is met.

Imagine you are interested in testing whether Black football fans in the U.S. are more likely to agree with players kneeling during the national anthem in support of the Black Lives Matter movement compared to White football fans. You may decide to set a quota in which 50% of the sample identifies as Black and 50% identifies as White. To engage in quota sampling, you keep inviting people to participate in your study until that 50–50 distribution is achieved. If this sounds like stratified sampling to you, you are correct. Quota sampling is just like stratified sampling except that the sample is not chosen at random.

The first author of this book used quota sampling in her research by employing the research company Qualtrics to obtain a sample that reflects the racial and ethnic distributions found in the U.S. census (Scharrer & Blackburn, 2018). Participants signed up for and took the study until the predetermined quotas for race and ethnicity were met. The approach has the advantage of including people of color in the sample in equal proportions to their population in the U.S.

Finally, **snowball sampling** is another method of nonprobability sampling in which the same purposive choices as named earlier identify one or more relevant members of the sample and then those members, in turn, suggest others in a fashion that "snowballs" into a large sample. Once you have one research participant agree to be in the sample, for instance, that participant can put you in touch with others they know, and so on and so on until a sample is achieved. This approach can be useful in studying populations that are hard to reach (like members of the antifa movement, for instance) but, as is the case with the other nonprobability sampling methods explained here, simply cannot represent the entire population.

There may be multiple reasons why populations are hard to reach. A hard-to-reach population may be small in size, difficult to locate or identify, and/or may be stigmatized. Snowball sampling is quite common in social justice research, particularly when gathering data from stigmatized groups. For instance, Liang Chen, Yu Guo, and Jingyuan Shi (2019) used snowball sampling to sample gay men living with HIV/AIDS in China to study their use of social media as a means of social support.

Getting Mathy

We have established that probability samples are superior to nonprobability samples in quantitative research, but we have not yet shared the details about why that is the case. The answer can be found in probability theory. We find that an apt metaphor for how probability theory works with sampling is to think of a box of multi-colored marbles that contains the entire population of interest. You reach into that box of marbles once to grab a handful, and that handful comprises your sample. What are the odds that your handful reflects the same distribution of colors (the same number of blue, yellow, and red marbles, for instance) as were present in the population—the entire contents of the box—as a whole? What if you did the same thing again? How likely is that second handful to reflect the original proportions of blue, yellow, and red marbles? Each handful is like a sample in research and the entire box of marbles is the population.

One major advantage of employing random sampling techniques is that doing so allows you to apply probability theory to formally estimate how likely your sample is to have captured what is going on in the larger population. In order to proceed with the logic and a bit of the math behind these processes, it is necessary first to define parameters and statistics. A **parameter** is what a variable would look like if you were able to know how it exists fully in the

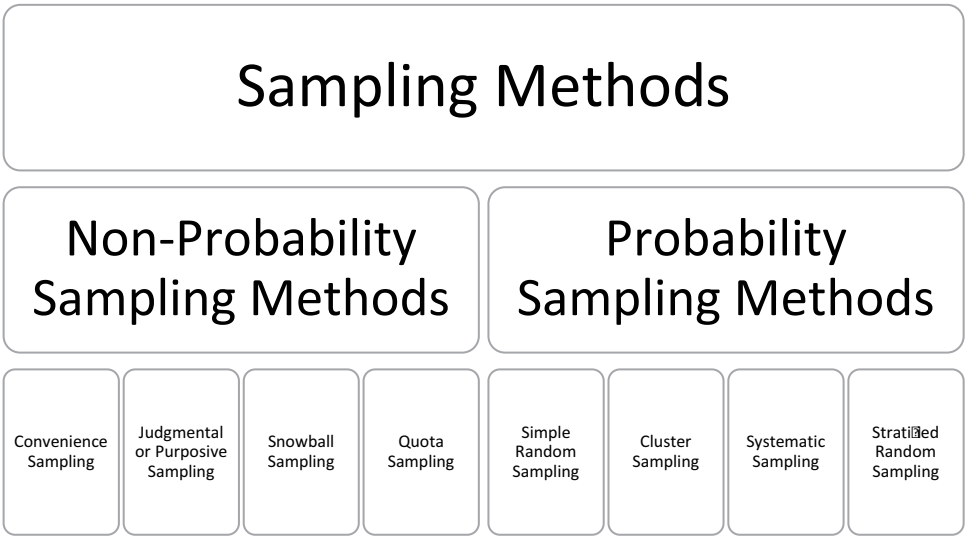


Figure 4.8 Types of sampling methods

Source: Stephen Warren

entire population. A **statistic** is what the variable looks like in the sample you have drawn for your research. Now we will talk about how to determine the distance between those two things—how likely is it that the statistic matches the parameter? The difference between the population parameter and the sample statistic is **sampling error**.

With probability samples, you can actually use some basic mathematical principles to estimate sampling error, so that you know just how likely your results are to stand in well for a larger population. Nonprobability samples, alas, simply do not have the necessary qualities to allow for these calculations. What are those qualities, you ask? The most important quality is that for probability samples, the **central limit theorem** shows that taking multiple samples from the population—and thereby deriving multiple statistics on a variable of interest—will result in statistics that cluster around the mean of the population parameter. Once enough samples are selected from the population, those statistics will be distributed in a bell-shaped curve with what we call a **normal distribution**, clustered around the mean of the population and then tailing out from that center point on each side, as seen in Figure 4.10.

A real-world example should help illustrate this point. Assume that we sample 100 women residents of a local town and we ask them a yes or no question: Have you ever experienced sexual harassment on the job? In that sample, we yield a statistic that shows 38% answered in the affirmative. We now sample another 100 women, and this time 45% say they have been sexually harassed. We sample again, with 200 participants this time, and 40% say yes. Next time, among 85 participants, 39% say yes. If we take a smaller sample, say just 30 or 40 women, the statistic might vary from the estimates established in the larger samples a bit more widely. We might get a result of 22% or 59% answering in the affirmative, for instance. Etc. etc. This process goes on.

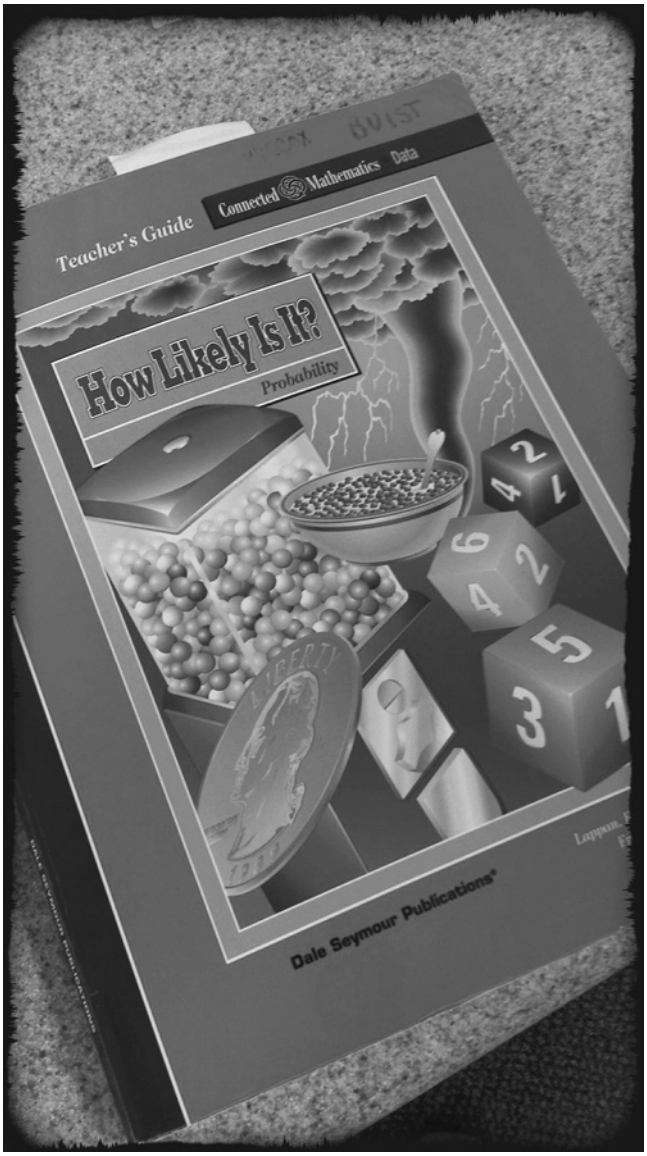


Figure 4.9 Probability textbook

Source: "Photo 221/365: My favorite book #edugood." buistbunch, www.flickr.com/photos/63875226@N04/9476936946

If we plot all of those results—each of the statistics—together in a graph, the central limit theorem shows that those multiple sample statistics that we have drawn will be arrayed in such a way that they will cluster around the population mean and will be distributed in a normal, bell-shaped curve around that mean. The population mean is what we would have found had we been able to study *all* women residents of the local town. The statistics from the larger samples will do a better job of bunching up in the center of the curve, whereas

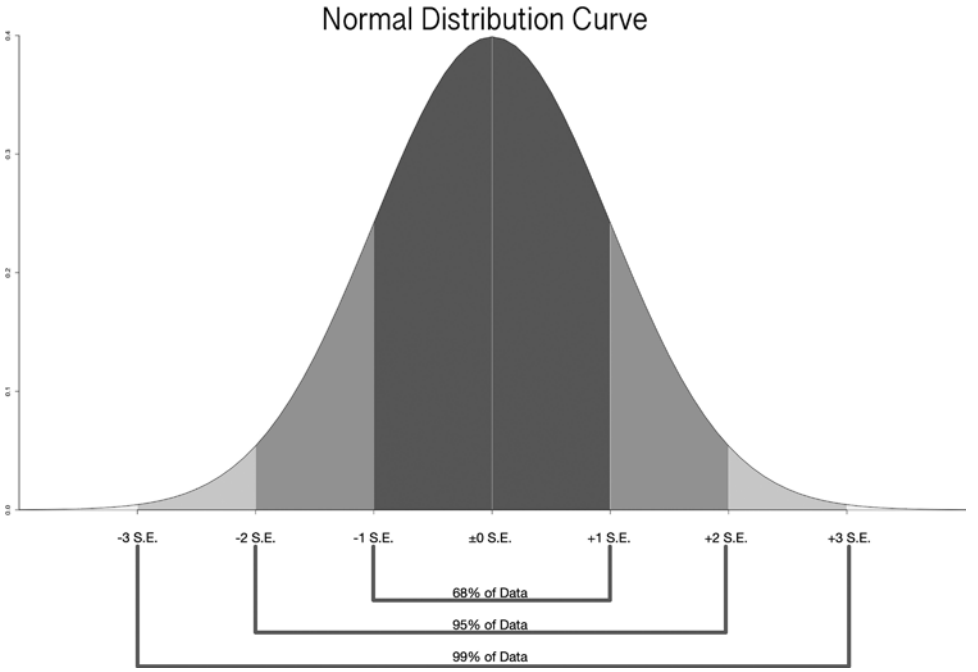


Figure 4.10 Normal distribution curve

Source: M. W. Toews, https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Standard_deviation_diagram.svg

the statistics in the smaller samples may end up in the tails of the bell-shaped curve. In our example, if the statistics from all of those samples end up clustering around 41%, we can estimate that 41% was the value of the population parameter. In other words, we can reasonably assume in our example that if we had been able to study the entire population of women residents of the town, we would have found that 41% reported having experienced sexual harassment on the job.

Having "Confidence" in Your Sample

Even with probability samples, sampling error depends not just on sample size but also on how much variation there is in the population. It stands to reason that the more consistent (the less varied) the population parameter, the more likely any given sample would be able to approximate that population parameter. The Pew Research Center estimated in 2017, for instance, that 81% of Black respondents in its national poll considered racism to be a major problem in society (Neal, 2017). If you were to draw samples of Black respondents, given how widespread this view is within that population, chances are you would find estimates of agreement that racism is a major societal problem that correspond fairly closely to such a widely held view among the overall population. Sampling errors will be smaller, therefore, when populations are more homogeneous on the question of interest.

When you calculate sampling error, the estimate you come up with is called **standard error**. Standard error is a mathematical function of the distribution of the population parameter (which accounts for variation as we have explained) and the sample size. For a variable that

has just two values—like our yes or no question to women about having experienced sexual harassment—standard error can be calculated by taking the square root of the product of the distribution of that statistic (the proportion of women who said yes times the proportion who said no) divided by the sample size. Let us go back to our example in which we estimated 41% of women reported sexual harassment on the job, leaving 59% who had not, and plug in a sample size of 100. The formula for standard error for this illustration, then, would be the square root of .41 x .59 divided by 100, which equals .049, which we can round to .05.

Computers can (and will!) do this math for you, so there is no need to memorize the formula or even, frankly, to run through an example of estimating standard error yourself. In fact, when variables have more than just two values (which many do), the math gets exponentially more complicated. Yet, it *is* important to know the logic behind how researchers can make claims about the odds that their samples have captured the population parameter. In order to do so, we have to add one more layer of complexity to this logic.

Statisticians have determined that if multiple samples are taken at random from a population—as we have also explained—34% of those sample estimates will fall within one standard error below the population parameter, and 34% will fall within one standard error above the population parameter. For our example, then, for which we calculated a standard error of .05, which is also known as 5%, we would add that 5% to the estimated result of 41% and come up with 46%. We would also subtract 5% from 41% to account for the other side (below) the population parameter and come up with 36%. Together, then, on both sides of the population parameter, 68% of the samples (34% times 2) we could take from the population will yield estimates between 36% and 46%.

Statisticians have also determined that 95% of the samples we could randomly draw from a population will yield statistics that are plus or minus two standard errors from the population parameter. In our example, then, two standard errors would be .05 times 2 or .10 or 10%. So, 95% of the samples we could draw from the population would produce estimates within 31% (calculated from 41% – 10%) and 51% (calculated from 41% + 10%), still clustering around the population parameter of 41%, but now a bit more widely.

Finally, statisticians have determined that 99.9% of the samples we could draw will yield statistics that are plus or minus three standard errors from the population parameter. If we were to apply the three standard error increments to our example, we would be at 15% (.05 times 3). Therefore, all but one in a thousand (99.9%) of the samples we could draw from the population in our illustration would produce sample statistics between 26% (41% – 15%) and 56% (41% + 15%), now clustering decidedly less closely (i.e., dispersed more widely) around the population parameter of 41%.

We hope you have noticed in the preceding paragraphs that the odds of obtaining a sample statistic that will cluster closely around the population parameter are smaller, whereas the odds of obtaining a sample statistic that is dispersed more widely away from the population parameter are greater. In other words, we can be more confident that our sample estimate is within a wider range of values surrounding the population parameter compared to a narrower range. This is the final piece of the puzzle in sampling logic, and it introduces the key terms **confidence level** and **confidence interval**, as Earl Babbie (2010, p. 206) explains:

> Whereas probability theory specifies that 68% of that fictitious large number of samples would produce estimates failing within one standard error of the parameter, we can turn the logic around and infer that any single random sample estimate has a 68 percent chance of falling within that range. . . . We express the accuracy of our sample statistics in terms of a level of confidence that the statistics fall within a specified interval from the parameter. For example, we may say that we are 95 percent confident that our sample

> statistics . . . are within plus or minus five percentage points of the population parameter. As the confidence interval is expanded for a given statistic, our confidence increases. For example, we may say we are 99.9 percent confident that our statistic falls within three standard errors of the true value.

This discussion might remind you of the **margin of error**, as reported in public opinion polls. Indeed, the margin of error is based on confidence intervals. The Pew Research Center reports on its American Trends Panel data, for instance, that the data they display from U.S. adults who are categorized as Baby Boomers is derived from a sample size of 3,983 respondents and carries a margin of error of 2.6 percentage points (Parker, Graf, & Igielnik, 2019a). A poll found that 37% of Baby Boomers approve of NFL players kneeling during the national anthem at sporting events (Parker, Graf, & Igielnik, 2019b). We can assume at the 68% confidence level that the population parameter (if we were able to poll every single Baby Boomer) is somewhere between 34.4% and 39.6% who approve of this practice (calculated by subtracting and then adding 2.6% to 37%, respectively). We can assume at the 95% confidence level that the population parameter is somewhere between 31.8% and 42.2% (subtracting and then adding 5.2%—2.6% times 2—to 37%, respectively). Interestingly, in the same poll, 61% of those in the Gen Z generation and 62% of Millennials said they approved of football players taking a knee during the anthem.

Determining Sample Size

Although we have established the general rule that bigger is better in terms of sample size, there is also the issue of **diminishing returns**. Not only can very large samples be expensive and/or incredibly difficult to attain, but mathematically, the advantage of increased accuracy in generalizing to the population associated with ever-expanding sample sizes becomes smaller and smaller to the point that it will eventually be negligible. This is why, for instance, national polls in the U.S. need only consist of 1,500 or fewer randomly selected respondents to represent certain age groups (like Millennials or Baby Boomers) even when their population is in the tens of millions. Mathematically, any advantage to sampling beyond those numbers (for instance to 3,000 respondents or more) for generalizability is very small and therefore unlikely to make a difference in the phenomenon studied.

Yet, once again, this is a general mathematical principle that will likely have little bearing on how you will sample in your own research. Let us get to the more practical matter of how you will go about determining the size of the sample to use in your own study. There are a number of guidelines to follow to figure out a good sample size, and those guidelines range from being straightforward to a little more involved. One very rough and easy guideline that might be especially useful for the beginning researcher is to look up published studies on the same topic or on a similar topic as the study you intend to run and determine what size sample those researchers used. Yours should be at least as large, if you can manage it!

More formally, the standard error calculation we discussed can also be used to determine **optimal sample size**. Rather than solving for standard error in the equation, you would substitute in an error estimate that you are willing to live with in the study design and solve for the sample size. Most commonly, researchers use the 95% confidence level to do so and use a .05 standard error in the equation. There are a number of free, online sample size calculators that you can use to do this math for you. The survey company Qualtrics has a very simple calculator (www.qualtrics.com/blog/calculating-sample-size/) that asks for confidence level, population size, and margin of error. If you do not know the population size, you can estimate it, because as we suggested earlier in this section, once a population is large (say, in the tens

of thousands or larger), the math does not change that much. This online calculator shows that at the 95% confidence level, with 5% error accepted, and population estimated at 10,000, the recommended sample size is 370. If you keep the rest of the settings the same and change the population estimate to 20,000, a sample size of 377 is recommended. At a population of 30,000, 380 is the recommended number. At a population of 40,000, the sample recommendation changes to just 381. At 50,000, it is 382. You can see the concept of diminishing returns at play here, and you can also see that not knowing the population size precisely is acceptable since the sample size needed to generalize is not likely to change that much when the population is large.

Another way to determine sample size is to use a general rule of thumb. One such rule applies to studies that test differences between or among groups, as is usually the case in an experiment (the subject of Chapter 6). When making comparisons between or among groups, a useful first step is determining the number of **cells** that will be created by the research design. The cells are the different groups that will be compared in the study. Then, statisticians have determined that, as a rule of thumb, you need at least 30 cases for each cell (Cohen, 1988). For example, imagine you are testing whether people who are shown a public service announcement (PSA) about wearing masks to prevent the spread of COVID-19 are more likely to report being willing to wear masks in public compared to those who are not shown the PSA. The cells are designated by an X here:

Shown PSA	Not shown PSA
X	X

Using the 30 cases per cell rule of thumb, then, this research design creates two groups and therefore you would need at least 60 research participants for this study. Imagine further that you want to find out whether seeing the PSA in the form of a TV commercial has the same result as seeing it as a print ad in a magazine. With three cells, here, the basic rule of thumb suggests you would need at least 90 participants for this study:

PSA as TV commercial	PSA as print ad	Not shown PSA
X	X	X

To add yet another perspective, we might study whether those under the age of 65 and those 65 or older respond differently to the PSAs. Here, the design would look like this and would call for at least 180 participants (30 times 6):

PSA as TV commercial		PSA as print ad		Not shown PSA	
< 65	65+	< 65	65+	< 65	65+
X	X	X	X	X	X

There is also a more precise and sophisticated option for determining an ideal sample size prior to conducting a study, as well, and that is called doing a **power analysis**. **Statistical power** is the ability of any given statistical test to detect population parameters of particular sizes and strengths with a specified degree of confidence. "If a study is powerful, then a researcher will be able to correctly find even small differences and relationships, but if a study is not powerful a researcher may miss small differences and relationships" (Wrench et al., 2008, p. 305). A power analysis can be done before a study is conducted to calculate the smallest sample size that can be used to successfully pick up on statistical relationships and differences of certain sizes. This is an *a priori* power analysis (called that because it is done

before the study is conducted), and it differs from a simple sample size calculator such as in the earlier example in that it accounts for the type of statistical test that will be run. We will introduce some of the main statistical tests used in Communication research in Chapter 8 in our book. But until then, suffice it to say that researchers at Dusseldorf University have provided free, open-source software that you can use for power analysis called G*Power, www.gpower.hhu.de/.

How Do You Actually Use This Information? The Realities of Research

One of our pet peeves about some research methods books is that they present the ideal way of conducting research—like drawing probability samples—in such a manner that it makes the reader feel like a failure if they do not have the means to reach the ideal. It *is* important to learn the principles behind ideal scenarios in research and to understand why they are so optimal. Yet, real research is complicated, and it is often quite constrained by budget, time, and other practicalities. If you want to try to challenge the status quo and work toward social justice through quantitative social science research, we want you to be inspired to do so rather than discouraged when you realize that concessions often have to be made in the realities of conducting research.

We would like to assure you that if you find yourself unable to draw a probability sample for the research you would like to conduct, you are certainly not alone. Joseph Erba and colleagues conducted a study of the research that was published between 2000 and 2014 that used survey or experimental design in six major mass communication journals (Erba, Ternes, Bobkowski, Logan, & Liu, 2018). Among the over 1,100 studies that they examined, Erba and colleagues found 82.6% used nonprobability samples. Just about half (51.1%, to be precise) of the articles used college students for their sample, a convenient source of participants for many researchers.

We can look at the sampling approach used by Erba and colleagues themselves in their study of samples used in mass communication research. They chose studies published within the six particular journals in their sample due to the impact factor of the journal (a metric that shows how often articles from that journal are cited in other research) and the journal's affiliation with major professional organizations in Communication. Then, any article meeting their criteria (quantitative, mass communication research with human participants conducted in the United States) was included in their analysis. Therefore, they used the logic of purposive sampling (to identify the journals) and then drew a census, examining every article that met their parameters. Their data reflect, then, the research published within this timeframe within this set of journals. Yet, their data cannot be generalized to all published mass communication research.

Of course, the Erba and colleagues (2018) study only reflects one subfield of the Communication discipline, mass communication. Nonetheless, it illustrates an important point we are making here: Many times it is simply not possible to obtain a probability sample, and that does not mean that your study is doomed or that it does not have the potential to contribute importantly to the field. Although it is true that studies using nonprobability samples cannot generalize to the wider population, knowledge on a topic can accumulate and become quite convincing—even by quantitative social science standards—if multiple studies using nonprobability samples are published on the same topic and point to more or less the same general findings. Despair not, then, reader, if your circumstances limit you—like they do for many if not most Communication scholars if the Erba and colleagues' data are any indication—to purposive samples or other nonprobability techniques.

Much, if not all, of the discussion of the math and the logic behind sampling error and confidence levels in this chapter is hypothetical and abstract. Yet, there are a few important

principles to extract from the illustrations and practices we have introduced here to apply in your own research literacy and practice. First, once again, we can see why, exactly, larger sample sizes are preferable to smaller sample sizes in quantitative research both mathematically and logically. Logically, larger samples stand a better chance of reflecting the population parameter. This is because mathematically, large samples will generally reduce sampling error since n or sample size is the denominator in the standard error equation. Given that generalizability is one of the hallmarks of quantitative research, reducing sampling error is an important outcome.

Second, we should remember that the variation in the population parameter is also an important part of the standard error equation, and when the parameter has less variation, sampling error will also be reduced. Therefore, you will need a larger sample size to attempt to reflect the population on an item with significant variation, and a relatively smaller sample size will suffice if the population is more homogeneous on the issue in question.

Third, researchers can determine—oftentimes prior to conducting a study—how much uncertainty they are willing to live with regarding whether the results that they obtain from a sample are likely to generalize to the population. When researchers obtain a result from a sample (a statistic), ideally, they would like to be confident that that result happened not just due to sampling error or some kind of chance circumstance in the sample but rather is likely to be operating not just in the sample but in the wider population. Confidence intervals are used to make these wider claims within widely accepted standards among researchers regarding how much uncertainty is acceptable.

Representing Minoritized Groups

We have seen that there are many virtues of using probability sampling. Yet, sometimes, a researcher will want to focus on a subpopulation of interest that is relatively small in size compared to the overall population. A probability sampling strategy in which every member of the population has an equal chance of being selected may not yield a sufficient number from the small subpopulation of interest to fully explore variables within that subpopulation. Therefore, some additional strategies are needed.

Before we begin with an explanation of ways to ensure that those from smaller social groups have sufficient representation in samples so their voices can be heard, it is important to think critically about the word *minority* in describing social groups. The word *minority* connotes two things at once: a group that is small in number and a group that faces discrimination, oppression, or otherwise has less access to power in society. Yet, some social group populations are not a numerical minority but still have less access to power or representation compared to other social group populations. Some U.S. cities have majority Latinx populations, for instance, meaning that over 50% of the population is Latinx. But the members of those Latinx populations may still not have equal power and/or may face discrimination and oppressive conditions more often compared to other populations. It is often useful to use the word *minoritized* rather than *minority* or *non-majority*, then, to acknowledge that discrimination and oppression do not always go hand-in-hand with the size of the social group.

Researchers studying topics of concern for social justice may want to give minoritized groups more voice in their studies. By its very nature, taking a random sample is likely to result in minoritized groups that are relatively small in size in the population to also be small in number in the sample. In these cases, researchers may consider oversampling and/or weighting. Doing so has the potential to give voice to smaller and sometimes overlooked groups.

Oversampling is "the practice of selecting respondents so that some groups make up a larger share of the survey sample than they do in the population" (Mercer, 2016). This is especially useful to study small, underrepresented, or minoritized groups. At the time that Andrew

Mercer was writing for Pew Research Center in 2016, a random sample of U.S. residents that mirrored the national population would result in 13.4% of that sample identifying as Black or African American. In a sample of 1,000, then, that would equate to 134 Black or African American participants. That number may not be sufficiently large if your research design calls for exploring variables within the African American population. If you have research questions about what Black or African Americans think (or feel or do), you will want to have more than just 13.4% if the sample identifies as Black or African American. Therefore, you would likely decide to oversample Black or African American individuals to ensure their larger presence in the sample.

Weighting is the process of adjusting values in the data so that the data from particular groups can count as more or as less than those data would otherwise. If a group is underrepresented in the sample compared to the population, data from members of that group can be weighted *more* heavily than data from members of groups that are not underrepresented to ensure that the smaller group does not get overshadowed by the larger groups. If a group is overrepresented in the sample, data from members of that group can be weighted *less* heavily than data from members of groups that are not overrepresented. Thus, some data can be adjusted by the researcher to carry more or less weight compared to other data.

Weighting is typically accomplished by multiplying the data from the over- or underrepresented group by a certain value. For instance, if you want to weight the responses from indigenous peoples in your sample, you can multiply all of the responses from members of this group by two to give those responses twice as much weight in the data set. Weighting can be used in conjunction with oversampling. Data from a group that has been oversampled can remain unadjusted when looking *within* that group. Yet, when the researcher wants to look *across* groups, the oversampled group's data can be weighted downward so that the group's relative size in the overall population is accurately estimated. This practice is illustrated in the following Research in Action segment.

Research in Action

The Use of Oversampling and Weighting in Public Opinion Research

In this chart, we see how pollsters from the Pew Research Center oversampled Hispanic or Latinx respondents for a survey in 2016 such that, when data from those respondents were unweighted, they represented 24% of the sample. Oversampling allowed for a sufficient number of Hispanic or Latinx respondents to focus on the opinions and experiences of that group in analyses pertaining only to those within the group. Yet, in order to report in other analyses on Hispanic or Latinx respondents alongside those from other racial and ethnic groups, the researchers had to adjust the data from the Hispanic or Latinx group (weighting it down) so that the weight of that group's data approximated the size of the group in the U.S. population.

Andrew Mercer (2016) from the Pew Research Center explains:

> "*A good example is a Pew Research Center survey from June of this year, in which we wanted to focus in depth on the U.S. Hispanic population. In the previous survey from March, there were 291 Hispanic respondents out of 2,254 total respondents, or 13% of the sample before weighting. This is pretty close to the true Hispanic share of the population (15%),*

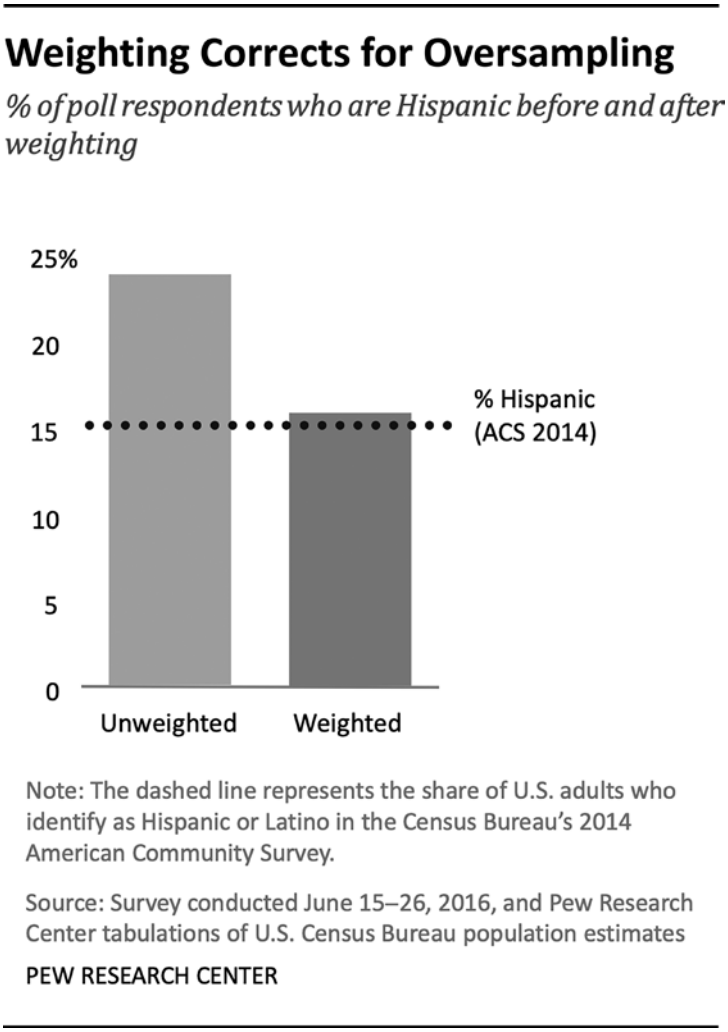

Weighting Corrects for Oversampling
% of poll respondents who are Hispanic before and after weighting
25%
20
15
10
5
0
% Hispanic (ACS 2014)
Unweighted
Weighted
Note: The dashed line represents the share of U.S. adults who identify as Hispanic or Latino in the Census Bureau's 2014 American Community Survey.
Source: Survey conducted June 15–26, 2016, and Pew Research Center tabulations of U.S. Census Bureau population estimates
PEW RESEARCH CENTER

Figure 4.11 Weighted sampling

Source: "Oversampling is used to study small groups, not bias poll results." Pew Research Center, Washington, D.C. (October 25, 2016) www.pewresearch.org/fact-tank/2016/10/25/oversampling-is-used-to-study-small-groups-not-bias-poll-results/

but we wanted to have more than 291 people responding so we could do a more in-depth analysis. In order to have a larger sample of Hispanics in June, we surveyed 543 Hispanics out of 2,245 total respondents, or 24% of the unweighted sample. This gave us a much larger sample to analyze and made the estimates for Hispanics more precise. If we just stopped here, estimates for the total population would overrepresent Hispanics. Instead, we weight them back down so that when we look at the whole sample, the share of Hispanics falls back in line with their actual share of the population. This way, we still have more precise estimates when looking at Hispanics specifically, but we also have the correct distribution when looking at the sample as a whole."

Many Communication researchers use oversampling and/or weighting to study small and/or minoritized groups. Kelly D. Blake and colleagues (Blake et al., 2016), for example, describe the use of the Health Information National Trends Survey to study knowledge, attitudes, and behavior related to cancer from a health communication perspective. For the national survey, geographic areas with known smoking rates that were moderate to high were oversampled "in an attempt to increase the yield of current smokers" (p. 1271) among those in the sample. An example in the context of political communication research is a study by Shanto Iyengar and Sean J. Westwood (2015) in which Black survey respondents were oversampled from the Survey Sampling International panel in order to study negative views toward members of an opposing political party among both Black and White research participants. In another example, Neal Thurman and Nic Newman published a study in *Journalism Studies* (2014) that examined news consumption in multiple countries using an online questionnaire. The researchers report that "The data were weighted to targets set on age and gender, region, newspaper readership, and social grade, to reflect the total population of each of the nine countries surveyed" (p. 659).

Because the focus of this book is on conducting sound quantitative social science research with a commitment to social justice, oversampling and/or weighting are quite useful approaches. Oversampling and weighting can center the views, responses, and experiences of minoritized groups that have traditionally been underrepresented in social science research. These techniques enable the researcher to obtain a sufficiently large number of members of social groups that are small in the overall population and/or difficult to access for research.

Indeed, it is crucial that we extend our research beyond groups that are large in size and/or have greater access to power (such as White or heterosexual individuals) so that we can build knowledge that reflects the full diversity of populations of interest. The discipline of psychology, in which much of the knowledge produced stems from the use of undergraduate college students as research participants, has been critiqued for being "WEIRD," an acronym that suggests it relies too heavily on **W**estern, **e**ducated research participants from **i**ndustrial, **r**ich, **d**emocratic countries (Henrich, Heine, & Norenzayan, 2010). Afifi and Cornejo (2020) identify similar biases in the samples used to study interpersonal communication, finding that samples tend to overrepresent White and Asian voices, as well as voices from the United States, and to underrepresent Black and Latinx voices in addition to research participants from other parts of the world. Although Afifi and Cornejo limited their study to interpersonal communication, the patterns they identify are likely to be operating in other parts of the Communication field, as well. We hope the content of this chapter will guide you in not just how you will take a sample in your research but also in your consideration of whose voices will be included or excluded, amplified or diminished in the sampling decisions that you make.

In addition to reflecting on whose voices will be foregrounded in your research, another important consideration pertaining to sampling is knowing and respecting the norms and values within a group to be studied. In some research contexts, utilizing a random sample in order to achieve the principle of representativeness can fly in the face of local norms and values. If researchers select participants for their studies randomly or by some systematic procedure, this may result in those not selected feeling slighted or pushed further to the margins.

Mohatt and Thomas (2006), for instance, have found that random sampling is not the right choice when studying some indigenous communities. They explain:

> Random sampling procedures violate a fundamental principle of every indigenous group with whom I have worked. It assumes that a statistical or mathematical rationale should determine whom we talk to or with whom we intervene. It is . . . both exclusive and dangerous because not all members of the community would be included, and there

> would be no evidence of co-membership on the part of the researchers and therefore no sense of protection from harm.
>
> (pp. 110–111)

If the practice of random selection in sampling violates the local norms of the community to be studied, a different approach is needed. Purposive or snowball sampling techniques might be the better option in a scenario such as this, tipping the scales in favor of respecting the values of those being studied and thereby gaining their trust and participation rather than upholding the typical quantitative practice of prioritizing probability sampling. For a more detailed account of conducting quantitative research in and with indigenous populations, we encourage you to read *Indigenous Statistics: A Quantitative Research Methodology* (2013) by Maggie Walter and Chris Andersen.

Summary

We have learned a number of approaches to comprising a research sample and considered the basic math behind our degree of confidence that a randomly drawn sample can do a reasonable job of representing the population. In doing so, we have introduced probability sampling techniques as well as nonprobability-based approaches to sampling and learned why the former are generally superior if they are feasible. We have seen that representative samples and generalizable findings are typically the goal in quantitative research methods, constituting a significant part of why there is the potential to harness the "power of numbers."

In this chapter, we have shown some ways to determine what size samples you will want to try to achieve in your research studies, and we have introduced the basic principles behind those formulas. We have illustrated the value of oversampling and the utility of weighting in sampling, particularly for their ability to allow for minoritized groups to be represented in quantitative social science research. We offer insights on how to be respectful of the norms of groups and communities accessed for research purposes. This discussion of sampling sets the stage for the next chapters, which will provide an in-depth look at surveys, experiments, and content analyses, all research methods in which the researcher will typically take a sample from a larger population.

Discussion Questions and Activities

1. What are the pros and cons of the different sampling techniques—both probability and nonprobability types—that were introduced in this chapter?
2. What are some obstacles or challenges associated with sampling?
3. Why are larger samples typically better in quantitative research? What is the logic behind the use of a fairly large sample?
4. Imagine you are interested in doing a study of the comments that are posted to a *New York Times* online edition article on immigration. How would you approach sampling for this topic?
5. Now imagine that you would like to know whether watching a *Sesame Street* episode featuring Julia, a character who has autism, leads to greater understanding of autism among preschoolers. How would you approach sampling for this particular study?

References

Afifi, W. A., & Cornejo, M. (2020). #CommSoWEIRD: The question of sample representativeness in interpersonal communication research. In M. L. Doerfel & J. L. Gibbs (Eds.), *Organizing inclusion: Moving diversity from demographics to communication processes*. New York: Routledge.

Anderson, J. A. (2012). *Media research methods: Understanding metric and interpretive approaches*. Los Angeles, CA: Sage.

Babbie, E. (2010). *The practice of social research* (12th ed.). Boston, MA: Cengage Learning.

Blake, K. D., Portnoy, D. B., Kaufman, A. R., Lin, C. T. J., Lo, S. C., Backlund, E., . . . Hesse, B. W. (2016). Rationale, procedures, and response rates for the 2015 administration of NCI's health information national trends survey: HINTS-FDA 2015. *Journal of Health Communication*, *21*, 1269–1275. doi:10.1080/10810730.2016.1242672

Chen, L., Guo, Y., & Shi, J. (2019). Social support seeking on social media among Chinese gay men living with HIV/AIDS: The role of perceived threat. *Telemedicine and eHealth*, *25*(7), 655–659. http://doi.org/10.1089/tmj.2018.0136

Cohen, J. (1988). *Statistical power analysis for the behavioral sciences* (2nd ed.). Hillsdale, NJ: Erlbaum.

Erba, J., Ternes, B., Bobkowski, P., Logan, T., & Liu, Y. (2018). Sampling methods and sampling populations in quantitative mass communication research studies. *Communication Research Reports*, *35*(1), 45–47. https://doi.org/10.1080/08824096.2017.1362632

Gobo, G. (2004). Sampling, representativeness, and generalizability. In C. Seale, G. Gobo, J. B. Gubrium, & D. Silverman (Eds.), *Qualitative research practice* (pp. 435–456). London: Sage.

Henrich, J., Heine, S. J., & Norenzayan, A. (2010). The weirdest people in the world? *Behavioral and Brain Sciences*, *33*(2/3), 1–75. doi:10.1017/S0140525X0999152X

Iyengar, S., & Westwood, S. J. (2015). Fear and loathing across party lines: New evidence on group polarization. *American Journal of Political Science*, *59*, 690–707. doi:10.1111/ajps.12152

Mello, S. (2015). Media coverage of toxic risks: A content analysis of pediatric environmental health information available to new and expecting mothers. *Health Communication*, *30*, 1245–1255. doi:10.1080/10410236.2014.930398

Mercer, M. (2016, October 25). *Oversampling is used to study small groups, not bias results*. Pew Research Center. Retrieved January 17, 2019, from www.pewresearch.org/fact-tank/2016/10/25/oversampling-is-used-to-study-small-groups-not-bias-poll-results/

Mohatt, G. V., & Thomas, L. R. (2006). "I wonder, why would you do it that way?" Ethical dilemmas in doing participatory research with Alaska Native communities. In J. E. Trimble & C. B. Fisher (Eds.), *The handbook of ethical research with ethnocultural populations and communities* (pp. 93–115). Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage.

Neal, S. (2017, August 29). *Views of racism as a major social problem increase sharply, especially among Democrats*. Pew Research Center. Retrieved January 8, 2019, from www.pewresearch.org/fact-tank/2017/08/29/views-of-racism-as-a-major-problem-increase-sharply-especially-among-democrats/

Parker, K., Graf, N., & Igielnik, R. (2019a, January 17). *Methodology*. Pew Research Center. Retrieved January 18, 2019, from www.pewsocialtrends.org/2019/01/17/generations-methodology/

Parker, K., Graf, N., & Igielnik, R. (2019b, January 17). *Generation Z looks a lot like millennials on key social and political issues*. Pew Research Center. Retrieved January 18, 2019, from www.pewsocialtrends.org/2019/01/17/generations-methodology/

Ponterotto, J. G., Mathew, J. T., & Raughley, B. (2013). The value of mixed methods designs to social justice research in counseling and psychology. *Journal for Social Action in Counseling and Psychology*, *5*(2), 42–68.

Scharrer, E., & Blackburn, G. (2018). Cultivating conceptions of masculinity: Overall television use, genre viewing, and perceptions of norms regarding masculine gender roles. *Mass Communication & Society*, *21*(2), 149–177. doi:10.1080/15205436.2017.1406118

Thurman, N., & Newman, N. (2014). The future of breaking news online? A study of live blogs through surveys of their consumption, and of readers' attitudes and participation. *Journalism Studies*, *15*, 655–667. doi:10.1080/1461670X.2014.882080

Walter, M., & Andersen, C. (2013). *Indigenous statistics: A quantitative research methodology*. New York: Routledge.

Wrench, J. S., Thomas-Maddox, C., Peck Richmond, V., & McCroskey, J. C. (2008). *Quantitative research methods for communication*. New York: Oxford University Press.

5 Soliciting Opinions Through Survey Research

News stories that we read in our everyday lives often refer to survey research findings, including those that show patterns pertaining specifically to social justice issues. For example, survey research studies show that seven in ten teens in the U.S. see anxiety and depression as a serious problem in their age group (Horowitz & Graf, 2019). Fifty percent of respondents in a recent survey in the U.S. say that men getting away with committing sexual harassment and assault is a major problem in the workplace (Graf, 2018). In terms of topics such as the digital divide and access to technologies, survey studies have revealed large discrepancies around the world. For instance, whereas countries like South Korea and the Netherlands have more than 90% adoption rates for mobile phones, the rate is closer to four-in-ten in emerging economies such as Indonesia and Nigeria, with India only reporting 24% smartphone penetration (Taylor & Silver, 2019). All of these interesting insights on social justice issues would not have been possible without survey research.

Surveys are one of the most popular research methods used by social scientists. They involve collecting data from a sample of participants based on their responses to items posed to them on a questionnaire. A survey can be defined as "a social scientific method for gathering quantifiable information about a specific group of people by asking the group members questions about their individual attitudes, values, beliefs, behaviors, knowledge, and perceptions" (Wrench, Thomas-Maddox, Richmond, & McCroskey, 2008, p. 214). Surveys are typically **self-reported**, meaning that the respondents read the items and answer them on their own, without assistance from a researcher or interviewer. However, some types of survey research could also involve interviewers who pose the questions to the study participants.

Nearly every topic in Communication has been studied using survey methods. Surveys are used across a broad spectrum of organizations ranging from those in academia to government agencies to marketing firms. Even if you have never conducted your own survey study, chances are that you have participated in one at some point in time. News articles routinely refer to survey studies in providing context and background to topics that they are covering. Be it political pundits explaining voting patterns in elections, marketing gurus selling products and services, nonprofit volunteers evaluating the effectiveness of a program, community leaders assessing local needs, or government officers making policy decisions, surveys are used in a variety of settings.

By definition surveys give voice to participants through collecting their opinions, experiences, reports of behavior, and other measures. Therefore, they are both a popular and a powerful tool for social justice-related concerns. In this chapter, you will learn about the pros and cons of surveys, when and how to use surveys for social justice research, the basics of survey design and implementation, and ways to reduce common errors. You will learn how to become more discerning readers of survey studies by evaluating surveys conducted by others,

as well as how to design your own survey in a culturally appropriate manner to address social problems or issues of interest to you.

Advantages and Disadvantages of Surveys

Surveys are easy, efficient, and versatile methods used across a broad range of social settings and communication contexts (Schutt, 2015). The **advantages of surveys** are their relative ease and cost-effectiveness of data collection. They are efficient because data can be collected rather swiftly by administering surveys to a large sample in one go. Surveys allow for substantial amounts of information to be collected, often without expending a great deal of money and time. They can be administered through different types of modes: mail, telephone, or online. Mailed surveys often involve several pages of questions, which can help collect a lot of valuable information in one relatively inexpensive study. Phone surveys and in-person surveys can last for several minutes, which also allows for a great deal of data to be gathered at once. The advent of technologies such as mobile phones, tablets, and laptops makes it even more convenient and confidential to conduct surveys.

Surveys are the method of choice for quantitative researchers when the central purpose of a research project is to paint a representative picture of a broad range of characteristics of a population. In general, surveys offer high external validity and generalizability of findings from a sample to the population at large. Just as we learned in Chapter 4, *census studies* refer to those surveys where the entire population is included, rather than a sample of participants. While census studies are ideal, they can be expensive and impractical in most situations. Therefore, samples are quite frequently used. As explained in detail in Chapter 4, probability sampling allows for greater generalizability of findings compared to nonprobability sampling. Indeed, surveys are a great choice for using probability sampling techniques. In general, the representativeness and size of the sample used for a survey determine its quality.

Survey data can help establish correlations, which are measures of mutual relationships between two or more variables. A correlation is a statistical measure that tells us the extent to which two variables are mutually interconnected. For instance, a positive correlation between two variables means that as the values of one variable increases, the other one also increases. For example, survey findings could reveal a positive correlation between trust in science and mask-wearing to prevent the spread of the coronavirus. That is, the greater the faith in science, the more likely people are to wear a mask. Conversely, the lesser the faith in science, the less likely people are to wear a mask. Or there could be a negative correlation between variables, as well, such that as one variable *increases*, the other *decreases*. For example, conservatism and mask-wearing could be correlated such that those who report higher scores on conservatism indicate that they wear masks less often. We will learn more about correlations in subsequent chapters.

Like all research methods, however, surveys are not without **disadvantages**. Although surveys can help determine correlations between variables, they cannot establish causation. We will learn more about causal relationships in the next chapter on experiments, but it is important to recognize that one disadvantage of surveys is that it is hard to establish the time order of variables. In other words, even if we know that two variables are correlated and mutually associated, we do not know for sure whether one is the *cause* of the other or whether they merely co-exist without having a cause-effect relationship. Other disadvantages of surveys are that in-person and phone surveys can take time, effort, and money when interviewers have to make several follow-ups to reach the respondents. We would be willing to bet, for instance,

that when your own phone rings, and it is someone asking you to complete a survey, you may not be inclined to pick up the phone or devote the time necessary to respond. These costs could range anywhere from a few dozen dollars to several hundreds of dollars when they involve repeat visits and traveling distances. Although electronic surveys conducted via email or websites are much faster, response rates are often not good. Web-based surveys also leave out those without reliable access to the internet, such as households with lower income and those with elderly residents.

Role of Surveys in Social Justice Research

A well-designed survey for social justice purposes seeks to find relevant information, allows respondents to share their experiences honestly in a confidential manner, and uses the findings to lead to actionable outcomes that serve the respondents and their community. It is important to place participants' best interests at the center at every stage of survey design, especially when the goal is social justice-oriented. Answering surveys takes time and effort on the part of the respondents. Participants, especially those from under-resourced groups, have no obligation to complete surveys, especially if researchers do not attempt to make it relevant to them or meaningful for them.

Surveys help those committed to social justice concerns to understand the complex realities of social issues that lead to injustices and inequalities. They can help identify the key variables where energies need to be focused to bring about transformation and dismantle existing inequalities and injustices. Within Communication, many social justice topics have been studied using surveys: health disparities, civic engagement, political participation, digital inequalities, food insecurity, racial discrimination, sexual harassment, anti-discrimination, and labor organizing are some examples. For example, within organizational communication contexts, survey methods have been used in understanding toxic waste storage in nuclear power plants (Barbour & Gill, 2014), in understanding how a game can increase STEM-field participation (Barbour, Ballard, Barge, & Gill, 2017), and in organizing around the Occupy Wall Street movement (Costanza-Chock, 2018b).

Since social issues often involve multiple stakeholders with different needs and motivations, surveys can help gain valuable input from relevant groups to enhance understanding of the issue in an efficient and relatively quick manner. They allow researchers to examine the patterns of relationships across subgroups within a population and lend themselves well for cross-cultural and cross-national comparative analyses of attitudes, opinions, behaviors, and intentions. Importantly for social justice research, surveys can be used to amplify the voices of minoritized groups and/or shed light on social issues or conditions that are experienced within and across diverse populations. For example, they help compare how different genders might relate to the #MeToo movement, how various racial groups experience police brutality, how refugees in different countries stay in touch with family through technology, or how cyberbullying differs across age groups. In other words, surveys are helpful in establishing cross-population generalizability by comparing local conditions within one subgroup with those of another cultural, social, or other types of subgroups.

Surveys offer the opportunity to collect sensitive information about topics such as discrimination, abuse, violence, or inequities while giving the respondents a safe space to express themselves without fear of retaliation, embarrassment, or other negative feelings that come from the disclosure of personal information. It is crucial to protect the interests and identities of the respondents, especially if they belong to vulnerable groups such as undocumented immigrants, LGBTQ+ individuals, and those with disabilities who might wish to express themselves without disclosing their identities. **Anonymity** refers to the situation where

nobody, including the researcher, knows the participant's identity. Whenever possible, it is best not to collect any identifiable information by keeping the survey anonymous. If anonymity is not possible to assure (perhaps for reasons we discussed in Chapter 2 about Institutional Review Board protocols), then researchers should at least make sure that the information collected from participants is kept confidential. **Confidentiality** means that the researcher knows the identity of the participant, but they take care not to reveal it to anyone else. When conducting surveys over a long period of time with the same population, it is especially important to maintain confidentiality, as identifying information is needed to contact the respondents over various stages of the study.

In general, respondents weigh the potential costs and benefits of survey participation before determining whether to accept or decline an invitation to participate in such research. If respondents do not see the value in participating in the survey, they are unlikely to be persuaded to invest their time and effort in it. If the survey is on a topic that they care about, are interested in, and see as relevant to themselves, they are more likely to participate. Surveys that are easy-to-understand, accessible, and attractive are also more likely to elicit responses. Additionally, if respondents believe that their input on the surveys will be taken seriously and may even influence decisions, they are much more likely to participate. This last point is especially true for social justice issues, where the potential for actionable outcomes that could reduce social inequalities and alleviate difficulties in everyday lived experiences could motivate participants to take part in the survey.

Cross-Cultural Survey Research

When conducting **cross-cultural survey studies**, it is important to understand how different cultural groups might respond to the same items differently, even if their experiences are the same. They could also vary greatly in their willingness and openness in responding to researchers who are seen as "outsiders." For example, in certain subgroups, women participants might see men who are collecting survey responses as outsiders to whom they do not feel comfortable responding, leading to nonresponse. At the same time, it is also possible that some respondents might especially want to give socially desirable answers that they think are expected by the researchers out of politeness, especially when there is a large status or class difference between the researchers and respondents. Social desirability is a key limitation to survey research that we will return to later in this chapter.

Various groups could differ greatly in their access to infrastructure, including access to the internet, mobile phones, and computers. Some of the groups of interest might not be well-connected by transportation or communication channels. Some people simply might not own a smartphone, a computer, or have easy access to the internet. Even if they do have access, respondents could vary greatly in their levels of digital literacy, which may influence the ease with which they navigate online surveys, for instance. Depending on which populations the researcher is studying, they must pick an appropriate method of administering their surveys so it is accessible to most of the participants.

Although such events are fairly rare, there could also be **political barriers** that influence survey responses when conducting multinational cross-cultural surveys. Some countries such as North Korea ban survey research, making it impossible to collect data there. In some countries, certain topics might be explicitly restricted from being included in survey research, whereas in other countries, even if there are no legal restrictions, the social norms and customs might make data collection infeasible. Internet censorship is also an issue in some countries where researchers might have to take additional steps to ensure the safety and confidentiality

of the participants. As discussed in our chapter on ethics, the safety and well-being of the researchers and participants should be of foremost concern when making such decisions.

Language is an important consideration when conducting cross-cultural and cross-national survey studies. In several geographic regions around the world, respondents are bilingual and multilingual. Even within a single nation or region, one cannot assume cultural or linguistic homogeneity. Respondents' level of fluency and literacy could be different across various languages they know. Languages that they understand, read, write, and speak might not all be the same ones. As social justice scholars, in particular, it is more likely that the sample that is being studied consists of respondents who might not be fluent in the dominant language used by the majority groups. It is even possible that some languages do not have written scripts, in which case only face-to-face or phone surveys are possible. In countries where immigrants make up a high percentage of the population, it is likely that they are more conversant in a language different from the majority native population. Therefore, it becomes crucial for social justice scholars to be sensitive about making the surveys available and accessible in the language of the respondents.

Well-translated questionnaires are equivalent in conveying the meanings intended in the original text of the survey. They should be consistent and reliable so that they are similar to the original survey in meaning, style, and tone. Rather than designing a survey in one language first and then translating into other languages, it is best to involve multiple language versions of the survey from the beginning stages of the survey design. It is helpful if the translation is done not just by one person but by a team of researchers who have expertise in questionnaire design, the cultural context, and language. It is crucial to review, pretest, and back translate

Figure 5.1 Different cultural groups might respond to the same items differently, so it is important for survey design to be culturally sensitive

Source: (U.S. Navy photo by HMC Josh Ives/released) www.flickr.com/photos/isafmedia/8465011090/

the questionnaire to check validity and reliability. **Back translation** is the method used by researchers to translate a questionnaire back into the original source language to ensure there are no errors. For example, the second author of this book was part of a research study conducted in South Korea (with 352 respondents) and India (with 333 respondents) about how American television consumption is correlated with feelings of relative economic deprivation (Yang, Ramasubramanian, & Oliver, 2008). In this study, participants completed surveys in the Korean language and English. The researchers used the back translation method to make sure that there were no errors in the translations.

Before conducting surveys with the target population, it is helpful for researchers to spend some time as researchers to understand the cultural norms, social expectations, and other constraints of the participants. Such input shapes survey design at every stage, from the topics being examined to the modes of data collection. For instance, in a community-driven project on stigma management among gender and sexual minorities in a subaltern community of South India, an advisory board guided the theory-building and research design processes for a research project based on their insights about everyday lived stigma experiences (Thaker, Dutta, Nair, & Rao, 2018). The surveys were translated into the local Telugu language from English and then were back translated to check for consistency. They were pretested in the field to make sure questions were properly understood and relevant.

Omnibus Surveys and Publicly Accessible Datasets

In addition to collecting data firsthand, survey researchers have two additional options. They can **hire a research firm** for collecting data, or they can **use survey data that already exists**. Several research firms are oriented toward academic and social research and can provide access to participants for survey researchers for a cost. Some examples of research firms are Qualtrics, Survey Monkey, Question Pro, Dynata (formerly Research Now), Prolific, and Knowledge Networks. Researchers can pay these organizations to field a survey study for them, providing a certain number of respondents to complete the questionnaire. Another option for researchers looking to find respondents willing to fill out questionnaires is to use Amazon's Mechanical Turk (MTurk) platform in which participants are compensated for small research tasks. There are also independent organizations such as the National Opinion Research Center (NORC) that host large-scale surveys. NORC provides access to data generated from a vast number of surveys, many of which use nationally representative samples in the United States. Many of these large-scale **omnibus surveys** have the option for researchers to add a few questions of interest to them. An omnibus survey is one that covers a wide range of topics from multiple researchers. These are wonderful opportunities to obtain

Figure 5.2 Language is an important consideration when conducting cross-cultural surveys

Source: Wikipedia user Jn0101, https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Devanagari_keyboard.png

broad and far-reaching data, and yet these opportunities often come at a financial cost to the researcher.

Not all researchers will have the time and money necessary to conduct or purchase survey data from large-scale survey research. If you are a researcher interested in social justice issues but do not have the resources to conduct your own surveys across time or across various subgroups of interest to you, another option is to use publicly available datasets. There are several community-oriented organizations that conduct surveys on key social issues. Many of them have the resources and funding to collect data across many geographic areas and over a long period of time. The following table is a compilation of some of the organizations whose survey research reports could be of use to those who study social issues.

Some Publicly Available Datasets for Social Justice Researchers

1. **American National Election Studies**: These nationally open surveys are often conducted before and after U.S. presidential elections on topics such as partisanship, candidate evaluations, social issues (such as welfare, race policies, economic issues, foreign relations, environment, and federal spending), values (such as religious values, moral orientation, social trust, and altruism), political participation, civic engagement, and media use.
2. **Data.gov**: Hosted by the U.S. General Services Administration, this site provides data on topics such as agriculture, climate, health, education, and public safety collected from across various federal government agencies.
3. **General Social Survey (GSS)**: Established in 1972, this is a probabilistic survey based on personal interview data monitors changes in social characteristics and attitudes in the U.S. It examines topics such as demographics, behavioral and attitudinal data on crime, violence, civil liberties, tolerance, morality, stress, national spending, and trauma.
4. **Health Information National Trends Survey (HINTS)**: This resource features national surveys on cancer-related information by the National Cancer Institute. It also provides information on a range of other topics such as health information, communication patterns relating to health, information on cancer risks, food and medical products, health knowledge and perceptions, physical activity, health literacy, and health status.
5. **Inter-University Consortium for Political and Social Research**: Housed in the University of Michigan, this center has compiled over 10,000 datasets from around the world on topics such as education, mental health, immigration, happiness, domestic violence, depression, alcohol and substance abuse, religion, obesity, and crime. Some of the most downloaded datasets are those on the Chinese Longitudinal Health and Longevity Survey, National Longitudinal Study of Adolescent to Adult Health, Indian Human Development Survey, and Maternal Lifestyle Study.
6. **Kinsey Institute for Research in Sex, Gender, and Reproduction**: This resource has archival data based on surveys relating to sex, sexuality, gender, and reproduction, including data on LGBTQ+ individuals.
7. **Minority Data Resource Center (MDRC)**: The Resource Center for Minority Data provides expansive and in-depth data on racial and ethnic minorities in the

U.S. It archives and assembles existing datasets focused on communities of color. Some topics covered include education, employment, discrimination, public opinion, political participation, health and well-being, history, poverty, and income.

8. **National Center for Health Statistics**: This organization offers downloaded public use datasets through the Center for Disease Control on topics such as nutrition, vital health statistics, family growth, immunization, and aging.
9. **Pew Research Center**: A nonpartisan fact tank, the Pew Research Center provides open datasets on topics such as U.S. politics and policy, journalism, media, internet, science, technology, religion, public life, race, and also global trends and attitudes on a range of social issues.
10. **UNESCO Institute for Statistics**: This group provides statistical data on a wide range of social indicators from around the world such as education, culture, science, and communication. Its mission is to use data to transform lives. Some examples of datasets and reports are State of the World's Children, Global Gender Gap, ICT Development Index, and World Inequality Databases on Education.

Cross-Sectional Versus Longitudinal Survey Designs

Generally speaking, survey designs can be divided into two broad types: cross-sectional and longitudinal surveys (Figure 5.4). **Cross-sectional surveys** are those that provide a descriptive snapshot of the relationships among variables in that given moment. Participants complete the survey at one point in time. For example, in the second author's study on how televised stereotypes of racial/ethnic minorities are correlated with views on affirmative action policies (Ramasubramanian, 2010), the goal was to examine the relationships among key variables and any differences between groups (such as high-prejudice versus low-prejudice individuals in the sample) at a particular point in time.

If the researcher is interested in exploring how the relationships change with time, **longitudinal survey designs** would be more appropriate. Longitudinal designs involve administering the survey more than once over a period of time. Because multiple surveys are administered in succession, longitudinal designs provide information on the order in which the variables might influence one another. For example, researchers have tracked how stress levels in college students change as a semester progresses using weekly surveys (Garett, Liu, & Young, 2017), clearly a longitudinal survey given that the data are gathered across multiple time periods. Another example of a longitudinal study is one conducted by the second author of the book using online surveys administered at a three-week interval over a nine-week period (Saleem, Yang, & Ramasubramanian, 2016). That study examined how reliance on media versus direct contact with Muslims is connected to negative attitudes and beliefs about this group over a period of time.

Trend Studies

There are many types of longitudinal survey designs including trend, cohort, and panel. In a **trend design**, the researcher is interested in seeing how trends change with time with respect to a topic of their interest. In trends, different groups of people are included as respondents

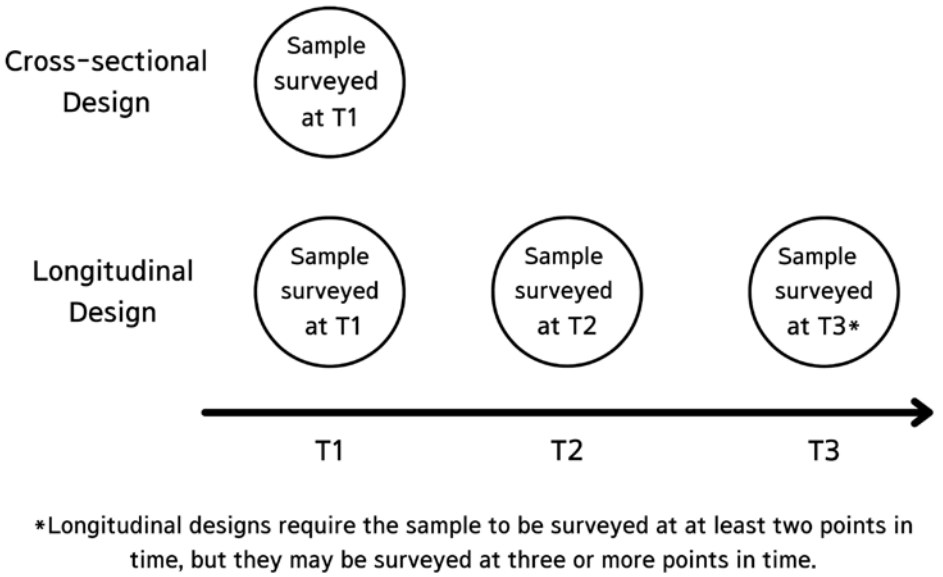

Cross-sectional Design
Sample surveyed at T1
Longitudinal Design
Sample surveyed at T1
Sample surveyed at T2
Sample surveyed at T3*
T1
T2
T3
*Longitudinal designs require the sample to be surveyed at at least two points in time, but they may be surveyed at three or more points in time.

Figure 5.3 Cross-sectional vs. longitudinal design

Source: Emily Riewestahl

at different points in time, but the topic or topics remain the same. Several large-scale surveys such as the American National Election Studies, the General Social Survey, and the Health Information National Trends Survey track many important social indicators such as social characteristics, religious practices, political knowledge, public opinions on policy issues, health information-seeking, health literacy, and opinions about other social issues such as equal pay for women, open housing, desegregation, etc.

Cohort Studies

Another type of longitudinal survey design is a cohort. A **cohort study** is when a cohort of people with a shared characteristic are tracked over a period of time. For example, if you are interested in tracking how the COVID-19 pandemic influences the mental health of graduating high schoolers, you might conduct a survey with a sample of graduating seniors one month, six months, and 12 months after graduating from high school in 2020. As you follow this cohort over time, you need not include the same exact participants each time you administer your survey, but you would make sure that they are sampled from that group of respondents who share the characteristic of having been graduating seniors in 2020.

Panel Studies

The last type of longitudinal survey design is a panel. You can think of panels as a specific type of cohort study where you are following the same individual members of the cohort throughout the length of the study. **Panel** studies collect multiple sets of data repeatedly from

the same set of individuals over time. Panels are commonly used in audience research, new product testing, and in medical research. They provide fine-grained individual-level data and can study how that data changes (or does not change) over time. However, they are expensive and, of course, time consuming to conduct. There could be **attrition**, which refers to respondents dropping out of the panels. When that happens, the size of the sample drops too, of course, and therefore panel studies often have to start out with a very large sample in anticipation of the fact that not all participants will stick with the study for its duration. Several of the Pew Research Center study reports mentioned at the beginning of this chapter were collected from their panel, which was started in 2014 with over 5,300 participants and has now included online surveys in addition to phone surveys (Gramlich, 2019). This panel has covered topics such as media consumption, personality politics, religion and technology, science, political knowledge, immigration, and political antipathy.

Creating Reliable and Valid Survey Measures

Now that we have looked at the various types of survey designs, we will now move into the nitty gritty details of how exactly to design a survey questionnaire. A good survey questionnaire is one that yields reliable and valid answers. Clear, interesting, and well-organized items increase the reliability and validity of measures. They encourage respondents to engage carefully with the questionnaire and take their participation seriously. **Reliability** in a survey context refers to the extent to which the answers are consistent. The same survey has to be administered to all respondents. As a survey researcher, one cannot rephrase an item or elaborate on it for some respondents because that would result in a lack of consistency, which makes the measure unreliable. The items must also be consistently understood by all respondents. Items should be easy to comprehend, without any ambiguity or lack of clarity.

According to applied researchers, Bickman and Rog (2009), "There are four basic characteristics of questions and answers that are fundamental to a good measurement process:

1. Questions need to be consistently understood.
2. Respondents need to have access to the information required to answer the question.
3. The way in which respondents are asked to answer the question must provide an appropriate way to report what they have to say.
4. Respondents must be willing to provide the answers called for in the question" (p. 376).

The common errors that survey researchers must avoid are measurement error, nonresponse, and poor sampling. **Measurement error** refers to problems in the quality of surveys caused by not asking appropriate items in a clear and unbiased fashion. **Nonresponse** is when participants decline to participate in surveys or if they participate in the survey but skip a large portion of the questions on it. By making surveys more accessible and inclusive, establishing trust with respondents, and increasing the benefits for participation, response rates can be improved. Another error to avoid is **poor sampling**. The quality of a survey is determined by the size and representativeness of the sample as well as the quality of the sampling frame. Recall that in Chapter 4, we learned that a sampling frame is a list of those people or units from the population from which the sample is drawn. Ideally, the sampling frame is the same as the population, but it may not always be identical because of missing units.

The best way to get useful and meaningful answers from respondents is to present the right items. Although this sounds simple, it requires skill and care. Presenting appropriate items increases response rates and reduces measurement error. Whereas increasing sample size

or response rates can incur financial costs, improving question quality is an inexpensive and efficient way to significantly improve the quality of the survey data that are collected. This is especially relevant when working on social justice issues because resources are often constrained and funding is hard to obtain. Therefore, as a social justice researcher, it is prudent to invest time and energy into presenting the right items in order to yield the best error-free results.

Are the Items Necessary, Unbiased, and Clear?

Researchers should **avoid confusing phrasing**. For instance, instead of asking for "geographic location," be direct in your approach and ask: "In which city or town do you live?" Items that are understood by more educated and privileged groups may not convey the intended meaning to marginalized groups. Avoid complicated words, jargon, and other expressions unfamiliar to your respondents. It is a good idea to break up complex issues into simpler parts and provide additional context to increase clarity. For example, when you want to measure sensitive issues such as discrimination or prejudice, make sure to explain what such phrases might mean. Instead of asking one broad item such as "Have you experienced discrimination?," the concept of discrimination could be broken down into smaller related variables such as "How often have you been followed around in a store because a store employee seemed suspicious of you?," "How often have you been treated unfairly at work?," and so on. Sometimes a simple change of wording could save respondents a lot of mental effort. Instead of saying, "How many years of education have you had?," it would be much easier to respond to "What is the highest degree you have received?"

A related issue when it comes to working with specific subpopulations is **avoiding biased items**. Items should be designed to fit the knowledge level and cultural contexts of participants. A biased item could read something like, "Do you think this unfair policy about dress codes in schools should be abolished?" Perhaps some respondents do not believe the policy is unfair and their opinions do not line up with those of the researchers. Using a term such as unfair (or controversial or strongly critiqued) might provide misleading answers. Even when using existing measures from previously published studies, researchers should review them carefully to check their suitability for the population of interest to them. Biases can be much subtler as well. When researchers ask, "How often do you exercise?" it is possible that those respondents who do not exercise at all feel uncomfortable answering the item honestly.

Item clarity can also be increased by avoiding double negatives. **Double negatives** are items that have two negative phrases. For instance, an item that is worded as, "Do you disagree with legislation that would prohibit same-sex marriage?" is a sure way to confuse the respondents, as they have to spend a lot more energy on figuring out what, exactly, the item is asking. Instead, it would be better to simply have a statement such as "I support legislation that allows for same-sex marriage," (or, conversely, "I do not support legislation that allows for same-sex marriage") to which participants indicate their level of agreement.

A common mistake that even experienced survey researchers make is having **double-barreled items** on their survey. Double-barreled items are those in which one survey question includes two different topics but only provides one answer option. An example of such an item could be, "How satisfied are you with the ways in which government agencies and community organizations are dealing with food insecurity in your community?" Perhaps the respondent is satisfied with the government agencies and not community organizations or vice-versa. Yet, because there was only one answer option, there is no way to know what the

participant intended to say. The way to solve this issue, then, would be to separate the item here into two items.

Are the Response Options Appropriate?

Even if the item is clearly understood, sometimes respondents might not be able to report what they want to share unless they are provided with the **appropriate answer options**. The response categories should be fixed and consistent for all the respondents. As we learned in Chapter 3, response choices should reflect meaningful and distinctive options as well as cover the entire range of possible answers. Response options should be **collectively exhaustive**, which means that, together, they should offer a full range of answer options. For example, an item on gender might just give *male* and *female* as options, but it could be that the respondent identifies as a non-binary individual. When the alternatives provided do not reflect the spectrum of sentiments or experiences or identities, respondents might not answer accurately. They might also feel marginalized. Therefore, the International Communication Association changed its member profile options to reflect a greater diversity in gender expression by using the following options where one could check all that apply: cis/cisgender, genderqueer, intersex, man, non-binary, third gender, trans/transgender, woman, and none of the above.

When a range of answer options is provided on items that measure attitudes, the number of "negative" and "positive" answer options should be balanced. For instance, when respondents are asked how they would classify the portrayals of Native Americans in popular films, the answer options could be: extremely negative, somewhat negative, neither negative nor positive, somewhat positive, and extremely positive. In this example, we note that in a 5-point scale, there is a balance between the positive and negative options to choose from.

Answer choices should also be **mutually exclusive** such that one and only one possible answer choice is used by any given respondent. For example, when measuring demographic variables such as income range, age, or education, make sure that the categories do not overlap with one another. As we have seen in Chapter 3, when measuring daily hours of exposure to television, for example, if the answer choices are "none, < 2 hours, 2–4 hours, 4–6 hours, and > 6 hours," someone who watches four hours of TV a day would not know whether to fill out 2–4 hours or 4–6 hours a day.

In Chapter 3, we learned about various levels of measurement, including Likert scales. Survey researchers should think carefully about what level they would like their answer options to measure—nominal, ordinal, interval, or ratio. **Likert scales** are commonly used in surveys as answer options to measure attitudes and opinions. In a Likert scale, a statement is presented to the respondent, followed by a range of options indicating the level of agreement or disagreement. When using Likert or Likert-type scales, make sure that the answer options are distinct enough from one another. For response categories ranging from "extremely satisfied" to "not at all satisfied," if you use two answer options as "moderately satisfied" and "somewhat satisfied," these two terms are too similar to each other to provide any meaningful distinctions. The answer options for Likert scales are typically five- or seven-point answer options. For example, in a survey conducted by the second author, exposure to positive Japanese manga heroines was correlated with wishful identification with them among American teens (Ramasubramanian & Kornfield, 2012). In this study, participants were asked to rate the extent to which they agree with statements such as "I wish I could be more like my favorite shōjo heroine" and "I'd like to do the kinds of things my favorite shōjo heroine does." The respondents were provided with a five-point Likert scale that ranged from 1-strongly agree to 5- strongly disagree.

A related decision is whether or not to include **labeled or unlabeled** response options. In labeled response options, every point in the scale is spelled out. For instance, labeled responses could be: 1–not at all safe, 2–somewhat safe, 3–safe, 4–very safe, and 5–extremely safe. In contrast, an unlabeled version would simply label the endpoints "1–not at all safe" and "5–extremely safe" and indicate the other numbers in between without labels as 2, 3, and 4. Whenever possible, it is better to use labeled response options rather than unlabeled ones, as they offer more reliable answers (Schutt, 2015).

Are Respondents Able to Answer the Items?

Respondents can only answer those items for which they have **access to information**. If they do not know or cannot recall information, they cannot provide useful answers. For example, it is possible that they are simply unable to remember past events with much accuracy or detail. So, they may report that they have done something when they might not have, and vice-versa. This could lead to a lack of consistency in responses, which can also then affect the validity of the survey, as it no longer measures what it seeks to measure.

It is possible that respondents simply **do not know** or have access to the information that is being asked in the survey. For instance, individuals who are diagnosed with certain symptoms might be aware of their experiences but might not have been told about the specific name of their condition or illness. A common related error that survey researchers make is asking respondents to report about others' experiences and opinions, which they do not know. An example of this is when certain members of the household do not have information that others might have on such topics as employment, health condition, nutrition, insurance, repairs, and taxes.

There might also be situations in which the respondent does know but is **not able to recall** the relevant information. Survey methods are mostly valid for measuring situations where respondents are conscious of their behaviors. When the information is collected retrospectively and there is a large time lag between the experience and when the survey is completed, the respondents might not be able to recall. This is a common issue in measuring media exposure, for instance in items such as "How many minutes did you spend on your mobile phone yesterday?" Since mobile phone use is so ubiquitous in a world in which many people report that they are always online and permanently connected, respondents are not always able to recall how much time they spent previously with mobile phones and/or on social media (Naab, Karnowski, & Schlütz, 2018).

It is best for survey researchers to consider whether they are asking respondents to recall answers about a reasonable duration of time. It might be easier to answer items about more **focused time periods** such as, "How many days last week did you take your prescribed pill?" rather than, "During the last 12 months, how many times did you take your prescribed pill?" It is also generally not possible or meaningful for participants to store or recall trivial information. Unless you are asking about major incidents, try to keep the focus of the question to the last week or month rather than the last year or longer. Helping your respondents remember specific past events is called **aided recall**, and this approach yields better answers. Instead of asking a generic item such as "How often did you help with household chores last week?," it would be better to help recall by listing specific household chores and asking about the duration of time spent on each.

Are Respondents Willing to Answer the Items?

Survey respondents should feel comfortable and be willing to share their answers. Only then are answers valid and able to capture the lived experience that the item is trying to capture.

Social desirability bias refers to how respondents might give "acceptable" answers rather than honest ones in order to conform to societal expectations. Respondents might distort their responses to survey items to make themselves look good or avoid looking bad. Survey researchers should do their best to reduce social desirability among their respondents to gather meaningful responses. For example, depending on the cultural contexts, certain behaviors such as sexual violence, premarital sex, alcohol consumption, multiple sexual partners, abortion, drug use, etc. might be taboo topics since they might be seen as illegal, immoral, or socially disapproved behaviors. Social justice scholars should especially pay attention to social desirability issues when they study sensitive issues relating to power, injustices, and abuse.

First, researchers should do all they can to ensure confidentiality, if not anonymity, in research, which will help alleviate social desirability bias. Allowing respondents to fill out surveys privately may help a great deal, as well. Also, researchers should do their best to use a non-judgmental approach to item construction in survey research so that participants feel at ease while sharing their lived experiences. For instance, instead of asking, "Have you ever stolen anything from a store?," it might be better to rephrase the item to make the response more socially agreeable by asking, "Have you ever had to take something from a store without paying for it?" (Dillman, 2005, p. 75).

Another related issue with social desirability is dealing with **fence-sitters.** These are respondents with a tendency to pick a neutral midpoint nearly anytime they are asked to respond to an item. They do not feel strongly about any issue in a negative or positive way. Having an explicit middle point in the scale or an option such as "no opinion" for such respondents is a good idea as it increases reliability. However, the more problematic type of respondents are the **floaters**. They do the opposite of fence-sitters. Although they might not know anything about an issue or have no opinion, they still go ahead and pick an answer option. To avoid this type of error, it is advisable to include a "don't know" answer option in items. On the other hand, some researchers prefer **forced-choice items**, which specifically avoid the "don't know" option. They do this if they get a sense that people would pick it as an easy way out without committing to an opinion (Schutt, 2015).

Deciding the Order and Presentation of Selected Items

So far, we have focused on individual items and answer options in isolation. However, survey items and response choices are all part of a larger questionnaire instrument. A **questionnaire** is an instrument or form that contains items and answer options and is administered to a group of people to collect information for surveys. Items and answer choices should be seen in the context of how the questionnaire itself is designed as a whole and where each item fits within it. Items that are irrelevant should be dropped.

Organizing the Items in the Right Order

Researchers should pay attention to the order of the items, which influences how the items are understood and answered. The survey should be divided into broad thematic sections. Each section of the questionnaire should have a clear focus. All items pertinent to that section should be asked in the same place before moving on to another topic. The sections should be ordered in a logical manner, preferably as close as possible to how a natural conversation on such a topic might progress. Each section generally has its own introduction and guidelines to the respondent for how to go about providing responses. For instance, a section might be introduced to the respondent by saying, "The next section of this survey asks you about your views of your employer's commitment to diversity, equity, and inclusion. For each of the following items, please indicate your agreement with the statement on a scale of 1 = strongly disagree to 5 = strongly agree."

In general it is best not to start a survey with boring, challenging, or sensitive questions. For instance, although demographic questions such as asking people to report their gender, race, income, and age might be easy to answer, many respondents consider them rather personal. Therefore, in general, demographic questions are better off placed at the end of the survey rather than in the beginning. Best practice is to begin a survey with a set of items that respondents will find interesting and engaging.

It is important not to waste respondents' time and energy by asking them several items that are not relevant to them. One way to do this is to include **screening or filter questions**. Filter questions are items that can help identify which subgroup of the sample should be asked a set of questions. For instance, if there is a set of items on marital violence, a filter item could be one that asks the respondents whether they are married. For those who say "Yes," they will go ahead and answer the items in that subsection. Others who are not married skip to the next unit. These items that are only asked of one subset of the respondents are called **contingency questions**. By combining filter questions and contingency questions, the researcher creates a unique pattern of order in which each subgroup answers the survey. This is called a **skip pattern**. Be sure to clearly indicate to respondents which items to skip. This can be done automatically in web-based and electronic surveys. In paper-and-pencil surveys, it helps to use arrows and other aids to help the respondent navigate the questionnaire. Having too many back-and-forth skip patterns can annoy and confuse respondents. They should be used thoughtfully and sparingly.

To increase the internal consistency of a concept measured in a study, it is best that the concept is measured using more than one item, especially if concepts have multiple dimensions and are umbrella terms that include other related terms, as discussed in Chapter 3. A **scale or index** is a set of items that hang together to measure a concept. This creates a **composite measure** where the average response across the set of items is developed. Using multiple items to measure a concept allows researchers to include different items that each "get at" the concept from a slightly different perspective. Researchers can use established scales (those available in the research literature), modify existing scales, or create scales on their own. Whenever possible, it is better to use existing indices rather than to start creating one from scratch. Preexisting scales have likely already been tested across various contexts for reliability and validity. However, it is also possible that the existing scales are not directly relevant or appropriate for the population that you are studying. They can either be modified to suit your specific project, or you might want to try your hand at creating your own items that will do a better job.

The Ramasubramanian (2010) study that measured how perceptions of televised racial stereotypes influenced policy opinions is an example of a study that used existing items to measure a central concept in the study. One of the key variables was support for affirmative action, which was measured using a scale:

> *Support for affirmative action policies*. Three items used by past research to measure opinions regarding government policies on affirmative action were included in the present study. A seven-point Likert-type scale, ranging from strongly disagree to strongly agree, was used. Higher scores indicated greater support for pro-minority policies such as affirmative action. Three statements measured attitudes toward affirmative action: "Affirmative action is one good way to deal with past racial discrimination;" "Affirmative action policies are unfair to White participants" (reverse-coded); and "Universities should not consider an applicant's race in the admission process" (reverse-coded).
>
> (p. 111)

You will notice that two of the three items in the study described were reverse-coded. Let us explain what that means. When combining items to form an index, it is important to consider **response style bias.** This is the tendency of the respondent to go down a list of items indicating

Figure 5.5 Make the questionnaire simple and accessible to complete
Source: Paul Townsend, www.flickr.com/photos/brizzlebornandbred/41524990695

the same response (say option one on a seven-point scale) without necessarily taking the time to read or understand each item. To avoid this, researchers should keep items short and to the point. They could also **reverse the polarity** of some of the items in the scale (also known as **reverse coding**). What this means is that instead of all items in an index going from positive to negative, some scales could be reversed to go from negative to positive. Doing so helps the researcher to check whether the answers have been consistent for a given respondent. For example, if one item asks how they feel in the workplace ranging from "1–not at all safe" to "5–extremely safe," another item with reversed polarity of the scale could range from "1–extremely comfortable" to "5–not at all comfortable." If they are consistent in their responses, the respondents who score higher numbers on the safety question are expected to score lower numbers on the comfort question since safety and comfort often go hand in hand in the workplace.

Making the Questionnaire Accessible

In making surveys accessible, the principles of **universal design** become relevant. Universal design focuses on equity, accessibility, and diversity, all of which are important ethical principles for social justice researchers (Connell et al., 1997). By designing for the groups that have the most difficulty in accessing products or spaces, the design is made more usable for everybody.

An accessible and inclusive questionnaire will reduce errors and biases across all participants. A visually attractive and easy-to-follow questionnaire is likely to improve response rates and the quality of answers. Labeling each section clearly, numbering the items and pages, providing clear instructions on how to answer each item, and using an open layout are crucial, especially in self-administered questionnaires. For example, the use of fairly large font size and plenty of white space in between items helps not just those with poor eyesight but all respondents. The visual appearance and clarity can be further enhanced by using font sizes and bold formatting where appropriate. Some surveys use bolder fonts for the items and lighter ones for the answer options. When there are multiple items in the scale, presenting

them in alternating dark and light shades or colors helps respondents ensure that they are answering the correct item. Skip patterns should be used infrequently and should be indicated clearly through arrows and instructions.

Using simple language that is understandable for those with low levels of education, literacy, or limited fluency makes the survey simpler for everyone completing it. Avoiding the use of jargon and technical terms provides greater clarity and appeals to the simplicity and equitable aspects of design. An example of flexibility in design is the use of online surveys that are self-paced rather than timed, allowing respondents to adapt the survey to their own pace. Making the survey available in a computerized format could also help make it available in various modes such as visual, textual, and graphic such that it can be understood through a variety of sensory modes.

Research in Action

The Health Information National Trends Survey (HINTS) is a national survey of adults aged 18 or older in the U.S. Administered in English and Spanish, this survey has been conducted since 2003 by the National Cancer Institute. Their website provides survey questions, data, and other supporting documents to the public (http://hints.cancer.gov). Figure 5.6 shows a sample page from the HINTS Cycle 2 English version from 2018. The annotations give information about the variable name assigned to the item and the numerical values to the answer options for data collection. The use of white space and visual formatting of the items makes them easy to follow and makes it easy to respond. Key points in the items are underlined for added emphasis.

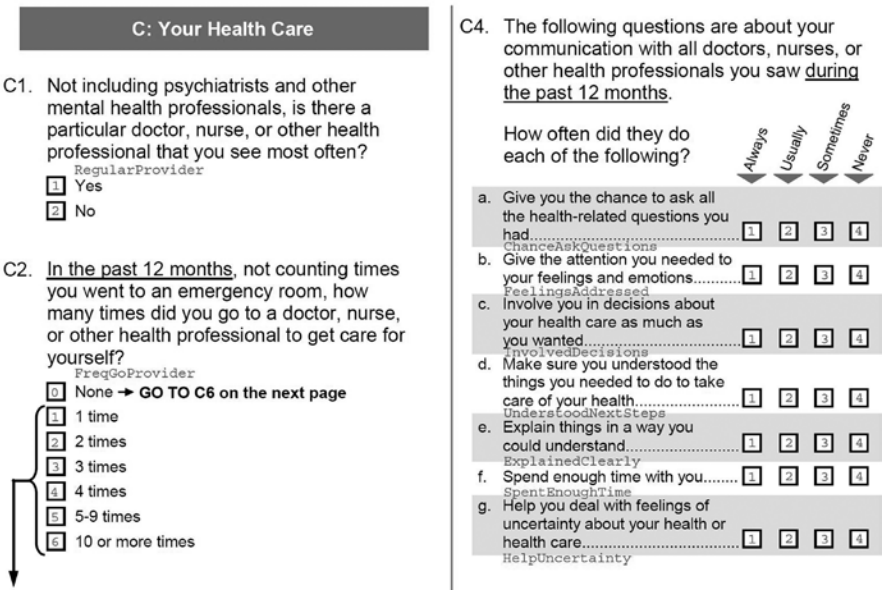

C: Your Health Care
C1. Not including psychiatrists and other mental health professionals, is there a particular doctor, nurse, or other health professional that you see most often?
RegularProvider
1 Yes
2 No
C2. In the past 12 months, not counting times you went to an emergency room, how many times did you go to a doctor, nurse, or other health professional to get care for yourself?
FreqGoProvider
0 None → GO TO C6 on the next page
1 1 time
2 2 times
3 3 times
4 4 times
5 5-9 times
6 10 or more times
C4. The following questions are about your communication with all doctors, nurses, or other health professionals you saw during the past 12 months.
How often did they do each of the following?
Always
Usually
Sometimes
Never
a. Give you the chance to ask all the health-related questions you had
ChanceAskQuestions
b. Give the attention you needed to your feelings and emotions
FeelingsAddressed
c. Involve you in decisions about your health care as much as you wanted
InvolvedDecisions
d. Make sure you understood the things you needed to do to take care of your health
UnderstoodNextSteps
e. Explain things in a way you could understand
ExplainedClearly
f. Spend enough time with you
SpentEnoughTime
g. Help you deal with feelings of uncertainty about your health or health care
HelpUncertainty

Figure 5.6 HINTS survey

Source: Health Information National Trends Survey ® U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. https://hints.cancer.gov/data/survey-instruments.aspx

Pretesting Questionnaires

Feedback is an integral part of survey design; the more the better. While the principles of designing appropriate questions discussed earlier will greatly improve the quality of the questionnaire, getting external feedback before you actually launch your survey research study is invaluable. You might think that you have given clear instructions and that all the items are perfectly understandable. However, working with actual respondents in real-world settings can quickly change this notion.

Before seeking external feedback, researchers should fill out their questionnaire themselves, note any challenges and errors, and make corrections. Sometimes researchers will assemble a panel of experts to provide feedback on the reliability, validity, and cultural appropriateness of the measures being used. Getting feedback from key stakeholders such as community leaders, industry representatives, government agencies, and elected representatives is especially important when conducting community-based survey projects. However, it is not always feasible to organize a panel of experts and community members. In that case, researchers could have friends, colleagues, or family members complete the questionnaires for initial feedback.

Discussing and receiving feedback on the way you have measured key variables on your questionnaire ahead of time helps ensure that the items that are included are relevant and appropriate to the shared objectives and goals of the community. Another immensely useful approach is to compare your hypotheses and research questions against the items you have included in your questionnaire. That way, you will make sure that you have not missed anything and that you will have the data you need to test your hypotheses and explore your research questions.

The best way to find out whether a questionnaire works is to give it to a small group of respondents and find out. A typical pretest is conducted with a small group of participants (maybe 10 to 15 people) as similar to the population as possible. After completing the pretest, respondents are given some space to write in comments and/or time to discuss their experience completing the survey with the researchers. If the items are not being understood as intended or they appear to be challenging for whatever reason, this is the perfect time to consider what revisions and modifications would bring greater clarity and consistency. It is best to administer the survey using the same mode as what is intended eventually—via phone, in person, online, and so on. Even if there is no time to complete the entire questionnaire in the pretest, researchers could consider testing some sections, especially those that are newly developed or particularly difficult to understand.

There are also somewhat more ambitious and time-consuming approaches to pretesting questionnaires. One form of feedback is obtained by using focus group discussions with a subset of the population that is being examined. By working directly with potential respondents, such discussions can help get important information about whether the key variables are easily and consistently understood by everyone. By listening and being attentive to both verbal and nonverbal cues in such discussions, researchers can also get crucial insights about whether the items are too complicated, biased, sensitive, confusing, irrelevant, effortful, or time-consuming. A related method is called **cognitive interviewing** in which participants are asked to describe their thoughts and feelings aloud as they work on completing the questionnaire. The respondent answers the actual survey item and then is asked a follow-up item to probe about how the item was understood and to identify any challenges that the item posed for the respondent.

Deciding How to Administer Surveys

There are multiple modes in which surveys can be administered. These can be broadly categorized as interviewer-administered and self-administered surveys. **Interviewer-administered** surveys are those in which the survey is administered, at least in part, by a survey interviewer. These can either be face-to-face interviews or telephone interviews. **Self-administered surveys** are those that are administered by the respondents themselves without any aid from a survey interviewer. These can be done through mail surveys or online surveys. In general, self-administered surveys are much cheaper compared to interviewer-administered ones.

Personal or Face-to-Face Interviews

Personal or face-to-face interviews are interviewer-administered surveys done in person. They have the highest response rate. These days, most interviewers use laptops or other mobile devices instead of paper-and-pencil questionnaires to input the data they collect. Face-to-face interviewing is especially suitable when the population is not literate or does not have regular access to phones and computers. Interviewers are able to ask open-ended questions, answer or clarify any questions that respondents might have, and engage the respondents for longer periods of time compared to other data-gathering modes.

However, personal interviews are time-consuming and expensive. There could also be interviewer effects where the respondents are influenced in how they answer the items by who the interviewer is, such as their gender expression, ethnicity, or social class. Another related problem arises if the interviewer is not consistent or systematic in how the questions are being asked of respondents. Interviewers need to be trained adequately, especially if they are not familiar with the local customs and cultural norms of the community being studied. Recruiting qualified interviewers can be a challenge.

Another issue to consider is interviewer safety. When working with social justice issues, this could mean anything from physically challenging terrains to political unrest to high crime areas. For some research projects, interviewers work in pairs or travel in groups with a security guard or local trusted person from the community. Finding accommodation, transportation, and reliable communication methods are crucial. Interviewers might need to first establish themselves as legitimate researchers by gaining the approval of authority figures or community leaders before starting the survey. It is also important to ensure that the interviews are conducted in a private setting to protect the confidentiality of the respondents, especially when discussing potentially sensitive topics.

Telephone Interviews

Telephone interviews are also interviewer-administered, but instead of face-to-face interactions, the mode of researcher-respondent interaction uses a landline or mobile phone. These days most telephone surveys are completed using computers. This method is referred to as computer-assisted telephone interviewing (CATI), which allows for such aspects as random selection of phone numbers, automatic dialing, and inputting responses directly into software. Similar to personal interviewing, telephone interviews are also excellent for open-ended questions that need further probing. It is much more cost-effective and faster than face-to-face interviews. Interviewers do not have to worry about accommodation, meals, or safety.

Yet, a phone survey is only meaningful if phone access is relatively high in the target group, which could be an issue among some under-resourced populations. Depending on whether a full sampling frame is available or not, it might be hard to determine how probabilistic the sample is. As we learned in Chapter 4, in order to draw a probability sample, the researcher needs access to a comprehensive list of all potential survey respondents. It is difficult to know whether a list of all phone users would be available in any particular location, and any potential list might well be limited by not including those with private numbers, for instance. The response rates are lower and the length of interviews are shorter compared to personal interviews. With the rise of spam calls and telemarketers, those doing legitimate surveys find it hard to reach respondents, who either fail to pick up the phone or hang up on the interviewer.

Mail Surveys

Mail surveys are a type of self-administered method where the questionnaire is mailed to the respondents, who complete it and mail it back to the researchers. It is an appropriate method when sensitive items are being asked that are best answered privately, which is not possible with interviewer-administered surveys. They are cost effective although time consuming. Without the assistance of an interviewer, there is no one to explain or clarify instructions, which is especially problematic among populations with low literacy levels. Mail surveys can also easily get misplaced, forgotten, or not mailed back even when completed. It is also hard to identify who within a household actually completed the survey.

Online Surveys

Online surveys (also known as web-based or electronic surveys) are the most recent forms of self-administered surveys. Here respondents are directed to a website through a link, where they complete the survey on a computer, tablet, smartphone, or other electronic device. Surveys are also being conducted through social media and text messages. Tools such as Survey Monkey, Google Forms, and Qualtrics are used by several researchers to design online surveys that can be embedded into websites, social media posts, emails, and text messages. Another recent and important development in Communication survey research is the use of Amazon's Mechanical Turk (or MTurk for short). This online space pairs "requesters" and "workers" on short-term tasks, including completing brief surveys for a small monetary incentive.

Online surveys can accommodate a variety of interactive and multimedia elements such as visuals, embedded clips from media content, graphics, pull-down menus, and slider bars. For example, the respondent can be prompted if they missed an item inadvertently or can even pause and resume the survey at a later point in time. Once the survey has been created online, it can be sent simultaneously to any number of respondents. It is, therefore, an inexpensive and efficient method of data collection.

On the other hand, if there is only limited access to electronic devices, limited bandwidth or intermittent connection to the internet among the population, this is not an appropriate method. Online surveys should also be compliant across multiple platforms, browsers, and devices so that all respondents can have access to them. Without the ability to check exactly who is participating in online surveys, it is not possible to know whether the respondents were unique. Also, without an interviewer administering the items, sometimes online surveys yield a lot of missing data and response-style biases, suggesting that the respondents did not bother to read the items and answer options carefully while answering.

Finding Ways to Improve Survey Response Rates

One of the biggest concerns for survey researchers is the response rate, which is the percentage of completed surveys as a function of the number of surveys that were distributed. For instance, if you distributed 100 surveys and received 80 back from the respondents, your response rate is 80%. As we saw in the chapter on sampling, when the response rate is low, the main concern is that the sample is not generalizable to the population from which it is being drawn. It is important to analyze the size and the composition of nonresponses to understand whether there are systemic patterns so they can be corrected. For instance, if we notice a systematic pattern that most of the nonresponses are from a certain geographic area where the majority are Spanish rather than English speakers, a corrective measure could be to translate the survey into Spanish as well. There are several reasons why respondents might not engage with a survey. These can include poor sample coverage, noncontact, nonresponse, or inability to participate. Each is explained in detail in the text that follows.

Poor sample coverage could lead to sampling errors if the original sampling frame was inadequate. This can happen if the respondents have moved to another address or changed their phone number, which is not reflected in the sampling frame. Email addresses could also become defunct, especially if they are associated with a particular institution or organization, which the respondent has now left. So, alas, right at the outset, the sampling frame is leaving out a portion of the population in a systematic way, which becomes difficult to correct because there is no way that the respondents will even receive the invitation to participate in the survey. It is important to make sure that the sampling frame is as up-to-date and accurate as possible before beginning the study.

Another issue is **noncontact**, which means that some individuals simply may not be able to be reached, although they were a part of the sampling frame. When the population spans multiple regions, nations, and cultures, survey design becomes a complex endeavor. Factors such as political upheavals, religious holidays, weather conditions, and varying customs and norms can influence survey dissemination. Populations of interest could also be living in fairly difficult terrains that are hard to reach in certain seasons and severe weather conditions. They could also be migratory populations who move across geographic regions due to weather or seasonal occupations. These circumstances could provide unique challenges to be overcome by survey researchers. If the social justice project happens to involve groups such as farmworkers, miners, construction workers, or domestic workers, researchers should consider that they might be away from family for their work for long periods of time.

Even if contact is made, there can be **nonresponse**, which means that the individuals decline the request to participate in the survey (**unit nonresponse**) or refuse to answer specific items on the survey (**item nonresponse**). *Unit nonresponse* refers to those who were in the sampling frame, were contacted, but either refused to answer the entire survey or portions of it. Sometimes, the specific time or location might not be convenient for the respondents to complete the survey. We all can think of a time when we were asked to complete a phone survey or paper survey at an inconvenient time and had to refuse participation. It could also be that some respondents simply decline participation all the time, regardless of what the survey is about and how many times they are contacted. This could be a result of prior negative experiences with surveys where they felt that they wasted their time or their input was not taken seriously. Even if multiple contacts are made, some respondents simply ignore or decline participation in the survey. They might also simply be unable to participate, say, due to mental or physical health conditions.

It is also important to remember that groups that might be of interest to social justice survey researchers might be overworked, with multiple jobs, multiple shifts, and perhaps long commutes. Within this context, completing surveys is a low priority compared to meeting more basic needs like food, safety, and shelter. With phone surveys, for instance, this could mean the researcher must call back several times, perhaps during different times of the day or week, in order to overcome initial nonresponse. Interviewers must understand that their phone calls might be interrupting work or that the participant might not be able to give their full attention to their cell phones since they may be in a crowded area or driving somewhere. The increase in spam calls and junk messages also means that potential respondents might not answer calls from numbers they do not recognize. With mailed surveys, one could send an initial letter of introduction, reminder postcard, replacement surveys in case some are misplaced, and a thank you card for those who completed. If research funding allows, the researcher could also pay for postage.

In interviewer-administered surveys, if the interviewer is perceived to be unfriendly, unprofessional, rude, or uninterested, the respondents might refuse participation. The protocols that guide interviewer-respondent interactions, be they administered in person or phone or any other mode, should be polite, professional, and personalized. Using specific names to address participants in the cover letter or email that includes the online survey link is always more likely to garner response as opposed to a generic invitation. Assurances of confidentiality and privacy are another way in which researchers can communicate that they take this responsibility seriously. If possible, researchers should offer monetary or other incentives such as extra credit to college students or a random, lottery-type drawing for an item of interest to the participants. Researchers also may use multiple modes of data collection to reach the respondent. For example, they might send a mailed survey but follow up via phone to remind prospective research participants about it or send an email with an online web version of the mailed survey.

Another form of nonresponse is *item nonresponse*, where respondents do not answer certain items on the questionnaire. In self-administered surveys, it could simply be that respondents failed to notice a particular item. At other times, the respondents might notice and read the items but have difficulty in understanding them. Avoiding confusing and hard-to-understand items becomes crucial here. Items that are seen as sensitive, too personal, embarrassing, or intimidating are also likely to lead to nonresponse. For example, topics such as domestic violence or sexual harassment might not only be emotionally difficult to answer but could sometimes be physically dangerous to respond to, for fear of retaliation, if privacy is breached. Avoiding answering such items could be a psychological coping mechanism for some respondents. Many of the issues that social justice researchers are interested in are likely to fall into this realm, which is why particular attention has to be paid to ensure the safety, comfort, confidentiality, and privacy of the participants.

It is also common for respondents to only complete items that require less effort, such as close-ended items as responding to open-ended items might take more time and effort. As we have discussed earlier, some respondents might simply not know the answers or be able to recall them. Finally, it is possible that some participants do not take the survey seriously because they do not see the value of completing it but might be interested in compensation such as extra credit. Under these circumstances, they might either skip through items or answer them without reading them carefully. If the survey participant does not see the survey as meaningful, relevant, and helpful, they might reluctantly agree to participate but leave a lot of data missing.

Scholar Spotlight: Dr. Sasha Costanza-Chock

Figure 5.7 Scholar Spotlight: Dr. Sasha Costanza-Chock

Sasha Costanza-Chock (pronouns: they/them or she/her) is a scholar, activist, and media-maker, and currently Associate Professor of Civic Media at MIT. They are a faculty associate at the Berkman-Klein Center for Internet & Society at Harvard University, faculty affiliate with the MIT Open Documentary Lab and the MIT Center for Civic Media, and creator of the MIT Codesign Studio (codesign.mit.edu). Their work focuses on social movements, transformative media organizing, and design justice. Dr. Costanza-Chock's first book, *Out of the Shadows, Into the Streets: Transmedia Organizing and the Immigrant Rights Movement* was published by the MIT Press in 2014. Their new book, *Design Justice: Community-Led Practices to Build the Worlds We Need* was published by the MIT Press in 2020. They are a steering committee member of the Design Justice Network (designjusticenetwork.org) and a board member of Allied Media Projects (AMP); AMP convenes the annual Allied Media Conference and cultivates media strategies for a more just, creative, and collaborative world (alliedmedia.org). While Dr. Costanza-Chock uses multiple research methods in their work, in this chapter, we showcase their use of survey research within activist-scholarship.

Q: You use a variety of research methods in your work. What do you think is the role of quantitative methods in social justice scholarship in communication?

Dr. Costanza-Chock: I locate my work within the long history of participatory action research (PAR). PAR is a framework with roots in the work of scholars such

as Kurt Lewin, John Dewey, and (later) Paolo Freire, Orlando Fals-Borda, and Linda Tuhiwai Smith that emphasizes the development of communities of shared inquiry and action. In PAR, we consider communities to be co-researchers, rather than solely "research subjects." It's a research stance from which we can employ any methods, including quantitative methods. So, for me, social justice scholarship in communication, regardless of the methods employed, is about partnering with community-based organizations from the beginning of the project. Together we can define research questions, choose and execute methods, analyze what we find, and make recommendations based on the research.

Q: What are some topics that you have studied using survey methods? Can you tell us a little about those studies?

Dr. Costanza-Chock: Some of the projects I've worked on that involved surveys include the Occupy Research Network and the Transformative Media Organizing Project. The Occupy Research Network was an open, shared space for researchers who participated in the Occupy Movement. We produced the Occupy Research General Demographic and Political Participation Survey (ORGS), with 5,074 individual respondents; it was quite influential among scholars interested in Occupy. Over 100 peer-reviewed articles and books cite the ORGS dataset, while nearly 200 cite "Occupy Research." Some of the key findings from that survey are summarized in a chapter in the book *We Are Many* (2012). I also drew on the survey data in my article (Costanza-Chock, 2012). The Transformative Media Organizing Project was a multiyear study of LGBTQ and Two-Spirit media advocacy practices, funded by the Ford Foundation. This project included a series of expert interviews and an organizational survey with 231 respondents. We developed research questions together with a group of partner organizations from all around the U.S.A.; together we produced an overview of how the organizations that work to improve the lives of LGBTQ and Two-Spirit people currently utilize media and made recommendations to funders as to how they might better support media activism in this space. Our findings are available at transformativemedia.cc, and in Media, Culture & Society (Costanza-Chock, S., C. Schweidler, & the Transformative Media Organizing Project, 2017).

Q: One of your expertise areas is design justice. Can you tell us more about this concept? How can it be applied to the design of surveys and questionnaires?

Dr. Costanza-Chock: To quote from a recent paper I presented at Design Research Society: "Design is key to our collective liberation, but most design processes today reproduce inequalities structured by what Black feminist scholars call the matrix of domination. Intersecting inequalities are manifest at all levels of the design process. [Design justice] builds upon the Design Justice Principles, developed by an emerging network of designers and community organizers, to propose a working definition of design justice: Design justice is a field of theory and practice that is concerned with how the design of objects and systems influences the distribution of risks, harms, and benefits among various groups of people. Design justice focuses on the ways that design reproduces, is reproduced by, and/or challenges the matrix of domination (white supremacy, heteropatriarchy, capitalism, and settler colonialism).

Design justice is also a growing social movement that aims to ensure a more equitable distribution of design's benefits and burdens; fair and meaningful participation in design decisions; and recognition of community-based design traditions, knowledge, and practices" (Costanza-Chock, 2018a). Applied to survey design, design justice means that instead of researchers creating surveys to study communities only as research subjects, leaders from community-based organizations (CBOs) that already exist to advance the interests of marginalized communities should be included as research partners from the beginning. That means that community-based organizations participate with the researchers to create the research questions, select methods, craft survey design, do data collection, analyze the findings, draw conclusions, and publish the results.

Q: A common challenge in doing survey research is nonresponse. What are some ways you suggest for improving response rates, especially while working with marginalized groups?

Dr. Costanza-Chock: In my experience, partnering with community-based organizations that are known to have strong accountability mechanisms to marginalized groups is key to survey response. Communities are tired of having their information mined and extracted. Why should marginalized communities give their information to yet another set of researchers? In research partnerships with trusted CBOs, people are more likely to have a sense that their information will be used to advance their interests.

Q: You identify both as a scholar and activist. What does activism mean to you as a communication researcher? Do you have any advice for budding scholar-activists?

Dr. Costanza-Chock: All research is political; the question is, are you willing to explicitly talk about the politics that guide your work? To me, partnering with community-based organizations and social movement organizations has always been the most interesting, productive, grounded, and ethical way to work. For budding scholar-activists, I recommend you find community-based organizations whose values and ways of working you really resonate with, develop a relationship, and figure out how your research skills can be useful to the community. It will be hard, but very rewarding, and it will ground your scholarship in real-world problems, guide you toward useful insights, and ultimately, you'll learn so much!

Summary

Surveys are versatile, easy, cost-effective, and efficient methods for social scientists. They can be used to gain knowledge about the attitudes, opinions, beliefs, knowledge, perceptions, intentions, and behaviors of individuals. They help observe key patterns of relationships among variables to understand complex social issues. They allow researchers to examine cross-population generalizability and cross-cultural patterns in data. By collecting data on the views, thoughts, experiences, and concerns of groups of respondents, researchers can amplify diverse voices.

Cross-sectional surveys are one-time surveys, whereas longitudinal surveys are administered more than once over a period of time. Longitudinal surveys could be trend, cohort, or panel designs. Longitudinal designs help to capture data across time, which could be valuable for

social justice researchers to be able to track changes in social issues over time. However, these surveys are expensive and there could be attrition. Apart from designing their own surveys, researchers could also use research firms, omnibus surveys, or publicly available datasets for their projects.

Some ways to increase the validity and reliability of surveys are by reducing measurement error, improving sample coverage, and increasing response rates. Researchers should ask clear and relevant items that are consistently understood by all participants. They should avoid asking confusing, biased, double-negative, and double-barreled items. They should not include items for which respondents do not possess knowledge or cannot access answers easily. The answer options should be meaningful, collectively exhaustive, and mutually exclusive so that the respondents can accurately record their responses. Social desirability should be minimized by emphasizing privacy, confidentiality, and non-judgment from researchers.

Items should be organized in a logical sequence in questionnaires. Using filter questions and skip patterns help participants to only respond to questions that are relevant to them. Where appropriate, the survey should be made available across different languages, modes of administration, and communication devices/platforms. Interviewer-administered surveys can be conducted face-to-face or over the phone. Self-administered surveys can be done via mailed surveys or electronically. A growing concern in survey research is nonresponse. In general, surveys that assure confidentiality, ask relevant questions, are personalized, provide incentives, and are perceived as leading to actionable outcomes are more likely to be completed.

When designed with care, surveys are an excellent tool for quantitative researchers interested in advancing social justice. Well-designed surveys for social justice seek to find relevant information by allowing participants to share confidentially and assure them that the findings will be used for actionable social change.

Discussion Questions and Activities

1. Discuss the key benefits and challenges of using survey methods, especially for projects oriented toward social justice initiatives.
2. What are the most important ethical considerations in survey research when working on social justice issues?
3. Using a topic of interest to you, explain how you would conduct a cross-sectional survey, trend, cohort, and panel study. Who might serve as a population of interest for each type? How do the types differ from one another?
4. Sometimes we learn best by making mistakes. Can you give examples of poorly written survey items (those that are biased, double-barreled, include double negatives, and include answer options that are not mutually exclusive and collectively exhaustive)? Then, for each, correct these mistakes by providing a better survey item.
5. How can surveys be designed to be more attractive and accessible to respondents?
6. Discuss the advantages and disadvantages of the various modes of data collection—mail, phone, in person, or online—one can use in survey research.

References

Barbour, J. B., Ballard, D. I., Barge, J. K., & Gill, R. (2017). Making time/making temporality for engaged scholarship. *Journal of Applied Communication Research*, *45*(4), 365–380. doi:10.1080/00909882.2017.1355556

Barbour, J. B., & Gill, R. (2014). Designing communication for the day-to-day safety oversight of nuclear power plants. *Journal of Applied Communication Research*, *42*, 168–189. doi:10.1080/00909882.2013.859291

Bickman, L., & Rog, D. J. (2009). *The SAGE handbook of applied social research methods*. Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage Publications.

Connell, B. R., Jones, M., Mace, R., Mueller, J., Mullick, A., Ostroff, E., . . . Vanderheiden, G. (1997, April 1). *The principles of universal design (Version 2.0)*. Retrieved from https://projects.ncsu.edu/ncsu/design/cud/about_ud/udprinciplestext.htm

Costanza-Chock, S. (2012). Mic check! Media cultures and the occupy movement. *Social Movement Studies: Journal of Social, Cultural, and Political Protest*, 1–11. doi:10.1080/14742837.2012.710746

Costanza-Chock, S. (2018a). Design justice: Towards an intersectional feminist framework for design theory and practice. *Proceedings of the Design Research Society 2018*. Retrieved from SRN: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3189696

Costanza-Chock, S. (2018b). Transformative media organizing: Key lessons from participatory communications research with immigrant rights, Occupy, and LGBTQ and two-spirit movements. In G. Meikle (Ed.), *The Routledge companion to media and activism* (pp. 77–86). New York: Routledge.

Costanza-Chock, S., Schweidler, C., & The Transformative Media Organizing Project. (2017). Toward transformative media organizing: LGBTQ and two-spirit media work in the United States. *Media, Culture & Society*, *39*(2), 159–184. doi:10.1177/0163443716674360

Dillman, D. A., & Christan, L. M. (2005). Survey mode as a source of instability in responses across surveys. *Field Methods*, *17*(1), 30–52. doi:10.1177/1525822X04269550

Garett, R., Liu, S., & Young, S. D. (2017). A longitudinal analysis of stress among incoming college freshmen. *Journal of American College Health*, *65*(5), 331–338. doi:10.1080/07448481.2017.1312413

Graf, N. (2018, September 27). *Sexual harassment at work in the era of #MeToo*. Retrieved from www.pewsocialtrends.org

Gramlich, J. (2019, February 28). *Q&A: Why and how we expanded our American trends panel to play a bigger role in our U.S. surveys*. Retrieved from www.pewresearch.org

Horowitz, J. M., & Graf, N. (2019, February 21). *Most U.S. teens see anxiety, depression as major problems*. Retrieved from www.pewsocialtrends.org.

Naab, T. K., Karnowski, V., & Schlütz, D. (2018). Reporting mobile social media use: How survey and experience sampling measures differ. *Communication Methods and Measures*. doi:10.1080/19312458.2018.1555799

Ramasubramanian, S. (2010). Television viewing, racial attitudes, and policy preferences: Exploring the role of social identity and intergroup emotions in influencing support for affirmative action. *Communication Monographs*, *77*(1), 102–120. doi:10.1080/03637750903514300

Ramasubramanian, S., & Kornfield, S. (2012). Japanese anime heroines as pro-social role models: Implications for cross-cultural entertainment effects. *Journal of International and Intercultural Communication*, *5*(3), 189–207. doi:10.1080/17513057.2012.679291

Saleem, M., Yang, G., & Ramasubramanian, S. (2016). Reliance on direct and mediated contact and public policies supporting outgroup harm. *Journal of Communication*, *66*(4), 604–624. doi:10.1111/jcom.12234

Schutt, R. K. (2015). *Investigating the social world: The process and practice of research* (8th ed.). Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage.

Taylor, K., & Silver, L. (2019, February 5). *Smartphone ownership is growing rapidly around the world, but not always equally*. Retrieved from www.pewglobal.org

Thaker, J., Dutta, M., Nair, V., & Rao, V. P. (2018). The interplay between stigma, collective efficacy, and advocacy communication among men who have sex with men and transgender females. *Journal of Health Communication*, *23*(7), 614–623. doi:10.1080/10810730.2018.1499833

Wrench, J. S., Thomas-Maddox, C., Richmond, V. P., & McCroskey, J. C. (2008). *Quantitative research methods for communication: A hands-on approach*. New York: Oxford University Press.

Yang, H., Ramasubramanian, S., & Oliver, M. B. (2008). Cultivation effects on quality of life indicators: Exploring the effects of American television consumption on feelings of relative deprivation in South Korea and India. *Journal of Broadcasting & Electronic Media*, *52*(2), 247–267. doi:10.1080/08838150801992060

6 Studying Responses Through Experimental Methods

Experiments have always been central to scientific research. They are often considered the defining component of the social scientific method of inquiry (Webster & Sell, 2014). Some famous scientific experiments are the water displacement experiment by Archimedes after which he ran into the streets yelling "Eureka! Eureka!," Galileo Galilei dropping a heavy and a light ball from the Leaning Tower of Pisa to show that they land at the same time, and Ivan Pavlov's classical conditioning experiments where dogs start salivating every time a bell was rung or music was played because of associations with food. More recent social justice-oriented experiments include Jane Elliot's classroom experiment where she labeled the blue-eyed children as superior and gave them extra privileges on the first day and then reversed roles the next day with brown-eyed kids to teach about the negative effects of racial discrimination (Figure 6.1). Another famous experiment is the bobo doll experiment by Albert Bandura, where he showed that kids were more likely to learn aggression through imitation than because of genetically inherited traits. This experiment is especially relevant to Communication scholars who study social learning and violence.

Several of these experiments led to breakthroughs in scientific knowledge and theory building while also dealing with real-world social issues. As we saw in Chapter 1, basic research focuses on theorizing knowledge, whereas applied research focuses on solving practical problems. Experiments can contribute to both basic research through theory building and to applied research through extending theories into practical solutions. As you will recall, a research hypothesis is a specific testable proposition of a relationship between variables put forth by the researcher. Experiments are excellent methods to **test research hypotheses** because they allow researchers to observe differences across groups to see if a proposed hypothesis holds or not. You will learn more about hypothesis testing using statistical methods in Chapters 8 and 9.

Whereas surveys provide an overall picture of any social issue of interest to the researcher, experimental methods are helpful in studying cause-effect relationships among variables. In fact, experiments are seen as a gold standard method for establishing cause and effect relationships between variables. Therefore, when the research design calls for examining whether one variable is affected by another, experiments are the best choice (Webster & Sell, 2014). The meaning of causation and the specific requirements for establishing causal relationships among variables will be discussed later in this chapter. Not only do experiments help identify causal effects, but they are also a powerful means for researchers to **understand the theoretical mechanisms** underlying a causal relationship. That is, they explain the process and the mechanism about *why* variables are related as the cause and effect. Thus, they help to test scientific theories and theoretical processes using empirical data-driven methods.

For social justice research, in particular, the experiment is likely to be the go-to method for studying the effects of an **intervention**. Does watching a media literacy video increase

Figure 6.1 Jane Elliot's blue eyed/brown eyed classroom experiment
Source: Film: "A Class Divided"

critical thinking about stereotypical media depictions among teens? Does seeing a documentary on food deserts in under-resourced communities spark monetary giving to a campaign to bring in a local grocery store? Questions such as these that pertain to whether exposure to or participation in a program affects individuals are well suited for experimental methodology. Intervening in social injustices and inequalities is at the heart of social justice research, and experiments are particularly useful to test the outcomes associated with specific interventions.

Independent, Dependent, Control, and Confounding Variables

In experiments, the **independent variables (or cause or predictor variable)** are manipulated or introduced into the setting by the experimenter. Manipulating a variable means the researcher designs the variable so that different participants in the study experience that same variable differently. The **dependent variable (or effect or outcome variable)** is the outcome variable that is measured. It is the variable that the researcher thinks will be affected by the independent variable.

For example, imagine a study in which a researcher examines how exposure to positive portrayals of Black women in video games leads to lower levels of racialized sexism. The independent variable is exposure to positive portrayals of Black women in games. The dependent variable is the level of racialized sexism. The researcher would manipulate the independent variable to create two groups: one that plays a game with positive portrayals of Black women and another that plays a game without such content. The first group would be called the **experimental or treatment group** since it receives the treatment. The second group would be called the **control group**, which does not receive any treatment. The two groups, then, experience the variable—exposure to positive portrayals of Black women in games—differently.

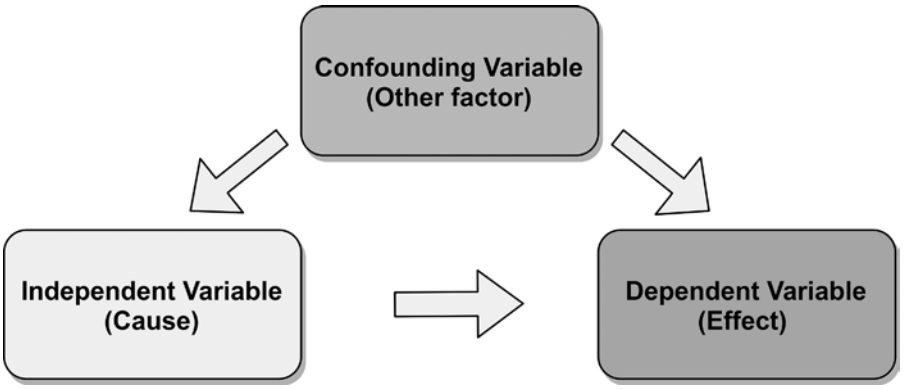


Figure 6.2 Independent variable, dependent variable, and confounding variable
Source: Emily Riewestahl

Apart from the independent and dependent variables, there are other variables that need to be considered in an experiment. All these other variables other than the independent and dependent variables are called **extraneous (or third) variables**. There are two types of extraneous variables: control variables and confounding variables. When extraneous variables have been accounted for by the researcher, they are called **control variables**. Extraneous variables that have not been controlled for are called **confounding variables**. Researchers need to minimize confounding variables by controlling for as many relevant extraneous variables as they can. Researchers try to control the design of the experiment to reduce the number of possible confounding variables. Researchers also measure control variables, as we will explain later in the chapter, to test whether the relationship between the independent variable and the dependent variable holds even when taking these additional variables into account.

In the gaming study discussed earlier, for example, some control variables could be the amount of time the game is played, the device used, the room where the game is played, the time of day when the game is played, and so on. When the researcher fails to control for an important extraneous variable, that is a confounding variable. For instance, imagine that the game the researcher chooses for participants to play in the experimental group not only contains more positive portrayals of Black women, but it is also more violent than the game the researcher chooses for participants to play in the control group. The level of violence in the game is a confounding variable. We do not know whether the changes in the dependent variable (level of racialized sexism) are caused by the independent variable (exposure to positive portrayals of Black women) or the confounding variable (level of violence) (Figure 6.2).

Role of Experiments in Establishing Causation and Causal Mechanisms

As we saw earlier, one of the biggest advantages of experiments is that researchers can infer causation from them. But what does "inferring causation" mean? Here are the **criteria for establishing causality** (Schutt, 2015):

1. **Association**: First, there should be a significant association between the independent variable and the dependent variable. In Chapter 8, we will be defining what makes an

association between two variables statistically significant. But for now, suffice to say that they should be related to one another in a manner that is unlikely to be explained by chance alone. The independent and dependent variables should co-vary in some way with each other. Otherwise, one cannot be the cause of the other.

2. **Time order**: Second, we need to establish the time order. Just because two variables co-vary with one another, we cannot be sure that the independent variable is the cause and the dependent variable is the effect if we do not establish time order. What this means is that we need to be sure that the independent variable occurred *before* the dependent variable, if we are to ascertain cause-effect relationships.
3. **Non-spurious relationships**: The final criterion is that we need to confirm that the relationship between the independent and dependent variables was not a spurious relationship caused by a third or extraneous variable. When two variables appear to be causally related, but in reality, that relationship can be attributed to an external, confounding third variable, that is called a spurious relationship. For example, in the gaming example that we saw earlier, if we don't control for an extraneous variable such as "level of violence," then we might not be sure that the independent variable (exposure to positive portrayals of Black women) is the cause for the dependent or effect variable (level of racialized sexism).

One useful way to remember these principles comes from a famous adage you may have heard: "**Correlation does not mean causation**." Just because two variables are associated with one another—meaning that a change in the values of one variable occurs in relationship with a change in the values of the other—that does not mean that we can claim a causal relationship between the two. Rather, there must be correlation (or association) *in addition to* an established time order and the ability to control for third variables.

Beyond establishing the cause-effect relationship between the independent and dependent variables, researchers could also use experiments to understand the causal mechanism underlying them. A **causal mechanism** is any process that clarifies the relationship between the independent and dependent variables (Schutt, 2015). It helps to explain *why* the independent variable causes changes in the dependent variable. Sometimes the independent variable does not directly affect the dependent variable, but the independent variable affects another variable (called the intervening or mediating variable), which, in turn, affects the dependent variable. In other words, intervening or mediating variables (also known as **mediators**) are those variables that intervene between the independent and dependent variable, as an explanatory variable in the causal mechanism. For example, an experiment conducted by political communication scholars Matthes and Schmuck (2017) was interested in exploring the causal mechanism that explains the relationship between exposure to anti-immigrant political ads and attitudes toward immigrants. They found that this relationship was mediated by "intergroup anxiety." That is, the mediating variable "intergroup anxiety" intervened between exposure to anti-immigrant ads and attitudes toward immigrants. Exposure to anti-immigrant ads increased intergroup anxiety for participants. Intergroup anxiety, in turn, led to increased negative attitudes toward immigrants.

Apart from mediating variables, other types of variables that can help explain causal mechanisms are moderating variables. These variables determine the context in which a relationship between the independent and dependent variables holds good. **Moderating variables or moderators** are those that make the relationship between the independent and dependent variables stronger or weaker. With the earlier example that we saw, the relationship between exposure to anti-immigrant ads and negative attitudes toward

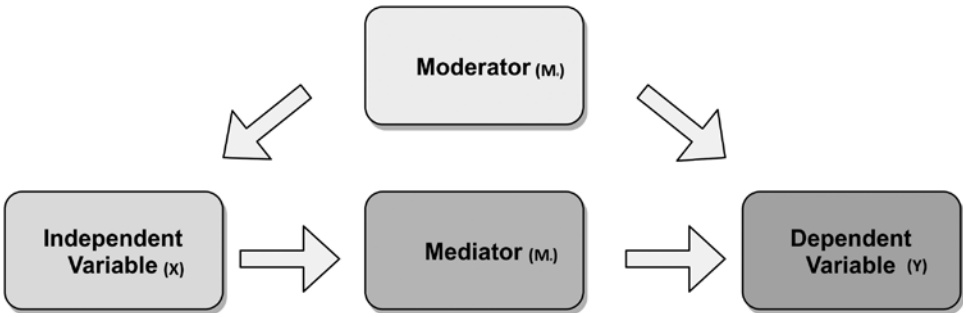


Figure 6.3 Mediator and moderator variables

Source: Emily Riewestahl

immigrants was moderated by level of education. That is, the moderating variable "level of education" determined the context or condition under which the relationship was stronger or weaker. In other words, among participants with lower education, researchers observed that anti-immigrant political ads had stronger effects on negative attitudes toward immigrants.

In Figure 6.3, X is the independent variable, which leads to M_e, the mediating variable, which in turn, leads to Y variable, which is the outcome variable. The moderating variable, M_o, is a contextual variable that influences both X and Y. Using the earlier example, the relationship between exposure to anti-immigrant ads (X) and attitudes toward immigrants (Y) is mediated by intergroup anxiety (M_e) and moderated by level of education, M_o.

As you can see in the previous examples, using independent variables, dependent variables, control variables, mediating variables, and moderating variables, experiments can help social justice scholars start to understand the theoretical reasoning and causal mechanisms that explain the effects on dependent variables. For many social issues, knowing exactly what the cause is and the theoretical explanation for why it causes the effect is invaluable in making systematic long-term policy changes. Several research methods textbooks make it seem like it is impossible to establish causality due to confounding variables and other threats to validity. In reality, even if causal relationships are not established with 100% certainty, for instance if not all possible confounding variables are accounted for, experiments can still be helpful in unraveling the theoretical mechanisms that underlie relationships among key variables of interest (Webster & Sell, 2014). Through a series of experiments, the researcher can start unpacking the theoretical mechanisms that explain how and why the cause variable affects the outcome variable.

True Experiments

There are many types of experiments such as true experiments, quasi-experiments, and pre-experiments. **True experiments** are typically conducted in lab-based settings under a high

degree of control. There are three requirements for an experiment to be considered a true experiment (Schutt, 2015):

1. A true experiment should have **at least two comparison groups**. Comparison groups are those that are exposed to different values of the independent variable, thus being exposed to different treatments. In its simplest form, a true experiment is when participants are randomly assigned (see item 3 below for a definition) to one of two treatment groups—typically, the experimental group (presence of the treatment) and the control group (absence of the treatment). However, not all comparison groups need to be experimental and control groups. They can also just be two different treatments. For example, let's take an experiment that examines how positive or negative news portrayals of Muslims influence perceptions of this group. The independent variable is manipulated into two types of treatments: positive and negative news stories, rather than the presence or absence of the experimental condition.
2. The **temporal order (or time order)** of the variables matters in experiments. The temporal order should be established so that it is clear that the independent variable was manipulated *before* the dependent variable was measured. In the earlier example, the researcher was interested in how exposure to positive versus negative news stories about Muslims influences attitudes toward this group. Unless we can be sure that the exposure to the news stories happened before the measurement of attitudes, we cannot be confident that the independent variable causes the dependent variable.
3. There has to be a random assignment to the two (or more) conditions. **Random assignment** means that a random process is used to decide which comparison group the participant will participate in. Random assignment is extremely important to make sure that every participant in the sample has an equal chance of being in a specific research condition. For example, in the experiment discussed earlier, it is the experimenter's job to make sure that everyone in the sample has an equal chance of reading either the positive or negative news story about Muslims. There should be no bias in deciding whether a particular participant will be assigned to the positive or the negative story condition. Only then can the researcher be confident that the participants in all the conditions are equivalent to each other and do not differ in any significant way along key characteristics. That is, to establish causation, the differences in the dependent variable should not be caused by differences in characteristics of the participants in the various conditions but should be clearly attributable only to the independent variable. Later in this chapter, we will describe how exactly a researcher assigns participants to various conditions.

Given these requirements, true experiments are the best way to test for causal relationships between the independent and dependent variables. A well-designed true experiment offers a high degree of control over the independent variables, which helps to observe their effects on dependent variables in a controlled research setting. It isolates the key factors by controlling for extraneous variables so that the researcher can be confident that the changes in the dependent variables are associated *only* with the changes in the independent variables. For example, in another study, the second author of this book was interested in finding out whether exposure to media literacy training reduces implicit racial bias activated by stereotypical news stories (Ramasubramanian, 2007). The independent variable is exposure to the media literacy video or control video. Exposure to the media literacy video should occur before implicit racial bias is measured to be sure of the time order. The researcher should randomly assign participants to the two conditions.

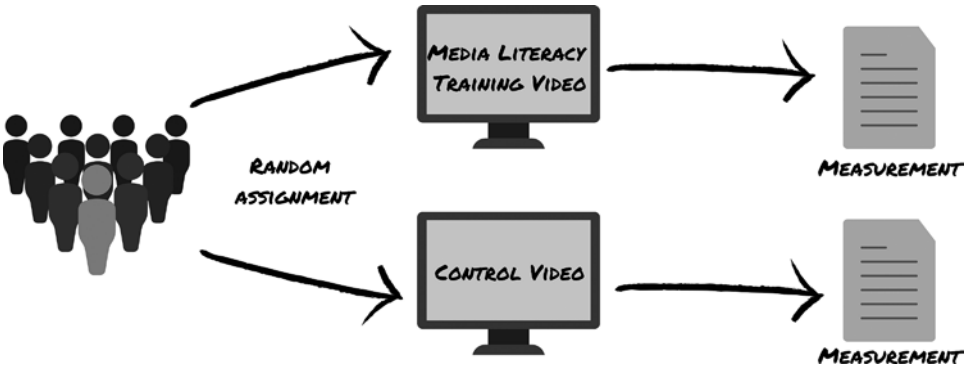


Figure 6.4 An example of key aspects of experimental design

Source: Emily Riewestahl

The simplest design is where there is only one independent variable, with two conditions. For example, in the earlier example, media literacy and control video were the two conditions of the independent variable. However, a single independent variable could be manipulated to have more than two levels as well. For example, researchers could manipulate the level of sexist humor in internet memes to be low, medium, or high. There may even be more than one independent variable in an experiment. Typically, anywhere from one to three independent variables are manipulated in a given experiment.

When there is more than one independent variable, an experiment is called a **factorial experiment**. The more independent variables that are manipulated or measured in an experiment, the more complex and cumbersome the design becomes. A **factorial design statement** uses numbers and a cross-tabulation to visually depict the number of independent variables and the levels of each independent variable. For example, let's say a social justice researcher is interested in understanding how music videos influence sexist attitudes. She first identifies two independent variables of interest: (1) the level of sexual objectification in the video (high, medium, low) and (2) the type of music video (hip-hop, country, rock, and pop) that could influence the dependent variable, which is participants' rape myth acceptance scores. Therefore, she would conduct a 3x4 factorial design with 12 conditions, which looks like Figure 6.5. The "3" in the factorial design statement represents the three values for level of sexual objectification (high, medium, and low) and the "4" represents the four music types (hip-hop, country, rock, and pop). Factorial designs can certainly help researchers understand complex and nuanced phenomena, but they also need to be used with care. As you may recall from Chapter 4, the larger the number of conditions, the greater the sample size that is needed to examine the relationships among the variables. Often, too, more complex designs call for more complex statistical procedures to compare the different conditions and understand the relationships among variables.

All true experiments have to involve posttest measures, where the variations in the dependent variable are measured after the experimental group has received the treatment. Yet, a true experiment could use a posttest-only control group design, a pre-/posttest control group design, or a Solomon four-group design. If the dependent variable is only measured after the treatment, it is called a **posttest-only control group design**.

Type of Music		Level of Sexual Objectification		
		High	Medium	Low
	Hip-Hop	Condition 1: High/Hip-Hop	Condition 2: Medium/Hip-Hop	Condition 3: Low/Hip-Hop
	Country	Condition 4: High/Country	Condition 5: Medium/Country	Condition 6: Low/Country
	Rock	Condition 7: High/Rock	Condition 8: Medium/Rock	Condition 9: Low/Rock
	Pop	Condition 10: High/Pop	Condition 11: Medium/Pop	Condition 12: Low/Pop

Figure 6.5 A 3x4 factorial experimental design

Source: Emily Riewestahl

Some true experiments could also include pretests in which the dependent variable is measured before the treatment is applied to the experimental group. Such an experiment is said to have a **pretest/posttest contol group design**. Typically, the pretest and posttest are identical, if not equivalent, but simply administered at different points in time—before and after the experimental group has received the treatment. Using pretest/posttest designs gives the experimenter greater confidence that the changes in the dependent variable were only due to the treatment. However, the limitation of this design is that exposure to the pretest might interfere with how participants react to the treatment and the posttest measures. In an example of this type of design, the first author of this book conducted a pretest/posttest media literacy intervention with sixth graders (Scharrer, 2006). First, a pretest questionnaire measured students' pre-existing levels of critical thinking and comprehension of key concepts. The experimental intervention consisted of five one-hour visits over a six-week period to discuss various aspects of media literacy. There was also a control group of students who did not receive any media literacy training. At the end of the program, the students completed a post-test questionnaire, which was identical to the one used for the pretest.

Solomon four-group design is one that combines that posttest-only control group design with the pretest/posttest control group design (Babbie, 1989). In this design, there are two experimental groups and two control groups—one that includes only post-test measures, and another that includes pretest/posttest measures. There are four groups in total, one pretest/posttest experimental group, a posttest-only experimental group, a pretest/posttest control group, and a posttest only control group. In their study on how exposure to admirable LGBTQ+ media characters decreases prejudice toward LGBTQ+ individuals, Schiappa and colleagues (2005) used a Solomon four-group design. Participants were randomly assigned to one of four groups: posttest only control, pretest/posttest control, posttest only treatment, and pretest/posttest treatment. The treatment groups saw three episodes of the TV show *Queer Eye*, which included positive LGBTQ+ portrayals. The control group was not exposed to any TV show. The pretest and posttest measures included the Attitudes Toward Lesbians and Gay Men (ATLG) measures. This design is especially helpful if researchers are concerned that administering the pretest might sensitize the participants and influence how to respond to the

treatment. The drawback of this design is that the researcher needs double the time, funds, sample size, and resources to conduct the study.

Quasi-experiments

Although true experiments are ideal, they are not always feasible. It could take up a lot of time and resources to conduct true experiments. Even if resources are available, sometimes, it may not be ethical or practically possible to either have a control group or use random assignment to conditions. For instance, it might not be possible to assign some students to a media literacy intervention within the same classroom and not offer the same program to others in the room. Other limitations of true experiments are that they often do not reflect real-world natural settings since they are mostly conducted in laboratory settings in highly controlled environments that are quite artificial. This is where experimental designs such as quasi-experiments and pre-experiments can be helpful.

Quasi-Experiments are different from true experiments in that they typically lack random assignment to experimental and control conditions because of practical or ethical constraints (Mark & Reichardt, 2013; Wrench, Thomas-Maddox, Richmond, & McCroskey, 2012). This means that quasi-experiments compare the experimental group with a nonequivalent comparison group. Although quasi-experiments do not allow for random assignment, they are particularly helpful in understanding how programs and interventions work in the real world. For example, the researcher might compare two communities that live nearby, one that participates in a program on HIV/AIDS prevention through safe sex practices and another that does not. The community members were not randomly assigned to the intervention or control conditions since they were already living in those areas even before the research study started. This is a quasi-experiment because there is no randomization. Quasi-experiments can use either posttest only design or pretest/posttest design. But their defining feature is that they involve a comparison group that is not randomly assigned, which makes it a **nonequivalent comparison group** (Mark & Reichardt, 2013). The lack of random assignment means that the participants in the experimental group and control group could differ across some other dimensions other than exposure to the experimental treatment. Therefore, claims of causation in quasi-experiments are usually made more cautiously.

Pre-Experiments

Occasionally, neither quasi-experiments nor true experiments are possible. In these circumstances, researchers might conduct **pre-experiments**. Pre-experimental designs are also sometimes used as a first step before conducting a true experiment or quasi-experiment. In pre-experimental designs, typically there is no random assignment *and* there is also no control group that is used as a basis of comparison. Although not ideal, pre-experiments are helpful when the sample size is not large enough to split into experimental and control groups or if the researcher does not have access to a control group.

The most common type of pre-experiment is a **one-group pretest posttest pre-experiment** where there is no control group but the dependent variable is measured before and after the treatment. For instance, a Communication researcher might be interested in testing whether empathy levels in the participants change significantly before and after participating in a two-hour workshop on race relations. In this example, the researcher is able to compare the pretest and posttest measures of empathy before and after the program, but the lack of a control group means that it becomes harder to rule out confounding variables.

Another type of pre-experiment is one that is simply a **one-shot case study** without a control group or pretest/posttest measures. For example, a researcher interested in studying social media use during natural disasters might simply collect such data in the affected communities using posttest measures since they are not able to employ a control group or do pre-/posttest comparisons. For all types of pre-experiments, claims of causal relationships are tenuous, since the criteria for causation we discussed earlier in the chapter have not been met.

Field or Natural Experiments

Experiments conducted in natural real-world settings are called **field or natural experiments** (Carpenter, Harrison, & List, 2005; Driskell, King, & Driskell, 2014). Field experiments are especially helpful for social justice researchers interested in understanding real-life behaviors, outside the confines of laboratories, in more naturalistic settings. Field experiments are commonly used to evaluate the effectiveness of programs designed to solve practical social issues in real-world settings where the complex nuances of lived realities can be examined. They are conducted within the natural settings of participants' everyday lives in terms of behaviors, contexts, and topics. These are environments in which participants naturally undertake the tasks and behaviors that the researcher is interested in studying. Therefore, it is more likely that the findings apply and translate into practical actionable solutions to social issues.

Field experiments are also referred to as interventions or program research. **Interventions**, by definition, are programs and strategies purposely designed to create change. Interventions could be conducted over short or long periods of time. For example, a year-long field experiment conducted in Rwanda by Elizabeth Paluck (2009) helped researchers understand the role of radio soap operas in reducing inter-ethnic prejudice by shifting social norms and increasing empathy. The communities were randomly assigned to the treatment condition (the radio show about reconciliation and prejudice reduction) or the control condition (another radio show on a health topic). The communities were matched as closely as possible in terms of population characteristics and size. The effects of the intervention on shifting personal beliefs, social norms, intergroup attitudes, and behaviors were collected and analyzed.

Whereas laboratory studies typically measure short-term immediate effects, interventions in the field often last longer. Recall from Chapter 5 that cross-sectional designs involve measuring the independent and dependent variables at one point of time, whereas longitudinal designs involve multiple points of measurement. Traditionally, true experiments tend to be cross-sectional, where data are collected in a single-session lab setting. In contrast, when a researcher conducts field experiments, it is quite common to assess interventions using a longitudinal design that involves multiple measurements taken during the course of the intervention. This type of longitudinal experimental design is called a **time series experimental design.** The advantage of this design is that the researcher can understand how the outcome variables unfold over time.

The biggest advantage of field experiments is that they help researchers observe participants in naturally occurring environments. They have high external validity since they simulate natural settings. The drawback of field experiments, though, is that the researcher has very little control over the environment or other factors (Parvanta & Bass, 2018). Therefore, the experiments are often influenced by other external factors such as geographic location, political context, and other variables out of the control of the researcher. They can also be expensive and time-consuming to conduct. Another concern with field experiments is that participants typically do not know that they are a part of an experiment. In the absence of

full consent, researchers try to minimize risks as much as possible. Despite these limitations, field experiments are useful for social justice scholars, especially in community-based research.

Using Experiments for Social Justice Research

We have seen a variety of experimental designs in the previous sections: lab versus field experiments, true versus quasi- and pre-experiments, posttest only versus pretest/posttest designs, and so on. There are several trade-offs between different types of experiments, depending on the topic, participants, and resources available to the researchers. So, social justice researchers should carefully consider which type of design is best for their goals and purposes.

Social justice researchers are interested in using experimental research to systematically counter inequalities. They could do that in at least two different ways. They could use lab-based experiments to first study social justice issues to understand cause-effect relationships within controlled settings. Once the key cause and effect variables have been determined, they might then move to test the outcomes of specific interventions using a field experiment (Driskell et al., 2014). Indeed, the opportunity to study outcomes associated with interventions is an important advantage of experimental design for the social justice researcher.

Experimental methodology, with its unique claim toward cause and effect relationships, is particularly well suited to study change. Communication researchers might be interested in designing and testing interventions such as dialogues around race and racism in the classroom to work toward an inclusive campus, communication campaigns to address health inequalities, organizational workshops to promote an inclusive climate, or media literacy initiatives to spur media activism in favor of diverse representations, just to name a few. The experiments might take place in the field or in the lab, but in either case, the experimental design can shed light on whether and under what conditions interventions produce their intended change.

For lab-based studies, researchers should be mindful of the time and effort it would take participants to participate in the study. Researchers are often focused purely on their research agenda, ensuring that the experiment is designed with tight controls, and perhaps even simply mechanically adhering to the minimal requirements of IRBs. They sometimes are not aware of or do not pay attention to the challenges, risks, and discomforts that participants might have to go through to participate in an experiment. In conceptualizing their research participants merely as "subjects" who are research materials, they might fail to recognize the humanity of their participants (Hegtvedt, 2014). Failing to incorporate participants' perspectives and preferences is especially problematic and even harmful for researchers working on social issues with aggrieved populations. Researchers should understand that participants are volunteers. Those volunteers should not feel compelled or obligated to stay in the study, especially if they experience discomfort or risks.

Researchers need to think through the study procedures, the timing, transportation, accessibility of spaces, and compensation as they recruit their participants to make it easy and convenient for participants to participate in the study. Keeping the participants' convenience in mind, the researchers should ensure that the experiment is conducted in spaces that are accessible. They could offer help with compensating for public transportation, a meal, or other incentives to encourage and support participants, whenever possible. Populations that social justice scholars are working with may be working on multiple jobs or have constraints that prevent them from being able to set aside a lot of time to attend a research experiment, even if they wanted to. Therefore, researchers should do their best to offer multiple time slots and opportunities for the participants to be part of the study.

Within social justice work, applied experimental work would likely involve working within and with marginalized communities and may even occur over an extended period of time.

Developing a positive relationship with research participants in longer term projects helps create a reciprocal relationship of care and trust. Such an approach requires open communication, active listening, and skillful planning. For example, Bekalu and Eggermont (2014) conducted a field experiment in Northwest Ethiopia to study the effects of various types of HIV/AIDS prevention campaign messages. The researchers translated the stimulus materials to the first language of the participants, Amharic, and also made sure to account for language and cultural differences between urban and rural residents. Their research was able to find that residents of this area responded more favorably to a health message about HIV that incorporated local language and culture. It is easy to see from this example of a study of an intervention, that the findings have important implications for health and well-being.

While conducting experiments for social justice, it is especially crucial to ensure equal distribution of benefits across participants (Schutt, 2015). Given that the goal of social justice work is to reduce social inequalities, the researcher is faced with a difficult decision about the ethics of selective distribution of the benefits of an intervention on one community or a section of the population rather than be received by all participants. For example, if a Communication researcher conducts a series of workshops on interviewing skills for those in the experimental group while the control group participants do not receive this information, it is possible that the inequalities in job opportunities and performance are further exacerbated by the experiment. In this instance, the researcher could perhaps offer similar workshops to the control group after the experiment is completed or offer to provide them in a different format such as webinars to ensure that the control group members are not deprived of the benefits that the experimental group receives.

Scholar Spotlight: Dr. Brian Southwell

Brian Southwell is Director of the Science in the Public Sphere Program in the Center for Communication Science at RTI International, an adjunct professor with Duke University, and a graduate faculty member (in Media and Journalism) and Adjunct Associate Professor (of Health Behavior) at the University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill. Dr. Southwell is an expert on health communication, public health, science communication, and public scholarship. His work has examined topics such as smoking cessation, drug use, heart attack prevention, HIV/AIDS, and water conservation. Dr. Southwell's research contributions appear in more than 100 journal articles and chapters in his various books, including his latest one on *Misinformation and Mass Audiences* (2018). Southwell also is a host of a public radio show, *The Measure of Everyday Life*, for WNCU. An excerpt from an interview with Dr. Southwell follows.

Q: Do you think quantitative methods in general and experiments, in particular, can be tools to work toward social justice? Why or why not?

Dr. Southwell: Yes, quantitative methods, like qualitative methods, can answer relevant research questions about social justice. The key to useful social science lies in the creativity and relevance of the questions we ask, and at least some questions relevant to social justice can be addressed with quantitative research. Research on social justice should consider both individual-level and community-level variables. We need to understand what people think and how they behave and how they

Figure 6.6 Scholar Spotlight: Dr. Brian Southwell

interact with their information environments to arrive at such perceptions and behavior. Quantitative data can be useful in measuring perceptions and behavior and can describe patterns of information. A range of study designs, including experiments, can help us understand the effects of particular stimuli, effects that can point to promising interventions, or explain concerning patterns of existing behavior.

Q: What motivates you to do quantitative research in general? What types of issues, topics, or interventions have you examined using experimental methods, in particular?

Dr. Southwell: As an undergraduate, I had a sense that our understanding of many aspects of human life should not be quantified. That was an overly simplistic stance, I now realize. None of our measures offer perfect replication of the phenomenon measured, but that does not mean there cannot be useful correspondence between

our measures and underlying phenomenon. Once you realize there is room for artistry and creativity in the use of quantitative measures for the purpose of predicting future human interaction, you can see quantitative research as a potentially, but not inherently, useful tool. An example of this possibility lies in the discrepancy between claims people make about the influence of mediated images and the actual patterns of everyday life we know people experience, patterns that include all sorts of conversations and exposures to information. Certainly, widely broadcast advertising content can have effects, but we also need to understand what roles social network interactions and other factors can play in predicting the influence of various campaign efforts. By measuring and modeling a range of influences, including both macro- and micro-level forces, we can get a clearer picture of what happens when a well-intentioned public service announcement is developed and released into the world for the purpose of eliciting social change.

Q: What challenges arise in your research, especially in terms of designing and evaluating the effectiveness of health-related interventions? What are some ways you have overcome them?

Dr. Southwell: We continue to face challenges in measuring even basic concepts related to human communication. In some ways, our tendency to pay attention to newly salient buzzwords and phrases in popular discourse rather than to carefully ensure adequate measurement of mundane concepts has limited our work. Some of my early work on campaign exposure led me to realize that much of our reporting on exposure really reflected the dynamics of human memory in interaction with information environments, meaning we needed to do multilevel modeling work, e.g., Southwell (2005). Decades ago, we rushed ahead to do work on interactivity, for example, when we often did not adequately define what we meant by that. More recently, we are seeing that happen as people have started to do work on misinformation before we really have defined the key variables involved. (See Southwell, Thorson, & Sheble, 2018, for discussion.)

Q: What are your experiences and/or your hopes regarding how your research can be used to bring about social change?

Dr. Southwell: We need to understand how information flows in society in order to best support people as they make decisions about their own behavior and as they interact with other people in various communities. We need to ensure that people have access to the information they need and that our collective conversations include many different voices. Rigorous research that helps us understand how people make sense of science, health, medicine, policymaking, or even civic decision making could be a basis for our efforts to improve the human condition. Social change without rigorous, peer-reviewed research could devolve into shouting matches and empty slogans. By investigating how humans interact with their information environments, we can find ways to respectfully address all people to invite them to improve life for all of us.

Designing and Conducting an Experimental Study

Conducting experiments, be they laboratory-based studies or field experiments, involves multiple steps and stages of planning. It can get messy and is an involved process. One has to spend a lot of thought and time in identifying which samples to recruit, how to manipulate the variables, how to control for extraneous factors, and how to measure the dependent

variables. When designing applied field experiments, it is advisable to work closely with key stakeholders from the community by involving them all the way from initial design to dissemination of the findings, as need be. Next, we discuss various practical and methodological considerations to keep in mind as you design and conduct experiments.

Recruiting Participants

For many experiments, especially lab-based ones at universities, researchers typically recruit student samples as a standard convenience sample. As we have seen in Chapter 4 on sampling, although convenience samples are nonprobabilistic and cannot generalize to a larger population, they are still useful for researchers. Over a series of experiments, for instance, researchers could nuance their theories through testing various hypotheses using convenience samples of students. Indeed, many academic departments, especially within Psychology and increasingly within Communication, at research institutions have established participant pools of students who sign up for various studies through the course of the semester at the departmental-level rather than being recruited by individual researchers. Depending on the variables that are being examined by a social justice researcher, college students might not be a relevant or useful population to test certain topics. This is especially important to consider for social justice work where the communities of interest have different kinds of skill sets, knowledge, and familiarity with the experimental tasks as compared to, say, convenience samples of college students. While working with other non-student samples, researchers could use flyers, posters, newspaper ads, and community newsletters to reach out to these populations.

It is important to try to balance the number of participants across various conditions. In a simple experiment with two conditions (e.g., experimental group and control group), if we recruit 30 participants per condition, this means at least 60 participants. Considering that not everyone who signs up for a study might actually show up or complete it, it is always better to recruit more participants than the required sample size. See Chapter 4 on what would be considered a representative and large enough sample. As more conditions are added to an experiment, such as in a factorial experiment, the sample size increases proportionately. For example, if it is a 3x4 factorial experiment, the number of conditions is 3x4 = 12. If the researchers would like 30 participants per condition, the researchers need to recruit a bare minimum of 12 x 30 = 360 participants, which could be expensive and time consuming.

Obtaining Consent

Once the researchers have decided on their sample population, one of the first steps involved in designing and administering an experiment is obtaining permission from IRB to conduct the study in an ethical manner. We have seen in Chapter 2 the detailed steps involved in conducting ethically appropriate studies. Given that most of the experiments within Communication use human participants, it is important to consider how their rights, dignity, and preferences are honored from the beginning to the end of their experience. Since experiments involve some type of intervention or exposure to a treatment, it is especially important that human subjects protections are in place. By means of comparison, surveys, for instance, typically ask participants to report on their opinions, attitudes, past or planned behaviors, etc. But experiments, by definition, manipulate something in participants' experiences and therefore require particular care and conscientiousness.

Deception is an ethical consideration with which social justice researchers using experimental methods sometimes have to contend. For the sake of experimental manipulation

and the purposes of the research study, occasionally, researchers might have to misrepresent information or mislead participants. For example, one of the research team members might have to play the role of a fake participant in order for the manipulation to be effective. Such members are called confederates (we will learn more about them later in this chapter). Outright deception is quite rare in experimental research within Communication, and we believe it should be avoided whenever possible since it can be ethically murky. But sometimes, lack of transparency is necessary for research designs. Social justice researchers need to weigh the costs of temporarily keeping participants uninformed about the goals of an experiment against the benefits of the knowledge that can be gained (Hegtvedt, 2014; Schutt, 2015). In any case, all researchers have the obligation to inform participants if and how they were misled after the data has been collected. That information is usually provided in what is called a **debriefing**, which involves explaining the research design and purpose in writing or verbally at the close of the study. We will discuss debriefing more at the end of this chapter.

Participants should be informed ahead of time about the possible risks and benefits of the study. They should only participate voluntarily without any type of coercion and should be allowed to leave the study without any penalties if they experience any type of discomfort or stress. Unlike other types of research such as that conducted in the biomedical field, typical Communication studies are more likely to run the risk of causing psychological or social distress rather than physical harm. Social justice scholars, in particular, are likely to bring up challenging and sensitive topics such as discrimination, violence, incivility, exclusion, abuse, and inequalities, which could cause emotional and psychological stress among participants in revealing and discussing. Therefore, the participants have the right to be informed of these stressors and discomforts that might be above those routinely experienced in the everyday course of life for these participants. It is also possible that the lived reality of stigmatized and marginalized groups is already fraught with similar risks and stressors in their everyday lives. When working with children, refugees, prisoners, or other vulnerable groups, researchers have an ethical obligation to ensure that they are not mistreated nor retraumatized.

Manipulating the Independent Variable

As we have seen, manipulation means that the researcher deliberately or purposefully alters or varies some aspect of the independent variable. This could mean determining how, when, where, and by how much to alter the independent variable. Researchers can manipulate information provided to participants about the task they are asked to perform in the study, the people involved in it, or the participants themselves. The purpose is to observe how these intentional changes to the independent variable affect the dependent variable.

Within Communication research, independent variables can be manipulated using stimulus materials, role-play scenarios, and confederates (Wrench et al., 2012). Exposing participants to some type of **stimulus material** is one of the most common types of manipulations in Communication studies. For example, participants in the experimental condition could be asked to watch a television program on LGBTQ+ issues or browse through an online campaign for a political candidate or play a violent video game. In some cases, this stimulus material could be as simple as manipulating a written prompt that gives some sort of instruction for participants. For instance, participants in one group could be asked to recall a happy time in their life or a sad time in their life. In other cases, it could involve multimedia materials such as videos, films, audio recordings, or web-based materials.

Figure 6.7 A field experiment in a classroom setting
Source: Cpl. Khalil Ross

Another type of manipulation of the independent variable could involve the participants doing different types of communication activities such as **role-play scenarios**. In such studies, the participants are actively involved in some task that involves more than simply viewing a stimulus. For example, participants could be asked to simulate how to respond during a natural disaster scenario using virtual reality or a video game. For example, researchers used role-play scenarios through avatars in a video game to understand implicit racial bias (Peck, Seinfeld, Aglioti, & Slater, 2013). White participants were asked by researchers to embody different skin tones in their avatars to examine whether playing an avatar of a different skin color influences their racial attitudes. Racial attitudes were measured before and after the role play scenario. Those who embodied dark skinned bodies in the role play scenario demonstrated reduced racial biases.

It is also possible to manipulate independent variables using confederates. **Confederates** are those who are part of the experiment, but the participants are not aware of this. For instance, confederates could be recruited by the researchers to play the role of a fake participant or to serve as a bystander to make the manipulation look realistic. The use of confederates does introduce some level of deception to the experimental design. For example, confederates could be placed within a video game study to either assist with or thwart the participant as their partner in a multiplayer gaming scenario. The participant is made to believe that the confederate is another participant in the study, but in reality they are part of the research team, and what they do represents different levels of the independent variable. Although confederates are typically employed in lab-based studies, they could also be used in field experiments. In a field experiment by Katherine Haenschen (2016) on political

communication, for example, confederates were recruited to publicize participants' prior voting or non-voting behaviors by tagging them on Facebook updates about their voting behaviors. The study found that doing so increased voter turnout of participants much more than face-to-face methods used for encouraging political participation.

Regardless of how the independent variable is manipulated, one issue that is often of concern to researchers is **strength of manipulation**. That is, whether the manipulation is strong or substantial enough to bring about changes in the dependent variable. As Walker (2014, p. 131) states: "Subtlety is out of place in experimental design." They recommend ensuring that participants get the information about the manipulation at least three times during the experiment so that, even if they are not attentive, crucial bits of information about the manipulation are still comprehended the second or third time. While this is not always possible to expose participants to the stimuli multiple times, researchers should at least make sure that the various treatment conditions are distinctly and clearly different from one another. If the manipulation is too subtle, some participants might fail to notice and therefore, even if they are assigned to a certain comparison group, the participants might not really be in that group. For example, if you are manipulating the level of humor of a presentation to be low, medium, or high to examine its effects on audience recall, you should ensure that the high humor condition is substantially funnier than the medium condition, just as the medium one is funnier than the low humor condition.

Sometimes the effects of the independent variable on the dependent variable might only manifest itself when the manipulation is quite strong. This phenomenon is referred to as **threshold effects** (Kuipers & Hysom, 2014). Unless the independent variable is above a certain threshold, the dependent variable does not change significantly. For instance, in the earlier example, it is possible that low and medium doses of humor do not have any impact on audience recall. If the researchers had not manipulated the independent variable to also include a high level of humor, they could have missed accounting for the relationship between the independent and dependent variables.

Since topics of interest to social justice scholars such as racism, discrimination, and violence could be multifaceted, with different meanings for various groups, it is important to ensure that the way in which the researcher interprets these concepts is similar to how the target populations also understand them. It is always a good idea to pretest the manipulations of the independent variables. For instance, in an experiment conducted by Martinez and Ramasubramanian (2015), the researchers were interested in studying if exposure to race-based comedy will lead to participants rating an alleged Latino offender more culpable than a White one. They conducted pretests to test the effectiveness of the stimuli. The first pretest was to ensure that the names of the alleged offenders were seen as representing the racial groups (Latinx and Whites, respectively). The second and third pretest focused on making sure that the comedic material used in the experiment was appropriate, not something that the participants were already familiar with, and was seen as race-based humor, as intended.

Researchers also do a **manipulation check**, which is a secondary evaluation *within the experiment* to ensure that the manipulation worked as intended by the researchers (Wrench et al, 2012). For instance, apart from the dependent variable, the experiment on sexual objectification in music videos that we used as an earlier example, could also include a series of questions within the experiment itself asking the participants to rate how sexual the stimulus material is. In the experiment described earlier on race-based comedy, the researchers also conducted a manipulation check within the actual experiment by including questions about the race of the alleged offenders and how funny the race-based comedic segments were. In both of these examples, we see the importance of manipulation checks. Rather than

assuming that the participants shared the researcher's sense of the stimulus materials, when the researcher includes manipulation check items in the study, they now have evidence for that.

Randomly Assigning Participants to Conditions

Random assignment means that there should be no systematic bias (such as participant bias or experimenter bias) in assigning participants to conditions (Schutt, 2015). Random assignment is important for experiments because of the third criterion for causation that we outlined earlier in this chapter. This is the requirement that the relationship between the independent variable (the predictor) and the dependent variable (the outcome) cannot be explained away by some other factor. If there is no random assignment to conditions, there may be a competing explanation for a relationship found between the independent variable and dependent variable due to the fact that the groups formed across conditions were not equivalent. If there *is* random assignment to conditions, we assume any additional factors associated with the people in the conditions are spread out across all conditions rather than concentrated in one. For example, a participant who wants to be assigned to the same condition as their friend is violating the random assignment requirement of experiments. Similarly, if a researcher decides that a participant appears to fit better in the experimental rather than control group, then they are bringing in their own prejudices and biases into the assignment to conditions, which means that the assignment to conditions is no longer random.

There are a number of ways to assign participants randomly to various comparison groups in an experiment. One could simply flip a coin so that if it shows heads, they land in the experimental group; if it shows tails, they are assigned to the control group, or vice-versa. One could also draw their condition from a hat. For instance, if participants have to be assigned to a high, medium, or low level of humor, then each of these conditions could be assigned a number or letter. Equal numbers of pieces of papers with those letters (e.g., A, B, C, or 1, 2, 3) are placed in the hat from which the participant pulls out a piece of paper that determines the condition to which condition they are assigned. One could also use a random generator table or online random generator site such as www.randomizer.org. If you need 30 participants for each of three conditions, you could pick the first 30 numbers at random from 1 to 90 for condition one, the next 30 for condition two, and the remaining will be in condition three. If the experiment involves asking participants to provide data through a computer, you can also use computer-based software to randomly assign each participant at a computer to one of the conditions at random.

Random assignment assists greatly in the experimenter's ability to make a causal claim, but it is not a perfect solution. In many places, because there is a high degree of correlation between demographics such as race, education, and family income with geographic location, even if participants are randomly selected, their demographic differences are highly correlated with their geographic location. Therefore, it is important to collect demographic information regardless of random assignment to make sure that the participants in various conditions do not differ significantly across key factors. Indeed, it is standard practice when conducting an experiment not only to manipulate the independent variable and measure any dependent variable of interest but also to measure demographic variables and/or any other control variables that may be relevant. Doing so allows the researcher to know, statistically, how taking those additional variables into account impacts the relationship between the independent and the dependent variable(s). We further discuss controlling for extraneous variables in the text that follows.

When conducting field experiments, researchers often cannot randomize participants into various treatment conditions due to practical and/or ethical reasons. In this case, they would

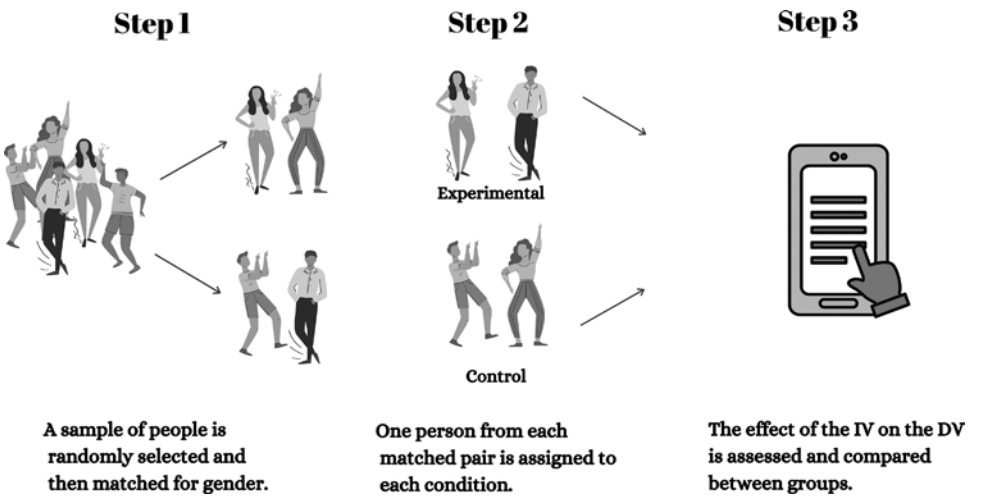

Step 1
Step 2
Step 3
Experimental
Control
A sample of people is randomly selected and then matched for gender.
One person from each matched pair is assigned to each condition.
The effect of the IV on the DV is assessed and compared between groups.

Figure 6.8 Matched pair technique combined with random assignment, in a context in which two gender identities emerged in the sample

Source: Emily Riewestahl

likely use a quasi-experimental design without random assignment to conditions. When random assignment is not possible, matched pairing is another alternative, although not as ideal as random assignment (Figure 6.8). In the **matching** procedure, participants across various comparison groups are equated along key defining characteristics (Schutt, 2015). For example, individual matching could be done by matching up pairs of people in the experimental and control groups in terms of the same age, gender, race, or other individual characteristics. Occasionally, researchers might combine the matched pair and random assignment procedures by first matching the pairs and then randomly assigning pairs to various research conditions.

Controlling for Extraneous Variables

As social justice researchers in Communication, we need to be conscious of how we apply the idea of controlling for extraneous factors to experiments involving human participants. The researcher should try their best to anticipate all extraneous variables that could influence the outcome of the experiment beyond just the independent variable. As we have seen in the beginning of this chapter, confounding variables are problematic because they could lead to spurious relationships that provide alternative explanations for the association between the independent and dependent variables.

One concern is **Hawthorne effect**, where merely being aware of being a participant in a study could make the participants change their behaviors (Schutt, 2015). For example, if participants know that they are being observed, they could behave in socially desirable ways to appear to be more productive, less violent, kinder, and so on. Other factors that need to be controlled in experiments pertain to the experimenters themselves. When the changes in the dependent variable are unintentionally influenced by the experimenter, this is called **experimenter effects** (Wrench et al., 2012). For example, if the experimenter is more welcoming to the participants during the experimental condition rather than the control condition, we will not know if the changes in the dependent variable are caused by the independent

variable or due to the experimenter's differing level of warmth toward the participants. To avoid experimenter effects, researchers often use **double-blind** experimental designs so that neither the researcher nor the participants are aware of the condition to which they have been assigned.

Measuring the Dependent Variable

Dependent variables are always measured in experiments, and the researcher has many options for how to measure them. One way in which dependent variables are measured are **self-reports**, in which the individual fills out their responses to items using a paper-and-pen or computer-based questionnaire. In Martinez and Ramasubramanian (2015), for example, participants' ratings of the level of guilt of the alleged offender is a self-reported variable on a questionnaire.

Another way in which one could measure the dependent variable is through **observational data**. In the example of violent versus nonviolent video games, the level of aggression could be observed by the researchers using such indicators as the use of violent language, clenched fists, physically aggressive behaviors toward others, and so on. Note that in this case, the participant is not self-reporting their level of aggression. Instead, the researchers are observing whether or not the participant is behaving aggressively. In the Bushman and Anderson (2009) study, the researchers observed how many minutes it took the participants in a violent versus nonviolent media condition to help someone in distress and pain. This is an observational measure since the participants did not self-report their helpfulness, but this was recorded by the researchers.

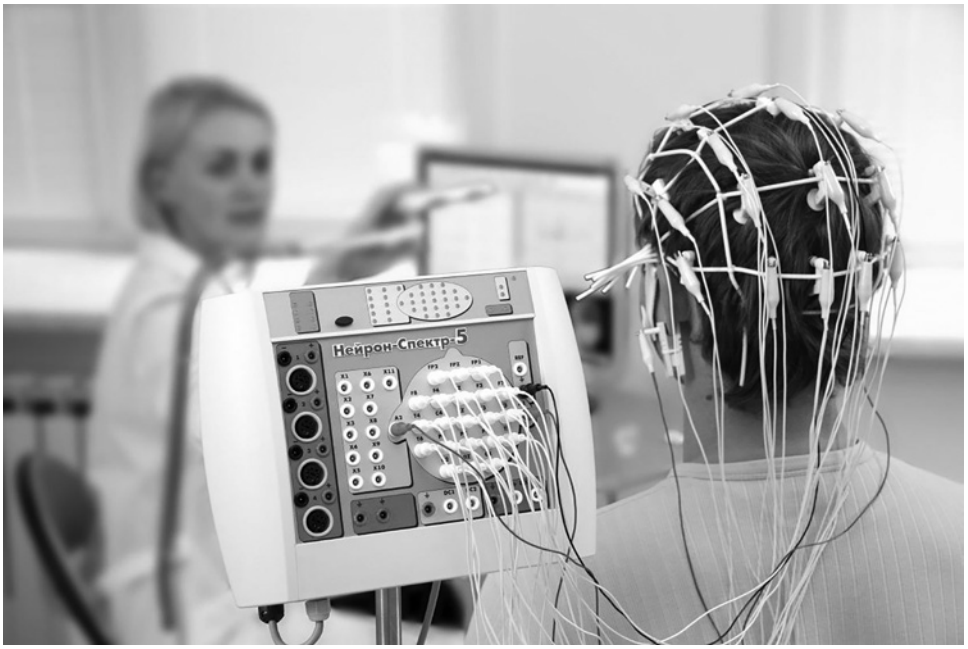


Figure 6.9 Biophysiological measures monitored in a lab experiment

Source: Creative Commons

Another type of observational measure is when the researcher hooks up the participants to **physiological measurement** systems to monitor changes to biophysiological indicators such as heart rate, eye movements, skin conductance, or blood pressure. For example, Sukalla and colleagues (2016) manipulated health-related narratives from medical dramas to be emotional or not and then collected psychophysiological measures such as heart rate, skin conductance, and facial EMG using the Biopac system to examine participants' arousal and attention levels as they watched the video clips.

Debriefing

Debriefing is an important aspect of experiments that, unfortunately, does not always get sufficient attention from researchers. It is the final aspect of the experiment where the researcher sets aside some time to discuss the goals and purposes of the experiment and allows for participants to ask questions. This could be done both for lab and field experiments to communicate about the study to participants as well as gain insights and relevant feedback from them. If the experiment is done online, participants can be invited to contact the researcher with questions or for a report of the purpose of the study. Debriefing can also be helpful to find out whether participants changed their responses to fit what they thought the researchers were trying to study. This is called **demand characteristics**, where participants try to answer in ways that would please the researcher and confirm what they think they are testing. It is especially essential to include debriefing if deception is involved in the study. In fact, it is considered unethical to not inform the participants about deception during debriefing. Sometimes experiments could make participants feel uncomfortable or stressed. The debriefing session allows researchers to monitor, acknowledge, and alleviate such outcomes by checking in with participants about ways to support them. For instance, if a study is about mental health, the experimenter could include contact information for counseling services as part of the debrief so that participants who are interested in pursuing counseling have that information at their disposal.

Research in Action

In this section, we describe a quasi-experimental intervention published in the *Journal of Health Communication*. Saul Johnson and colleagues (2018) were interested in studying the long-term impact of a school-based public health intervention in South Africa. Previous interventions relating to HIV prevention among adolescents had used either media platforms to communicate their message or school-based interventions to promote better sexual health. This study combined both these approaches by examining how being part of a school-based extracurricular program that focused on emulating what they saw in a television program on HIV prevention mobilized them to take better responsibility for their health.

"Soul Buddyz" was a popular television drama series that aired from 2000 to 2011 in South Africa using "edutainment"—the combination of education and entertainment—to discuss HIV prevention. In 2003, several Soul Buddyz Clubs (SBCs) were started in schools to create a platform to discuss and promote adolescent health and well-being. Some students volunteered to join the clubs and others who were considered vulnerable

were invited to them by their schools. Over 8,000 clubs with more than 182,000 members were established over a period of time. The members of the clubs engaged in activities such as reading special materials, organizing events, and holding debates and competitions on not just sexual health but other related topics such as alcohol use. The objective of this study was to test what impact participation in SBCs had in the long term on its members. The independent variable was whether or not the participants were in the SBC program as an adolescent. The dependent or outcome variables were multiple measures relating to health and well-being.

The researchers picked 170 ex-SBC members from two provinces who had been members from 2004 to 2008. Since random assignment to condition was not possible, they resorted to using the matched-pair technique to find equivalent persons from the same communities who would serve as controls. Although a nonequivalent control group existed, the lack of random assignment makes this a quasi-experiment. Since the study was conducted in the field, it is also a field experiment or a program evaluation study.

Here is how the researchers went about recruiting members for their treatment and control conditions (p. 1046):

> The complexity of tracking and recruiting ex-Buddyz required a multipronged recruitment approach. Radio adverts directed ex-Buddyz to a closed Facebook group. Snowballing was then used to recruit additional ex-Buddyz to the group. We also obtained a database of 3,421 SBC facilitators from Gauteng and KwaZulu-Natal from the Soul City Institute. Study staff called each facilitator requesting a list of ex-Buddyz names and contact details, which we used to contact ex-Buddyz. Additional ex-Buddyz were recruited using snowballing. Ex-Buddyz were then contacted using WhatsApp and asked to share the communication with other ex-Buddyz they could remember. Ex-Buddyz were directed to the Facebook group at each stage.
>
> We identified which communities most ex-Buddyz we had recruited were originally from (and where they attended primary school). We conducted simple random sampling from households in these communities to recruit appropriate community controls. Eligibility criteria included being aged 18–24 years old, living in those communities during 2004–2008 and not having been an SBC member while at primary school.

The questionnaire was translated into nine local languages. The fieldwork was conducted in two sites and participants were reimbursed for travel costs. Trained fieldworkers were used for completing interviewer-administered questionnaires using a tablet device. Whenever possible, the sex of the interviewer was matched with that of the participant. Participants completed questions relating to sexual behavior, HIV status, alcohol use, drug use, pregnancy status, demographics, community participation, and involvement in gender-based violence. The debriefing session involved providing a referral list of useful contacts including counseling and clinic information. An optional and anonymized HIV testing by trained nurses was also available.

We encourage you to read the rest of this study to find out whether those in the treatment group and those in the control group in this posttest-only quasi-experiment conducted in the field differed significantly from one another with regard to the dependent variables.

Improving the Internal Validity of Experiments

In the context of experiments, *internal validity* refers to the extent to which the researchers can be confident that the changes in the dependent variable are caused by the independent variable, by ruling out confounding variables. The fewer the confounding variables in an experiment, the greater the internal validity of the study. There are several factors that could lessen the internal validity of the experiment. Some of the factors that could influence internal validity are history, maturation, testing, regression to the mean, selection threat, and attrition (Babbie, 1989). Many of these threats can apply to any sort of experiment, but they tend to be especially common in field experiments using longitudinal designs.

The threat of **history** refers to the likelihood that some other external event other than the treatment occurred between the pretest and posttest measures that has influenced the outcome of the study. Imagine that when the researcher is studying the effects of a sexual violence prevention campaign, there is a major sexual violence case in the news between when the pretest and posttest measures are taken. That event would affect the internal validity of the study. Pre-experiments that lack control groups are especially likely to miss accounting for history effects.

Whereas history refers to external events outside of the control of the researchers, **maturation** is more about internal factors associated with the participants themselves. This is especially likely to happen if the intervention is conducted over a long period of time, within which the participants themselves experience physical or mental changes as they grow and age. For example, a media literacy intervention with middle-schoolers that spans an entire academic year needs to take into consideration that the children's cognitive, emotional, and behavioral abilities could be different between the pretest and the posttest measurements.

Testing refers to how completing pretest measures influences posttest measures. For example, taking an exam a second time could lead you to have higher scores just because you are now more familiar with the measures. To avoid testing threat, researchers may want to adopt the Solomon four-group design. Or, if they do not need to measure change in participants' responses to items directly, they may want to use a posttest only design. Some advocate for the use of equivalent but not identical measures at the pretest and posttest to lessen testing effects, but doing so does open the researcher up to criticism that they are not measuring the exact same thing both times.

Another measurement-related threat to internal validity is **instrumentation**, which refers to changes in the measures that occur simply from the instrument that is being used to test the outcomes rather than from the treatment. In this scenario, it looks like meaningful change has occurred due to the manipulation, but the way that change is measured might have influenced the result. In the case of social sciences, this could happen because an item on a questionnaire was changed or some other aspect of observation is different, such as the experimenter who records observations.

Another threat to internal validity is **regression to the mean**, in which posttest scores tend to be much closer to average or normal compared to pretest scores. For example, it is possible that participants report unusually high levels of stress when they first find out that they might be genetically inclined to get cancer. However, over time, even without any treatment or intervention, their stress levels might attenuate or regress to the mean.

Other types of threats to internal validity relate to participants. **Selection threat** refers to the fact that participants selected to participate in the study may differ along some key characteristics that could affect the findings. For example, college students in a participant pool who participate routinely in multiple studies every semester only for extra credit might be less sincere in participating in the experimental task and completing questionnaires as compared to others.

Another threat to validity is **attrition,** which refers to the number of participants who have left the study partway through, without completing it. This is especially a concern in long-term studies that might involve multiple stages and a series of measures of the dependent variable over time. It is especially problematic if the participants who have dropped out of the study differ from those who have remained in the study in some relevant manner. As social justice scholars, if, for instance, most of the participants who drop out of a study are from lower economic classes or have mobility issues or need child care assistance, it shows that the study needs to be designed to better accommodate these types of participants.

Increasing the Generalizability of Experiments

One of the big concerns with experiments is the lack of generalizability of the findings of the experiment to real-world settings. Researchers need to ask themselves whether the results of their study conducted with the sample could be generalizable to other contexts, cultural groups, geographical locations, and time periods. If the experiment is so strictly defined and controlled that the relationship between the independent and dependent variables only holds in an extremely narrow context, the usefulness and value of the study is limited.

The first type of generalizability that is often lacking in true experiments is **external validity**. External validity refers to whether the findings from a study would be valid in the external world in everyday natural settings. These concerns are especially there for lab-based experiments, which often lack mundane realism. Most lab spaces continue to be rather sterile environments that do not represent naturalistic settings. For social justice scholars who are seeking to challenge the status quo and reduce social inequities in the real world, it may be important that lab-based studies can later be translated into natural settings outside. There are numerous cultural and social factors that go into implementing any intervention or program that could be difficult to capture in a typical lab setting. However, lab-based experiments typically provide high **internal validity**, which means that researchers can be quite confident that changes in the dependent variable are caused by the independent variable rather than extraneous factors. Such information can also be valuable to social justice researchers who would like to understand and measure specific factors that could bring about changes.

Some ways to increase the generalizability of experimental research are to make laboratory settings as realistic and natural as possible. The laboratory tasks should resemble real-world tasks as closely as possible. Field experiments are a good alternative as they allow for observation of behaviors in realistic and **naturalistic settings**. Also, whenever possible, researchers should include participants from the actual populations who would benefit from the study rather than whoever is most convenient to bring to the laboratory. Another way in which researchers could try to improve the external validity of a study is to manipulate more than just one independent variable to try to capture the nuances and complexities of communication behaviors in the real world. For example, in the gaming study that we saw in the beginning of the chapter on portrayals of Black women, the researcher might want to manipulate both the gender and the race of the character to be able to capture how both these identities intersect in unique ways to inform us about racialized sexism. The downside, though, is that the experimenter would need additional time and sample size to work with more complex factorial experimental designs. In this case, if the research is interested in comparing White, Black, Latino/a, and Asian characters who are male, female, or nonbinary, then they would now have 3x4 conditions, making this a complex factorial experimental design.

Another issue is with **sample representativeness**. Note that even if random assignment to conditions is used in an experiment, it is not necessary that participants are being recruited using probabilistic sampling. In fact, most experiments use convenience sampling, especially

of undergraduate college students, since they are an easily available group of participants for researchers at universities. However, if the variables that are being studied are experienced differently by college students compared to other groups, researchers also need to further study the phenomena with other non-student populations. This is not to say that researchers should not use convenience samples or college students as participants, but they should be aware of the limitations that such samples pose for the generalizability of findings. When it comes to implementing programs and interventions in a large-scale setting, it is especially important to involve participants from the communities where the program will be eventually implemented so that factors such as social networks, cultural differences, knowledge level, literacies, attitudes, and behaviors of the specific targeted group could be incorporated into the study.

Summary

Experiments help to establish causal relationships, test hypotheses, understand theoretical mechanisms, and test the effectiveness of interventions. The independent (or cause or predictor) variable is manipulated or introduced into the setting in an experiment. The dependent (or effect or outcome) variable(s) is always measured. Typically, experiments have at least two conditions: the experimental or treatment group and the control group. The control group is one that does not receive the treatment. Other variables in the experiment that are not the independent or dependent variables are called extraneous variables. They can be either control variables that the experimenter accounts for or confounding variables that are not accounted for in the study. In order to establish causation, there are three criteria: (1) there should be a significant association between the variables; that is, the variables should co-vary, (2) the independent variable should occur before the dependent variable, and (3) there should be no spurious relationship between the independent and dependent variable caused by an extraneous variable. A causal mechanism clarifies why the relationship between the independent and dependent variable is observed. Mediating or intervening variables are explanatory variables that explain why the independent variable causes changes in the dependent variable. Moderating variables explain the context in which the independent variable causes changes in the dependent variable.

True experiments are the best way to establish causality. True experiments must include at least two comparison groups, establish time order such that the independent variable preceded the dependent variable, and use random assignment to conditions. Random assignment to conditions means that a random process is used to determine which condition of the experiment the participant will take part in. When more than one variable is manipulated in an experiment, it is called a factorial experiment. Experiments could use posttest only design, pretest/posttest design, or Solomon four-group design. Quasi-experiments are similar to true experiments but lack random assignment to conditions and therefore, the comparison groups are nonequivalent. Pre-experiments do not include a control group, nor do they use random assignment to conditions. Field or natural experiments are those that take place in the real world outside the confines of a laboratory. Whereas lab experiments allow for careful control of extraneous variables, field experiments offer the advantage of realism in a natural setting.

Participants for experiments, especially lab-based ones in university settings, have often been convenience samples of student populations. Sample size for experiments is determined by the number of experimental conditions, with factorial designs being complex and requiring more participants. Because experiments, by design, involve the manipulation of variables, informed consent and voluntary participation are crucial. In experiments, the independent variable can be manipulated using stimulus materials, confederates, and role-play scenarios. The measured dependent variables can be self-reported or observed. Traditionally,

experiments tend to be cross-sectional, but when conducted longitudinally, they are referred to as time series experimental designs. When random assignment is not possible, matched pairing could be considered for comparison groups. In controlling for extraneous variables, researchers should be cognizant of the Hawthorne effect, placebo effect, and experimenter effects.

Debriefing refers to the final stage of the experiment in which researchers discuss the goals and purpose of the study as well as gather feedback, especially about discomfort or any stress experienced by participants. If deception is involved, it is crucial to acknowledge it during debriefing. Some of the threats to internal validity in experiments that researchers should try to avoid are history, maturation, testing, regression to the mean, selection threat, and attrition. To increase the generalizability of experimental findings, researchers should increase external validity by improving the realism of experiments and also pay attention to sample representativeness.

Social justice scholars should be mindful of resources, context, timeframe, compensation, and effort as they determine the type of experiment that is best for their project. Creating culturally responsive and equitable distribution of benefits are two important considerations for social justice scholars using experimental designs. Overall, experimental methods are helpful tools for social justice researchers, especially the use of interventions and programmatic initiatives, that help measure impact on relevant outcome variables.

Discussion Questions and Activities

1. What is the role of experiments in social science research? As social justice researchers, how can experiments be helpful to work toward the reduction of social inequalities and challenge the status quo?
2. Lab-based experiments and field experiments are both invaluable approaches within the toolkit of a social justice researcher. When would you use each of these methods and why? What are the advantages and disadvantages of each type of experiment?
3. Are random assignment and random sampling the same? How are they different? Which one contributes to internal validity and which one to external validity?
4. What are some ethical considerations to keep in mind while designing and implementing experiments for social justice research?
5. Let's imagine that you are a health communication scholar interested in studying the effectiveness of a campaign designed to promote healthy behavior (handwashing, flu vaccination, safe sexual practices, exercising, anti-smoking, healthy eating, etc.). Identify the key independent variable(s), dependent variable(s), control variables, and other extraneous variables that are beyond the control of the experimenter. How would you design the experiment? How would you know if your findings are valid and reliable?

References

Babbie, E. (1989). *The practice of social research* (5th ed.). Belmont, CA: Wadsworth.

Bekalu, M. A., & Eggermont, S. (2014). The role of communication inequality in mediating the impacts of socioecological and socioeconomic disparities on HIV/AIDS knowledge and risk perception. *International Journal for Equity in Health*, *13*(16), 1–11. doi:10.1186/1475-9276-13-16

Bushman, B. J., & Anderson, C. A. (2009). Comfortably numb: Desensitizing effects of violent media on helping others. *Psychological Science*, *20*(3), 273–277. doi:10.1111/j.1467-9280.2009.02287.x

Carpenter, J. P., Harrison, G. W., & List, J. A. (2005). Field experiments in economics: An introduction. In G. W. Harrison, J. Carpenter, & J. A. List (Eds.), *Research in economics* (*field experiments in economics*) (Vol. 10, pp. 1–15). Bingley, UK: Emerald Group Publishing Limited.

Driskell, J. E., King, J., & Driskell, T. (2014). Conducting applied experimental research. In M. Webster & J. Sell (Eds.), *Laboratory experiments in the social sciences* (2nd ed., pp. 473–502). Cambridge, MA: Academic Press.

Haenschen, K. (2016). Social pressure on social media: Using Facebook status updates to increase voter turnout. *Journal of Communication*, *66*, 542–563. https://doi-org.srv-proxy1.library.tamu.edu/10.1111/jcom.12236

Hegtvedt, K. A. (2014). Ethics and experiments. In M. Webster & J. Sell (Eds.), *Laboratory experiments in the social sciences* (2nd ed., pp. 23–51). Cambridge, MA: Academic Press.

Johnson, S., Magni, S., Dube, Z., & Goldstein, S. (2018). Extracurricular school-based social change communication program associated with reduced HIV infection among young women in South Africa. *Journal of Health Communication*, *23*(12), 1044–1050. doi:10.1080/10810730.2018.1544675

Kuipers, K. J., & Hysom, S. J. (2014). Common problems and solutions in experiments. In M. Webster & J. Sell (Eds.), *Laboratory experiments in the social sciences* (2nd ed., pp. 145–177). Cambridge, MA: Academic Press.

Mark, M. M., & Reichardt, C. S. (2013). Quasi-experimentation. In L. Bickman & D. J. Rog (Eds.), *The SAGE handbook of applied social research methods* (pp. 182–213). Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage.

Martinez, A. & Ramasubramanian, S. (2015). Latino audiences, racial/ethnic identification, and responses to stereotypical comedy. *Mass Communication & Society, 18*(2), 209-229; doi: 10.1080/15205436.2014.907427

Matthes, J., & Schmuck, D. (2017). The effects of anti-immigrant right-wing populist ads on implicit and explicit attitudes: A moderated mediation model. *Communication Research*, *44*(4), 556–581.

Paluck, E. L. (2009). Reducing intergroup prejudice and conflict using the media: A field experiment in Rwanda. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, *96*(3), 574–587. doi:10.1037/a0011989

Parvanta, C., & Bass, S. (2018). *Health communication: Strategies and skills for a new era*. Burlington, MA: Jones & Bartlett Learning.

Peck, T. C., Seinfeld, S., Aglioti, S. M., & Slater, M. (2013). Putting yourself in the skin of a black avatar reduces implicit racial bias. *Consciousness and Cognition*, *22*(3), 779–787. doi:10.1016/j.concog.2013.04.016

Ramasubramanian, S. (2007). Media-based strategies to reduce racial stereotypes activated by news stories. *Journalism & Mass Communication Quarterly*, *84*(2), 249–264. doi:10.1177/107769900708400204

Scharrer, E. (2006). "I noticed more violence:" The effects of a media literacy program on critical attitudes toward media violence. *Journal of Mass Media Ethics*, *21*(1), 69–86. doi:10.1207/s15327728jmme2101_5

Schiappa, E., Gregg, P. B., & Hewes, D. E. (2005). The parasocial contact hypothesis. *Communication Monographs*, *72*(1), 92–115. doi:10.1080/0363775052000342544

Schutt, R. K. (2015). *Investigating the social world: The process and practice of research* (8th ed.). Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage.

Southwell, B. G. (2005). Between messages and people: A multilevel model of memory for television content. *Communication Research*, *32*(1), 112–140. doi:10.1177/0093650204271401

Southwell, B. G., Thorson, E. A., & Sheble, L. (Eds.). (2018). *Misinformation and mass audiences*. Austin, TX: University of Texas Press.

Sukalla, F., Bilandzic, H., Bolls, P. D., & Busselle, R. W. (2016). Embodiment of narrative engagement: Connecting self-reported narrative engagement to psychophysiological measures. *Journal of Media Psychology: Theories, Methods, and Applications*, *28*(4), 175–186. doi:10.1027/1864-1105/a000153

Walker, L. S. (2014). Developing your experiment. In M. Webster & J. Sell (Eds.), *Laboratory experiments in the social sciences* (2nd ed., pp. 127–144). Cambridge, MA: Academic Press.

Webster, M., & Sell, J. (Eds.). (2014). *Laboratory experiments in the social sciences* (2nd ed.). Cambridge, MA: Academic Press.

Wrench, J. S., Thomas-Maddox, C., Richmond, V. P., & McCroskey, J. C. (2012). *Quantitative research methods for communication: A hands-on approach*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

7 Examining Communication Content in Content Analysis Research

In a sample of primetime and children's TV content, girls or women comprised just 39% of characters with speaking roles (Smith, Choueiti, Prescott, & Pieper, 2012). African Americans were disproportionately depicted as more verbally aggressive within a sample of popular reality TV programs compared to those of other races (Glascock & Preston-Schreck, 2018). Within 20 hours of recorded game play from popular massively multiplayer online games, White males appeared much more frequently than women and characters of color (Waddell, Ivory, Conde, Long, & McDonnell, 2014). In a sample of television programs with lesbian, gay, or bisexual characters in leading roles, programs from streaming services like Netflix, Amazon Prime, or Hulu and premium cable providers like Showtime were more likely to feature sexual talk and behavior among LGB characters compared to broadcast or basic cable providers (Bond, Miller, & Stevens Aubrey, 2019).

Claims and numerical estimations like these are made possible by the use of a quantitative research method known as content analysis. **Content analysis** is a social scientific method used to document the features of what appears in media content or in other forms of meaningful messages. Some content analyses focus, in particular, on entertainment-based, fictional stories told in the media, as illustrated in the opening paragraph of this chapter. Yet, content analysis can apply more broadly to other forms of media content, including posts or comments on social media, features of websites, or coverage of topics in the news.

In fact, it can be applied to any form of **communication content** (i.e., any content with meaning) that can be gathered and examined for analysis, regardless of whether that content appears in the media. What do new employee training manuals from a set of organizations show about how to maintain a productive and supportive work environment? How do presidential speeches from the last ten years discuss the topic of income inequality? What do transcripts of doctor-patient interactions reveal about how health information is communicated to English language learners? The tools of content analysis can be applied to answer questions such as these.

Both qualitative and quantitative scholars alike can be interested in studying the content of media or other messages. Applying some of the principles of research methodologies from Chapter 1, we can assume that when qualitative scholars study media content, they are likely to choose fewer texts or examples of content and explore that material in great depth and detail. When quantitative scholars study content, they are likely to choose more material to examine, and their observations are likely to be more summative in nature. But the most fundamental difference between qualitative and quantitative content analysis is that "quantitative content analysis has as its goal a numerically based summary of a chosen message set" (Neuendorf, 2017, p. 21). As we have certainly established by now, quantitative data are, by definition, numerical, and therefore observations of content must be represented by numbers in quantitative content analysis research.

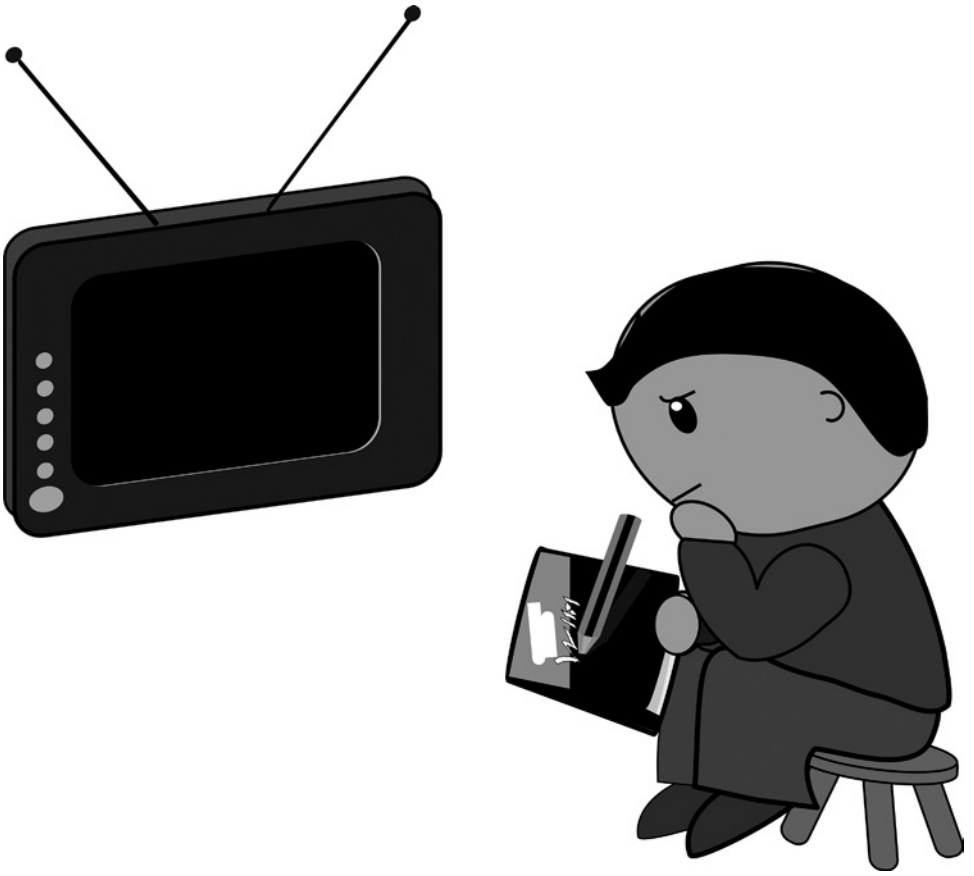


Figure 7.1 Coders examine communication content to document featuress
Source: Stephen Warren

Let us look at some of the ways in which Journalism and Communication scholars have defined content analysis:

- Klaus Krippendorff (2013, p. 24): "A research technique for making replicable and valid inferences from texts (or other meaningful matter) to the contexts of their use."
- Daniel Riffe, Stephen Lacy, Brendan R. Watson, and Frederick G. Fico (2019, p. 23): "The systematic and replicable examination of symbols of communication, which have been assigned numeric values according to valid measurement rules, and the analysis of relationships involving those values using statistical methods, to describe the communication, draw inferences about its meaning, or infer from the communication to its context, both of production and consumption."
- Kimberly Neuendorf (2017, p. 17): "Content analysis is a summarizing, quantitative analysis of messages that follows the scientific method (including attention to objectivity-intersubjectivity, a priori design, reliability, validity, generalizability, replicability, and hypothesis testing based on theory) and is not limited as to the types of variables that may be measured or the context in which the messages are created or presented."

Each of these definitions reveals the logic of the scientific method at play in content analysis, as is seen in the definitions' references to such topics as validity, measurement, assigning numeric values, replicability, and making inferences. The first two definitions include, as well, a reference to the purpose of content analysis: to understand what appears in texts as an important step in knowing *why* content takes shape and *how* audiences create, use, respond to and/or make meaning from that content.

Using Content Analysis for Social Justice

Content analysis research has the potential to lend insights into particular points in history by studying communication forms produced at a moment in time. Simply by describing media content or other sets of communicative content, content analysis research can implicitly reveal a great deal about the context in which that content or those messages were produced and disseminated. What was valued at the time? What was popular? Who was represented? Who was missing?

Most hypotheses in content analysis research have to do with studying **how one aspect of the content in question relates to another aspect**. For example, you might have a hypothesis that predicts that Muslims will be more frequently depicted as threatening in the news compared to non-Muslims. There are two variables at play: (1) whether individuals in the news are Muslim or not and (2) the degree to which individuals are depicted as threatening. In this example, you are predicting that there is a relationship between the religious identity of individuals who appear in the news and the extent to which individuals are presented as threatening. The social justice implications of studies such as this are many, since they can be used to show biases in media or other communication content.

Content analysis research might seek to understand **how media content compares to observations drawn from the wider world**. Rather than interpreting media content as *implicitly* related to social or cultural or political factors, the researcher can *explicitly* study the relationship between those factors and media content. In Scharrer, Kim, Lin, and Liu (2006), for example, the performance of domestic duties among real-world heterosexual couples in the United States was compared with the depictions of household chores in commercials. Real-world statistics showed that within heterosexual couples, men were doing more to help out around the house (although women were still doing the most). Within the commercials examined through content analysis, the authors (including the first author of this book) found nearly twice as many female characters engaged in household chores than male characters. Thus, depictions in commercials were out of step with modern realities of U.S. households in gender stereotypical ways. Using content analysis in this manner can shed light on social justice related topics in that these observations can reveal distortions between communication content and a wider reality.

Finally, many researchers use the results of content analysis to **speculate about the outcomes that might stem from the depictions** that have been established through the study of content. Do stereotypes of social groups found in the media contribute to prejudice among media audiences? An important first step in exploring this issue is figuring out how prevalent those stereotypes are in media content through content analysis. One must be cautious, however, not to try to answer a question about effects of media content on audiences through content analysis research. A content analysis only tells us about the messages themselves, not how individuals might respond to or be influenced by those messages.

If the researcher is not satisfied with speculating about what effects might be spurred from particular content features, that researcher may conduct a follow-up study that explores media effects. Perhaps the content analysis findings can identify a text or message to use as a stimulus

in an experiment designed to measure impact of media exposure. James A. Anderson (2012) suggests:

> Content analysis can play an important (and often neglected) part in audience effects studies. . . . Most effects studies are rather cavalier in the selection of content with the researcher selecting the content with an 'of course it's true' approach that this content is violent, sexy, gender based or whatever the issue. It would be much better if we adopted a more sophisticated analysis of the content and could point to the properties by which the genre claim is made.
>
> (p. 279)

Overall, the use of content analysis can be an important step in challenging the status quo. Yet, simply revealing the state of affairs in communication content does not actually work toward changing it. Content analysis on its own cannot achieve goals associated with social justice unless researchers and other individuals decide what to do with the information that content analysis reveals. On its own, content analysis is likely to spur the sort of "third-person scholarship" that is *about* but does not actively intervene in social injustices that Frey and Carragee (2007) introduced. In order to move content analysis research from third-person to first-person social justice research (Frey & Carragee, 2007), the researcher will likely have to ensure that a broader public beyond just fellow researchers can learn about and act upon content analysis results. We will take up some of these strategies in the final chapters of this book.

From this discussion, you are likely to be thinking that there are both strengths and weaknesses to content analysis in general as well as for its use as a means toward social justice efforts. Indeed, one of its chief **strengths** is that it is not obtrusive. Since it does not involve studying human beings but rather is about studying media content or other messages that already exist, the researcher's presence does not affect the observations made. Rather, the content existed before the researcher chose to analyze it, and therefore it is not subject to the sort of reactivity that we see in other forms of research. Content analysis research also tends to be low in cost, and it relies on fewer people to be carried out compared to surveys or experiments. As we will see, the researcher just needs at least one other person with whom to compare observations of content in order to conduct a quantitative content analysis.

A shining example of the strength of content analysis research for social justice purposes, specifically, can be seen in the work of Stacy L. Smith, director and founder of the Annenberg Inclusion Initiative at the Annenberg School for Communication and Journalism at the University of Southern California. Dr. Smith and her team conduct content analyses that document diversity, or lack thereof, in music, television, film, and other forms of entertainment. They also track the diversity of the people who create that entertainment media content, drawing a link between who is represented in the decision-making circles of entertainment media creation and who is represented in the resulting content. Furthermore, Dr. Smith and colleagues do not simply publish these data for academics to read. Rather, they engage directly in advocacy and action with media creators and entertainment industry decision makers to work toward positive change. You can read more about this initiative—built on the foundation of quantitative content analysis research—here, https://annenberg.usc.edu/research/aii#aii-team. And you can read more about the role of quantitative research in advocacy and activism in the last chapter of this book.

In terms of **weaknesses**, content analysis research is limited to forms of messages that are recorded and can be accessed or acquired by the researcher. There is also a limit to the sorts of questions you can ask and answer using content analysis methodology. As we have seen, although you can speculate about how people may interpret or be affected by messages, or

even why messages take the shape that they do, content analysis on its own does not provide data on those questions. Finally, with content analysis extending into social media posts or other user-generated content, some have debated the ethics of studying content produced by people without their knowledge or permission to do so, even if that content was posted publicly.

Coding and Coders

At the heart of content analysis research is the process of **coding**, defined as applying definitions of concepts to a set of texts or messages in order to document the features of those texts or messages. Put differently, the process involves "the systematic assignment of communication content to categories according to rules" (Riffe, Lacy, & Fico, 2005, p. 3). To study the features of media content or other messages, therefore, it is necessary to know what you are looking for and how you will know it when you see it. The content analysis researcher comes up with rules regarding how to classify messages into meaningful patterns.

Coders are the individuals who actually do the coding, making judgments about how the content examined matches up with the established rules regarding how to classify it. The concepts that will be examined in the content become variables in the content analysis study. Each variable has its own carefully determined set of rules regarding how to identify and classify content pertaining to that variable. The researcher comes up with the rules that will govern how the coders make coding decisions. The researcher also trains the coders in how to apply the established rules to the content in the sample to make valid and reliable coding judgments.

Historically, only human coders performed content analysis coding. People—sometimes paid by the researcher, sometimes volunteers, sometimes the researcher or members of the research team themselves—were trained to apply the definitions of concepts to content and thereby carry out the coding. Indeed, that approach is still quite common to this day. Yet, more recently, it has become possible to use computer algorithms or programming to detect particular features of content, and therefore today there is automated coding in studies of communication content, as well, sidestepping the need for human coders. We will focus most of our attention in this chapter on human coding because automated coding is still a rather specialized skill, but we will intersperse some discussion of automated coding, as well.

Most variables studied in content analysis research will take one of a few possible forms. Some variables are measured in a manner that simply determines whether the variable is **present or absent**. Imagine you are studying 300 ads for video games that appeared in print magazines. In each ad, are characters shown displaying aggression? Coders looking at that variable may simply code 0 = no or 1 = yes for each character. That way, the coder is determining whether aggression was present or absent for each character. Still other variables are about the **degree to which a concept is present or absent**. Within a sample of news content, for example, the researcher might want to know how much graphic detail of injuries or death is included in news footage of drone warfare. Researchers could study this on a scale of "1: not graphic at all" to "5: very graphic," thereby capturing not just whether such detail is present but the degree to which it is. **Counts** (or frequencies) are produced when the number of times a variable is present in the content is tallied. For example, the number of times each presidential speech mentions income inequality is a count variable that can be examined in a content analysis. Such variables are likely to vary, then, from 0 (no references to income equality at all, in our example) to whatever the maximum number may be within the sample.

Each of these types of variables, whether they record presence or absence of something, degree to which something is present or absent, or the frequency with which something is present, will easily translate into a number. Yet even aspects of media content or other messages that do not readily translate into a number can, indeed, be quantified. You can categorize content into more **descriptive** categories, as long as you assign numbers to those categories. Imagine that you want to use transcripts to study differences between doctor-patient communication in contexts in which patients do or do not have English as their first language, for instance. To do this, you will have to classify each patient into the category of "English as first language" or "English language learner." To quantify this variable, you would assign numerical values to each option, such as 1 = English as first language, 2 = English language learner. (Of course, you might need more than those two categories. What if it is not clear whether the patient is an English language learner, for instance? You might need a category such as 3 = unknown/uncertain.)

Steps Involved in Content Analysis

Content analysis follows a standard set of procedures designed to work toward the twin goals of reliability and validity. A key starting place is with a **rationale** for why you are studying particular types of content for particular observations and a comprehensive **literature review** so that you can see how former studies inform your study. From this stage, **hypotheses and/or research questions** should emerge, which will guide testing of whether theorized observations or relationships between variables occur in the content you are studying.

The next step is **conceptualization** of variables, following the principles and practices that we outlined in Chapter 3, providing dictionary-type definitions of variables to be examined in the study. As Neuendorf (2017) suggests in her book on content analysis, when beginning to conceptualize the variables to be examined in a content analysis study, you may want to explore some of the content you are proposing to study, to see if you have missed any important aspects of that content that you want to include in your study. If you are studying presidential campaign ads, you would be wise to take a preliminary look at a bunch of those ads to help you figure out what it is about the ads you find interesting or important in the conceptualization stage of your study.

The content analysis researcher then moves from conceptualization to **operationalization**, which means that the conceptual definitions now need to be translated into specific ways to measure the variables at play in the study. At this stage, it is important to remember to apply what you have learned about operationalizing variables in a manner that includes coming up with values that are exhaustive and mutually exclusive, and to think about how complex concepts might have multiple dimensions and/or indicators, again as we learned in Chapter 3.

An important aspect of operationalization is determining the **unit of analysis** in the study. The unit of analysis is "the element on which data are analyzed and for which findings are reported" (Neuendorf, 2017, p. 20). For a study of television commercials, for instance, each commercial will likely constitute "the element on which data are analyzed." For a study of social media posts, each post could be the unit of analysis. Even though this seems quite straightforward, determining one or more units of analysis can actually be quite complex in practice, and so we will return to this stage in the process a bit later in this chapter.

Operationalized variables should then each be fully described and explained in a **coding scheme** or **codebook**. The codebook functions as a training manual for coders and contains detailed instructions for how to treat each variable in the study. It contains everything that coders will need to know to apply the operational definitions to the content in question in order to assign the numerical values associated with each variable.

Some researchers also create a separate document known as a **code sheet** at this stage in the process. Whereas the codebook explains how to do the coding, the code sheet is the place where each coding decision is recorded. Other researchers opt to forgo this step and simply record their observations right into an Excel spreadsheet, SPSS file (with SPSS standing for Statistical Package for Social Sciences, a popular software for statistical analysis in Communication), or other data management programs. We have included an example of a content analysis codebook and associated code sheet here.

Research in Action

This is an excerpt from the coding scheme used for Scharrer, E. (2012). More than just the facts? Portrayals of masculinity in police and detective programs over time. *Howard Journal of Communications*, *23*, 88–109. doi:10.1080/10646175.2012.641882

MASCULINITY AMONG MAIN CHARACTERS IN POLICE/ DETECTIVE DRAMAS OVER TIME

Character is the unit of analysis. You need one code sheet per character. We are only coding major characters, defined as characters who are in the credits, are in most episodes of the program and/or in most scenes in the episode, and/or are featured in a single episode as the main suspect or criminal. We are only coding adults, which means those who appear to be 18 or older. Finally, we are only coding men and/or male-identified characters.

I. **Coding characters**: First, list the **name** of the character you are coding. If you do not know the name, use a brief description to identify the character. _____

_____

1. Please use the following categories to code the apparent **race or ethnicity** of the character, using visual cues, any identifying dialogue, or any other indicator from the character or other characters. In the case of Latino characters, this might include their name.

   1 = White/European American
   2 = Black/African American
   3 = Latino
   4 = Asian/Asian American
   5 = Native American
   6 = biracial or multiracial
   7 = unknown/unable to determine

2. **Role in criminal justice process**: Based on the narrative and any other indicator from the episode, what is this character's role in the crime/criminal justice process?

   1 = police or detective
   2 = other law enforcement or legal figure (district attorney, defense attorney, etc.)

3 = witness
4 = suspect
5 = criminal
6 = other? _____

3. **The character's display or discussion of emotions**: We are interested in whether the character expresses emotions either visually (in their actions, on their faces, in what they do) or verbally (in what they say).

3a. ***Shows emotions visually***: Please code whether the character displays any of these emotions by having the emotion registered on his face or apparent in his actions (e.g., he slumps to the ground or cries in sadness, widens eyes or quickens breath in fear, smiles or laughs to show happiness, slams the steering wheel in the car in anger). If there is lack of sincerity or if there is sarcasm, please do not count it. Only count sincere emotions displayed.

Happiness? Y or N
Sadness/grief? Y or N
Anger? Y or N
Fear? Y or N

3b. ***Shows emotions verbally***: Please code whether a character talks about an emotion or verbally expresses a state of mind/being. This can be indicated both by what he says (e.g., "You are really pissing me off") and the manner in which he says it (e.g., yelling in the case of anger, or with a cracking or wavering voice in the case of sadness). Again, please only count sincere emotions spoken.

Happiness? Y or N
Sadness/grief? Y or N
Anger? Y or N
Fear? Y or N
Sympathy or empathy for someone: Y or N
Guilt/remorse: Y or N

3c. Overall, how ***emotionally responsive*** would you say this character is, judging from his depiction across the entirety of the episode? A low score would indicate reticence or lack of expression of emotions, whereas a high score would indicate either/or a wide range or a frequent display of emotions.

1	2	3	4	5
Stoic			Emotional	

Sampling is the next stage, and it follows the principles and practices we discussed in Chapter 4. In content analysis research, as in other quantitative methods, if you can employ a random sampling method, it is well worth doing so, since that will allow you to estimate with precision the likelihood of obtaining a particular result in the sample without it also being present in the population. Yet, when that is not possible, any of the nonprobability methods described in Chapter 4 are available to guide you in the collection of a sample that is systematic and relatively unbiased in nature. We will explore the unique opportunities and challenges of sampling in content analysis research a bit later in this chapter.

Once the codebook has been carefully developed and the sampling strategy is set, it is time to **train coders**. Quantitative content analysis must employ at least two coders. The underlying principle is that the observations made in the content analysis process are not merely one person's opinion or unique interpretation but rather should be able to be detected consistently by multiple people (at least two) using the same coding procedures. Importantly, the coders should be working independently from one another, so that one person's judgments regarding how to apply the coding scheme do not influence the other's judgments.

Intercoder reliability (ICR) is the degree to which multiple coders are applying the coding scheme consistently and agreeing with one another regarding how to code variables. In order to test for ICR, two or more coders code the same material so that a mathematical test of their agreement on that shared content can be conducted. Again, you will read more on this topic later.

At this stage in the content analysis process, the **pilot testing** of intercoder reliability is typically conducted, not on the actual sample itself but on a pilot test sample that is similar in nature to the actual sample. If you have gathered a sample for a content analysis that consists of 250 presidential campaign ads, for example, you should set that sample aside and not have coders code it until they have pilot tested the coding scheme using presidential campaign ads *not* in the sample. Riffe and colleagues explain why this is the case, "If content is coded several times, prior decisions contaminate subsequent ones. Furthermore, the effect of multiple codings is to inflate the ultimate reliability estimate, thus giving a false confidence in the study's overall reliability" (Riffe et al., 2005, p. 142). The pilot test(s) of ICR, then, should be conducted independently from the final test of ICR.

Intercoder reliability testing during the pilot testing stage may result in the realization that the coding scheme needs to be revised for greater clarity and accuracy in coding. You may find that coders do not agree with whether a variable is present or absent, for instance, or are otherwise having trouble determining how to code a variable. The coding scheme will then need to be clarified and intercoder reliability retested to ensure that there is broad consensus regarding how to code each variable. Once the coders are in sync and the codebook is working well in producing reliable observations across coders in the pilot stage, the official **coding** of the actual sample can take place.

The **official test for ICR** is the next step. The rule of thumb is that at least 10% of the official sample for the study should be coded by two or more coders to test for intercoder reliability. More than 10% overlap between or among coders is even better. Once again, the coders should be working independently, so as not to influence each other. As long as the results of that test pass muster, the coders can independently code the rest of the content without having to overlap in what they are coding, because they have shown that they are doing so in a systematic and reliable manner. We will explain how to determine whether intercoder reliability has been established in more detail later in this chapter.

Finally, the content analysis **data are analyzed and reported**. This usually takes the form of statistical analysis and should test hypotheses and explore research questions, thereby providing a mathematical answer to whether hypotheses are supported or refuted and how research questions can be answered. We will go into great detail about data analysis in subsequent chapters of this book.

Making Sound Observations

For any quantitative research method, validity and reliability are main concerns. This is certainly the case in content analysis. Ways to code variables are **valid** if they are accurate in reflecting the meaning of the concepts the variables are meant to capture. Ways to code

variables are **reliable** when applying the same coding definitions repeatedly produces very similar results every time. In content analysis research, reliability is largely determined through ICR.

Sometimes a content analysis researcher will have to balance richness and detail in coding with the likelihood or ease with which content analysis coders will agree. Simple, straightforward variables will clearly be easier to agree on, and therefore coding those variables is likely to be reliable. Yet, confining a content analysis to simple, straightforward variables is also likely to limit what can be revealed about the content. Complex variables can be challenging—but not impossible!—to develop into a reliable coding process.

Imagine you are doing a study that involves determining whether each music video within a sample of music videos contains violence. For each video, you could ask coders "Is this violent?," and they could potentially have two values to use for their observation: Yes or No. Or you could ask coders, "How violent is this?," and provide three values for that variable: 1 = not violent at all, 2 = somewhat violent, 3 = violent. In still another possibility, you could ask, "How violent is this?," and have five possible values for that variable: 1 = not violent at all, 2 = a bit violent, 3 = moderately violent, 4 = quite violent, 5 = very violent. Clearly, it will be easier for multiple coders to agree on the first item, followed by the second item, and then the third. The more fine-grained the coding judgment, the more difficult it usually is to find reliable results. Yet, the more fine-grained measures have the potential to tell you more about the content than the ones that use broader categories. Of course, they only do that if they can be reliably coded.

Relatedly, some coding calls for observing manifest content whereas other coding calls for observing latent content. **Manifest content** involves variables that are apparent on the surface of the content in question. They are overt, there for the eye to see or the ear to hear. For example, you could code whether or not presidential candidates are shown wearing business suits in campaign ads. All coders with a shared definition of what a business suit is could look at the content as it exists, on the surface, and determine whether a candidate in an ad is shown wearing one. **Latent content** is under the surface. These variables require inference to code, demanding that the coders make an inferential leap from something observable (i.e., more manifest) to a related judgment. For example, rather than having coders note whether a presidential candidate is wearing a business suit, you might code whether the clothing they wear in the campaign ad is gender stereotypical. Coding this variable involves making an inference from what is on the surface (what the presidential candidate is wearing in the ad) to a more complex judgment (whether that clothing would be considered gender stereotypical).

Latent content, as you might guess, is more difficult for multiple coders to agree upon, given that it is more subject to interpretation. And yet, if latent content variables do, indeed, stem logically from observable content and are well articulated in the coding scheme, they *can* be reliably coded within a reasonable range of agreement by multiple coders. And they often have a great deal to contribute to the study. For our presidential campaign ad example, for instance, we would need a careful definition of what constitutes "gender stereotypical" clothing, and if we could arrive at one, using that variable would reveal a great deal about the content.

Consider this example of the ways in which Teresa Lynch, Jessica E. Tompkins, Irene I. van Driel, and Niki Fritz (2016) studied sexualization of female video game characters by examining the appearance of the main playable female character within 571 video games. Their operationalization included examining a visual emphasis on particular body parts and the ways in which characters moved. For each of the five variables listed, Lynch and colleagues studied whether that depiction was present or not present, assigning a score of 0 for not present or 1 for present. Then they combined these items into a single measure of sexualization

by summing up each of the five individual observations. The parenthetical information that includes the Greek letter alpha (α) shows the score for each variable on Krippendorf's alpha, which—as we will explain later in this chapter—is a common measure used to report reliability among multiple coders.

> We considered chests sexualized if we observed one or more of the following: breasts disproportionate to the body size (α =.81), bare skin between the armpits and bottoms of the breasts (α =.70), or accentuation by garments or artistic styling (e.g., shading; α =.73). We observed sexualized buttocks if skin was exposed from the top of the hips to the bottom of the buttocks (α =.71) or if adornments or art styling accentuated the buttocks (α =.74). We considered waists sexualized if the character's midriff area in the front or back of the body was bare (α =.80) or if the waist to hip shape was exaggerated (α =.78). We considered the leg region sexualized if the skin on the legs was exposed from the hip area to the top of the character's knees (α =.95). Finally, we determined the presence of sexualized movement (α =.75) if the character's movements included unnecessary undulation or jiggling that drew attention to their body in a sexual manner.
>
> (p. 572)

In this example, then, we see how an abstract concept like sexualization can be broken down into multiple, specific indicators that are observable within the content. Lynch and colleagues may not have anticipated every possible way of studying sexualization. Yet the manner in which they decided to code the variable does appear to be valid—given that it maps on to broad understandings of what sexualization can look like in video games—and is likely to be reliable—given the specificity and overt nature of and the "present" or "absent" way of coding each indicator. The researchers have taken an abstract concept and made sure it could be coded based on manifest content, thereby minimizing the inferences and other judgments the coders had to make.

Sampling Considerations in Content Analysis

As you read in Chapter 4, constructing a sample on which to base observations is an important step in quantitative research. In content analysis, researchers must determine where and how to find the TV programming, advertisements, websites, video games, social media posts, movie trailers, magazines, news articles, and other content that will be examined in the study. As we also learned in Chapter 4, they must also decide how much of that content is necessary in order to be fairly confident that observations based on any given sample can be generalized to a wider body. The same probability and nonprobability sampling techniques explained in Chapter 4 are available for content analysis researchers to employ, and the same overall goals of purposiveness (meaning that the content is chosen for a reason) and/or representativeness in sampling apply.

Sampling in content analysis research is often constrained by **access**. As you will recall, in order to use random sampling techniques, a comprehensive list of population units must be generated. Sometimes in content analysis research, you may be able to come up with a complete list of content to sample, but you just cannot get your hands on some of that content in order to code it. Hugh Klein and Kenneth F. Shiffman (2006), for instance, went to great pains to access all cartoons using cel animation produced by the major animation studios between 1930 and the mid-1990s in their study of racial diversity among characters and overt depictions of racism. They describe their process:

> Once the "universe" of cartoons had been identified, actual copies of the specific cartoons selected for viewing and coding as part of the random sampling approach had

> to be located. This was done in a wide variety of ways: by contacting animation fans and collectors and having them make copies of some of their cartoons for us, visiting film archives and repositories and viewing cartoons in their libraries/holdings on site, obtaining copies of the needed cartoons directly from the animation studios, purchasing sample-selected items from retail outlets and private sellers who advertised them in trade publications, renting videocassettes from retail outlets like Blockbuster Video, and videotaping from programs broadcast on television.
>
> (p. 168)

This is clearly a great deal of effort, but, in this case, it paid off in terms of facilitating a comprehensive look at the phenomenon in question.

Electronic databases are excellent resources that allow researchers to access particular texts or messages. If your library has access to the LexisNexis electronic database, for example, this is a treasure trove for the study of news content or legal documents. Within the database, you can search under keywords, within particular ranges of dates, and within particular publications. When the first author of this book studied the ways in which Hillary Clinton was depicted in the news when she was first lady, LexisNexis was used to identify news stories featuring Clinton, and then a systematic sample was drawn from the resulting list. "To construct the sample, the search term 'Hillary (Rodham) Clinton' was entered for the time period of 1 October 1999 to 6 February 2000 in the LexisNexis database. From the list of sources displayed, every fourth story was selected to reach the ultimate sample size of 342 stories on Clinton" (Scharrer, 2002, pp. 396–397).

Similarly, content analysts can use **archives** to access content for sampling and analysis. In yet another example from the first author of this book, for instance, police and detective programs that aired on TV from the 1950s through the 1990s were accessed at the Museum of Television and Radio in New York City for a study of whether the male main characters exhibited characteristics associated with "hypermasculinity" (Scharrer, 2012). The archive at the Museum of Television and Radio provides access to a number of programs from across the decades that otherwise would be very difficult for a researcher to find. The Research in Action section of this chapter shows an excerpt from the codebook for that same study.

Although databases and archives present rich opportunities for the content analyst, those sources are not without limitations. They may not house every title or all content of interest to the researcher, for instance, thereby limiting the generalizability of what can be found. If you use the holdings in the database or archive as the sampling frame from which to make sample selections, therefore, you have to be mindful that the sampling frame is not the same as the population. Researchers using these tools must be careful not to generalize further than the holdings allow. For example, in Scharrer's (2012) study of police and detective programs, the goal was to examine every top-rated police and detective program from the beginning of television in the United States to the end of the 1990s. Yet, some titles that were listed as top-rated programs were not held in the archives, were not accessible through any other known means, and therefore did not make it into the sample. Yet another limitation is that sometimes the use of archives or databases incurs a cost that the researcher may not be able to sustain.

Using a **composite sample** (also known as a **constructed** sample) is a variation on random sampling techniques that is a popular and rigorous approach used in many studies of media content. This approach uses the circulation or programming patterns of media content as the main logic to guide sampling. For television programming, which is organized around time slots, a composite sample can be randomly selected from a list of time slots across days of the week and channels. Mastro and Figueroa-Caballero (2018), for example, studied a

composite week of scheduled television programming in their analysis of the body size and shape of characters that appeared in primetime television programming. They report:

> Using a simple random sample without replacement, a 1-week composite of current prime time television programming (8–11 p.m. PST) across the nine broadcast and cable networks with the highest English-language viewership in the United States (ABC, AMC, CBS, CW, FOX, NBC, USA, TBS, & TNT) was constructed over a 10-week sampling period from September to December 2013. Only scripted and reality television programs were included. Special events (e.g., American Music Awards), sports, and news were omitted. In order to identify the units in the population (i.e., programs on prime time television), a list of all programs appearing on each of the selected networks during the regular 2013–2014 television season was compiled. One episode of each of the scripted entertainment programs within the population was randomly sampled, using a random numbers table, during the 10-week timeframe. This resulted in a final sample of 89 programs and 1,254 distinct characters.

In this example, then, imagine a list of all ABC programs that air between 8 pm and 11 pm. Then do the same for AMC programs, followed by CBS programs, etc. until you have exhausted all nine of the channels Mastro and Figueroa-Caballero (2018) used in their study. The composite week involves randomly selecting across each of the time slots and each of the channels to come up with one week's worth of primetime programming created from each of those randomly selected titles.

Finally, content analysis research can be used to test for stability or change over time by using a **longitudinal** sample. Both the Scharrer (2012) study of hypermasculinity in police and detective programs and the Klein and Shiffman (2006) analysis of race and racism in animated cartoons discussed as examples in this section involved sampling across time periods to make observations about whether depictions had changed. Once again, access proves essential here since older content can often be more difficult to find.

We have provided an example (Figure 7.3) of observations of how the regular cast of characters on broadcast television has changed over time based on content analysis research issued by the organization, GLAAD. You can find reports on the methodology used by GLAAD and other excellent resources for media representation across the gender and sexual identity spectra at the website, www.glaad.org/tags/where-we-are-tv. The organization issues annual "Where We Are on TV" analyses as well as other reports of media representation using both quantitative and qualitative approaches.

Determining Units

An important consideration in content analysis research is how to divide up the content that will be coded into manageable units. Within the communication content to be studied, which portions or aspects of the content, exactly, will be examined to apply the coding scheme and make content analysis observations? Recall that "The **unit of analysis** is the element on which data are analyzed and for which findings are reported" (Neuendorf, 2017, p. 20).

Sometimes determining the unit of analysis is rather straightforward. For a study of music videos, for instance, it might make sense for each video to be the unit of analysis, meaning that you will apply the coding scheme across the content of the videos in their entirety, one video at a time. Other times, determining the unit of analysis can be more complex. For example, you may have to determine how fine-grained your unit of analysis will be. Within a study of newspaper content, will the entire newspaper be analyzed and therefore constitute

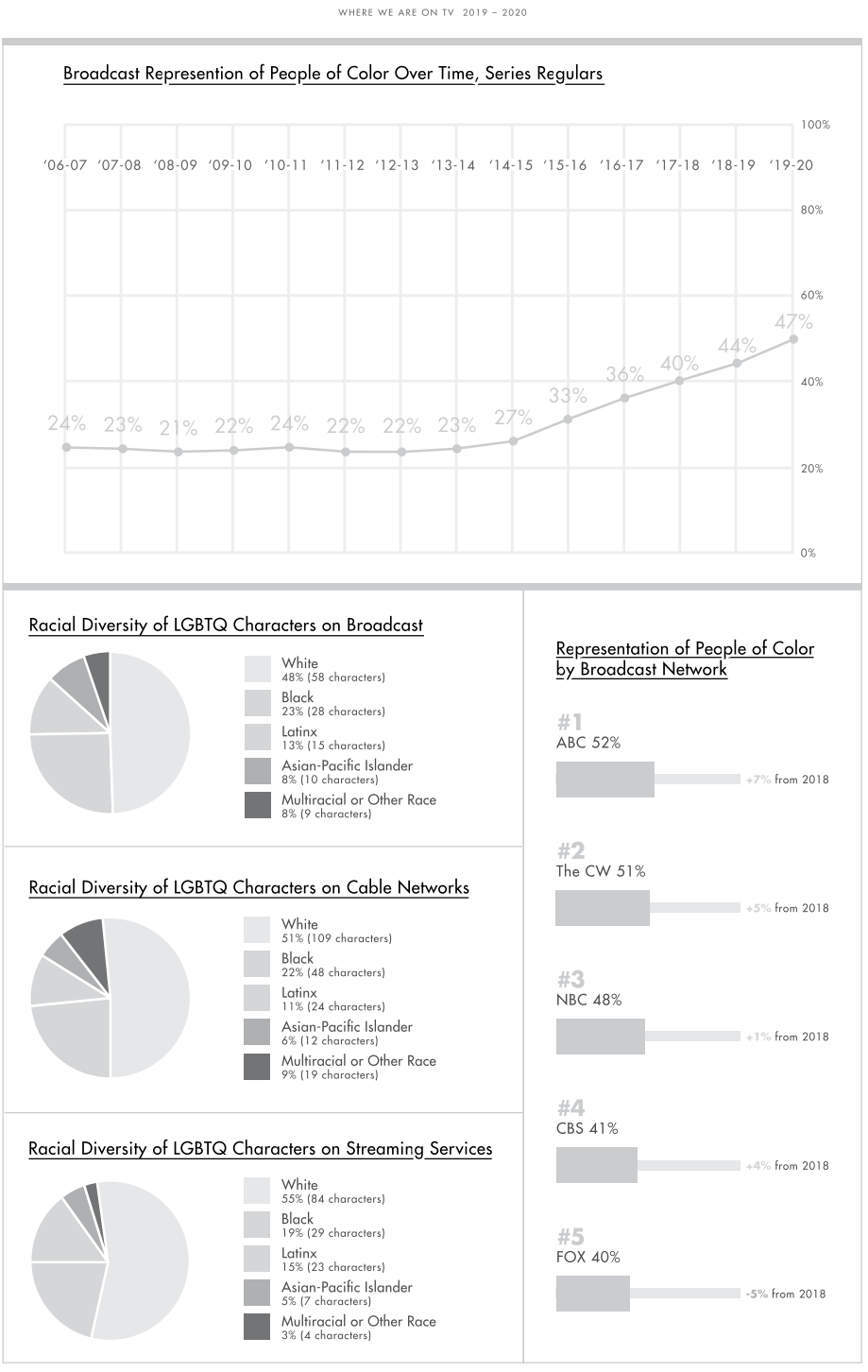

WHERE WE ARE ON TV 2019 – 2020
Broadcast Represention of People of Color Over Time, Series Regulars
'06-07 '07-08 '08-09 '09-10 '10-11 '11-12 '12-13 '13-14 '14-15 '15-16 '16-17 '17-18 '18-19 '19-20
100%
80%
60%
40%
20%
0%
24% 23% 21% 22% 24% 22% 22% 23% 27% 33% 36% 40% 44% 47%
Racial Diversity of LGBTQ Characters on Broadcast
White 48% (58 characters)
Black 23% (28 characters)
Latinx 13% (15 characters)
Asian-Pacific Islander 8% (10 characters)
Multiracial or Other Race 8% (9 characters)
Racial Diversity of LGBTQ Characters on Cable Networks
White 51% (109 characters)
Black 22% (48 characters)
Latinx 11% (24 characters)
Asian-Pacific Islander 6% (12 characters)
Multiracial or Other Race 9% (19 characters)
Racial Diversity of LGBTQ Characters on Streaming Services
White 55% (84 characters)
Black 19% (29 characters)
Latinx 15% (23 characters)
Asian-Pacific Islander 5% (7 characters)
Multiracial or Other Race 3% (4 characters)
Representation of People of Color by Broadcast Network
#1 ABC 52% +7% from 2018
#2 The CW 51% +5% from 2018
#3 NBC 48% +1% from 2018
#4 CBS 41% +4% from 2018
#5 FOX 40% -5% from 2018
17

Figure 7.3 Research in Action: Racial diversity of LGTBQ characters

Source: "Where We Are on TV Report—2019." GLAAD, www.glaad.org/wherewareontv

the unit of analysis? Or will articles within the newspaper be the unit of analysis? When coding television or film content, will the unit of analysis be the program or film, scenes within the program or film, or characters within the scenes? In any of these cases, you choose the unit of analysis that makes the most sense for observing the variables you are coding.

Some content analyses have more than one unit of analysis. For example, Dana E. Mastro and Susannah R. Stern (2003) employed two units of analysis in their study of racial representation in commercials aired on U.S. television during prime time. The commercial itself was the unit of analysis for many of the observations they made to code variables. Yet, they also made observations at the level of the character within the commercial, coding the first three speaking characters who appeared. Coding at both levels of analysis enabled Mastro and Stern to study race as a character-level variable and product type and setting as commercial-level variables (among many other variables). This allowed the researchers to find, for instance, that Asian characters appeared most often in ads for technology and were shown most often at work, thereby revealing the presence of racial stereotyping.

Some content analysis research designs will also call for a **unitizing** step, which involves making a judgment call about whether potential units within a "continuous stream of information" (Neuendorf, 2017, p. 72) should be included in the sample or not. If you are conducting a study of whether cyberbullying posts in social media show that individuals have been targeted based on some aspect of their identity, for instance, the first step might be to figure out whether a post contains cyberbullying at all. From a stream of social media posts, then, relevant units must be selected—in this case, those that contain cyberbullying—based on a judgment of whether they meet the definition to warrant inclusion in the sample.

Sometimes, the researcher may unitize content for the coders, handing over the coding in units the researcher has already determined to be relevant. Yet, a more rigorous approach is for coders themselves to determine whether a unit within a continuous stream meets the definition set forth by the researcher to be relevant for inclusion in the sample. In fact, it is considered best practice to report reliability scores (explained in the following section) for the unitizing step in the content analysis.

The first author of this book, for example, co-authored a study on the ways that father characters have been portrayed on U.S. sitcoms over time (Scharrer et al., 2020). Scenes in which sitcom fathers were involved in disparagement humor, defined as either making fun of someone else or being made fun of oneself, were the unit of analysis. From the continuous stream of sitcom content, coders first identified the scenes that involved the father in disparagement humor and therefore were included in the sample. Once that set of content was identified, the coders then applied to the content a host of variables pertaining to how the sitcom father was portrayed.

Intercoder Reliability

As we have mentioned, establishing intercoder reliability (ICR) is an essential part of conducting a successful quantitative content analysis. If the ways of classifying or otherwise coding content that have been developed by the researcher are sufficiently clear, complete, precise, and detailed, then the coders' ability to apply the coding scheme should, for the most part, supersede human biases or individual ways of interpreting the content. Thus, the overall concern for reliability in research—the likelihood that findings are stable and therefore replicable—is largely addressed by intercoder reliability in content analysis. In other words, "The problem of assessing reliability comes down ultimately to testing coder agreement to verify the assumption that content coding is determined by the concept definitions" (Riffe et al., 2005, p. 123) rather than resulting from one person's opinion or interpretation.

This, we would argue, is a key facet of the power of numbers. If you are advocating for more diverse representation in Hollywood films, in television programs, in video games, etc., your argument is likely to be more convincing if you can show that multiple coders agree that the present depictions are limited in terms of number or quality. The logic of content analysis research is that *any* two or more coders trained to apply the coding scheme to the content will more or less agree about how to classify or otherwise describe that content. Coders can be students, friends, relatives, partners, colleagues, or really just about anyone who is able to understand how to apply the coding scheme to the content and motivated to be conscientious about doing so. Content analysis data can be persuasive, then, in that they indicate that there is, indeed, something about the content in question that is able to be ascertained by just about anybody and therefore cannot be written off as a biased or idiosyncratic interpretation.

Content analysis experts suggest that at least 10% of the overall sample should be coded by multiple coders and subject to a formal test of ICR. Recall, as well, that the coders should be working independently from one another so as not to sway the others' coding decisions. If the result of that test of ICR comes back at an acceptable level, multiple coders can then divvy up the rest of the sample, because they have shown that they are using reliable means of applying the coding scheme to the content.

Scholar Spotlight: Dr. Travis Dixon

Travis Dixon (PhD, University of California Santa Barbara) is Professor and Communication Alumni Professorial Scholar in the Department of Communication at the University of Illinois. Dr. Dixon studies both media content and media effects, particularly regarding the presence of stereotypes in media and the influence of stereotypes on media audiences. Across multiple content analyses, Dr. Dixon has studied race and crime in the news, including through analyses that compare news content with social statistics such as crime reports. He has also studied the presence of stereotypical content such as violence and misogyny in addition to more positive, prosocial themes in rap lyrics.

Q: What motivates you to do content analysis research in general, and to study the issues and topics at stake in your content analysis work, in particular?

Dr. Dixon: I think that it has to do with my casual observations and experiences growing up in South Los Angeles. LA is a diverse and yet quite segregated city where we still tend to stereotype one another. I speculated, even as a young student, that we received biased messages from the media that reinforced these stereotypes. Content analysis offered me a methodology to explore this as a more mature scholar.

Q: What challenges arise in your research pertaining to key steps in content analysis like sampling, intercoder reliability, or operationalization of concepts?

Dr. Dixon: Content analysis is the most labor intensive of all the quantitative social scientific methodologies. Rigorous content analyses rely on multiple coders who have to reach high levels of intercoder reliability. Coder training and achieving sufficiently high reliability are the most difficult challenges associated with content analysis.

Q: What are your experiences and/or your hopes regarding how your research can be used to challenge social injustices and help make the case for social change?

Figure 7.4 Scholar Spotlight: Dr. Travis Dixon

Dr. Dixon: My hope is that think tanks and social justice advocates will use the data generated by my research to make an argument for positive social change. My goal is to write in an accessible way for both social scientists and advocates to help facilitate this process.

Q: Do you think quantitative methods in general and content analysis in particular can be tools to work toward social justice? Why or why not?

Dr. Dixon: I definitely believe that quantitative methods, including content analysis, can be used in the work toward social justice. This work can be used to educate policy makers and the public at large. In a democracy access to good information remains extremely important for advancing debate and to have lawmakers propose useful legislation.

So, how should the researcher select the 10% or more of the sample that will be coded by multiple coders and tested for ICR? Some experts suggest randomly selecting that subsection of the sample. Indeed, based on the principles of sampling that we have described in this book, that constitutes a best practice. If taking a random sample is somehow difficult to do, however, the guiding principle is that the subsample tested for ICR should be sufficiently varied in nature to ensure that the entire coding scheme can be applied. In other words, it should contain content that corresponds to all of the variables in the study, so that each variable can be fully considered by coders and tested for intercoder agreement.

There are a number of mathematical formulas available for testing ICR. The simplest option calculates percent agreement, determining how many times coders selected the same coding option compared to the total number of coding judgments the coders made. Under the circumstance of two coders making equal numbers of coding decisions, percent agreement is also called Holsti's formula for ICR. More complex formulas used to

calculate ICR take into account the fact that coders might actually agree by chance. The fewer values a variable has, the more the likelihood that coders could agree not in a meaningful way but just by virtue of chance. The formulas that take chance agreement into account are thought of as more rigorous, and, in fact, reviewers for many Communication journals will insist on the use of one of these formulas in order to support publication of a content analysis study.

How do we know whether two or more coders have come to sufficient agreement when making coding decisions? Formal ICR tests are conducted and reported with a score that ranges from .00 (not reliable at all) to 1.00 (completely reliable). Clearly, higher numbers are better, and yet there is no single, universally agreed upon standard for acceptable ICR results. Neuendorf (2017) reviewed various established practices for minimally acceptable ICR results. She summarized, "It's clear from a review of the work on reliability that agreement reliability coefficients that account for chance (e.g., Cohen's kappa) of .80 or greater would be acceptable to all, .60 or greater would be acceptable in most situations, and below that, there exists disagreement" (p 168). You can see, then, that although there is no need for coders to agree 100% of the time, if their agreement ranges below the 60% mark for the more rigorous formulas that account for chance agreement, we will call into question whether the study was reliable.

Arguably, the most versatile test of ICR that accounts for chance agreement is Krippendorff's alpha. Unlike other formulas, Krippendorff's alpha can be used with any number of two or more coders and can be used for variables across all of the different levels of measurement. Krippendorff's alpha also takes into account the "magnitude of the misses" (Neuendorf, 2017, p. 177). The formula factors in, for instance, when Coder 1 selects a value of 1 on a scale of 1 to 5 and Coder 2 selects a 2, compared to when Coder 1 selects a 1 and Coder 2 selects a 5.

Andrew Hayes collaborated with Klaus Krippendorff (2007) to make a downloadable macro to add the capacity to run the alpha test to the statistical software package SPSS, and that macro is available for free online. As of this writing, the macro and its corresponding manual can be accessed at this website: www.afhayes.com/spss-sas-and-mplus-macros-and-code.html. Once the macro is downloaded and saved to your computer, and SPSS is opened, the macro is ready to be used.

It is important to test and report ICR one variable at a time for every variable in the study. To use the macro, a new SPSS file must be made for each variable to be tested for ICR. In the SPSS file, the coders are entered as the variables, and their names or other identification occupy the column positions in the data view of the file (Figure 7.5). The number of rows will total to the number of coding decisions that the coders made. In the cells, you would enter the values that each coder used to code each variable. In the example here, three coders coded ten units. All three agreed on how to code the second and fourth unit. But for all other units, at least one of the three coders did not agree with the others. Keep in mind that you would have to create a separate file like you see here for each of the variables coded in the study to use the SPSS macro to test for ICR.

Other tests for ICR that take chance agreement into account include Cohen's kappa and Scott's pi. The statistical software package SPSS allows for the testing of Cohen's kappa, which is an advantage of choosing this formula. Yet, Cohen's kappa applies only to nominal level variables. There are variations on kappa, however, for ordinal measures and for more than two coders. Scott's pi is another example of a chance-corrected ICR formula that is used with nominal level data.

Finally, some advocate for the use of an intra-class correlation coefficient (ICC) to test for intercoder reliability, and this is also a function available within SPSS. Used with interval or ratio level data, the ICC shows the degree to which the judgments of pairs of coders are

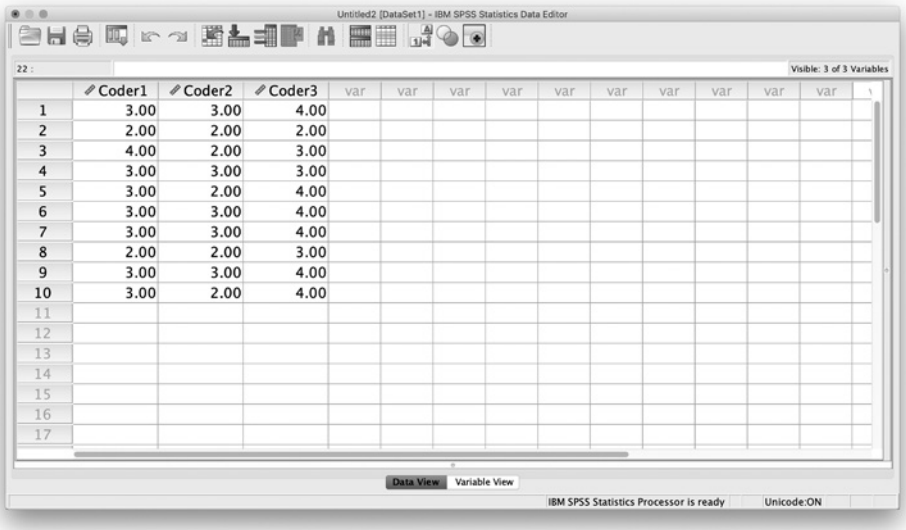


Figure 7.5 SPSS intercoder reliability calculation

Source: Stephen Warren

associated with each other. The critique of this measure and others like it, however, is that testing for the association between two coders' judgments is not the same thing as testing for agreement. Two coders could agree 0% of the time, but their codes could be 100% associated, for instance, such as if Coder 1's values were never the same as Coder 2's, but they differed by the same increment. Lin's concordance correlation coefficient (Lin, 1989) adjusts for this problem and therefore is likely to be a better choice.

Best practices for ICR include:

1. Providing an ICR result for each variable rather than just an overall average for ICR results. This is necessary so that readers can see which variables were more or less reliably coded and so that the presence of a variable with weak ICR results in a study is not masked by other, stronger variables. In other words, if you simply report that Coder A and Coder B agreed at an average rate of 89% across all of the variables, there is no way of knowing whether some variables used to calculate that average were very low and others were very high. The very low ones may not be sufficiently trustworthy.
2. Reporting clearly the sample size of the content used to calculate ICR as well as how that sample was chosen.
3. Employing coders who are not authors of the study, if possible, so that coders are not aware of the hypotheses, conceptual foundations, and other prior aspects of the study. Such awareness may make coders biased, either intentionally or not, in their coding decisions.

Just like all best practices, of course, there is considerable variation in the degree to which such sage advice is actually put into practice. Lovejoy, Watson, Lacy, and Riffe (2016) studied randomly selected issues of three major Communication journals spanning 30 years and identified 672 content analyses. Among those content analyses, "Only 24.9% of all study articles

reported a reliability coefficient for each variable" (p. 1148). Yet, in two of the three journals examined, the number of published content analyses reporting a reliability coefficient for each variable increased significantly over time. Researchers are getting better, therefore, at meeting the best practice of reporting ICR variable by variable in those journals.

Failure to achieve sufficient intercoder reliability can be attributed either to issues with the coding or issues with the coders. If the issues are with the coding, of course, the researcher can refine, revise, or otherwise adjust the operational definitions of the variables in the coding scheme and then try again to establish intercoder reliability. One such adjustment might be reducing the number of categories used to code a variable. Here you may recall the point we made in the beginning of the chapter about how it is easier for multiple coders to agree that something is 1 = not violent at all, 2 = somewhat violent, or 3 = violent compared to 1 = not violent at all, 2 = a bit violent, 3 = moderately violent, 4 = quite violent, 5 = very violent. If the researcher has operationalized the variable with five options but is having trouble reaching an acceptable level of ICR, those five options can be collapsed into three and the researcher can try again to see if coders can now reliably agree. In rare cases, variables may have to be dropped entirely if even multiple attempts at operationalization still result in lack of coder agreement. Sometimes coders themselves may not take sufficient time or care with the coding or may develop fatigue while performing the coding, resulting in low intercoder reliability. Or perhaps multiple coders have differing understandings of concepts and variables due to differing cultural backgrounds. Additional training is likely needed in these situations, and, once again, in rare circumstances, perhaps a coder will need to be dropped from the project.

Research in Action

Dr. Martha Lauzen is founder and executive director of the Center for the Study of Women in Television and Film and professor in the Television, Film, and New Media program at San Diego State University. The Center for the Study of Women in Television and Film produces *Boxed In*, an annual report that studies links between the number of women working in key positions in the production of television content (as producers, directors, writers, etc.) and the ways in which women are depicted on TV. The Center also produces a report called *It's a Man's (Celluloid) World* that does the same for film.

We believe the work of the Center for the Study of Women in Television and Film is an excellent example of the use of quantitative methods for social justice for two key (and interrelated) reasons.

First, Dr. Lauzen and her colleagues take extra measures to connect the observations of media content they make through content analysis to the range of gender identities of those who are in key decision-making roles that help to shape that content. To make TV and film gender depictions more just and equitable, there is a need for more gender diversity among the people who create TV and film content. The quantitative data produced by Dr. Lauzen and colleagues show how depictions often fall short of being just and equitable when behind-the-scenes decision makers are predominantly cisgender men.

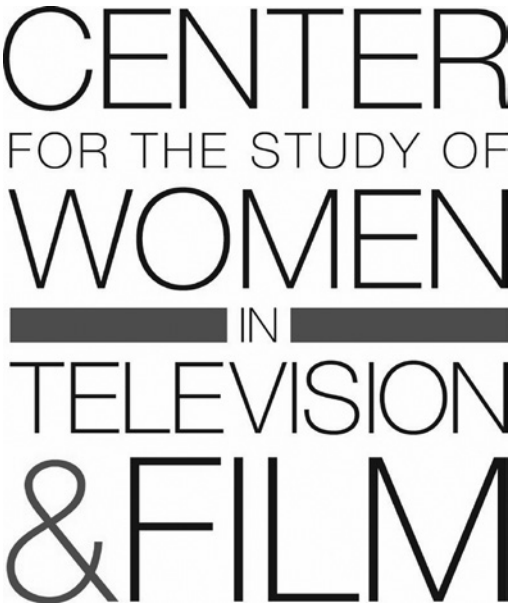


Figure 7.6 Logo of the Center for the Study of Women in Television and Film
Source: Stephen Warren

Second, the ability for the data produced by quantitative researchers to be put into the hands of those who can make change is also vitally important. The Center for the Study of Women in Television and Film has advisory board members that include a number of Hollywood creative professionals, including Mara Brock Akil (a television writer and producer), Allison Anders (a film and television writer and director), Cari Beauchamp (an author and documentary producer), Madelyn Hammond (the president of a marketing company specializing in entertainment media), Kathy Najimy (an actress, writer, producer, director, and activist), Robin Swicord (a writer, director, and producer), and Nia Vardalos (a writer, producer, and actor). By cultivating and maintaining relationships with media industry professionals, Dr. Lauzen and colleagues have a direct channel for making change.

The Center's website uses language that relates directly to the idea we have put forth in this book about the power of numbers: "Through its research and programs, the Center provides the raw material necessary to change the behind-the-scenes and on-screen gender dynamics in the film and television industries, integrating more women into vitally important storytelling roles."

https://womenintvfilm.sdsu.edu/.

Digital and Interactive Media

Digital and interactive media forms like the internet, social media, and video games represent both opportunities and challenges for content analysis. One challenge is the **dynamic nature** of digital and interactive media. How can one claim to say something reliable about media content if that content changes based on the ways in which users interface with it? Video games are a prime example of interactive media that can be difficult to sustain reliable systematic content analysis (Schmierbach, 2009). If two people play *Fortnite* for twenty minutes each, for instance, they will see different content depending on how they navigate their avatar in the virtual world.

Researchers have undertaken various strategies to attempt to address this problem when applying content analysis methodology to interactive game content. One strategy is to recruit multiple people to play the game and record their gameplay to code content features. Another is to study recorded game play sampled from YouTube or other online videos. Yet even these analyses produce observations that are shaped by the decisions of the players themselves. Nonetheless, these are feasible options that certainly show *some* of what is likely to be encountered in the game.

The **massive amounts of data** produced by social media and other information sources in the digital age also pose particular opportunities and obstacles for scholars interested in the systematic documentation of communication content. YouTube is, of course, a prime contemporary outlet for blogs, web video, and other user-produced content. In 2015, YouTube CEO Susan Wojcicki reported that an estimated 400 videos are uploaded to YouTube every minute (Brouwer, 2015). Given its rapidly shifting nature, therefore, researchers studying YouTube content, regardless of the methods they use and the size of their sample, can take only a tiny and fleeting snapshot of the entire landscape. Nonetheless, a cursory glance through recently published articles shows a number of content analyses of YouTube content, ranging from those pertaining to health topics such as obesity (Yoo & Kim, 2012) or organ transplants (Tian, 2010), to those addressing issues in the representation of Native Americans (Kopacz & Lawton, 2013). Some of these studies examine the content features of YouTube videos themselves, whereas others also study the comments associated with those videos.

The age of "big data" generated by Facebook, Twitter, and other sources and the corresponding development of **computer algorithms** to both capture and code those data are important developments. Computers can be programmed to (1) capture content coming from the "firehose" of big data, (2) identify the occurrence (or co-occurrence) of particular words and phrases within huge stores of data, and (3) make inferences based on the features of the content about underlying factors such as the opinions and feelings expressed in the content or the power dynamics or personality traits of the people who produced the data (Grimmer & Stewart, 2013; Lacy, Watson, Riffe, & Lovejoy, 2015; Zamith & Lewis, 2015). **Automated content analysis** is an increasingly popular approach to the study of communication content.

There are at least three main approaches used in automated coding of communication content to date. For some automated coding, researchers use a **dictionary-based approach**—employing predefined dictionaries containing words and phrases that belong to different linguistic or topical categories—to allow the computer to identify the presence of particular features of content. The widely used Linguistic Inquiry and Word Count (LIWC) program (Pennebaker, Boyd, Jordan, & Blackburn, 2015) includes approximately 90 word categories that connote emotional tones, sentiment types, topics, and other information. Performing a

"sentiment analysis" on social media data, for instance, automatically looks for positively and negatively valanced words in the communication content to determine whether the social media users who produced that data discussed a topic positively or negatively. LIWC is able to scan text and make inferences from the text as to the motives, personality traits, power status, and identities of the person who created the text. Although there are many fruitful applications of LWIC or other dictionary-based programs, they are somewhat limited in their ability to reflect the nuances of the entire set of meanings contained in the texts.

The second approach, **supervised content analysis**, uses supervised machine learning to train computers to recognize patterns in content based on learning from data that have already been classified into patterns (Su et al., 2017). In this type of computational approach, researchers develop a codebook just as they would in a conventional content analysis and human coders manually code data. The results from the manual coding are used to train computers to perform the coding. This approach has been applied to analyses studying sentiments expressed in communication content, frames used in news content, and other topics.

A third approach is **unsupervised automated content analysis**, in which computers are not trained with predefined rules, dictionaries, or codebooks but rather look inductively for semantic patterns to identify underlying structures of content. Based on the assumption that words or phrases that are close to one another in meaning tend to appear close together in text, *semantic network approaches* determine whether words co-occur (or study how closely words appear in proximity to one another) within a set of content. A variation on this approach studies whether different concepts are used in similar contexts or in similar ways (such as that they co-occur with other words) regardless of whether they appear in close proximity to one another (Arendt & Karadas, 2017). Also within this category, researchers use *topic modeling approaches* to discover underlying themes, relationships, and meanings within texts through the discovery of similar semantic structures and patterns contained within those texts.

In order to make these computational approaches more concrete, let's take a closer look at an example. Arendt and Karadas (2017) used a technique called Contrast Analysis of Semantic Similarity (or CASS, Holtzman, Schott, Jones, Balota, & Yarkoni, 2011) to study a social justice-related topic, whether newspaper coverage makes associations between Muslims and violence or terror. To conduct their study, the authors gathered every news article within a particular range of dates published in any German newspaper archived in the LexisNexis database that contained the words *Islam*, or *Christianity*, or both, resulting in articles that totaled over 2.5 million words. Applying the automated coding CASS approach, Arendt and Karadas' (2017) study "revealed substantial mediated associations between Islam-related concepts and violence (e.g., 'Koran + violence'), terror (e.g., 'Islam + terror'), dehumanization (e.g., 'Muslims + animal-related terms'), and general negativity (valence)" (p. 107). Within these millions of words, the words *Muslim*, *Islam*, *Koran*, *mosque*, and *imam* were associated with violence, terror, and negatively valenced words more than were the words *Christianity*, *Christian*, *Bible*, *church*, or *priest*.

Critiques of Big Data Analysis and Critical Approaches to Datafication

At the same time that digital technologies and big data analytics represent opportunities for researchers as well as new affordances for users, there are concerns about living in an age in which businesses, governments, and other institutions are increasingly engaging in "datafication." So many aspects of daily life are now turned into data, and that data is often tracked, stored, monitored, and used not just for research but for commercial and/or surveillance

Figure 7.7 Big data analysis

Source: https://www.shutterstock.com/image-vector/set-flat-line-color-banners-design-305497067

purposes. The rising role of big data analytics has been the subject of critique on both methodological and ethical grounds.

Using automated or computational approaches to research, for instance, has been critiqued on two main points: the validity of the data derived and the privacy of users' data. The question of how valid findings from automated coding may be—how well they reflect, accurately and thoroughly, the full range of meanings contained in communication content—is a common methodological critique. Automated coding is more reliable than human coding as well as less time-consuming. Indeed, programmed to apply a set of rules for classifying content to a set of messages, the computer will do so quickly and will do so the same way every time, making it 100% reliable. Yet, there are certainly limits to the validity of how and what computers can code, leading many experts to suggest that, at least to date, they cannot fully replace the nuanced, complex reasoning that human coders can devote to content analysis (Grimmer & Stewart, 2013; Lacy et al., 2015; Zamith & Lewis, 2015). Some research combines computational approaches with traditional qualitative or quantitative human coding to ensure that the context and interpretation of messages circulated via social media are better understood. Sarah J. Jackson and Brooke Foucault-Welles (2016), for instance, used both social network analysis and discourse analysis to study the ways in which messages circulated via Twitter following the death of Michael Brown, the Black man shot and killed by a police officer in Ferguson, Missouri. They discuss their collaborative research in the Scholar Spotlight in Chapter 10.

Second, as we mentioned at the beginning of this chapter, critique has emerged about the privacy of data analyzed using automated coding approaches. Typically, the social media or other internet users whose data are examined using computational approaches have not given consent for their data to be the subject of research, even if they have posted those data to public platforms. Furthermore, although researchers typically take measures to protect the anonymity of social networking users whose data are examined, there have been breaches associated with data of this type, in which people's identities, information, or accounts have

been exposed. With technology advancing in ways that are likely to facilitate the gathering of big data through automated means, concerns about how to collect and analyze data ethically will continue to be important.

Scholars in **critical data studies** are concerned with the ways in which big data and the processes and practices of datafication can be used to reinforce rather than dismantle social inequalities (Boyd & Crawford, 2012; Crawford, Gray, & Miltner, 2014). Those engaged in critical data studies are asking important questions about whose data are being used and for what purposes, and, more generally, who stands to benefit and who stands to lose in datafication. They remind us that even if computers can be 100% reliable in describing data, the data itself is never neutral but rather is produced in particular contexts with particular social, economic, and political conditions. Among the social justice principles interrogated in critical data studies are:

- *Privacy and surveillance*. Just by living in a digital society, we are subject to scrutiny and study from the digital footprints we leave in our daily interactions with technology (Lyon, 2018). The potential for surveillance and loss of privacy to lead to harm is more likely among more vulnerable groups (Gangadharan, 2017).
- *Inequality and discrimination*. There are power imbalances between the masses of people who produce big data and the small groups who control and use big data. In the book, *Algorithms of oppression: How search engines reinforce racism* (2018), for instance, Safiya Umoja Noble discusses how online searches are optimized by those with both the technical skill and the economic means to do so, leaving the less powerful further disadvantaged. Predictive policing, using algorithms to predict where crime may occur, is another example of a computational practice that has been critiqued for fueling racism and classism.

In fact, issues of privacy and surveillance and inequality and discrimination are intertwined. Underlying each are the capitalist logics embedded in datafication that can both exclude and exploit (Couldry & Mejias, 2019). Virginia Eubanks' (2018) book, *Automating inequality: How high-tech tools profile, police, and punish the poor*, for example, shows the ways in which poor people are surveilled and harmed when decisions about welfare, child protection, and public housing are made through the use of algorithms.

The issues of ethics and the social justice principles raised in critical data studies are important for researchers using algorithmic and computational approaches in their research as well as for all researchers and citizens, more generally. Being aware of and responsive to these issues is precisely the sort of critical consciousness that we are encouraging in this book. Researchers using computational approaches to study communication content have the capacity to shed light on the ways that digital media have failed to produce a more just and equitable society. They can also help facilitate data activism efforts that empower marginalized groups using the same tools.

Summary

In this chapter, we have outlined the ways in which content analyses are designed and carried out, pointed to the purposes of using this research method, and highlighted the strengths and weaknesses of content analysis as a research tool. As with other quantitative methods, validity and reliability are the twin goals, and special attention must be devoted to sampling and the measurement of concepts and variables. Unique to content analysis research is the need to establish acceptable levels of agreement among multiple coders. Additional concerns that take on particular importance in content analysis have been

introduced in this chapter, as well, such as how units of analysis are determined and where and how to access communication content.

Although we have focused on traditional coding carried out by humans, we have seen that computer learning and algorithms are used in some studies of communication content, and we have touched more generally upon the ways that interactive media forms, overall, have provided challenges and opportunities for the content analyst. Indeed, the broad technological changes that allow for both the production of big data and the use of machine learning and algorithmic coding to study big data pose ongoing issues related to unequal access and differential harm stemming from loss of privacy and enhanced surveillance.

Content analysis can expose the limits of the representation of social groups, issues, and events in media or other communication content. Conversely, content analysis can shine light on positive depictions and progressive developments in the ways that topics, events, and people are represented. With carefully constructed samples designed to generalize to the population from which they are selected, thoughtful conceptualization and operationalization of concepts, and rigorous testing of intercoder reliability, there is strong potential for this method to be used toward a more just and equitable society.

Discussion Questions and Activities

1. What topic related to social justice, diversity, and/or inclusion do you think would be good to study using content analysis research? Why?
2. Come up with two or three variables that you could study using content analysis methodology, identifying conceptual definitions for each. Next, determine how you would operationally define each of the variables. To develop operational definitions, imagine you are giving detailed instructions to coders regarding how to code the variables.
3. Do some exploring online to find electronic databases, archives, or other resources you might use to access communication content in order to perform a content analysis study. What did you find? What types of content analysis questions might you be able to explore within that content?
4. How do you think content analysis can be used to work toward social justice? What are the opportunities of as well as the barriers to doing so?

References

Anderson, J. A. (2012). *Media research methods: Understanding metric and interpretive approaches*. Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage.

Arendt, F., & Karadas, N. (2017). Content analysis of mediated associations: An automated text-analytic approach. *Communication Methods and Measures*, *11*, 105–120.

Bond, B. J., Miller, B., & Stevens Aubrey, J. (2019). Sexual references and consequences for heterosexual, lesbian, gay, and bisexual characters on television: A comparison content analysis. *Mass Communication & Society*, *22*, 72–95. doi:10.1080/15205436.2018.1489058

Boyd, D., & Crawford, K. (2012). Critical questions for big data. *Information, Communication & Society*, *15*(5), 662–679. http://doi.org/10.1080/1369118X.2012.678878

Brouwer, B. (2015, July 25). YouTube now gets over 400 hours of content uploaded every minute. *Tubefilter*. Retrieved March 1, 2019, from www.tubefilter.com/2015/07/26/youtube-400-hours-content-every-minute/

Couldry, N., & Mejias, U. A. (2019). Data colonialism: Rethinking big data's relation to the contemporary subject. *Television & New Media*, *20*(4), 336–349.

Crawford, K., Gray, M. L., & Miltner, K. (2014). Critiquing big data: Politics, ethics, epistemology. *International Journal of Communication*, *8*, 1663–1672. Retrieved from http://ijoc.org/index.php/ijoc/article/view/2167/1164

Eubanks, V. (2018). *Automating inequality: How high-tech tools profile, police, and punish the poor*. New York: St. Martin's Press.

Frey, L. R., & Carragee, K. M. (2007). *Communication activism*. Cresskill, NJ: Hampton Press.

Gangadharan, S. P. (2017). The downside of digital inclusion: Expectations and experiences of privacy and surveillance among marginal internet users. *New Media and Society*, *19*(4), 597–615. doi:10.1177/1461444815614053

Glascock, J., & Preston-Schreck, C. (2018). Verbal aggression, race, and sex on reality TV: Is this really the way it is? *Journal of Broadcasting & Electronic Media*, *62*, 427–444. doi:10.1080/08838151.2018.1451859

Grimmer, J., & Stewart, B. M. (2013). Text as data: The promise and pitfalls of automatic content analysis methods for political texts. *Political Analysis*, *21*(3), 267–297. doi:10.1093/pan/mps028

Hayes, A. F., & Krippendorff, K. (2007). Answering the call for a standard reliability measure for coding data. *Communication Methods and Measures*, *1*, 77–89.

Holtzman, N. S., Schott, J. P., Jones, M. N., Balota, D. A., & Yarkoni, T. (2011). Exploring media bias with semantic analysis tools: Validation of the Contrast Analysis of Semantic Similarity (CASS). *Behavior Research Methods*, *43*(1), 193–200. doi:10.3758/s13428-010-0026-z

Jackson, S. J., & Foucault-Welles, B. (2016). #Ferguson is everywhere: Initiators in emerging counter-public networks. *Information, Communication & Society*, *19*, 397–418. https://doi.org/10.1080/1369118X.2015.1106571

Klein, H., & Shiffman, K. F. (2006). Race-related content of animated cartoons. *Howard Journal of Communications*, *17*, 163–182. doi:10.1080/10646170600829493

Kopacz, M. A., & Lawton, B. L. (2013). Talking about the YouTube Indians: Images of native Americans and viewer comments on a viral video site. *Howard Journal of Communications*, *24*(1), 17–37.

Krippendorff, K. (2013). *Content analysis: An introduction to its methodology* (3rd ed.). Los Angeles, CA: Sage.

Lacy, S., Watson, B. R., Riffe, D., & Lovejoy, J. (2015). Issues and best practices in content analysis. *Journalism & Mass Communication Quarterly*, *92*(4), 791–811.

Lin, L. I. K. (1989). A concordance correlation coefficient to evaluate reproducibility. *Biometrics*, *45*, 255–268.

Lovejoy, J., Watson, B. R., Lacy, S., & Riffe, D. (2016). Three decades of reliability in communication content analyses: Reporting of reliability statistics and coefficient levels in three top journals. *Journalism and Mass Communication Quarterly*, *93*, 1135–1139. doi:10.1177/1077699016644558

Lynch, T., Tompkins, J. E., van Driel, I. I., & Fritz, N. (2016). Sexy, strong, and secondary: A content analysis of female characters in video games across 31 years. *Journal of Communication*, *66*, 564–584. doi:10.1111/jcom.12237

Lyon, D. (2018). *The culture of surveillance: Watching as a way of life*. Cambridge, UK: Polity Press.

Mastro, D. E., & Figueroa-Caballero, A. (2018). Measuring extremes: A quantitative content analysis of primetime TV depictions of body type. *Journal of Broadcasting & Electronic Media*, *62*, 320–336. doi:10.1080/08838151.2018.1451853

Mastro, D. E., & Stern, S. R. (2003). Representations of race in television commercials: A content analysis of prime-time television advertising. *Journal of Broadcasting and Electronic Media*, *47*, 638–647. doi:10.1207/s15506878jobem4704_9

Neuendorf, K. (2017). *The content analysis guidebook* (2nd ed.). Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage.

Noble, S. U. (2018). *Algorithms of oppression: How search engines reinforce racism*. New York: New York University Press.

Pennebaker, J. W., Boyd, R. L., Jordan, K., & Blackburn, K. (2015). *The development and psychometric properties of LIWC2015*. Austin, TX: University of Texas at Austin.

Riffe, D., Lacy, S., & Fico, F. (2005). *Analyzing media messages: Using quantitative content analysis in research* (2nd ed.). New York: Psychology Press.

Riffe, D., Lacy, S., Watson, B. R., & Fico, F. (2019). *Analyzing media messages: Using quantitative content analysis in research* (4th ed.). New York: Routledge.

Scharrer, E. (2002). An "improbable leap:" A content analysis of newspaper coverage of Hillary Clinton's transition from first lady to Senate candidate. *Journalism Studies*, *3*(3), 393–406.

Scharrer, E. (2012). More than just the facts? Portrayals of masculinity in police and detective programs over time. *Howard Journal of Communications*, *23*, 88–109. doi:10.1080/10646175.2012.641882

Scharrer, E., Kim, D. D., Lin, K., & Liu, Z. (2006). Working hard or hardly working? Gender, humor, and the performance of domestic chores in television commercials. *Mass Communication & Society*, *9*(2), 215–238.

Scharrer, E., Warren, S., Grimshaw, E., Kamau, G., Cho, S., Reijven, M., & Zhang, C. (2020). Disparaged dads? A content analysis of depictions of fathers in U.S. sitcoms over time. *Psychology of Popular Media*. Advance online publication. https://doi.org/10.1037/ppm0000289.

Schmierbach, M. (2009). Content analysis of video games: Challenges and potential solutions. *Communication Methods and Measures*, *3*(3), 147–172.

Smith, S. L., Choueiti, M., Prescott, A., & Pieper, K. (2012). *Gender roles & occupations: A look at character attributes and job-related aspirations in film and television*. Geena Davis Institute on Gender in Media website. Retrieved from http://seejane.org/wp-content/ uploads/full-study-gender-roles-and-occupations-v2.pdf

Su, L. Y. F., Cacciatore, M. A., Liang, X., Brossard, D., Scheufele, D. A., & Xenos, M. A. (2017). Analyzing public sentiments online: Combining human-and computer-based content analysis. *Information, Communication & Society*, *20*(3), 406–427.

Tian, Y. (2010). Organ donation on web 2.0: Content and audience analysis of organ donation videos on YouTube. *Health Communication*, *25*, 238–246.

Waddell, T. F., Ivory, J. D., Conde, R., Long, C., & McDonnell, R. (2014). White man's virtual world: A systematic content analysis of gender and race in massively multiplayer online games. *Journal of Virtual Worlds Research*, 7, 1–14. doi:10.4101/jvwr.v7i2.7096

Yoo, J. H., & Kim, J. (2012). Obesity in the new media: A content analysis of obesity videos on YouTube. *Health Communication*, *27*(1), 86–97.

Zamith, R., & Lewis, S. C. (2015). Content analysis and the algorithmic coder: What computational social science means for traditional modes of media analysis. *The Annals of the American Academy of Political and Social Science*, *659*(1), 307–318.

8 Calculations and Complexity

As we have established, quantitative researchers collect data in the form of numbers. Once data are collected, researchers explore the values and properties of the data and examine numerical relationships within the data. **Statistical analysis** is used to identify numerical patterns and calculate relationships between and among variables, applying mathematical principles and procedures to analyze and interpret what the data suggest about the phenomenon being studied.

In many ways, the statistical analysis of quantitative data is rather straightforward. **Parsimony** is a goal of quantitative research, which means that statistical analyses should provide the simplest possible approach that offers the best explanation of the phenomenon being investigated. There are established sets of rules and processes laid out for quantitative researchers to guide them in summarizing the features of the data that they have collected. There are widely accepted standards on which to base interpretations of whether the patterns discovered should be considered trustworthy contributions to knowledge. Computer programs take on the burden of the calculations themselves, leaving the researcher to simply input the data, select specific statistical tests, and make sense of the results. In the next chapter, we will show you how to run statistical analyses and interpret output from SPSS, Statistical Package for Social Sciences, a commonly used tool.

Statistics are a vitally important way to understand the world and to intervene in injustices and inequalities. Statistics are powerful tools for those working toward social justice, as they use scientific and mathematical processes to make broad and defensible claims. The scientific and mathematical techniques behind statistical analysis give those claims authority. And the broadness of the claims—statistics are not about one but instead are about many—show just how pervasive a phenomenon is. Claims made through statistical analysis are not easy to dismiss, given these properties.

Yet, there are complexities involved, as well. As we have discussed in Chapter 1, human behavior, societal conditions, and cultural norms, often the foci of quantitative Communication researchers, are incredibly complex. Statistical relationships may appear to give a clear-cut answer to a research question that explores patterns within this broad, multifaceted, and sometimes quite complex backdrop. Yet, although they certainly tell us something of value, there is inevitably more to the story than the conclusions reached through statistical analysis of quantitative data. In fact, it is crucial to remember that there are humans behind statistics—human experiences, human views, human hopes, and sometimes human pain. In studying a social issue or topic using the tools of statistical analysis, perhaps we can examine the phenomenon scientifically and see aspects of the phenomenon we might otherwise miss. But we must bring ethics and compassion to this work, as well.

We have called this chapter "Calculations and Complexity" to convey the main processes and principles used to analyze and interpret quantitative data—the "calculations"—while still

keeping in mind the multifaceted human phenomena underlying those calculations—the "complexity." Quantitative researchers must do their best to paint a picture of the phenomenon they are studying that is as thorough and complete as possible in addition to being accurate and credible. Recalling the twin goals of validity and reliability, quantitative researchers must simultaneously allow for nuance and meaning even as they test for and communicate broad patterns within a relatively large data set. Indeed, quantitative researchers guided by a concern for social justice have a unique responsibility to honor the differences among the people providing data or the texts being studied and help make clear the context in which the data are gathered and interpreted.

Individual Data Points Aggregated Together

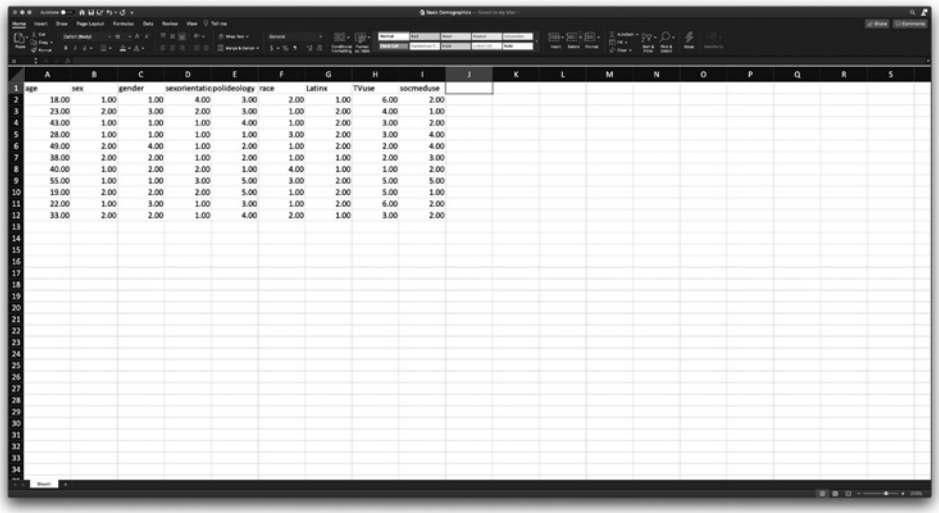
Typically (but not always) in quantitative research, data are drawn *individually* (from each person in a survey or experiment, or each bit of communication content in a content analysis) and then **aggregated**—combined to form groups of individual data points about whom/which conclusions are drawn. Aggregation is akin to providing data in summary form, and summarizing is necessary when you are dealing with large data sets, as is typically the case in quantitative research. We introduced this idea in Chapter 1.

With survey methodology, for instance, rather than reporting on each individual's answer to each individual item on the questionnaire, we aggregate or combine those answers to simplify the data and find patterns. With experiments, the members of the control group typically form an aggregate, as do members of the treatment group, to facilitate comparisons between the two. Within those control and treatment groups, we might also examine **subgroups**, as you saw in Chapter 6. With content analysis, data can be aggregated in many different ways, such as by grouping individual observations of texts by genre, by topic, by date, or by some other organizing principle.

In a quantitative study, it is impractical and inadvisable to report the exact responses of each of the many research participants (or, in the case of content analysis, each of the many observations of texts) as the findings. Therefore, we use data aggregated from individual values to report patterns. Aggregation is a defensible and even inevitable aspect of quantitative research. In communicating the results of a study, the researcher *must* summarize findings, finding ways of reducing the raw data into its most important features. This is the case in nearly any study, but it is especially necessary for quantitative research since the sample sizes tend to be larger than in qualitative research.

Figure 8.1 is an example of what a raw data file might look like in an Excel spreadsheet, with just 11 fictional research participants. Recall that to subject data to statistical analysis, all data have to be numerical and in a format that can be read by a computer, which is reflected in this Excel file. Yet, rows and rows of data like these would be almost impossible to make sense of without some sort of summary and interpretation of that summary. The researcher has to decide how to simplify and summarize rather than merely presenting the raw data as the study's results. In fact, most studies have many more variables compared to this example (the ones in the current example can be found in the column positions) and many more research participants. So, the raw data in most studies are likely to be even less understandable on their own than this example here.

Aggregation is also a huge strength of quantitative research. Recall from Chapter 4 that the purpose of quantitative inquiry is to identify patterns that are larger than a single experience or that are broadly representative of a whole host of individuals or texts. In order to make these more far-reaching observations that are vital to our understanding of the world around us, we must engage in aggregation. Observations determined from an aggregate cannot be



	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O	P	Q	R	S
1	age	sex	gender	sexorientatic	polideology	race	Latinx	TVuse	socmeduse										
2	18.00	1.00	1.00	4.00	3.00	2.00	1.00	6.00	2.00										
3	23.00	2.00	3.00	2.00	3.00	1.00	2.00	4.00	1.00										
4	43.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	4.00	1.00	2.00	3.00	2.00										
5	28.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	3.00	2.00	3.00	4.00										
6	49.00	2.00	4.00	1.00	2.00	1.00	2.00	2.00	4.00										
7	38.00	2.00	2.00	1.00	2.00	1.00	1.00	2.00	3.00										
8	40.00	1.00	2.00	2.00	1.00	4.00	1.00	1.00	2.00										
9	55.00	1.00	1.00	3.00	5.00	3.00	2.00	5.00	5.00										
10	19.00	2.00	2.00	2.00	5.00	1.00	2.00	5.00	1.00										
11	22.00	1.00	3.00	1.00	3.00	1.00	2.00	6.00	2.00										
12	33.00	2.00	2.00	1.00	4.00	2.00	1.00	3.00	2.00										

Figure 8.1 Raw data file

Source: Stephen Warren

written off as "just one person's opinion" or "just a few cherry-picked examples." Rather, such observations are larger in size and scope and—especially if the sample is carefully created, as we learned in Chapter 4—they carry with them a degree of authority in representing broad populations.

Yet, by focusing on aggregates, we also run the risk of failing to notice cases that run counter to the primary patterns identified in the data. Imagine an experiment in which subgroups defined by the self-reported gender identity of the participant are examined, for instance. If women and men in the treatment group do, indeed, differ in their response to the experimental stimulus, this difference is based on the *aggregation* of the sample by gender. Yet, it is almost guaranteed that not every woman differed from every man in the experiment. Rather, the women and the men differed in general, as groups. Therefore, the decision to aggregate by gender identity allows us to know about differences between groups but not necessarily within groups. In other words, our example would illuminate differences between (or among, if there are more than two groups) groups defined by gender identity. But it would take a different decision about how to aggregate in order to shed light on differences within the group of self-identified men or within the group of self-identified women. Perhaps, for instance, you would want to aggregate the self-identified men by race to now test for differences across men with different racial identities. Or you might want to aggregate the self-identified women by sexual identity to now test for differences across women with different sexual identities. This technique will get you closer to an intersectional approach to understanding identity that we discussed as an important framework in social justice research.

If one is concerned with voice, inclusion, and power, the use of the aggregate rather than the individual as the focus of analysis can also reinforce dominant positions, even if that is not the intention of the researcher. In other words, if quantitative research focuses on the majority—through reporting, for instance, that 73% of respondents on a given college campus have not experienced discrimination, we may lose track of the 27% who have. Their experiences

are not the majority but in this case are likely to be the most important aspect of the phenomenon to bring to light through the research.

So, how do you reconcile the use of aggregation and identification of general patterns as defining features of quantitative research while also making sure you are attending to the richness and nuance of human experience and human difference? First, the researcher must maintain curiosity and openness about the people or texts being studied. When there is an indication of a pattern such as a gender difference in an experiment, for instance, the researcher should ask why that is the case, or for whom it is the case, or under what conditions is that the case. The researcher can design a follow-up study to that original experiment that further explores the gender difference found, placing the study of the gender identity of participants at the center of the analysis. If that follow-up study is quantitative, it will still use aggregated groups to identify patterns—again, such is the stuff of quantitative research. Yet, that new study will add depth to our understanding of the topic. Furthermore, relying on research participants who enjoy dominant positions in society is likely to be insufficient and perhaps even problematic in terms of further marginalizing or minoritizing groups. As explained in Chapter 4, more strategic sampling strategies are likely to be needed to ensure that small or minoritized groups are given voice in quantitative research.

The knowledge that is gathered in quantitative research is incremental, with each new finding and each new study building on the last. We can learn a great deal from different aggregates of people and texts, and each new inquiry furthers the richness of our understanding. As other "quantitative criticalists" have pointed out (and as discussed in Chapter 1), bringing quantitative research methods to social justice efforts will rest on the desire of the researcher to imbue every study with meaning, context, and nuanced interpretation.

Spotlight Scholar: Dr. Dana Mastro

Dana Mastro (PhD, Michigan State University) is Professor in the Department of Communication at the University of California Santa Barbara, where she studies media and racial and ethnic stereotyping. Dr. Mastro researches patterns in media content pertaining to the representation of racial and ethnic minorities as well as the influence of media on views of self and others among both non-dominant (mostly Latinx) and majority White groups. The author of numerous influential research articles, Dr. Mastro was named a fellow of the International Communication Association in 2018. She is also the former chair of the Mass Communication division of the National Communication Association and the recipient of a 2019 Distinguished Teaching Award at her university.

Q: What role do you think statistics can have in promoting social justice efforts? Do you think statistics are an important way to work toward social change? If so, why?

Dr. Mastro: If the goal of social justice efforts is not only to address disparities in access to fundamental human rights and social privileges but also to confront inequities in terms of opportunity to achieve these ends, then statistics are an essential partner in such efforts. Statistics give us the context to understand the scope and severity of human events and experiences. They allow us to identify inequality in resources, power, and representation as well the obstacles to achieving parity in

Figure 8.2 Scholar Spotlight: Dr. Dana Mastro

these outcomes. Perhaps most importantly, they are instrumental in developing strategies to address these issues.

Q: What do you think are the limits or challenges of using statistical analysis as a means of engaging in social justice efforts? Are there any pitfalls that researchers should avoid?

Dr. Mastro: One pitfall to the use of statistics in social justice and advocacy efforts is the potential to lose sight of the individuals and experiences represented in these numbers. To highlight just two examples: It is necessary to create categories when using statistics, and it is common and even essential to "drop" or "remove" outliers to move forward with valid statistical analyses. In both cases, best practices in statistics can result in losing sight of social context, social complexity, and meaningful human conditions. This means that researchers must be vigilant in giving voice to who and what their statistics represent (and fail to represent).

Q: Your own work is on media and racial/ethnic stereotyping. Why do you use quantitative methods/statistical analysis to study those topics? What do you think those quantitative and statistical tools bring?

Dr. Mastro: My orientation toward quantitative approaches stems from my belief that demonstrating causal links between media use and race-related outcomes strengthens efforts aimed at social, institutional, and policy change. My personal identity and experiences throughout my life called attention to these relationships and prompted my desire to study these issues. Using quantitative approaches allows for the identification of systematic patterns in the representations of diverse groups in the media and gives us the ability to examine how these characterizations affect

outcomes (both favorable and unfavorable), ranging from cognitions and emotions to policy preferences to behaviors toward different groups in society.

Q: Learning statistics can be difficult. What advice would you give to a graduate student in an Introduction to Quantitative Research Methods course who is encountering statistics for the first time?

Dr. Mastro: From my perspective, statistics are best learned when being applied to issues about which we are invested and passionate. This helps bring clarity to techniques and processes that can otherwise seem abstract and inaccessible. In other words, statistics become demystified when they illuminate the phenomenon we care about as scholars. That said, the only way to truly learn statistics is to use statistics, so taking every opportunity to work with multiple faculty and collaborators is essential to solidifying and expanding one's knowledge and ability.

Different Types of Statistics

Before we begin a discussion of statistical analyses that you may perform on the data you have gathered in a quantitative research project to summarize your findings, which is the subject of Chapter 9, it is necessary first to define key terms. The word **statistics** has multiple meanings. It is used to describe the subfield of mathematics that researchers use to make sense of numerical data. As we discovered in Chapter 4, the word also implies that the researcher has drawn a sample from a population and is summarizing the properties of and relationships between variables within that sample. (Recall that a sample statistic is used to estimate a population parameter.) The use we are referencing in this section of the chapter is statistics as "numerical summaries of data obtained by measurement and computation" (Vogt, 1999, p. 278).

Univariate statistics examine the values of one variable at a time. For example, if you collect information about respondents' age in a survey, when it comes time to write up your findings, you could report on just that variable alone by stating the average age of the people who responded to the survey. **Bivariate statistics** examine relationships between two variables. Are younger survey respondents more likely to express a desire for a more diverse cast of characters in a video game compared to older respondents? To answer that question with data gathered in a quantitative study, you would see whether respondents' age is related to their opinion about the characters that appear as options when playing video games. This calls for two variables to be at play in a statistical test. Finally, **multivariate statistics** examine relationships among three or more variables. Maybe you also want to test whether respondents' use of video games, in addition to their age, might be linked to their views on the desire for a more diverse set of playable options. You now have three variables in the analysis: age, amount of video game use, and views on whether video games should have more diverse playable characters. Any time there are more than two variables at play in statistical analysis, the researcher is engaged in multivariate statistics.

Univariate analyses are used to **describe**, whereas bivariate and multivariate analyses are used to **explain**. Univariate analysis describes the properties of the values that comprise each of the variables in the study. Looking at one variable at a time cannot allow the researcher to know whether or how two variables relate to each other. To test that, the researcher must simultaneously examine two or more variables (using bivariate or multivariate statistical analysis), so that they can determine whether scores or values on one variable help explain scores

or values on another variable. If there is a statistical relationship between age and support for same-sex marriage, for instance, knowing a research participant's age will help explain the position they are likely to hold on same-sex marriage. Or, if there is a statistical relationship between being watching a documentary film about Islamophobia and opinions on restricting travel to the U.S. for individuals from predominantly Muslim countries, then knowing whether the research participant saw the documentary will help explain the position they are likely to hold on the travel restrictions. In general, when writing up results in most quantitative studies, researchers typically begin by communicating the patterns apparent in the sample variable by variable via univariate statistical analysis before moving on to bivariate or multivariate analyses.

Hypothesis Testing

Hypotheses are the bedrock of quantitative research. As you learned in Chapter 1, quantitative research takes a deductive approach to inquiry, beginning with a theory (in this case, a prediction made in the form of a hypothesis) and then making observations to see whether that theory is supported or refuted. By nature, therefore, quantitative research requires an extensive review of existing studies and building of logic to form a basis for the predictions made in hypotheses. Contrast this approach with qualitative research methods that are more inductive, making observations first and then fitting a theory to what is observed. For this reason, then, hypotheses are necessary in quantitative research in order to organize and help structure the study.

Before expressing each hypothesis, there should be sufficient theory and literature review to lead logically and convincingly to the prediction made in the hypothesis. Yes, a hypothesis is widely known as an "educated guess," but the "educated" part of that oft-used phrase is important. A hypothesis is *not* merely a guess. It is a persuasive, logically sound prediction made on the basis of prior knowledge. The prior knowledge, in turn, is based on previously conducted studies and/or on previously existing theories.

Indeed, the idea of collecting data first without a sense of what you are predicting and why you are predicting it and then engaging in rather haphazard explorations of relationships within that data is called "fishing" in quantitative research and is frowned upon. If you fish around for relationships within the quantitative data you collect, you run the risk of finding something that relates but having no logical or reasonable explanation for *why* it relates. Quantitative research inquiries should be well grounded in theory and prior research so that the predictions made are logical and defensible.

In fact, hypotheses should be written *before* data collection. It is widely considered misleading and even unethical to collect data, perform statistical analyses to look for patterns, and then write down predictions after the fact, given that you already know whether those predictions have been supported. There are some internet sites where you can **pre-register** your hypotheses, reporting them to a third-party source, so that it is abundantly clear that they were developed before the data were collected and analyzed. Pre-registration of a study or a set of hypotheses is part of an **open science movement** that seeks to make the research process more transparent and reduce the likelihood that researchers will retrofit their predictions based on patterns they have already discovered in the data. If you are interested, you can find out more at the Center for Open Science website. We also discuss open science in more depth in Chapter 12.

A **research hypothesis** is defined as "a statement of (or conjecture about) the relationships among the variables that a researcher intends to study" (Vogt, 1999, p. 134). Because hypotheses are about how two or more variables relate, then, to test them the researcher uses

bivariate or multivariate approaches to statistical analysis. To return to a previous example, the researcher may predict that the younger the respondent, the more likely they are to endorse the view that video games should have more diverse characters. The prediction is that age will be statistically related to views of games' characters.

The **null hypothesis** is the opposite of the research hypothesis. Rather than making a prediction about what the researcher expects to find, a prediction is made about what the researcher expects *not* to find. This type of hypothesis is called a null hypothesis because the researcher expects that the data observed will nullify the prediction (Figure 8.3). As Vogt (1999) points out, "In accumulating evidence that the null hypothesis is *false*, the researcher indirectly demonstrates that the variables are related" (p. 195, emphasis in original). The null hypothesis will figure prominently in our subsequent section on statistical significance.

The relationship predicted between variables in a research hypothesis can be either nondirectional or directional. A **nondirectional research hypothesis** predicts that variables will be related, but it does not specify the direction of that relationship. For example, one group may be predicted to differ from another group on some variable of interest in a study, but the researcher does not hypothesize which group will score higher (or lower) on that variable of interest compared to the other group. Conversely, and true to its name, a **directional research hypothesis** predicts the direction of the relationship between variables, and therefore is more specific and detailed than a non-directional hypothesis. For example, rather than simply saying that amount of news consumption will be related to fear of crime, we might say as television viewing increases, fear of crime also increases. In this case, then, we have

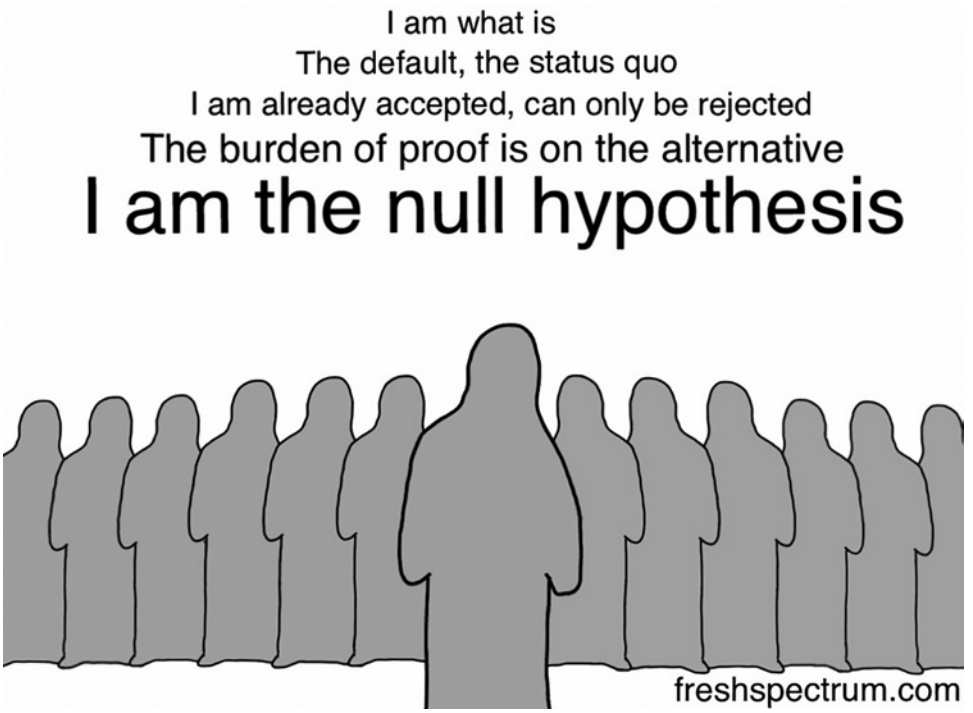

I am what is
The default, the status quo
I am already accepted, can only be rejected
The burden of proof is on the alternative
I am the null hypothesis
freshspectrum.com

Figure 8.4 The null hypothesis assumes no relationship between or among variables

Source: Cartoon drawn by Chris Lysy of FreshSpectrum.com

predicted the direction of the relationship, adding greater specificity and precision to our hypothesis. In general, if there is good reason to predict a direction for a relationship based on prior studies and the application of theory, it is preferable to use a directional research hypothesis rather than a non-directional one, since a directional hypothesis is more precise.

Here are some examples of directional hypotheses from our own research. In the latter two examples, multiple predictions are made within the same hypothesis statement and noted as a, b, and c.

- Students will show less favorable attitudes about the presence of gender stereotypes in advertising after participating in the media literacy education program compared to before (Sekarasih, Scharrer, Olson, Onut, & Lanthorn, 2019).
- Exposure to negatively framed Obama news stories as compared to positively framed stories will result in (a) greater anti-Black affect and (b) increased stereotypical perceptions of African Americans, which will (c) lead to increased symbolic racist beliefs (Ramasubramanian & Martinez, 2017).
- Ethnic media use will be positively correlated with (a) ethnic pride, (b) ethnic performance, and (c) self-esteem for Indian Americans (Ramasubramanian, Doshi, & Saleem, 2017).

Here is an example of a non-directional hypothesis:

- Violent video game exposure will correlate with the endorsement of "traditional" masculine gender roles (Blackburn & Scharrer, 2018).

The most essential consideration in the crafting of a hypothesis is that it must be **testable/falsifiable**. This means that the observations made in the study must be able to be used to either **support or refute the hypothesis**. The hypothesis must be sufficiently specific, concrete, and clear in order to be tested. Note that we usually say that the data/observations "support" rather than "prove" and "refute" rather than "disprove" hypotheses. In other words, when the data match the prediction made in a hypothesis, we say the hypothesis was supported; we do not say that the hypothesis was proven. When the data do not match the prediction made in a hypothesis, we say that hypothesis was either not supported or refuted, rather than saying the hypothesis was disproven. Researchers typically steer clear of suggesting something has been proven or disproven beyond the shadow of a doubt. Given that hypothesis testing is based on probability theory (as you will see a bit later in this chapter), even with a supported hypothesis, there is always some degree of chance that the pattern found in the sample used in the study does not exist in the wider population. That is the chief reason why quantitative researchers use such cautious language.

Research in Action

Crafting hypotheses for your research

The content

- Hypotheses are typically phrased in the form of a **statement** about the relationship between two (or sometimes more) variables. The relationship referenced in that statement will either be supported or refuted by the data.

- Example: "The perception that using social media for politics is impactful will be positively associated with using social media for political expression" (*Kwak et al., 2018*, p. 201).

- Hypotheses should have **at least two variables**. This will ensure that you have a hypothesis that is testable using bivariate or multivariate statistical analysis.
  - Example, in which the two variables at play are in bold: "The **perception that using social media for politics is impactful** will be positively associated with **using social media for political expression**" (*Kwak et al., 2018*, p. 201).
- But **do not put too many variables** in the same hypothesis! This is because you want hypotheses to either be supported or refuted by patterns you discover in the data, but not both supported and refuted simultaneously. If you have too many predictions all at once, some predictions may be supported and some refuted, leading to "partial support" for the hypothesis and potential confusion.
- The predictions expressed in hypotheses often use **one of two main forms**:
  - **Form A**: One or more group will differ from one or more other group. Or, better yet, one or more group will score higher (or lower) on some variable than one or more other group.
  - Example: "H1: Instagram users who view positive posts from strangers experience a) more negative affect and b) less positive affect than Instagram users who view neutral posts from strangers or no posts" (*de Vries, Möller, Wieringa, Eigenraam, & Hamelink., 2019*, p. 227).
  - **Form B**: Two variables will be positively associated with each other (as values in one variable increase, values in the other variable also increase) OR two variables will be negatively associated with each other (as values in one variable increase, values in the other variable decrease).
  - Example: "H1b: There will be a positive relationship between pro-attitudinal selective exposure about Latino culture and social media political expression about Latino culture" (*Velasquez, Montgomery, & Hall, 2019*, p. 151).

The format and style

- Hypothesis are **numbered** and sometimes **abbreviated** with an "H" for hypothesis, like, H1, H2, H3.
- There is **no standard or ideal number** of hypotheses that a single quantitative research study may include, but most seem to have between two and six.
- If you have multiple predictions that are closely related to one another, a useful approach is to label them H1a, H1b, H1c, etc.
  - Example: "H1a: The perception that using social media for politics is impactful will be positively associated with using social media for political expression. . . . H1b: The perception that using social media for politics is easy will be positively associated with using social media for political expression" (*Kwak et al., 2018*, pp. 201–202).
- Hypotheses should be **concise**. After you draft a hypothesis, read it back to see if there are any words you can cut out while still retaining the meaning.

- Hypotheses should be **clear**. Use the same terms to describe variables in the hypotheses that you have used elsewhere in your quantitative research paper.

Sources:

de Vries, D. A., Möller, A. M., Wieringa, M. S., Eigenraam, A. W., & Hamelink, K. (2019). Social comparison as the thief of joy: Emotional consequences of viewing strangers' Instagram posts. *Media Psychology*, *21*(2), 222–245. https://doi.org/10.1080/15213269.2016.1267647

Kwak, N., Lane, D. S., Weeks, B. E., Kim, D. H., Lee, S. S., & Bachleda, S. (2018). Perceptions of social media for politics: Testing the slacktivism hypothesis. *Human Communication Research*, *44*, 197–221. https://doi.org/10.1093/hcr/hqx008

Velasquez, A., Montgomery, G., & Hall, J. A. (2018). Ethnic minorities' social media political use: How ingroup identification, selective exposure, and collective efficacy shape social media political expression. *Journal of Computer-Mediated Communication*, *24*, 147–164. doi:10.1093/jcmc/zmz007

When there is insufficient prior knowledge to justify a prediction or when prior findings related to the prediction contradict each other, researchers use a **research question** rather than a hypothesis. The only substantive difference between a hypothesis and a research question in quantitative research is that a hypothesis appears in the form of a statement and a research question appears in the form of a question. For instance, where a hypothesis might predict that two variables *will* be related to each other, a research question asks *whether* they will be related to each other. Research questions in quantitative research should not be broad and open-ended, as might be utilized in inductive, qualitative research. Although they are phrased as a question rather than a statement, ideally, they should still be as precise and specific as possible. Here is an example in which there are actually two research questions in one, as is indicated by the notations (a) and (b). You can see that although the relationships between variables are phrased as a question in which the outcome is uncertain, the research question still spells out a specific relationship between variables to be tested in the research.

> RQ1: Does a positive relationship exist between group self-definition and social media political expression about (a) Latino culture and (b) immigration? *(Velasquez et al., 2019, p. 150).*

As discussed in Chapter 2, in the steps of a quantitative research project, hypotheses typically appear after the literature review and before the methods section. They follow the literature review because, once again, hypotheses should stem logically and convincingly from the prior studies and theories reviewed. And they precede the methods section because in methods the researcher discusses how the study is designed in order to collect data to test the hypotheses. In fact, before you begin data collection, you will want to closely compare the methods of your study to your hypotheses. Do the methods you have developed allow for your hypotheses to be tested? In other words, if you conduct your study the way your methods section indicates, will you have the data you need to either support or refute your hypotheses? Given that the

literature and theory are laid out first in quantitative research and then a detailed roadmap about how the study is designed is presented in the methods section—all before any data is collected—you can pause at this stage to ensure your predictions and proposed methodology connect well to each other.

Error, Uncertainty, and Rejection: Oh, My!

Given that (1) hypotheses are based on a certain degree of conjecture, (2) there are limitations to the samples in which hypotheses are tested (as we saw in Chapter 4), and (3) topics studied in social science are quite complex, some hypotheses will fail to be supported by the results of the statistical analyses used to test them. In other words, researchers' predictions could turn out to be off the mark. When you read published quantitative studies, you will notice that it is quite common to have one or more hypotheses rejected. If this happens to you (and it will!), do not despair. You are in good company.

A rejected hypothesis could mean that the prediction itself was flawed in some way. The researcher thought there was sufficient evidence from prior research to make a prediction about what would transpire in the specific context of a new study. Yet perhaps there was something different about the new context that meant the previous research did not apply. For instance, maybe prior research found that social media use was associated with body image disturbance among college student participants. On the basis of that prior evidence, the researcher hypothesizes in a new study that the same pattern will be found among an older, general adult population. If that hypothesis is rejected based on the findings in the data, the researcher may speculate that perhaps older individuals are less vulnerable to such a social media influence. (In yet another example of how cautious quantitative researchers typically are, once again, we would merely *speculate* about this rather than state it as true. More research that tests this new prediction—that older adults are less vulnerable to an influence of social media use on their body image—would be needed to make a bolder claim.)

On the other hand, another reason why hypotheses may not be supported is because of the error or uncertainty that inevitably takes place when you draw a sample to study from a larger population. In this case, then, the prediction was not necessarily flawed, but the sampling process resulted in the researcher failing to find the predicted relationship between or among variables. In the case of social media and body image disturbance, for instance, even if the data point to no relationship between those two variables within a sample of the general adult population, it could be the sample that is flawed (recall the content of Chapter 4) rather than the theory that formed the basis of the prediction. In other words, if we were somehow able to look at the entire population of adults, we might find that their social media use does, indeed, relate to their body image. But, in that original study, given that samples do not always accurately reflect the population from which they are drawn, we simply did not find this.

Due to the uncertainties involved in sampling, two types of errors may take place (Figure 8.5). **Type I error** refers to a situation in which the researcher rejects the null hypothesis on the basis of the evidence found in the study, but in the population the null hypothesis was true. This occurs, for instance, when the researcher concludes that two or more variables are likely to be related to each other in the population because they were found to relate to each other in the sample. But, alas, although the two or more variables were related to each other in the sample, they were not actually related in the population. **Type II error** is used to describe the scenario in which the researcher decides—based on the data in the sample—that the null hypothesis is true, but in reality in the population, the null hypothesis is false. In this case, there was a relationship between two or more variables in the larger population, but the researcher did not find it in the current study and therefore concluded that it was not likely

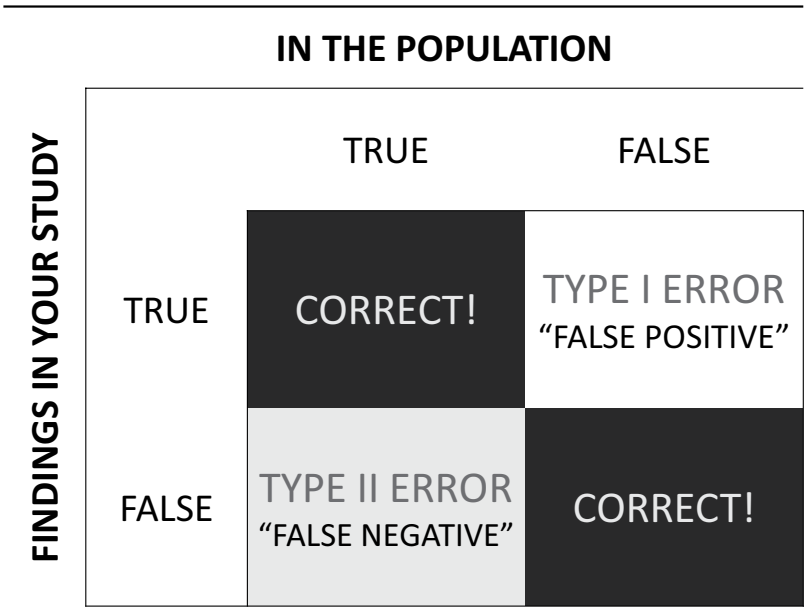


Figure 8.5 Type I and type II errors

Source: Stephen Warren

to exist. (The same logic applies in medical testing, for example, in which a patient may get a "false negative" or a "false positive" test.)

Of course, researchers would like to avoid making either Type I or Type II errors. Thankfully, Type I error can be estimated mathematically, and therefore the degree of risk of making this sort of mistake is known in research. The researcher can determine how much risk of Type I error is acceptable and will estimate the amount of this error incurred in a study through tests of **statistical significance**. We will discuss statistical significance at length in the subsequent section of this chapter. On the other hand, the researcher typically has no way of knowing they are making Type II error, since the population parameter is unknown. We can try to avoid Type II error, though, by making sure the sample size is large enough to detect a relationship between variables that occur in the population. You may want to revisit the discussion in Chapter 4 about why larger samples are—for the most part—more likely to reflect the population compared to smaller samples.

Perhaps an example would help illustrate why and how this matters in research. Imagine that a researcher is using content analysis to study whether people with disabilities are confined to minor character status rather than main character status in a sample of primetime television content. Based on prior research findings, the researcher hypothesizes that characters with disabilities will be more likely than characters without disabilities to be minor rather than major characters. The observations they make in their new study on the topic, however, do not support this hypothesis. The results find no relationship between whether the character had a disability and whether the character was in a minor role in the program. The researcher might be tempted to say, "Fantastic. Television content has progressed in its depiction of people with disabilities, no longer relegating them to minor character status." Yet, alas, it is possible that a

different sample would have led the researcher to a different conclusion. This is why the quantitative researcher is trained to use cautionary language about conclusions drawn from samples. In this case, the researcher might report, "In this study, no relationship was found between the character's (dis)ability status and their major or minor role in the program. This finding could indicate a positive change in television depictions compared to prior research findings. However, additional evidence from future research is necessary to support this conclusion."

Making an Inference

One more distinction between types of statistical analyses is important to introduce, as well. **Descriptive statistics** are used to summarize observations *within* a sample, whereas **inferential statistics** are used to infer whether an observation found in a sample is likely to also occur in a larger population. Can we confidently estimate a population parameter from a sample statistic? Inferential statistics are used to answer that question.

Making a claim regarding the likelihood that a result found in a sample is operating in the population at large is an important pursuit for quantitative researchers, and therefore inferential statistics are frequently used. However, sometimes the researcher does not intend to generalize from a sample to a population, or sometimes the manner in which the researcher drew the sample does not allow for such generalizations. In this case, descriptive statistics are used to describe the sample without attempting to infer to a larger population. Therefore, descriptive statistics are limited to describing or summarizing the data collected without attempting to determine whether the same patterns found in such description and summarizing are likely to be operating in a wider population.

What can we infer about the population parameter given the evidence we have found in the sample? We know from Chapter 4 that an inevitable amount of uncertainty and imprecision occurs when samples stand in for populations, even if those samples are randomly drawn. There are two main approaches for answering the question of what we can infer about the population on the basis of data observed. We will focus our discussion on one, **Null Hypothesis Significance Testing (NHST)** since it is dominant in most social sciences (Ortega & Navarrete, 2017). We invite the reader to learn about the other approach, **Bayesian statistics**, using a different source.

When a researcher conducts statistical analysis in the NHST framework, the math calculated by the statistical software will produce two results for each hypothesis: the finding for the statistical test and the finding that indicates **statistical significance**. In the next chapter, we will walk you through the steps involved in deriving both of those numbers in SPSS and interpreting what is found. But for now, it's important to simply know this: The first finding in the statistical results shows the mathematical relationship between the variables. The second finding indicates the probability of obtaining the first number (the relationship between the variables found in the study) if the null hypothesis were true (Haller & Krauss, 2002). The null hypothesis assumes the relationship between the two variables in the population is zero: It assumes they are *not* related. How likely is it to obtain the relationship between variables apparent in the data—that's the result observed in the study, and it is derived from the statistical test—if there were no relationship between the variables in the population? That is the question that the result of the test for statistical significance answers.

Introducing the Probability Value

A researcher obtains a result in a study that seems to indicate a relationship between variables. But that relationship between variables may not be present in the population. Statistical

significance, then, is a way of measuring the likelihood of making a Type I error, the likelihood of rejecting the null hypothesis when, in reality, the null hypothesis is true. Statistical significance is expressed as a **probability value** or ***p* value** (with probability answering the question of how likely it is) and abbreviated with a lowercase "*p*." Since it has to do with probability of making a Type I error, the probability value can be interpreted in the same manner as an odds ratio. The smaller the *p* value, the smaller the odds of rejecting the null hypothesis when it is, in fact, true in the population.

But once again, how small must the odds of making a Type I error be to reject the null and, instead, claim support for the research hypothesis? Given that we can never completely eliminate the possibility of making a Type I error when we sample from a population, how do we decide what likelihood of making a Type I error is acceptable? Many decades ago, standard **levels of statistical significance** were established and, despite controversy and debate over whether quantitative researchers should still be applying them, those same standard levels of statistical significance are widely used and broadly accepted today.

The long-standing practice in quantitative research is to make the decision about whether to reject the null hypothesis based on the significance level obtained in the statistical results as compared against one of three standards: .05, .01, and .001. Therefore, you will typically see statistical results reported as $p < .05$, $p < .01$, or $p < .001$.

- For $p < .05$, that means that the likelihood of finding the relationship between variables that was observed in the study when there is no such relationship in the population is less than 5 in 100. If the researcher obtains a *p* value within this range (< or = .05), they can reject the null hypothesis.
- For $p < .01$, that means that the likelihood of finding the relationship between variables that was observed in the study when there is no such relationship in the population is less than 1 in 100. If the researcher obtains a *p* value within this range (< or = .01), they can reject the null hypothesis.
- For $p < .001$, that means that the likelihood of finding the relationship between variables that was observed in the study when there is no such relationship in the population is less than 1 in 1,000. If the researcher obtains a *p* value within this range (< or = .001), they can reject the null hypothesis.

You can see, then, that the odds of making a Type I error if we have a result that has a *p* level of .001 are lower compared to a result with a *p* level of .01. And a result with a *p* level of .01, in turn, runs less risk of Type I error than a *p* level of .05. **The smaller the *p*, the more plausible the research hypothesis is compared to the null hypothesis.** In other words, the smaller the *p* level, the more unlikely it would be to obtain the results we have in the study showing a relationship between variables when there was no relationship between the variables in the population.

Long ago, it was determined that the .05 significance level is just about the highest amount of uncertainty and imprecision that we can live with as social scientists. That is why there is still a long-standing tradition of comparing specific *p* level results found in a quantitative study against this standard. Therefore—and this is important!—researchers have to say that any statistical result they obtain in which the probability level is greater than .05 is not sufficient evidence on which to reject the null hypothesis and claim support for the research hypothesis. If *p* is greater than .05, we must say that the research hypothesis is rejected. This means that the odds are just too great that what was found in the sample is not operating in the wider population. When writing up a quantitative research study, the convention is to report such a result as **non-significant**. Non-significant is often abbreviated as *ns*.

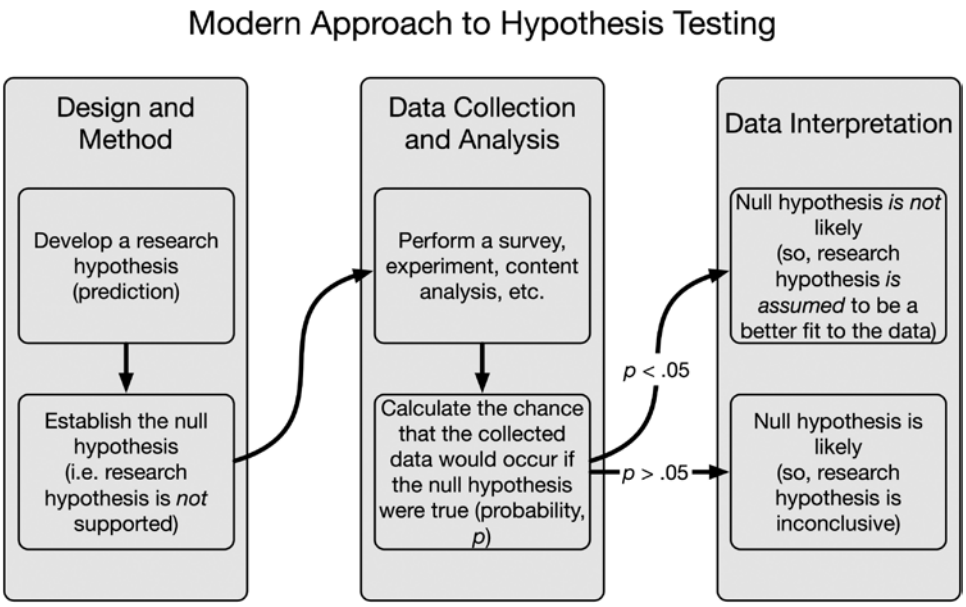

Modern Approach to Hypothesis Testing
Design and Method
Develop a research hypothesis (prediction)
Establish the null hypothesis (i.e. research hypothesis is *not* supported)
Data Collection and Analysis
Perform a survey, experiment, content analysis, etc.
Calculate the chance that the collected data would occur if the null hypothesis were true (probability, *p*)
Data Interpretation
Null hypothesis *is not* likely (so, research hypothesis *is assumed* to be a better fit to the data)
Null hypothesis is likely (so, research hypothesis is inconclusive)
p < .05
p > .05

Figure 8.6 Hypothesis testing

Source: Stephen Warren

One last, but also important, point before we move on. Even though the size of the *p* value indicates the plausibility of the research hypothesis rather than the null, it does not indicate the strength of the relationship between the variables. In other words, a result that is significant at the $p < .001$ level does not mean that the variables are more strongly related compared to a result that is significant at the $p < .01$ or $p < .05$ level. It simply means that the odds of observing the relationship found in the sample when that relationship is not occurring in the population are smaller if $p < .001$, slightly larger if $p < .01$, and slightly larger still at $p < .05$.

Let us illustrate this entire section of the chapter with an example. In the next chapter, we will introduce the Pearson's correlation test, which is a test that measures association between two variables: As the values of one variable go up or down, do the values on the other variable do the same? In a survey, for instance, as the values that are used to measure respondents' education increase, do the values that are used to measure their income also increase? If so, we say the two variables are correlated, more education is associated with higher income. Using SPSS to test whether education and income are correlated, the findings might look like this: Pearson's correlation = .38, $p < .01$. The .38 is the first number we have been referring to in this discussion. It shows the relationship between education and income. (Again, we will zero in on what a .38 Pearson correlation means in the next chapter.) The second number is the *p* level. It shows that the likelihood of observing a correlation between education and income of .38 as was observed in the sample when there is no relationship between education and income in the population is less than 1 out of 100. If the researcher had hypothesized that education and income would be correlated, then, they could claim support for that hypothesis on the basis of these results.

Statistical significance is a very important principle in statistical analysis, and is quite frequently misunderstood. To summarize, then, it might be helpful to break down the logic of tests of statistical significance in a quantitative research study into 10 points.

Point 1: A research hypothesis predicts that a relationship between variables will be found in the data. (A research hypothesis is usually referred to simply as a hypothesis when writing up a quantitative research study.)
Point 2: A study is conducted to see if the relationship between variables predicted in the hypothesis is observed in the data.
Point 3: A statistical test (like Pearson's correlation in our example) describes the relationship between variables observed in the data.
Point 4: Because the data from the study usually stem from a sample, there is always the possibility that the study's findings will not accurately reflect the population.
Point 5: The null hypothesis is the converse of the hypothesis. It states that there will be no relationship between variables.
Point 6: The test for statistical significance answers the following question: How likely is it that the relationship between variables would be observed in the data if that relationship were not present in the population?
Point 7: If there is a sufficiently low probability of obtaining the relationship between variables observed in the data if that relationship does not also occur in the population (i.e., making a Type I error), the null hypothesis is rejected and the research hypothesis is supported.
Point 8: The conventional standard for how low the probability of making a Type I error must be to decide the research hypothesis is more plausible than the null hypothesis is .05 or lower.
Point 9: A probability value of .05 or lower means that the likelihood of finding the relationship between variables that was observed in the data when there is no such relationship in the population is less than or equal to 5 in 100.
Point 10: Although the threshold for statistical significance of .05 has been contested, it is still widely in place as the standard in the social sciences for claiming support for the research hypothesis.

What Explains Statistical Significance?

Two main factors determine statistical significance: Sample size and the strength of the relationship between the variables. You are more likely to find a statistically significant relationship between variables when you have a large sample (given its advantage in reflecting the population) and when the variables are strongly rather than weakly related. If variables are strongly related, even a relatively small sample is likely to reflect this relationship. In contrast, if variables are weakly related, a larger sample would be needed to detect the relationship.

Earlier in the chapter, we discussed an example of a research study that found no support for a hypothesis that characters with disabilities would be more likely to be presented in minor roles in primetime TV compared to characters without disabilities. Imagine that in this study the researcher had a sample size of 110 characters, and this was the distribution for the variables of interest (remembering than n means sample size):

	Character with a disability	Character without a disability
Minor character	$n = 17$	$n = 41$
Major character	$n = 13$	$n = 39$

Now imagine that the researcher studied this phenomenon in a sample of 1,100 characters rather than just 110. Even if there was the same pattern in the distribution, as is shown below, it is possible that the finding is now statistically significant, simply because the sample size is larger and better able to detect a rather weak relationship between characters' ability status and their major/minor role.

	Character with a disability	Character without a disability
Minor character	$n = 170$	$n = 410$
Major character	$n = 130$	$n = 390$

This reminds us, then, that rejecting a hypothesis that tests a relationship between variables in a small sample on the basis of the result for statistical significance does not mean that the two variables are guaranteed to be unrelated in the population. It may mean that the researcher needs a larger sample to reduce sampling error and be more likely to capture the population parameter.

Furthermore, on the flip side of the coin, given the realities about how statistical significance is calculated, just because two variables are found to be related in a statistically significant manner in a large sample does not necessarily mean that the finding is important or even meaningful. In large samples, it is not difficult to find a relationship that is statistically significant, but that does not necessarily mean that there is real-world importance for that finding in the larger population. The first author of this book remembers working on a large sample with co-authors and jokingly saying, "I just sneezed and it was statistically significant!" as a silly way of communicating the role of sample size in determining statistical significance. "Statistically significant" is not the same as important or "significant" in the colloquial sense.

Some Finer Points Regarding Statistical Significance

There is a bit of wiggle room sometimes allowable when the *p* level is just barely greater than .05 for any given result. The researcher can make the case that the relationship between the variables "approaches" statistical significance if the *p* level is .055 (which would round to .06) and slightly larger. Sometimes, you may see claims that results approach statistical significance with *p* levels all the way up to .10. If you do get a result with a *p* level within this range (.06 to .10), however, you should interpret that result with an extra dose of caution. You should be aware, as well, that even cautious conclusions based on these results may not be acceptable to some readers of the study, including some anonymous reviewers or journal editors who help determine whether a study will be published.

The odds of making a Type I error also grow with the number of statistical tests run. Therefore, one important way to control for Type I error is to be conservative in the number of statistical tests run in a study. In order to be particularly rigorous and hold themselves up to a high standard, researchers may also adjust the *p* level to be lower if they have a large number of statistical tests to run. In one common strategy to correct for this problem known as the Bonferroni method, the typical .05 threshold for statistical significance is divided by the number of statistical tests run. So, if your hypotheses call for 20 tests to be run, the Bonferroni adjusted significance level would be .0025 (.05 divided by 20). In order to claim a result is statistically significant with this Bonferroni corrected significance level, the *p* value would have to be less than or equal to .0025.

Some researchers choose to disregard the .05, .01, and .001 tradition of reporting of statistical significance altogether. Rather, these researchers opt to report the exact *p* level associated with a research finding. In fact, computer programs like SPSS that calculate statistical tests and

statistical significance do, indeed, report the exact probability level in the output they provide. Instead of converting an exact p value to the smallest possible of the three traditional comparison levels, some researchers will simply report the exact p value itself. In this case, then, there is no need to use the less than sign (as in $p < .05$). If you read a quantitative article that says, for instance, $p = .03$, then you know this researcher has elected to report exact p levels. In this case, then, you would interpret $p = .03$ by concluding that the likelihood of obtaining this finding when it is not also operating in the population is 3 in 100.

Technically, the researcher should not use inferential statistics when the sample they are drawing from is a nonprobability sample. If random selection was not used to create the sample—the defining characteristic of nonprobability samples—then, strictly speaking, the mathematical principles of inferential statistics do not apply. However, in practice in Communication and other fields, inferential statistics continue to be used for nonprobability samples when those samples, regardless of whether they are randomly selected, are meant to stand in for larger groups. If you read published quantitative studies in Communication as well as in other fields, you will find plenty of examples of authors using inferential statistics to analyze patterns found in nonprobability samples.

Costs associated with obtaining probability samples are rising, and even probability samples often suffer from individuals dropping out of the study or otherwise not responding. Therefore, many researchers are making a case for the ability of the researcher to infer from nonprobability samples to a wider population. Andrew W. Mercer (a senior research methodologist at the Pew Research Center) and colleagues, for instance, suggest that researchers attend to the composition of the sample (including whether it contains all possible subgroups) and measure multiple variables that might factor in to the topics examined (Mercer, Kreuter, Keeter, & Stuart, 2017). For example, if you are interested in a topic pertaining to U.S. political party formation, you would want to ensure members of all political parties are present in the sample. If you were interested in knowing whether political party identification helps explain support for immigration policies, you would also want to include variables that measure other potential predictors of such support. When researchers take these steps, Mercer and others contend, they may, indeed, make unbiased estimates of the population based on a nonprobability sample.

Summary

Central to the logic and design of quantitative research is the aggregation of data, a necessary step in summarizing patterns observed. We might lose a bit of the nuance we would find if we explored a smaller set of data more in depth, but we gain a great deal in being able to point systematically and scientifically to an aggregated observation in a large sample. We do so because, by nature, those observations are larger than any single experience and because they cannot be critiqued as having been "cherry picked" in order to make a particular point.

Indeed, the principle of aggregation works together with the *a priori* nature of hypothesis testing to frontload the design of a quantitative research study with predictions derived from prior knowledge and the procedures that will be used to obtain data and examine patterns and properties in the data. Hypotheses should be clear, precise, and as succinct as possible so that they can be refuted or supported through statistical analysis. Even with such clear, precise, and succinct hypotheses, however, there is always the possibility of erroneous claims made about whether findings within a sample are likely to accurately reflect the population in the form of Type I and Type II error.

Statistics are used to examine the data to look at properties of variables, one at a time (univariate statistics) and to test for differences or relationships between and among variables

(bivariate and multivariate statistics). Statistical significance is reported alongside the results of bivariate and multivariate tests to state the likelihood of observing the relationship found if it does not exist in the wider population. As such, the researcher makes inferences from the sample to the population.

Learning statistics is sort of like learning a new language. There is a steep learning curve at first, with many new terms and techniques to master, as you have seen in this chapter. But just like learning a language, learning statistics is incremental, with new knowledge building on top of a growing foundation. Emphasizing the context in which statistical observations are drawn and the meaning behind the patterns discovered is a crucial part of undertaking quantitative research to contribute to social justice efforts.

Discussion Questions and Activities

1. The claims made through statistical analysis always have caveats because statistics is based on probabilities and uncertainties. How or why do you think quantitative researchers can still communicate their findings in a way that adds importantly to the topic in question, despite these caveats?
2. What do you think are the advantages and disadvantages of making observations based on aggregated data in quantitative research?
3. What do you think of the long-standing tradition of treating $p < .05$ as a critical threshold for statistical significance? Do you agree or disagree with that tradition? Why?
4. Imagine that you are a researcher who is interested in whether time spent watching make-up and beauty tutorials on YouTube is related to satisfaction (or lack thereof) with one's appearance among teens. Write a hypothesis that would test a prediction about that topic.
5. Imagine that you are a researcher who is interested in whether responses to an organization's statement about racial injustice and anti-Black racism following the Black Lives Matter protests in summer 2020 differed among employees with different racial identities. Write a hypothesis that would test a prediction about that topic.

References

Blackburn, G., & Scharrer, E. (2018). Video game playing and beliefs about masculinity among male and female emerging adults. *Sex Roles: A Journal of Research*. doi:10.1007/s11199-018-0934-4

Haller, K., & Krauss, S. (2002). Misinterpretations of significance: A problem students share with their instructors? *Methods of Psychological Research Online*, 7(1). Retrieved August 28, 2020, from www.researchgate.net/profile/Heiko_Haller/publication/27262211_Misinterpretations_of_Significance_A_Problem_Students_Share_with_Their_Teachers/links/0deec53198736a7dae000000/Misinterpretations-of-Significance-A-Problem-Students-Share-with-Their-Teachers.pdf

Mercer, A. M., Kreuter, F., Keeter, S., & Stuart, E. A. (2017). Theory and practice in nonprobability surveys: Parallels between causal inference and survey inference. *Public Opinion Quarterly*, *81*, 250–279. doi:10.1093/poq/nfw060

Ortega, A., & Navarrete, G. (2017). *Bayesian hypothesis testing: An alternative to null hypothesis significance testing (NHST) in psychology and social sciences*. Retrieved August 28, 2020, from https://doi.org/10.5772/intechopen.70230

Ramasubramanian, S., Doshi, M. J., & Saleem, M. (2017). Mainstream versus ethnic media: How they shape ethnic pride and self-esteem among ethnic minority audiences. *International Journal of Communication*, *11*, 1879–1899. Retrieved from http://ijoc.org

Ramasubramanian, S., & Martinez, A. R. (2017). News framing of Obama, racialized scrutiny, and symbolic racism. *Howard Journal of Communications*, *28*, 36–54. doi:10.1080/10646175.2016.1235519

Sekarasih, L., Scharrer, E., Olson, C. J., Onut, G., & Lanthorn, K. (2019). Effectiveness of a school-based media literacy curriculum in encouraging critical attitudes about advertising content and form among boys and girls. *Journal of Advertising*. https://doi.org/10.1080/00913367.2018.1545269

Velasquez, A., Montgomery, G., & Hall, J. A. (2019). Ethnic minorities' social media political use: How ingroup identification, selective exposure, and collective efficacy shape social media political expression. *Journal of Computer-Mediated Communication*, *24*, 147–164. doi:10.1093/jcmc/zmz007

Vogt, W. P. (1999). *Dictionary of statistics and methodology: A non-technical guide for the social sciences* (2nd ed.). London: Sage.

9 Statistical Analysis

From Principles to Practice

In the preceding chapter, we introduced the logic and language involved in the statistical analysis of quantitative data. This current chapter extends that logic and language into more practical and precise questions about (1) how to run statistical tests on quantitative data and (2) how to make sense of what you find out from those tests. This chapter, then, translates the more abstract discussions of Chapter 8 into concrete steps to put those principles into practice when conducting a quantitative research study.

Given that the math involved in statistical tests may raise some anxieties, we have approached this chapter with what we hope you will find to be a clear and easy to understand style. We have also focused on a handful of the most foundational statistical tests, even though that is really just the beginning of statistical understanding. Within the limited number of statistical tests that we introduce in this chapter, we have narrowed our discussion further to only the most important components of those tests. Finally, in keeping with the rest of this book, we continue to emphasize interpretation and not just mechanics: not just how to run statistical analyses but how to interpret what you find.

The primary tool that you need to conduct statistical analyses is a statistical software program. Although there are a number of options available (such as *STATA*, *SAS*, and *R*), in this chapter, we focus on *SPSS*, Statistical Package for Social Sciences. Acquired by IBM in 2009, *SPSS* is used in many fields within and outside the social sciences. *SPSS* features easy-to-use pull-down menus (or the user can choose to write syntax) and supports a wide range of statistical analyses. The addition of program macros and "plugins" further extends the flexibility of SPSS (including its ability to interact with Python, a computer programming language increasingly used in research). SPSS is not free, but there is a student discount available, and many Communication departments are likely to have the software installed on university computers.

We will detail a number of processes involved in entering data, analyzing data, and writing up results from that data analysis in this chapter, using a sample data file to illustrate these processes. The sample data file is from our research and can be accessed at www.drsrivi.com or on this book's Routledge.com webpage. From either of those websites, you can download the data file and follow along with the processes described in the rest of this chapter, as well as do some exploring on your own. The data set features demographic variables (like gender, race, ethnicity, region of the country where the respondent resides, sexual orientation), political ideology (on a scale from very conservative to very liberal), television and video game use variables, and variables that measure respondents' views of masculine gender roles and norms. The measures in the sample data set are from a survey study of 18- to 25-year-old adults in the United States.

Steps Involved in Creating and Analyzing Quantitative Data

Each of these steps will be explored in full in this chapter, but it is important to lay them all out before we begin so that you can see the entire process and plan accordingly in your own research.

1. **Data collection**—If you are collecting your own data (rather than using an existing data set that you download from another source), the first step is to use the research design approaches we have outlined for experiments, surveys, or content analyses to collect the data.
2. **Data entry**—Next, you must get the data into computer-readable form, typically by entering or uploading the data into SPSS or any other program you are using. As you will see in the next section, this may mean manually entering your data, variable by variable, case by case. Or, if you have collected data online, it may be as simple as importing your data directly into SPSS.
3. **Naming variables**—In order to keep track of your data, you must name each variable so that it can be easily identified and readily understood.
4. **Determining variable type**—A key step at this stage in the process is figuring out whether your variables are measured at the nominal, ordinal, interval, or ratio levels. This is necessary because there are a large number of statistical tests available to researchers, yet each test requires that the data have particular properties. Chief among those properties is the level of measurement.
5. **Determining variable values**—As you learned in Chapter 3, variables can take on a number of values. These are the numbers you assign to each possible option associated with the variable, such as 1 = yes and 2 = no.
6. **Data cleaning**—Before beginning data analysis in earnest, the researcher studies the data to see whether there are any mistakes made with data entry or any other errors. If your variable was measured as 1 = yes and 2 = no, for instance, and you see a 3 entered, this is an error and needs to be resolved. If you keep the 3 in and run statistical analyses, the analyses will be thrown off by the mistaken value, and they will be inaccurate.
7. **Data reduction**—Sometimes, we use multiple measures that can be combined before beginning statistical analyses. This is called data reduction because it takes multiple variables and reduces them down to one single or a few variables. It is a way to ensure that the statistical analyses are as straightforward and parsimonious as possible.
8. **Recoding variables**—SPSS and other statistical software will allow you to manipulate the manner in which your variables are measured. For instance, if you used five categories to measure agreement with some statement in a survey, you could collapse that range of responses into just three categories. This process is called recoding.
9. **Creating indices**—For some measures, multiple items are used to measure the same concept. These individual measures can often be combined into one single measure by creating an index (also known as a scale). Creating an index is a specific form of data reduction and again is helpful so that your data analysis is as parsimonious as possible and is easy to understand.
10. **Descriptive statistics**—Before hypotheses are tested, first the data are summarized variable by variable. These analyses describe the data and are thus called descriptive statistics.
11. **Determining statistical tests**—After descriptive statistics are run, hypotheses are tested and research questions addressed using one or more statistical tests that combine variables to study relationships between them. The researcher comes up with a data analysis plan to decide which test(s) should be run (once again, based in large part on the properties of the data).

12. **Conducting analyses**—This is the step in which the data analysis plan is put into place. One or more statistical tests are run to test hypotheses and answer research questions.
13. **Interpreting results**—Statistical software produces output associated with each statistical test that has been run. The researcher must analyze that output to figure out what the result of the test(s) is, interpreting the output to make sense of the findings.
14. **Writing up results**—The final step in statistical analysis is to write up the results, putting the results into both a narrative form and, often, in the form of tables and/or graphs. In this step, it is important to be clear, accurate, and comprehensive in terms of the details of the output shared with readers so that they can be informed about the results. Relatedly, in this step, the researcher communicates whether hypotheses were supported or refuted and provides an answer to research questions that had been posed.

Creating a Data File in SPSS

Before data can be analyzed, of course, you have to have data in the SPSS data editor. When you first launch SPSS, it will give you an empty spreadsheet that you can use to input your own data, and we will describe how to do so in detail a bit later in this chapter. To access the sample data set provided to readers of this book rather than entering your own data, however, you would follow the commands seen in the screenshot from SPSS (Figure 9.1.1). This set of commands (File→ Open→ Data) will allow you to open any data set that you have saved on your computer. First, you download the sample data set we have provided on either www.drsrivi.com or on this book's Routledge.com webpage and save it to your computer. Then you use this set of commands to open the data set in SPSS on your own computer.

Also visible (but not highlighted) in Figure 9.1.1 is the **Import data** function. Some researchers create their data files in another program such as Excel, and SPSS easily imports

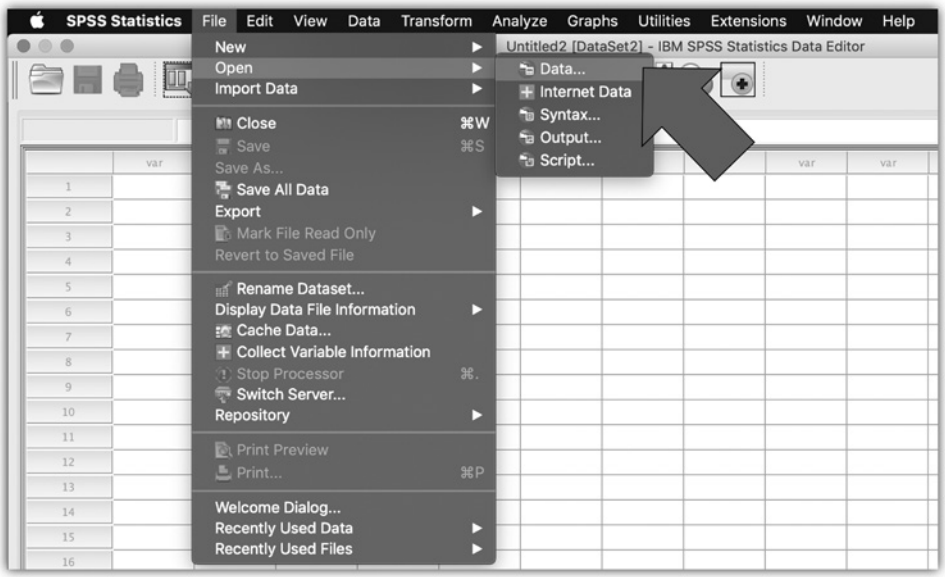


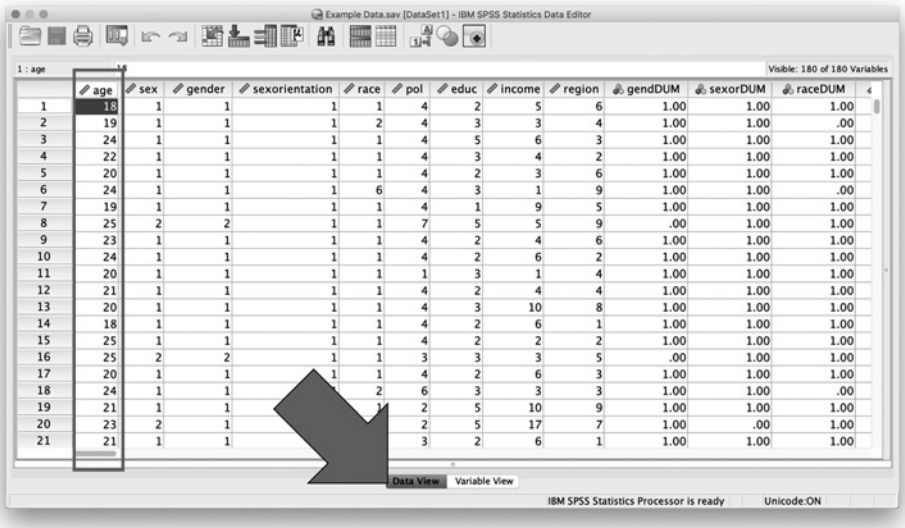
Figure 9.1.1 The Open File command in SPSS

Source: Stephen Warren

Excel files into its data editor using the Import data function. If you have used a survey platform like SurveyMonkey, Google Forms, or Qualtrics, you can download data into an Excel file and then upload the data from that Excel file to SPSS. Some of those resources also allow the researcher to download the data directly into SPSS. When you import data, however, you will still have to use Variable View (described next) to enter the properties of the data you imported so that SPSS can read the data you have uploaded.

The SPSS data editor works as a basic spreadsheet, and you can toggle back and forth from Data View to Variable View at the bottom left of the screen. **Variable View** is the screen that you need to input your data, with cells that will allow you to name each variable that you have in your study and specify the values and properties of each. Once you have done this step (creating variables and specifying their properties) and the data are entered, you can toggle back to **Data View** to look at the data set as a whole, now composed of all the variables you created in Variable View. When creating your variables in Variable View, each variable will be in a row position. When you switch back to Variable View, those variables will now be in column positions rather than rows.

Figure 9.1.2 provides a screenshot of Data View, followed by a screenshot of Variable View (Figure 9.1.3a), each showing the data from the sample data set provided to readers of this book. In these visuals, you can see the variable names that we gave to the variables in question (more on that soon!). Many of the variable names are pretty self-explanatory, especially when read alongside the label that you can see in the visual. But in case you were wondering about some of the less self-explanatory variable names, the MRNI items come from the Masculine Roles and Norms Index-Revised, an index created by Ronald Levant and colleagues to measure people's views about social roles and cultural norms associated


Example Data.sav [DataSet1] - IBM SPSS Statistics Data Editor
1 : age
Visible: 180 of 180 Variables
Data View
Variable View
IBM SPSS Statistics Processor is ready
Unicode:ON

	age	sex	gender	sexorientation	race	pol	educ	income	region	gendDUM	sexorDUM	raceDUM
1	18	1	1	1	1	4	2	5	6	1.00	1.00	1.00
2	19	1	1	1	2	4	3	3	4	1.00	1.00	.00
3	24	1	1	1	1	4	5	6	3	1.00	1.00	1.00
4	22	1	1	1	1	4	3	4	2	1.00	1.00	1.00
5	20	1	1	1	1	4	2	3	6	1.00	1.00	1.00
6	24	1	1	1	6	4	3	1	9	1.00	1.00	.00
7	19	1	1	1	1	4	1	9	5	1.00	1.00	1.00
8	25	2	2	1	1	7	5	5	9	.00	1.00	1.00
9	23	1	1	1	1	4	2	4	6	1.00	1.00	1.00
10	24	1	1	1	1	4	2	6	2	1.00	1.00	1.00
11	20	1	1	1	1	1	3	1	4	1.00	1.00	1.00
12	21	1	1	1	1	4	2	4	4	1.00	1.00	1.00
13	20	1	1	1	1	4	3	10	8	1.00	1.00	1.00
14	18	1	1	1	1	4	2	6	1	1.00	1.00	1.00
15	25	1	1	1	1	4	2	2	2	1.00	1.00	1.00
16	25	2	2	1	1	3	3	3	5	.00	1.00	1.00
17	20	1	1	1	1	4	2	6	3	1.00	1.00	1.00
18	24	1	1	1	2	6	3	3	3	1.00	1.00	.00
19	21	1	1	1	1	2	5	10	9	1.00	1.00	1.00
20	23	2	1	1	1	2	5	17	7	1.00	.00	1.00
21	21	1	1	1	1	3	2	6	1	1.00	1.00	1.00

9.1.2 Data view

Source: Stephen Warren

with masculinity (Levant et al., 2007). That index has multiple subscales, as you can see in the screenshots:

Restrictive Emotionality, which measures views of whether dominant masculine norms favor stoicism or lack of emotional expression, especially around stifling emotions that might be considered to indicate weakness

Self-Reliance, which measures views of whether dominant masculine norms favor having know-how about stereotypically "masculine" tasks like home improvement or car repairs

Negativity Toward Sexual Minorities, which measures views of whether dominant masculine norms are homophobic or heteronormative

Avoidance of Femininity, which measures views of whether dominant masculine norms include avoiding behavior or roles traditionally associated with femininity

Importance of Sex, which measures views of whether dominant masculine norms favor sexual conquest and/or sexual drive

Toughness, which measures views of whether dominant masculine norms encourage boys and men to be physically tough and unafraid of risks

Dominance, which measures views of whether dominant masculine norms favor leadership, being the boss, taking charge

The other variables that may not be self-explanatory in the screenshots of the sample data set include the ADMI_A, which is a set of measures from the Auburn Differential Masculinity Index–Aggression (Burk, Burkhart, & Sikorski, 2004) that examine views of whether

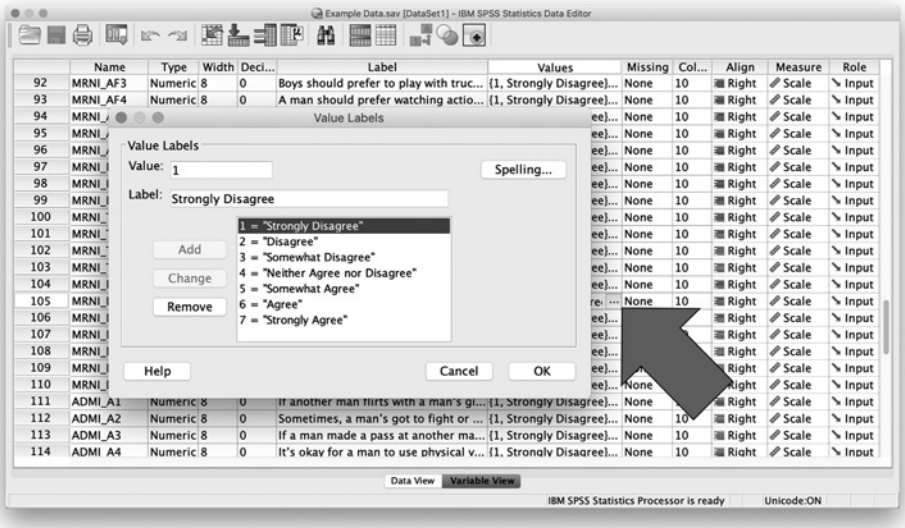


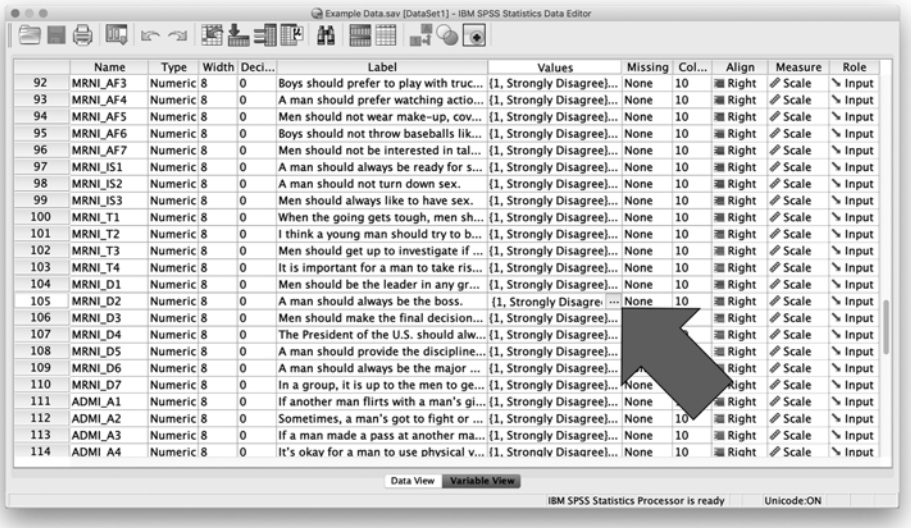
Figure 9.1.3a Values of a variable

Source: Stephen Warren

aggression and physical violence are favored in views of dominant masculine roles and norms. Finally, the variables that have DUM in them are named that because they are **dummy variables**. A dummy variable is a variable that has been simplified to have only two values, with a 0 assigned to the value that will be considered a reference group and a 1 assigned to all other values. We will revisit dummy variables later in this chapter.

When you are setting up your own data file rather than using the sample data set, under Variable View the first step is to **name** your variables. You can name your variables anything you like, as long as the name does not surpass the maximum number of characters, contains no spaces, does not duplicate other variable names, and conveys to you the meaning of the variable. There is also a field in which you can enter a longer explanation of the variable name, without limits to characters and spaces, which SPSS calls a **label**.

Under Variable View, you will see a place to indicate the **values** of the variable (Figure 9.1.3b). If you have a variable for which there is a relatively small number of categories used to classify data—as is the case for nominal, ordinal, and interval level variables—you use this field to indicate the numbers assigned to each category. For example, for each variable that measures agreement with a statement using a standard five-point Likert scale, you would tell SPSS that 1 = strongly disagree, 2 = disagree, 3 = neither agree nor disagree, 4 = agree, and 5 = strongly agree, if those were the response options you used. (Side note: Although you *could* flip the order and say 1 = strongly agree, 2 = agree, 3 = neither agree nor disagree, 4 = disagree, 5 = strongly disagree, generally it is better to have higher numbers mean more of the variable in question, in this case, more agreement, rather than less. This makes the interpretation of the values on that variable easier because it is more intuitive.) Or, to set up a variable for political party affiliation, you would indicate that 1 = Democrats, 2 = Republicans, and 3 = Independents if, indeed, you operationalized that variable with those three categories.


Example Data.sav [DataSet1] - IBM SPSS Statistics Data Editor
Data View
Variable View
IBM SPSS Statistics Processor is ready
Unicode:ON

	Name	Type	Width	Deci...	Label	Values	Missing	Col...	Align	Measure	Role
92	MRNI_AF3	Numeric	8	0	Boys should prefer to play with truc...	{1, Strongly Disagree}...	None	10	Right	Scale	Input
93	MRNI_AF4	Numeric	8	0	A man should prefer watching actio...	{1, Strongly Disagree}...	None	10	Right	Scale	Input
94	MRNI_AF5	Numeric	8	0	Men should not wear make-up, cov...	{1, Strongly Disagree}...	None	10	Right	Scale	Input
95	MRNI_AF6	Numeric	8	0	Boys should not throw baseballs lik...	{1, Strongly Disagree}...	None	10	Right	Scale	Input
96	MRNI_AF7	Numeric	8	0	Men should not be interested in tal...	{1, Strongly Disagree}...	None	10	Right	Scale	Input
97	MRNI_IS1	Numeric	8	0	A man should always be ready for s...	{1, Strongly Disagree}...	None	10	Right	Scale	Input
98	MRNI_IS2	Numeric	8	0	A man should not turn down sex.	{1, Strongly Disagree}...	None	10	Right	Scale	Input
99	MRNI_IS3	Numeric	8	0	Men should always like to have sex.	{1, Strongly Disagree}...	None	10	Right	Scale	Input
100	MRNI_T1	Numeric	8	0	When the going gets tough, men sh...	{1, Strongly Disagree}...	None	10	Right	Scale	Input
101	MRNI_T2	Numeric	8	0	I think a young man should try to b...	{1, Strongly Disagree}...	None	10	Right	Scale	Input
102	MRNI_T3	Numeric	8	0	Men should get up to investigate if ...	{1, Strongly Disagree}...	None	10	Right	Scale	Input
103	MRNI_T4	Numeric	8	0	It is important for a man to take ris...	{1, Strongly Disagree}...	None	10	Right	Scale	Input
104	MRNI_D1	Numeric	8	0	Men should be the leader in any gr...	{1, Strongly Disagree}...	None	10	Right	Scale	Input
105	MRNI_D2	Numeric	8	0	A man should always be the boss.	{1, Strongly Disagre...	None	10	Right	Scale	Input
106	MRNI_D3	Numeric	8	0	Men should make the final decision...	{1, Strongly Disagree}...			Right	Scale	Input
107	MRNI_D4	Numeric	8	0	The President of the U.S. should alw...	{1, Strongly Disagree}...			Right	Scale	Input
108	MRNI_D5	Numeric	8	0	A man should provide the discipline...	{1, Strongly Disagree}...			Right	Scale	Input
109	MRNI_D6	Numeric	8	0	A man should always be the major ...	{1, Strongly Disagree}...			Right	Scale	Input
110	MRNI_D7	Numeric	8	0	In a group, it is up to the men to ge...	{1, Strongly Disagree}...	None		Right	Scale	Input
111	ADMI_A1	Numeric	8	0	If another man flirts with a man's gi...	{1, Strongly Disagree}...	None		Right	Scale	Input
112	ADMI_A2	Numeric	8	0	Sometimes, a man's got to fight or ...	{1, Strongly Disagree}...	None	10	Right	Scale	Input
113	ADMI_A3	Numeric	8	0	If a man made a pass at another ma...	{1, Strongly Disagree}...	None	10	Right	Scale	Input
114	ADMI_A4	Numeric	8	0	It's okay for a man to use physical v...	{1, Strongly Disagree}...	None	10	Right	Scale	Input

Figure 9.1.3b SPSS display of values

Source: Stephen Warren

If you have a ratio level variable, which, as you recall, is a variable that can take on a wide range of values including a meaningful 0, you do not have to complete this step. That is because that variable is a **continuous variable,** taking on any number of values from the minimum found in the sample to the maximum, and the value itself is meaningful. For example, imagine you are an intercultural communication scholar and you asked on a survey: How many times a day do you interact with a person from a different country or culture?, with respondents filling in a specific number to answer. In the data editor, you can just enter that exact number for each value. That is the case for any ratio level variable.

The screenshots from SPSS show that, under Values, SPSS displays just the first among many values for each variable. If you were to click on the ellipsis (. . .) that appears just after SPSS tells you what the first value is for a variable, you could see the other values, as well, as you can see in Figure 9.1.3b.

Some of the features of Variable View that you can see in Figure 9.1.4 that we did not yet explain, are:

Numeric: a field to indicate whether the variable is comprised of simple numbers, numbers with a particular order and meaning like dollars or dates, or even letters; note that if the variable is in letters you would have to convert those letters to numbers to use the variable in statistical analysis

Width, **Decimals**, **Columns**, and **Align**: all fields that simply have to do with the format of the display

Measure: a field you can use to indicate the level of measurement for your variables (nominal, ordinal, and ***scale***, the latter of which combines interval and ratio)

Role: a field in which you can assign variables as ***Input***, which means as a predictor or independent variable; as ***Target***, which means a dependent variable; as ***Both***; or as ***None***

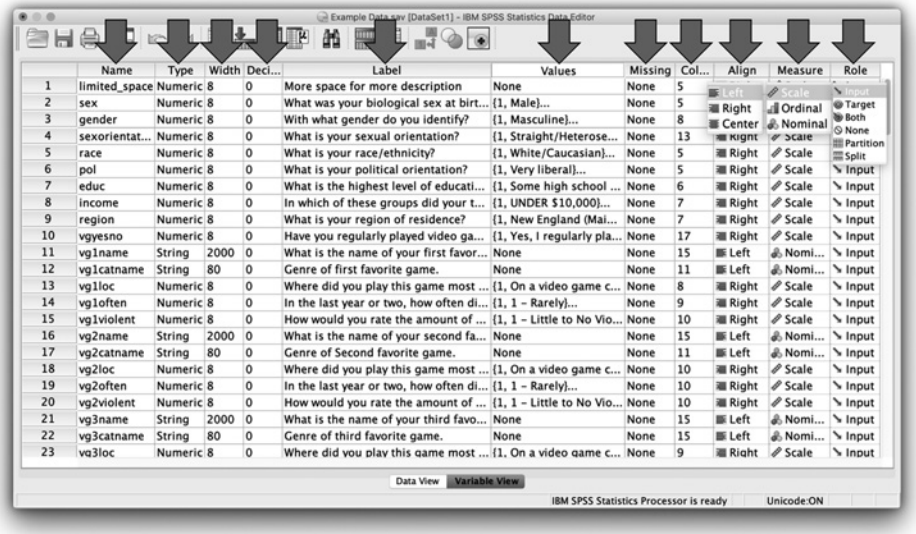

Example Data.sav [DataSet1] - IBM SPSS Statistics Data Editor
Name
Type
Width
Deci...
Label
Values
Missing
Col...
Align
Measure
Role
1 limited_space Numeric 8 0 More space for more description None None 5 Left Scale Input
2 sex Numeric 8 0 What was your biological sex at birt... {1, Male}... None 5 Right Ordinal Target
3 gender Numeric 8 0 With what gender do you identify? {1, Masculine}... None 8 Center Nominal Both
4 sexorientat... Numeric 8 0 What is your sexual orientation? {1, Straight/Heterose... None 13 None
5 race Numeric 8 0 What is your race/ethnicity? {1, White/Caucasian}... None 5 Partition
6 pol Numeric 8 0 What is your political orientation? {1, Very liberal}... None 5 Split
7 educ Numeric 8 0 What is the highest level of educati... {1, Some high school ... None 6
8 income Numeric 8 0 In which of these groups did your t... {1, UNDER $10,000}... None 7
9 region Numeric 8 0 What is your region of residence? {1, New England (Mai... None 7
10 vgyesno Numeric 8 0 Have you regularly played video ga... {1, Yes, I regularly pla... None 17
11 vg1name String 2000 0 What is the name of your first favor... None None 15
12 vg1catname String 80 0 Genre of first favorite game. None None 11
13 vg1loc Numeric 8 0 Where did you play this game most ... {1, On a video game c... None 8
14 vg1often Numeric 8 0 In the last year or two, how often di... {1, 1 - Rarely}... None 9
15 vg1violent Numeric 8 0 How would you rate the amount of ... {1, 1 - Little to No Vio... None 10
16 vg2name String 2000 0 What is the name of your second fa... None None 15
17 vg2catname String 80 0 Genre of Second favorite game. None None 11
18 vg2loc Numeric 8 0 Where did you play this game most ... {1, On a video game c... None 10
19 vg2often Numeric 8 0 In the last year or two, how often di... {1, 1 - Rarely}... None 10
20 vg2violent Numeric 8 0 How would you rate the amount of ... {1, 1 - Little to No Vio... None 10
21 vg3name String 2000 0 What is the name of your third favo... None None 15
22 vg3catname String 80 0 Genre of third favorite game. None None 15
23 vg3loc Numeric 8 0 Where did you play this game most ... {1, On a video game c... None 9
Data View
Variable View
IBM SPSS Statistics Processor is ready
Unicode:ON

Figure 9.1.4 SPSS layout for Variable View

Source: Stephen Warren

If you are using the datafile that is provided for you as an ancillary material associated with this book, you will notice that we removed the dummy variables and the index variables shown here from the datafile. This is so that you can create them yourself when using the datafile to practice SPSS commands.

Dealing with Missing Values

Sometimes when you collect data, you will have **missing values**, which is the term used to describe gaps in the data set for which there is no meaningful data to report. Missing values can occur because research participants fail to provide data for some measures. They may leave one or two items blank on a survey, for instance. Or missing values can occur because the researcher has made a mistake in data entry or otherwise lost track of some of the data.

Some advocate for the practice of substituting a missing value for a variable with the mean or the median of that variable, a process known as "imputing" the missing value. That discussion is a little too specialized for this book, and instead, we focus on how to conduct statistical analyses with missing values removed rather than replaced. You might be tempted to enter zeros for missing data, but this is generally not a good idea, since those zeros will be treated as meaningful responses in the statistical analysis even though they are not. And if zeros are considered meaningful responses in the data, including them in data analysis will render your statistical analyses untrustworthy.

An additional scenario in which missing data arise is when asking respondents to agree or disagree with a statement in survey research using a Likert scale, such as "I think there should be more starring roles for Latinx actors in Hollywood films." We would typically assign 1 = strongly disagree, 2 = disagree, 3 = neither agree nor disagree, 4 = agree, and 5 = strongly agree as meaningful values. But perhaps we want to give respondents the chance

Example Data.sav [DataSet1] - IBM SPSS Statistics Data Editor
Data View
Variable View
IBM SPSS Statistics Processor is ready
Unicode:ON

	Name	Type	Width	Deci...	Label	Values	Missing	Col...	Align	Measure	Role
1	age	Numeric	8	0	Before we begin, please give your a...	None	None	5	Right	Scale	Input
2	sex	Numeric	8	0	What was your biological sex at birth?	{1, Male}...	None		Right	Scale	Input
3	gender	Numeric	8	0	With what gender do you identify?	{1, Masculine}...	None		Right	Scale	Input
4	sexorientat...	Numeric	8	0	What is your sexual orientation?	{1, Straight/Heterose...	None			Scale	Input
5	race	Numeric	8	0	What is your race/ethnicity?	{1, White/Caucasian}...	None			Scale	Input
6	pol	Numeric	8	0	What is your political orientation?	{1, Very liberal}...	None	5		Scale	Input
7	educ	Numeric	8	0	What is the highest level of educati...	{1, Some high school ...	None	6		Scale	Input
8	income	Numeric	8	0	In which of these groups did your t...	{1, UNDER $10,000}...	None	7	Right	Scale	Input
9	region	Numeric	8	0	What is your region of residence?	{1, New England (Mai...	None	7	Right	Scale	Input
10	vgyesno	Numeric	8	0	Have you regularly played video ga...	{1, Yes, I regularly pla...	None	17	Right	Scale	Input
11	vg1name	String	2000	0	What is the name of your first favori...	None	None	15	Left	Nomi...	Input
12	vg1catname	String	80	0	Genre of first favorite game.	None	None	11	Left	Nomi...	Input
13	vg1loc	Numeric	8	0	Where did you play this game most ...	{1, On a video game c...	None	8	Right	Scale	Input
14	vg1often	Numeric	8	0	In the last year or two, how often di...	{1, 1 – Rarely}...	None	9	Right	Scale	Input
15	vg1violent	Numeric	8	0	How would you rate the amount of ...	{1, 1 – Little to No Vio...	None	10	Right	Scale	Input
16	vg2name	String	2000	0	What is the name of your second fa...	None	None	15	Left	Nomi...	Input
17	vg2catname	String	80	0	Genre of Second favorite game.	None	None	11	Left	Nomi...	Input
18	vg2loc	Numeric	8	0	Where did you play this game most ...	{1, On a video game c...	None	10	Right	Scale	Input
19	vg2often	Numeric	8	0	In the last year or two, how often di...	{1, 1 – Rarely}...	None	10	Right	Scale	Input
20	vg2violent	Numeric	8	0	How would you rate the amount of ...	{1, 1 – Little to No Vio...	None	10	Right	Scale	Input
21	vg3name	String	2000	0	What is the name of your third favo...	None	None	15	Left	Nomi...	Input
22	vg3catname	String	80	0	Genre of third favorite game.	None	None	15	Left	Nomi...	Input
23	vg3loc	Numeric	8	0	Where did you play this game most ...	{1, On a video game c...	None	9	Right	Scale	Input

Figure 9.1.5a Missing values in SPSS

Source: Stephen Warren

to say "I don't know" as a response option. If we assign all "I don't know" responses a 6, following sequentially after the 5, it will seem like they are indicating agreement, since the level of agreement rises as values change from 1 to 5. So, assigning "I don't know" a label of 6 is problematic. Similarly, as we have discussed, assigning "I don't know" a 0 might also cause confusion if it is interpreted as no agreement with the statement at all. The convention in survey research is to give "I don't knows" and any other such non-meaningful data a score that is well out of the range of the 1 to 5 Likert scale, like an 88 or a 99. That way these responses are less likely to be confused with a more meaningful response on the Likert scale.

Even when assigning "I don't knows" or other missing values an 88 or a 99 value, however, there is an important extra step involved, as well. As you can see in the series of SPSS screenshots in Figures 9.1.5a, b, and c, under Variable View you must indicate **missing values** by telling SPSS which values for the variable in question should be treated as such. If you do not identify missing values using this SPSS function, when you run statistical analyses later using the variable in question, SPSS will treat the 88 or the 99 as a meaningful value and this will throw off the math in the analysis. Following the steps shown, then, you must indicate that, for instance, a value of 99 as we have shown here is a missing value for the variable in question, age. You do so by entering 99 as a discrete missing value in the pull-down menu that you see in Figure 9.1.5b, at which point the value will show up as missing in Variable View, as you can see in the third of this series of screenshots.

Measures of Central Tendency

Imagine yourself as the proud creator of a brand new set of quantitative data. The first step once you have gathered and input the data is to examine and explore it, variable by variable. Examining and exploring each variable will help you to (1) understand your data, (2) look

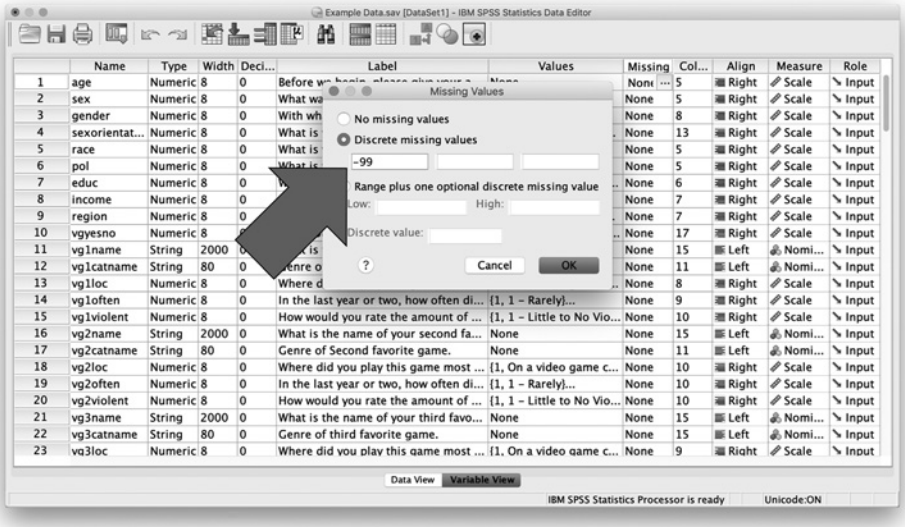
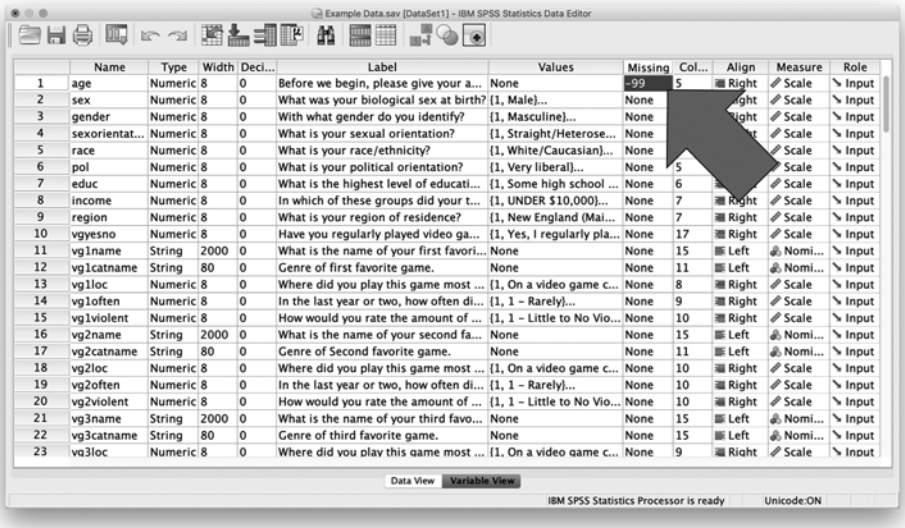


Figure 9.1.5b Defining missing values

Source: Stephen Warren


Example Data.sav [DataSet1] - IBM SPSS Statistics Data Editor
Data View
Variable View
IBM SPSS Statistics Processor is ready
Unicode:ON

	Name	Type	Width	Deci...	Label	Values	Missing	Col...	Align	Measure	Role
1	age	Numeric	8	0	Before we begin, please give your a...	None	-99	5	Right	Scale	Input
2	sex	Numeric	8	0	What was your biological sex at birth?	{1, Male}...	None		ight	Scale	Input
3	gender	Numeric	8	0	With what gender do you identify?	{1, Masculine}...	None		ight	Scale	Input
4	sexorientat...	Numeric	8	0	What is your sexual orientation?	{1, Straight/Heterose...	None		t	Scale	Input
5	race	Numeric	8	0	What is your race/ethnicity?	{1, White/Caucasian}...	None			Scale	Input
6	pol	Numeric	8	0	What is your political orientation?	{1, Very liberal}...	None	5		Scale	Input
7	educ	Numeric	8	0	What is the highest level of educati...	{1, Some high school ...	None	6		Scale	Input
8	income	Numeric	8	0	In which of these groups did your t...	{1, UNDER $10,000}...	None	7	Right	Scale	Input
9	region	Numeric	8	0	What is your region of residence?	{1, New England (Mai...	None	7	Right	Scale	Input
10	vgyesno	Numeric	8	0	Have you regularly played video ga...	{1, Yes, I regularly pla...	None	17	Right	Scale	Input
11	vg1name	String	2000	0	What is the name of your first favori...	None	None	15	Left	Nomi...	Input
12	vg1catname	String	80	0	Genre of first favorite game.	None	None	11	Left	Nomi...	Input
13	vg1loc	Numeric	8	0	Where did you play this game most ...	{1, On a video game c...	None	8	Right	Scale	Input
14	vg1often	Numeric	8	0	In the last year or two, how often di...	{1, 1 – Rarely}...	None	9	Right	Scale	Input
15	vg1violent	Numeric	8	0	How would you rate the amount of ...	{1, 1 – Little to No Vio...	None	10	Right	Scale	Input
16	vg2name	String	2000	0	What is the name of your second fa...	None	None	15	Left	Nomi...	Input
17	vg2catname	String	80	0	Genre of Second favorite game.	None	None	11	Left	Nomi...	Input
18	vg2loc	Numeric	8	0	Where did you play this game most ...	{1, On a video game c...	None	10	Right	Scale	Input
19	vg2often	Numeric	8	0	In the last year or two, how often di...	{1, 1 – Rarely}...	None	10	Right	Scale	Input
20	vg2violent	Numeric	8	0	How would you rate the amount of ...	{1, 1 – Little to No Vio...	None	10	Right	Scale	Input
21	vg3name	String	2000	0	What is the name of your third favo...	None	None	15	Left	Nomi...	Input
22	vg3catname	String	80	0	Genre of third favorite game.	None	None	15	Left	Nomi...	Input
23	vg3loc	Numeric	8	0	Where did you play this game most ...	{1, On a video game c...	None	9	Right	Scale	Input

Figure 9.1.5c Missing values displayed

Source: Stephen Warren

for any problems or issues in the data, and (3) determine whether your data array in certain patterns that are necessary for further statistical tests.

One important way to explore your data is to examine **measures of central tendency**, which are ways to express the most common values within a set of values of a variable. There are three commonly used measures of central tendency. The **mode** is the most frequently occurring value. If you order the values on any given variable from lowest to highest, the **median** is the value that appears in the middle, with half of the values higher and half lower. The **mean** is the mathematical average of the values, calculated by adding the individual values together and then dividing by the number of values. The mean is often abbreviated with a capital *M*.

Let's look at an example. The following text shows ten cases from a survey study of adolescents in which they were asked to report their age. The mode would be the age reported most frequently across the ten cases: 16. The median would be the middle value when the cases are ordered from youngest to oldest, 13, 13, 14, 14, 15, 15, 16, 16, 16, 17: 15. The mean is calculated by adding the values and dividing by ten: 14.9. The three different measures of central tendency in this example give us three slightly different answers to the same question: What was the most typical age in our sample?

	Age
1	13
2	14
3	13
4	17
5	16
6	16

7 16
8 14
9 15
10 15

The mean is usually the gold standard in quantitative research because it is a more precise measure than the mode or the median. It uses each individual value to summarize across all of the values. Most often, researchers will report the mean rather than the mode or the median when describing each of the variables in their research. However, there are times when the mean can be misleading. When the data have extreme scores—called **outliers**—those scores can skew the mean. When there are outliers in the data throwing off the ability of the mean to summarize the typical value, it is best to use the median instead of the mean when reporting central tendency.

In our example of ten ages reported by survey respondents, for instance, imagine that rather than reporting being 15, respondent #10 reported being 35 (clearly not an adolescent!). The mode is still 16, and the median is still 15, but now, with the outlier present in the data, the mean is 16.9. If we summarized the age variable using the mean and reported an average age of 16.9 or even rounded up to 17, that would be true but also a bit misleading since the presence of that 35-year-old is skewing the mathematical average upward. Once again, then, to correct this, we would usually report the median rather than the mean and state that there was an outlier. Alternatively, some researchers would advocate for throwing out the case of the outlier and sticking with the 9 respondents whose ages are more similar. In our hypothetical example, if we wanted to study adolescents, we should, indeed, throw out the case of the 35-year-old. In order to "throw out the case," we could tell SPSS that 35 should be considered a missing value for age, so that all subsequent analyses can be performed with that one 35-year-old removed.

Age
1 13
2 14
3 13
4 17
5 16
6 16
7 16
8 14
9 15
10 35 **an outlier**

Throwing out an outlier case on a variable such as age may seem fairly straightforward and non-controversial. But what if the outlier were the only trans person or the only indigenous person in the sample, for instance? We would be remiss if we failed to point out in a book about quantitative methods and social justice that identifying someone as an outlier in the context of a study and discarding their data due to that identification is a decision that has important implications. As we have established in prior chapters, if we exclude data from marginalized and/or minoritized populations, we silence their voices at the same time that we reinforce the voices of those in dominant or majority populations. You should think very carefully about whether to discard outlier cases in your research, then. And just as we

established in prior chapters, ideally you would be conscious when sampling to include more than a single person from a social group.

When the mean, median, and mode are all the same, if you plot the values in the data, you will see that they form a perfectly symmetrical normal distribution. If they vary, we say that the data are **skewed**. When the mean is greater than the mode, the data are **positively skewed**. When the mode is greater than the mean, the data are **negatively skewed**. SPSS has many ways to use charts, tables, and other functions to explore your data. We will discuss one popular choice, a histogram, using Figure 9.2.1.

Now let's use the variables in the sample data set to see how SPSS can be used to calculate these measures of central tendency. Figures 9.2.2a through 9.2.2e show, step by step, how to obtain mode, median, and mean from the SPSS pull-down menus as well as how to check to see whether the data are skewed. Figures 9.2.2f and 9.2.3 show the output associated with these tests for some of the variables from the sample data set.

Selecting Descriptive statistics → Frequencies, as is apparent in the first two visuals in this series, will bring up the entire list of variables in the data set. From among that list, you can select those for which you want SPSS to calculate mode, median, and mean by selecting or dragging some variables from the long list on the left into the box at the right, as seen in the third visual in this series. The fourth visual shows the dialog box that comes up when you select Statistics, and you can see here that we have asked SPSS to report Mean, Median, Mode, Standard Deviation, Minimum value, Maximum value, the Range of values and Skewness by checking off those boxes among the other options. The fifth visual shows how to select the Chart function and ask for **histograms**, which are handy ways of looking visually at whether variables are skewed. The Histogram function uses bars to represent values in the data for the variable in question, with different heights of the bars indicating the frequency with which that value appears in the data. As you can see in the fifth visual, you can also request that a normal curve be superimposed on the histogram so that you can see how the data array around the central points.

The second-to-last visual in this series shows the numerical results for the Mean, Median, Mode, Standard Deviation, Minimum value, Maximum value, the Range of values, and Skewness for each of the three variables selected from the sample data set to demonstrate these functions. And the final visual displays the histograms requested, with one variable showing a negative skew, one a positive skew, and one no skew at all (a normal distribution).

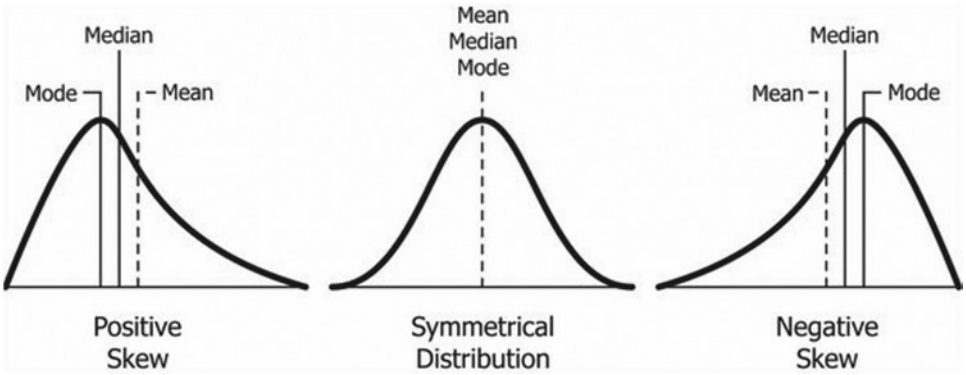


Figure 9.2.1 Skewed and normal distributions

Source: Diva Jain, https://codeburst.io/2-important-statistics-terms-you-need-to-know-in-data-science-skewness-and-kurtosis-388fef94eeaa

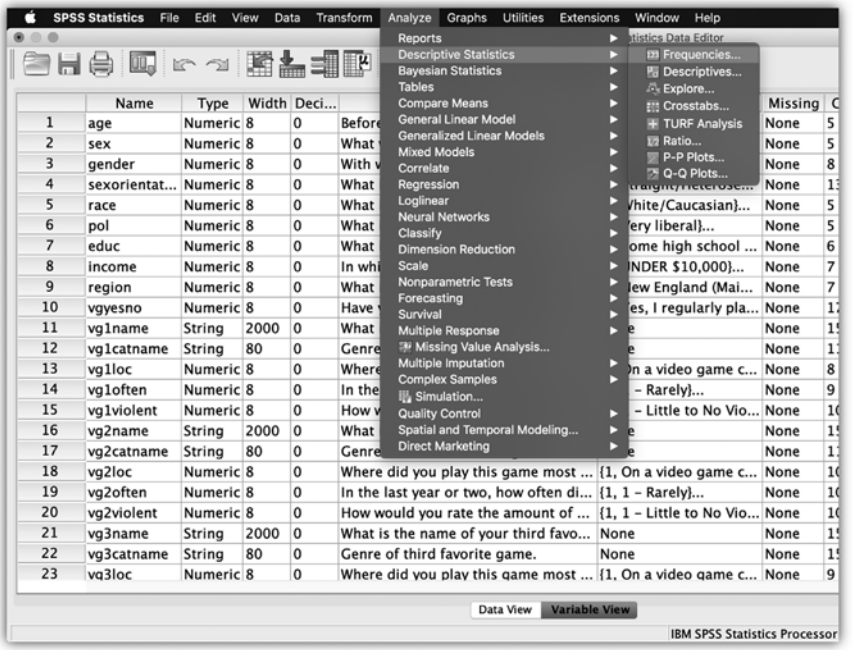

SPSS Statistics File Edit View Data Transform Analyze Graphs Utilities Extensions Window Help
Reports
Descriptive Statistics
Bayesian Statistics
Tables
Compare Means
General Linear Model
Generalized Linear Models
Mixed Models
Correlate
Regression
Loglinear
Neural Networks
Classify
Dimension Reduction
Scale
Nonparametric Tests
Forecasting
Survival
Multiple Response
Missing Value Analysis...
Multiple Imputation
Complex Samples
Simulation...
Quality Control
Spatial and Temporal Modeling...
Direct Marketing
Frequencies...
Descriptives...
Explore...
Crosstabs...
TURF Analysis
Ratio...
P-P Plots...
Q-Q Plots...
Name Type Width Deci... Missing
1 age Numeric 8 0 None
2 sex Numeric 8 0 None
3 gender Numeric 8 0 None
4 sexorientat... Numeric 8 0 None
5 race Numeric 8 0 None
6 pol Numeric 8 0 None
7 educ Numeric 8 0 None
8 income Numeric 8 0 None
9 region Numeric 8 0 None
10 vgyesno Numeric 8 0 Have ... None
11 vg1name String 2000 0 What ... None
12 vg1catname String 80 0 Genre ... None
13 vg1loc Numeric 8 0 Where ... None
14 vg1often Numeric 8 0 In the ... None
15 vg1violent Numeric 8 0 How ... None
16 vg2name String 2000 0 What ... None
17 vg2catname String 80 0 Genre ... None
18 vg2loc Numeric 8 0 Where did you play this game most ... {1, On a video game c... None
19 vg2often Numeric 8 0 In the last year or two, how often di... {1, 1 – Rarely}... None
20 vg2violent Numeric 8 0 How would you rate the amount of ... {1, 1 – Little to No Vio... None
21 vg3name String 2000 0 What is the name of your third favo... None None
22 vg3catname String 80 0 Genre of third favorite game. None None
23 vg3loc Numeric 8 0 Where did you play this game most ... {1, On a video game c... None
Data View Variable View
IBM SPSS Statistics Processor

Figure 9.2.2a The Frequency command in SPSS

Source: Stephen Warren

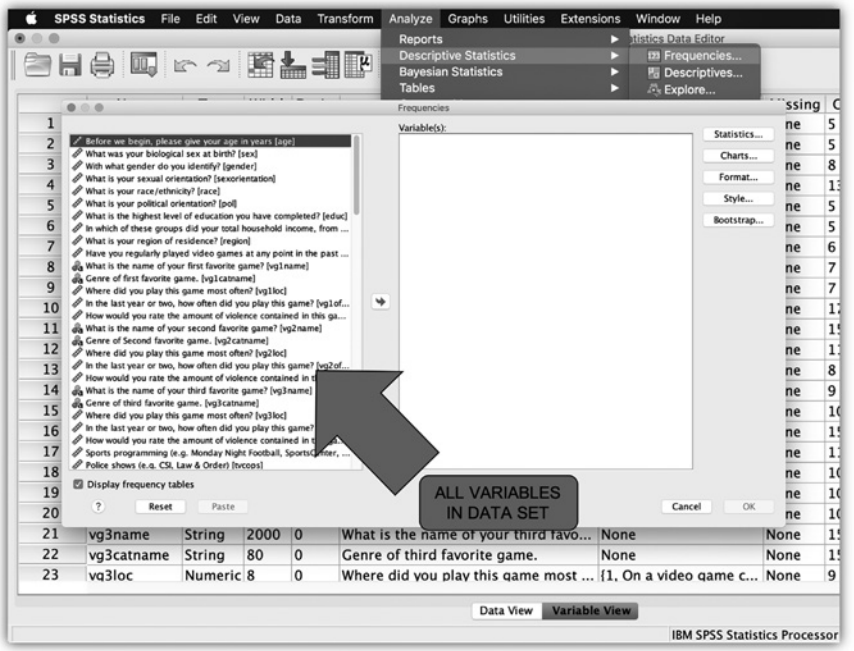

SPSS Statistics File Edit View Data Transform Analyze Graphs Utilities Extensions Window Help
Reports
Descriptive Statistics
Bayesian Statistics
Tables
Frequencies...
Descriptives...
Explore...
Frequencies
Variable(s):
Statistics...
Charts...
Format...
Style...
Bootstrap...
Before we begin, please give your age in years [age]
What was your biological sex at birth? [sex]
With what gender do you identify? [gender]
What is your sexual orientation? [sexorientation]
What is your race/ethnicity? [race]
What is your political orientation? [pol]
What is the highest level of education you have completed? [educ]
In which of these groups did your total household income, from ...
What is your region of residence? [region]
Have you regularly played video games at any point in the past ...
What is the name of your first favorite game? [vg1name]
Genre of first favorite game. [vg1catname]
Where did you play this game most often? [vg1loc]
In the last year or two, how often did you play this game? [vg1of...
How would you rate the amount of violence contained in this ga...
What is the name of your second favorite game? [vg2name]
Genre of Second favorite game. [vg2catname]
Where did you play this game most often? [vg2loc]
In the last year or two, how often did you play this game? [vg2of...
How would you rate the amount of violence contained in t...
What is the name of your third favorite game? [vg3name]
Genre of third favorite game. [vg3catname]
Where did you play this game most often? [vg3loc]
In the last year or two, how often did you play this game?
How would you rate the amount of violence contained in t...
Sports programming (e.g. Monday Night Football, SportsCenter, ...
Police shows (e.g. CSI, Law & Order) [tvcops]
Display frequency tables
Reset Paste
ALL VARIABLES IN DATA SET
Cancel OK
21 vg3name String 2000 0 What is the name of your third favo... None None
22 vg3catname String 80 0 Genre of third favorite game. None None
23 vg3loc Numeric 8 0 Where did you play this game most ... {1, On a video game c... None
Data View Variable View
IBM SPSS Statistics Processor

Figure 9.2.2b Select from among the list of variables

Source: Stephen Warren

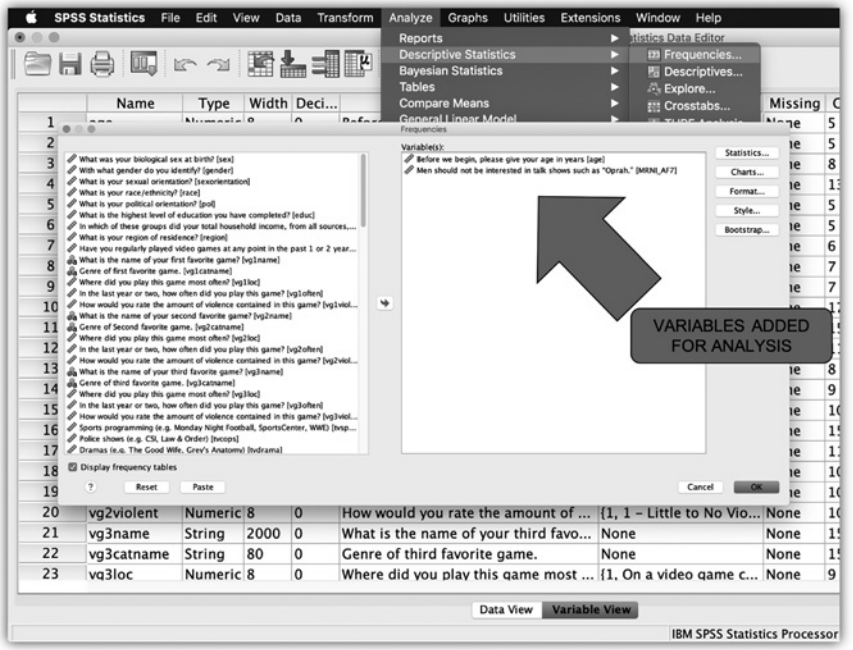

SPSS Statistics File Edit View Data Transform Analyze Graphs Utilities Extensions Window Help
Reports
Descriptive Statistics
Bayesian Statistics
Tables
Compare Means
Frequencies...
Descriptives...
Explore...
Crosstabs...
Frequencies
Variable(s):
Before we begin, please give your age in years [age]
Men should not be interested in talk shows such as "Oprah." [MRNI_AF7]
Statistics...
Charts...
Format...
Style...
Bootstrap...
VARIABLES ADDED FOR ANALYSIS
Display frequency tables
Reset
Paste
Cancel
OK
Name Type Width Deci... Missing
20 vg2violent Numeric 8 0 How would you rate the amount of ... {1, 1 - Little to No Vio... None
21 vg3name String 2000 0 What is the name of your third favo... None None
22 vg3catname String 80 0 Genre of third favorite game. None None
23 vg3loc Numeric 8 0 Where did you play this game most ... {1, On a video game c... None
Data View Variable View
IBM SPSS Statistics Processor

Figure 9.2.2c Selected variables displayed

Source: Stephen Warren

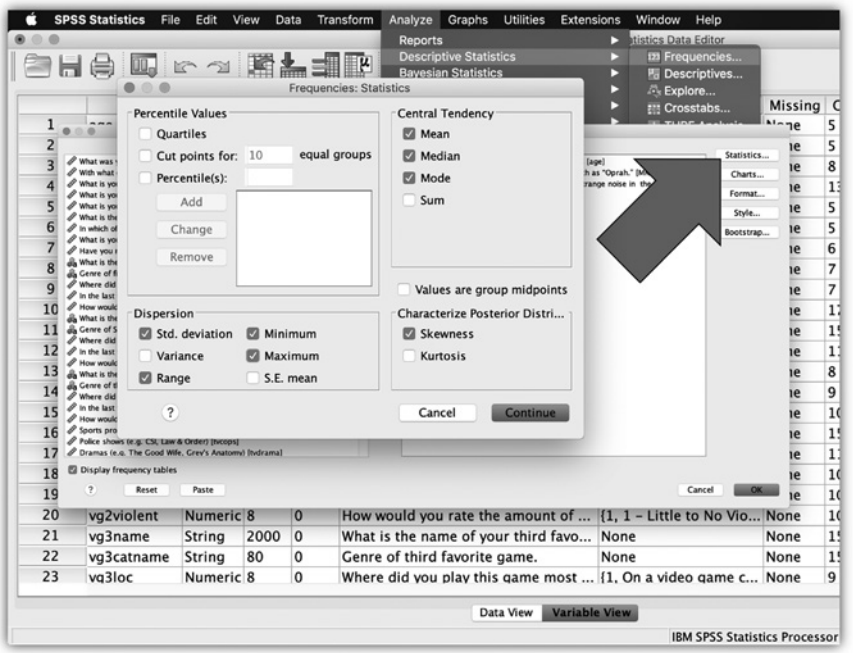


Figure 9.2.2d Click on Statistics

Source: Stephen Warren

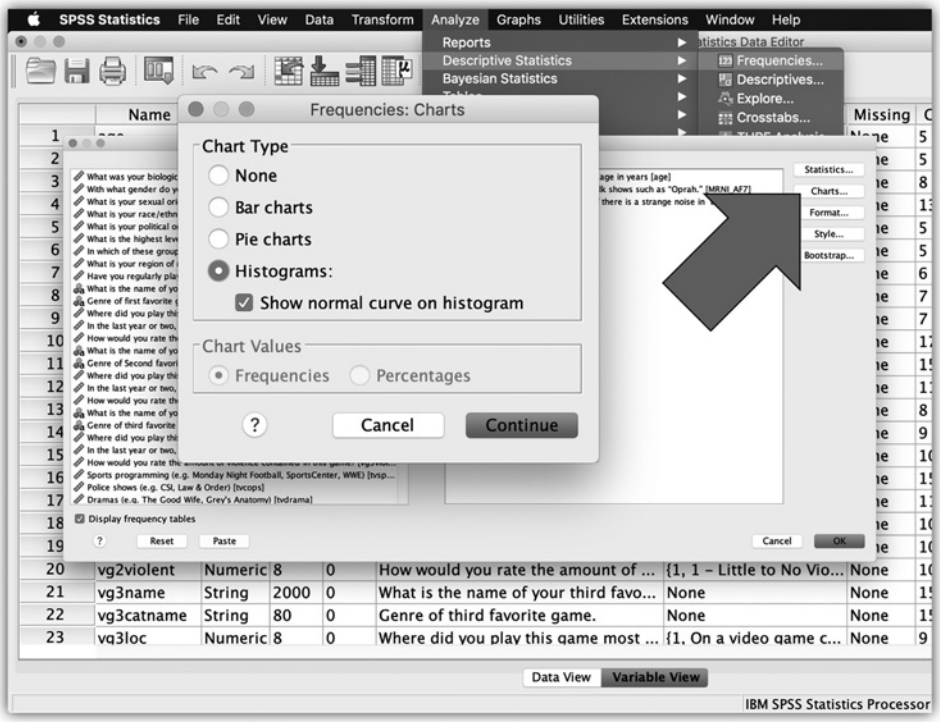


Figure 9.2.2e Chart options

Source: Stephen Warren

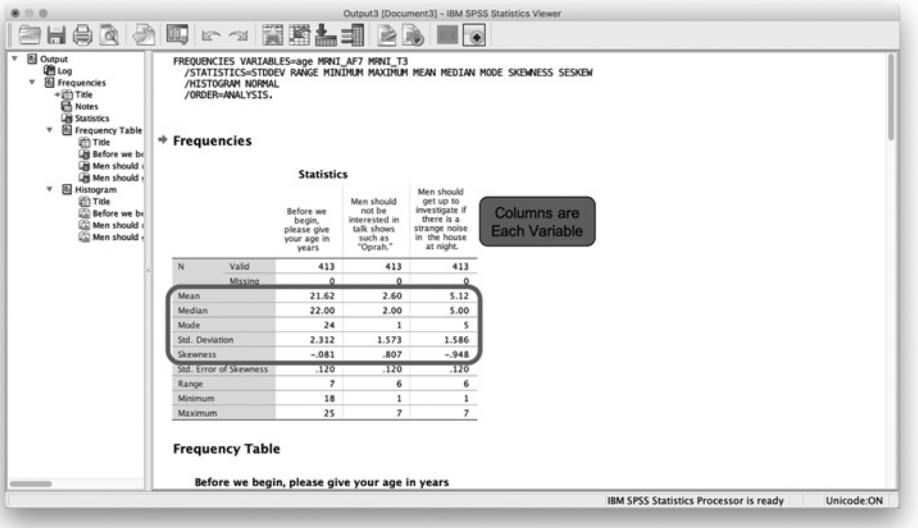

Output3 [Document3] - IBM SPSS Statistics Viewer
FREQUENCIES VARIABLES=age MRNI_AF7 MRNI_T3
/STATISTICS=STDDEV RANGE MINIMUM MAXIMUM MEAN MEDIAN MODE SKEWNESS SESKEW
/HISTOGRAM NORMAL
/ORDER=ANALYSIS.
Frequencies
Statistics
Before we begin, please give your age in years
Men should not be interested in talk shows such as "Oprah."
Men should get up to investigate if there is a strange noise in the house at night.
Columns are Each Variable
N Valid 413 413 413
Missing 0 0 0
Mean 21.62 2.60 5.12
Median 22.00 2.00 5.00
Mode 24 1 5
Std. Deviation 2.312 1.573 1.586
Skewness -.081 .807 -.948
Std. Error of Skewness .120 .120 .120
Range 7 6 6
Minimum 18 1 1
Maximum 25 7 7
Frequency Table
Before we begin, please give your age in years
IBM SPSS Statistics Processor is ready
Unicode:ON

Figure 9.2.2f Output for Central Tendency statistics

Source: Stephen Warren

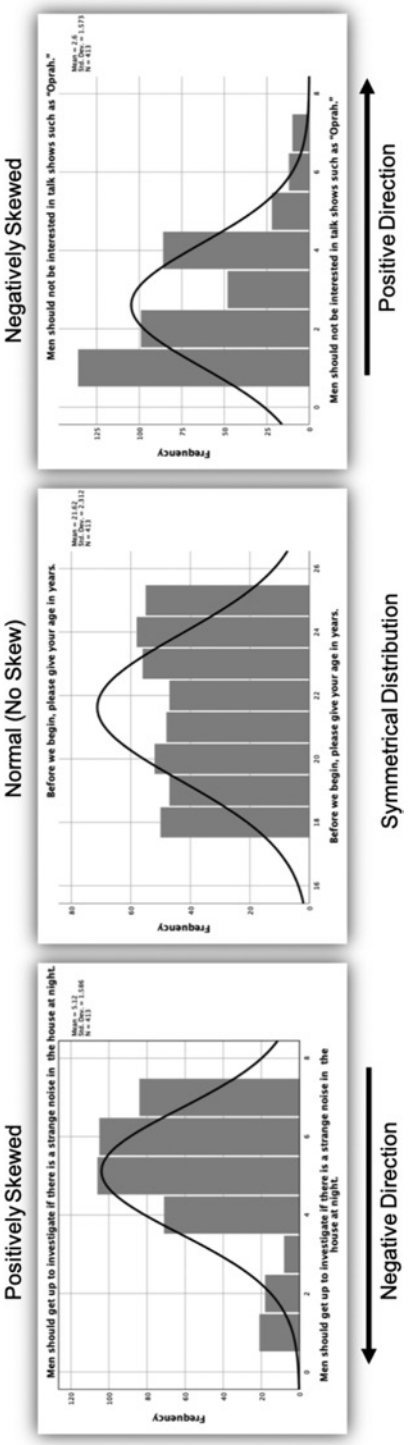

Positively Skewed
Men should get up to investigate if there is a strange noise in the house at night.
Frequency
Men should get up to investigate if there is a strange noise in the house at night.
Negative Direction
Normal (No Skew)
Before we begin, please give your age in years.
Frequency
Before we begin, please give your age in years.
Symmetrical Distribution
Negatively Skewed
Men should not be interested in talk shows such as "Oprah."
Frequency
Men should not be interested in talk shows such as "Oprah."
Positive Direction

Figure 9.2.3 Output in the form of histograms
Source: Stephen Warren

Measures of Variability

Measures of variability determine the degree to which values are spread out or, conversely, clustered together. The **standard deviation** (usually abbreviated *SD*) is the most important measure of variability, calculating how tightly or loosely dispersed a set of values are for each variable. It is calculated by first determining the mean, and then, for each number in the data set, subtracting the mean and then squaring whatever value results. Once you have a list of squared differences of each value from the mean, the mean of those numbers is calculated. Finally, the square root is determined, and that is the standard deviation. Now that we have explained that, however, you can promptly forget it if you choose. The computer will calculate the standard deviation for you. The only thing you need to be able to do is to understand what it means.

Means and standard deviations go together like peanut butter and jelly (or cheese and crackers, or chips and salsa, or . . . you get the point!). Every time you report a mean in your research, you should also report the standard deviation. This is because the mean tells you the average, but the standard deviation tells you whether the set of values used to determine the average was tightly or loosely spread around the average. This is important, not just mathematically but also for the interpretation of the findings. If a standard deviation is large, it means there was considerable variability in the variable. That is not a bad thing (or a good thing), necessarily. It just means that you should keep that variability in mind when you report the findings. In fact, if there is variability present (as indicated by a high standard deviation) on a variable of importance in your study, you might want to think about why that is the case and perhaps consider following up to find out more about that variation with a new study.

Finally, it is important to recall that for some variables, the mean does not actually make any sense. For nominal-level variables, the values are assigned numbers in a non-meaningful, arbitrary manner. Therefore, you cannot calculate a meaningful mean. In these cases, in order to provide univariate statistics, you would determine the frequency of each response rather than calculate a mean. Here is an example from a fictitious set of ten respondents who were asked to provide their gender identity. The numbers chosen to place respondents into shared categories based on their answers are arbitrary. It would make no sense to add these numbers up, divide by 10, and report an average gender identity for this sample. Rather, we would report the gender identities reflected in the sample in terms of the frequencies of each value, saying something like this: *4 of the 10 respondents identified as female (40%), 4 identified as male (40%), 1 identified as a transwoman (10%), and 1 identified as non-binary (10%).* These are frequencies and, as you see here, they can be shown as both **counts** (e.g., 4 out of 10) and **percentages** (e.g., 40% of the sample).

	Gender identity	Gender identity, expressed as a number
1	female	1
2	female	1
3	trans woman	2
4	female	1
5	male	3
6	non-binary	4
7	male	3
8	female	1
9	male	3
10	male	3

Frequencies are essential when you are summarizing nominal-level measures. But they are also useful when you want to examine your data to see if any issues or problems might be apparent. Let's say, for instance, that in your survey, you used the commonly employed 1 = strongly disagree, 2 = disagree, 3 = neither agree nor disagree, 4 = agree, and 5 = strongly agree format to measure respondents' endorsement of some statement. You can run a frequency test on that variable to make sure that everyone chose a response that does, indeed, vary from 1 to 5. If you run a frequency test and you see a 7, for instance, that value is out of the specified range and is therefore not able to be meaningfully interpreted. Chances are, you will need to discard that case by treating that value as a missing value and carrying on the rest of the statistical analyses without it. As you have learned, in SPSS, you can designate any value a missing value with just a couple of clicks, and all the statistical analyses you run after that point will exclude that value.

Figures 9.2.4a through 9.2.4d feature a series of screenshots from SPSS that show how to run a frequency analysis and what the output of that test will look like. First, you can see that the command is under Analyze→ Descriptive Statistics→ Frequencies. That will open a dialog box with all of the variables from the data set on the left, and you can select however many variables you want to determine frequencies for and move them to the right (as the third visual shows). The last visual in this set shows the results of a frequency analysis for two variables, age and agreement with the item, *Men should not be interested in talk shows such as Oprah*.

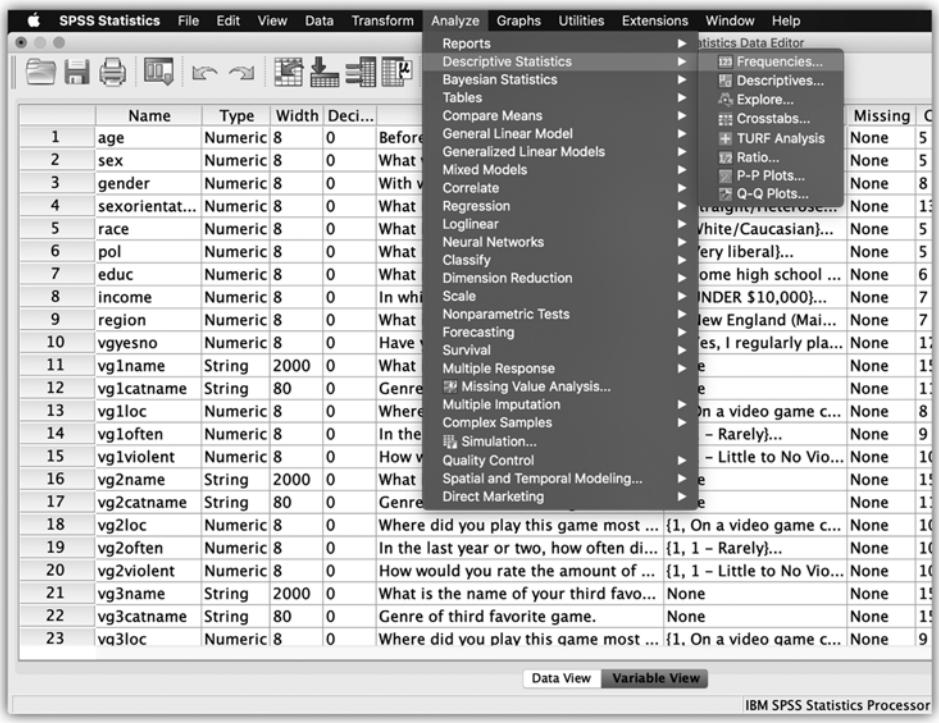

SPSS Statistics File Edit View Data Transform Analyze Graphs Utilities Extensions Window Help
Reports
Descriptive Statistics
Bayesian Statistics
Tables
Compare Means
General Linear Model
Generalized Linear Models
Mixed Models
Correlate
Regression
Loglinear
Neural Networks
Classify
Dimension Reduction
Scale
Nonparametric Tests
Forecasting
Survival
Multiple Response
Missing Value Analysis...
Multiple Imputation
Complex Samples
Simulation...
Quality Control
Spatial and Temporal Modeling...
Direct Marketing
Frequencies...
Descriptives...
Explore...
Crosstabs...
TURF Analysis
Ratio...
P-P Plots...
Q-Q Plots...
Name Type Width Deci... Missing
1 age Numeric 8 0 None
2 sex Numeric 8 0 None
3 gender Numeric 8 0 None
4 sexorientat... Numeric 8 0 None
5 race Numeric 8 0 None
6 pol Numeric 8 0 None
7 educ Numeric 8 0 None
8 income Numeric 8 0 None
9 region Numeric 8 0 None
10 vgyesno Numeric 8 0 None
11 vg1name String 2000 0 None
12 vg1catname String 80 0 None
13 vg1loc Numeric 8 0 None
14 vg1often Numeric 8 0 None
15 vg1violent Numeric 8 0 None
16 vg2name String 2000 0 None
17 vg2catname String 80 0 None
18 vg2loc Numeric 8 0 Where did you play this game most ... {1, On a video game c... None
19 vg2often Numeric 8 0 In the last year or two, how often di... {1, 1 - Rarely}... None
20 vg2violent Numeric 8 0 How would you rate the amount of ... {1, 1 - Little to No Vio... None
21 vg3name String 2000 0 What is the name of your third favo... None None
22 vg3catname String 80 0 Genre of third favorite game. None None
23 vg3loc Numeric 8 0 Where did you play this game most ... {1, On a video game c... None
Data View Variable View
IBM SPSS Statistics Processor

Figure 9.2.4a The Frequencies command in SPSS

Source: Stephen Warren

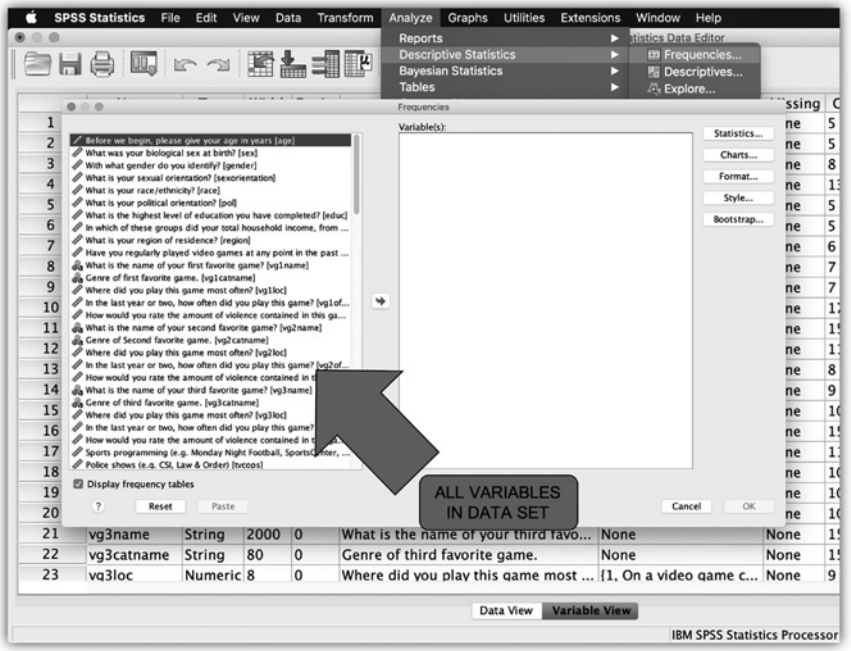


Figure 9.2.4b Select from the list of variables

Source: Stephen Warren

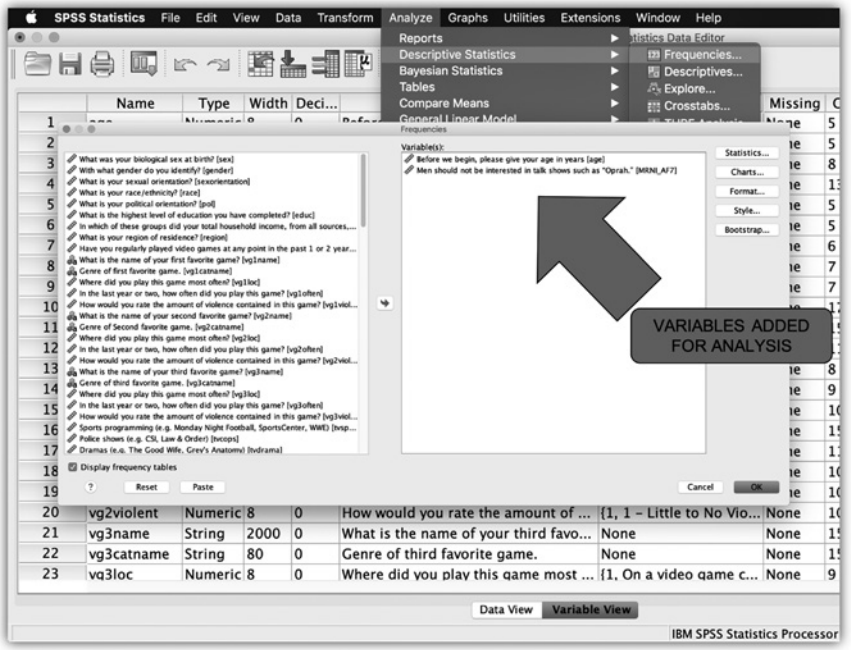

SPSS Statistics File Edit View Data Transform Analyze Graphs Utilities Extensions Window Help
Reports
Descriptive Statistics
Bayesian Statistics
Tables
Compare Means
Frequencies...
Descriptives...
Explore...
Crosstabs...
Frequencies
Variable(s):
Before we begin, please give your age in years [age]
Men should not be interested in talk shows such as "Oprah." [MRNI_AF7]
Statistics...
Charts...
Format...
Style...
Bootstrap...
VARIABLES ADDED FOR ANALYSIS
Display frequency tables
Reset
Paste
Cancel
OK
vg2violent Numeric 8 0 How would you rate the amount of ... {1, 1 – Little to No Vio... None
vg3name String 2000 0 What is the name of your third favo... None None
vg3catname String 80 0 Genre of third favorite game. None None
vg3loc Numeric 8 0 Where did you play this game most ... {1, On a video game c... None
Data View
Variable View
IBM SPSS Statistics Processor

Figure 9.2.4c Selected variables displayed

Source: Stephen Warren

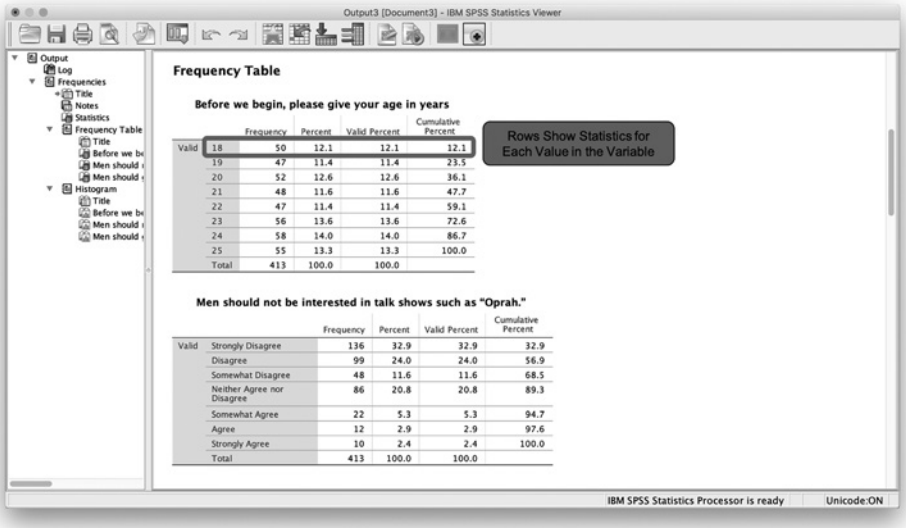

Output3 [Document3] - IBM SPSS Statistics Viewer
Output
Log
Frequencies
Title
Notes
Statistics
Frequency Table
Title
Before we be
Men should
Men should
Histogram
Title
Before we be
Men should
Men should
Frequency Table
Before we begin, please give your age in years
Frequency Percent Valid Percent Cumulative Percent
Valid 18 50 12.1 12.1 12.1
19 47 11.4 11.4 23.5
20 52 12.6 12.6 36.1
21 48 11.6 11.6 47.7
22 47 11.4 11.4 59.1
23 56 13.6 13.6 72.6
24 58 14.0 14.0 86.7
25 55 13.3 13.3 100.0
Total 413 100.0 100.0
Rows Show Statistics for Each Value in the Variable
Men should not be interested in talk shows such as "Oprah."
Frequency Percent Valid Percent Cumulative Percent
Valid Strongly Disagree 136 32.9 32.9 32.9
Disagree 99 24.0 24.0 56.9
Somewhat Disagree 48 11.6 11.6 68.5
Neither Agree nor Disagree 86 20.8 20.8 89.3
Somewhat Agree 22 5.3 5.3 94.7
Agree 12 2.9 2.9 97.6
Strongly Agree 10 2.4 2.4 100.0
Total 413 100.0 100.0
IBM SPSS Statistics Processor is ready
Unicode:ON

Figure 9.2.4d Output for Frequency tables

Source: Stephen Warren

You can see that the output gives you the frequency of each value for each of these variables as they occurred in the data, followed by three columns of percentages. The first is the simple percentage—calculated from the frequency compared to the sample size. The second is called the **valid percentage**, and in this case, it has taken any missing values into account. (In our examples, there are no missing values, so the first two percentage columns are exactly the same.) The final column is the cumulative percentage which displays how much of the sample has been accounted for as each new value is added to the last. The valid percent is what is most often reported, so that is the most important component of the output.

This would be a good time to practice running means and standard deviations on interval and ratio level data and frequencies on nominal and ordinal level data in SPSS. Use the descriptive statistics pull-down tab to find these functions, and explore, as well, the ways in which you can check for skewness or other properties of the data.

Scholar Spotlight: Dr. Shardé Davis

Shardé Davis is an assistant professor in the Department of Communication, Faculty Affiliate of the Africana Studies Institute and the Institute for Collaboration on Health, Intervention, and Policy (InCHIP) at the University of Connecticut. Dr. Davis (PhD, University of Iowa) is an interpersonal communication scholar who specializes in racial and gender identity, resistance, counter hegemony, resilience, and intra/intergroup

Figure 9.3.1 Scholar Spotlight: Dr. Shardé Davis

dynamics. She studies how identities, social forces, and cultural conditions interact to shape the ways in which Black women communicate with others.

Dr. Davis has published in *Communication Monographs*, *Human Communication Research*, *Journal of Social and Personal Relationships*, *Health Communication*, *Women's Studies in Communication*, and *Review of Communication*, among other outlets. She serves as the Chair of the African American Communication and Culture Division (AACCD) of the National Communication Association as well as for many non-profit organizations that support Black women and other people of color in the community.

Q: You use a wide variety of methodological approaches in your research. How do you decide what method to use for any given study?

Dr. Davis: I let the phenomenon of interest speak for itself. Meaning, I hone my research question(s) and think about which method will allow me to uncover and make more precise conclusions about Black women's authentic lived experiences, with a specific focus on their interpersonal communication practices. Establishing a program of research that is phenomenon-driven requires a bit of methodological versatility, and fortunately I leveraged my graduate program to take classes in a wide range of methods and analytical approaches so that I can be nimble during the research process, from study design to the composition of manuscripts. For example, the survey method allows me to gather data from a large and diverse sample of Black women and determine the extent

to which certain communication practices associate with identity-related phenomena (e.g., how Black women's regulation of strength at the group-level affects the conveyance of social support). Controlled experiments, on the other hand, allow me to identify causal relationships between Black women's unique communication style and important outcomes, such as psychological functioning, physiological responses, and self-esteem. Also, content analyses allow me to systematically code for the frequency of certain words or behaviors during an interaction to understand Black women's communication practices during micro-events. I can also content analyze the transcribed interaction and use language software (i.e., Linguistic Inquiry Word Count) to calculate the degree to which women use positive or negative emotions, self-references, and other linguistic dimensions.

Qualitative methods are also utilized in my work because these techniques privilege the voices of my informants. With this approach, I can inductively explore the communication narratives that are not fully understood or articulated by interpersonal scholars. While numerous social researchers employ qualitative methods, not all qualitative work is oriented toward social justice. In some of my research, however, I use qualitative methods that subscribe to the feminist method of inquiry. This primarily includes Black women participants narrating their own stories (instead of me making blind, objective observations) and infusing my values as a *resource* to the research. My primary qualitative methods are focus groups, in-depth quasi-structured interviews, and participant observation/video recall. Focus groups promote uninhibited interactions among Black women, which create an ideal environment to explore Black women's attitudes and beliefs. Participant observation and video recall are ideal methods for my work on collective communication practices because the women are demonstrating their communication behaviors in real time and in a more natural manner. Complementing observation with video recall allows the women to interpret the interaction from their viewpoint and ascribe meaning to their own behaviors.

I recognize that many scholars prioritize depth over breadth when it comes to learning and attuning their methodological skills. I have taken a different approach in my work. Black women's communication is inherently complex because their behaviors are a function of their racial-gendered identity, the macro- and micro-level discrimination they encounter because of these (and other) intersecting identities, and their marginal position in dominant society. The research needs to be approached with great creativity and innovation so that their communication behaviors are appropriately contextualized and interpreted.

Q: Do you think statistics or statistical analysis have a particular contribution to make to social justice efforts? Why?

Dr. Davis: Contrary to popular belief, quantitative methods and statistical analyses do not have to be the antithesis of social justice and feminist efforts, which collectively aim to destabilize power hierarchies and redistribute power and other resources in a more equitable fashion. Some feminist researchers even go as far as to recognize the merit of scientific methodology, specifically its predictive accuracy, testability, and technical analysis. They believe it "provides [scholars] with

valuable purchase in the dominant culture and access to the power of scientific resources" (Hundleby, 2012, p. 41). In my work, quantitative methods and statistical analyses are used strategically to challenge status quo research and identify the embeddedness of inequality within communication measures, statistical models, and theory. Other scholars use the strengths of science as a departure point to theorize about knowledge in ways that do not make gender, racial, or other biases and to "provide credible numbers that can help advocates mobilize political support" (Spalter-Roth & Hartmann, 1996, p. 221). All things considered, embracing the scientific tradition in communication research can provide the cachet to heighten consciousness about pertinent social issues and effect necessary change, making it a viable avenue for any justice-oriented, feminist, and/or critically-engaged scholar.

Q: In your view, what are the limits to using statistical analysis for social justice? What should scholars using statistics try to do/not do or try to keep in mind in order to be critically conscious?

Dr. Davis: Indeed, there are some glaring challenges in using quantitative methods and statistical analysis in social justice research. But any scholar can maneuver these challenges by being thoughtful and intentional about each decision made during the research process. I situate my comments under the work of prior feminist social scientists.

Social science research from a (post)positivistic perspective subscribes to the logic of scientific inquiry and the tenets of objectivity, verification, and generalizability. Relatedly, (post) positivists believe that they can make neutral, universal scientific claims about the social world when they follow certain methodological protocol, such as separating the researcher's feelings and emotions from the subject. Abiding by this protocol allows science to be logical and rational. Also, (post) positivist research is typically conducted in male/White-dominated social spaces and, consequently, focuses on White/male-centered problems.

Feminist scholars reject the notion that the researcher should be removed from the data and have posed long-standing critiques that (post)positivistic research, specifically its commitment toward an objective study of the natural world by separating empirical knowledge from the politics of communities, excludes diverse sources of experience (Hesse-Biber, 2012; Hundleby, 2012). Instead, feminist scholars advocate for a more reflexive and relational approach to knowledge building, whereby researchers negotiate their positionality, engage informants in conversation about their personal experiences, and address the power imbalances. Knowledge is situated and fluid; thus feminist researchers should seek new ways to transform how it is conducted.

Feminists also believe that post-positivist research attends to the concerns and social values of dominant social groups (i.e., White Americans, middle/upper class, men) and ignores the concerns of minority groups (i.e., communities of color, lower/working class, women), thereby stifling the potential for "break through conceptualizations" of non-dominant social experiences (McHugh, Koeske, & Frieze, 1986, p. 879). If the scientific paradigm is laden with power, then the neutrality and universality of scientific research is called into question. This discrepancy prompted many feminists to assert that the scientific model cannot serve as an objective approach to knowledge building because the claims are based on distorted data (Hesse-Biber & Piatelli, 2012). Scholars who wish

to pursue research at the margins should recruit people from underrepresented groups into research studies because that allows for a variety of voices and research issues to be centered and, thus, produces more trustworthy data.

Q: What advice would you give an emerging scholar who would like to work toward making their research matter?

Dr. Davis: My advice to emerging scholars is to follow your gut and create knowledge that sits well with your soul. Sometimes doing so will mean that you produce work that is challenged or even undermined by your colleagues. But keep going. In the early parts of my career, scholars did not understand why my interdisciplinary and critically inflected approach to research on Black women was necessary. But the scholarly conversation has since shifted, and those same colleagues now realize the value of my work and how it enhances the area of interpersonal communication and the larger field. I would not have reached this point in my career if I listened to the nay-sayers and did work that cohered with the dominant trend. I encourage any budding scholar to let your gut guide the decisions you make because I believe it will never steer you in the wrong direction. With that said, pursuing research that is socially meaningful and transformative may require methodological versatility and theoretical diversity. Part of the reason is because (post)positivism has been considered the dominant paradigm in the social sciences, and not surprisingly its research and theories typically constitute the "mainstream." A bias toward this kind of work means that standards for "good science" privilege (post)positivist research designs, methods, samples (including sample size), and analyses, which can stymie work "at the margins." While (post) positivism has some merit and value, scholars should not be afraid to exercise agency and deviate from certain empirical standards when other bodies of work call for a pivot (i.e., critical cultural studies, race studies, feminist studies, research on social justice, and grassroots activism). Embracing methodological creativity and digressing from the theoretical canon extends ripe opportunities for researchers to discover ideas that would not have been realized otherwise.

Data Reduction and Transformation

After you have investigated your variables one by one, you may want to transform them or combine them in some ways before moving on to bivariate and multivariate analyses. We will discuss four very common ways to change your variables to make them more useful in subsequent analyses. For each of these transformations, we will introduce situations in which you might consider using these approaches.

Recode

First, a very useful SPSS function is **recode**. Using the recode function, you can change the values from a variable into new values, and SPSS will either replace the first variable with this new one (using the function called Recode Into Same Variables) or save them both (Recode Into Different Variables). Recoding is useful when you want to collapse data from many categories into fewer categories. For instance, if you measured political ideology from 1 = very conservative to 7 = very liberal, as was the case in the sample data set (and as seen in

Figure 9.4.1), perhaps there were very few respondents who identified as 1s or 7s. In order to have fewer categories with more people in each, then, you might want to change from seven values for political ideology to three by collapsing those who had responded with a 1 or a 2 with those who had responded with a 3, and by collapsing those who had responded with a 6 or a 7 with those who had responded with a 5. In doing so, we put those who were "very liberal" as well as those who were "slightly liberal" together with those who simply said they were "liberal," and we would do the same for the "conservative" values, as well.

This function can be found under the Transform tab, as you can see in Figure 9.4.2. That opens up a new dialog box, as you can see in Figure 9.4.3, in which you select the original variable for political ideology from the entire list of variables using the little arrow, which will then make that variable populate the left-hand side of the new dialog box. The next step is to give the new variable you are creating through the recoding of political ideology a name and a label. In this case, we have chosen to call it pol_recode, Political Ideology Recoded, as you can see in Figure 9.4.4. After naming and labeling the new variable you are creating, you click Change.

Next, you click Old and New Values, as seen in Figure 9.4.5. That brings up the dialog box you see in Figure 9.4.6, in which you proceed to tell SPSS how to handle every value from the original variable in the formation of the newly recoded variable. For instance, we would tell SPSS that a value of 1 for the original variable, Political Ideology, is also a 1 in the new variable, Political Ideology Recoded. A value of 2 in the original variable is a 1 in the new variable, and a value of 3 in the original is also a 1. The original 4 value (which was the midpoint in the original 7-point measure) now becomes a 2 (the midpoint in the new three-point measure). The original 5 becomes a 3, as do the original 6 and 7. If there were any missing values, identified in the dialog box as System Missing and in the output as SYSMIS, you would once again have to tell SPSS how to handle the missing data in the new variable. Once this process is accomplished, as seen in Figure 9.4.8, you hit Continue and SPSS creates the new variable, Political Ideology Recoded.

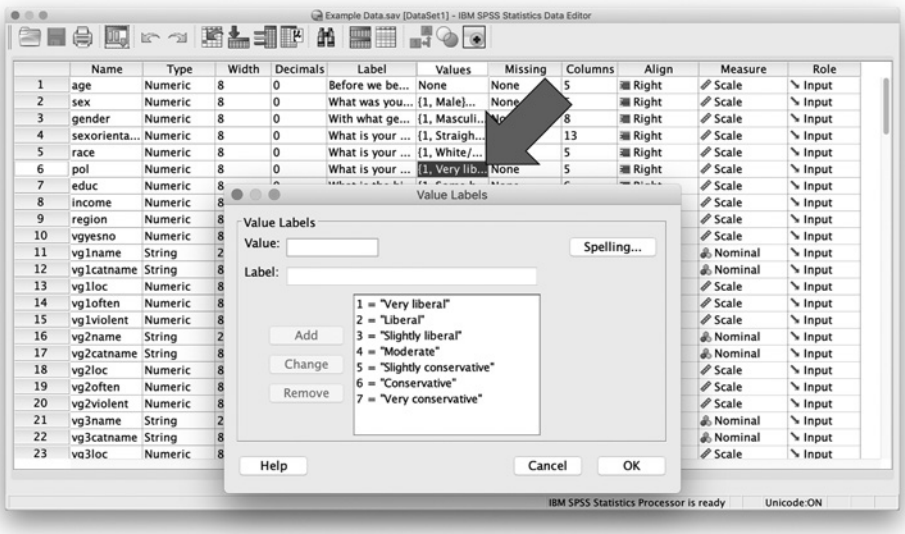

Example Data.sav [DataSet1] - IBM SPSS Statistics Data Editor
Name
Type
Width
Decimals
Label
Values
Missing
Columns
Align
Measure
Role
1 age Numeric 8 0 Before we be... None None 5 Right Scale Input
2 sex Numeric 8 0 What was you... {1, Male}... None Right Scale Input
3 gender Numeric 8 0 With what ge... {1, Masculi... 8 Right Scale Input
4 sexorienta... Numeric 8 0 What is your ... {1, Straigh... 13 Right Scale Input
5 race Numeric 8 0 What is your ... {1, White/... 5 Right Scale Input
6 pol Numeric 8 0 What is your ... {1, Very lib... None 5 Right Scale Input
Value Labels
Value Labels
Value:
Label:
Spelling...
1 = "Very liberal"
2 = "Liberal"
3 = "Slightly liberal"
4 = "Moderate"
5 = "Slightly conservative"
6 = "Conservative"
7 = "Very conservative"
Add
Change
Remove
Help
Cancel
OK
IBM SPSS Statistics Processor is ready
Unicode:ON

Figure 9.4.1 The existing values for a selected variable

Source: Stephen Warren

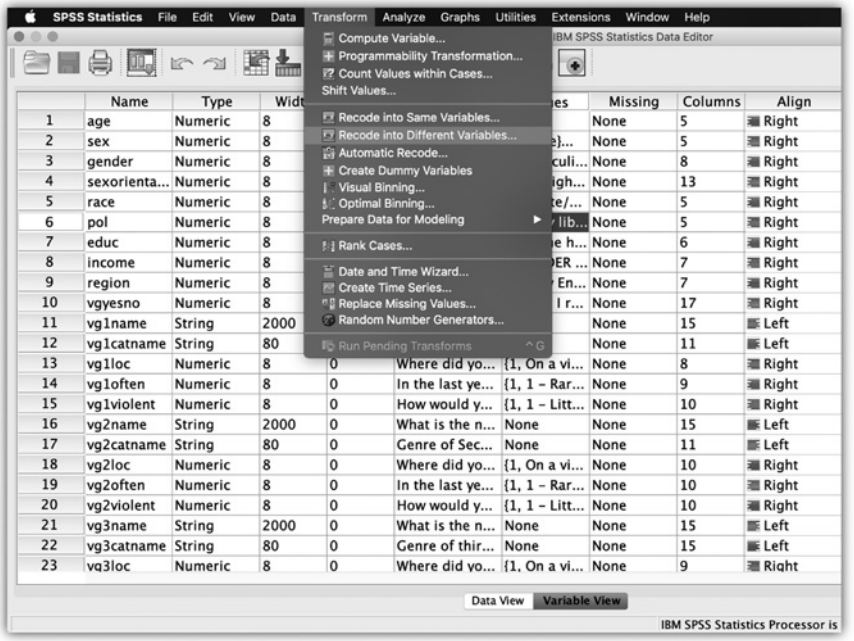

SPSS Statistics File Edit View Data Transform Analyze Graphs Utilities Extensions Window Help
IBM SPSS Statistics Data Editor
Compute Variable...
Programmability Transformation...
Count Values within Cases...
Shift Values...
Recode into Same Variables...
Recode into Different Variables...
Automatic Recode...
Create Dummy Variables
Visual Binning...
Optimal Binning...
Prepare Data for Modeling
Rank Cases...
Date and Time Wizard...
Create Time Series...
Replace Missing Values...
Random Number Generators...
Run Pending Transforms ^G
Name Type Missing Columns Align
1 age Numeric None 5 Right
2 sex Numeric None 5 Right
3 gender Numeric None 8 Right
4 sexorienta... Numeric None 13 Right
5 race Numeric None 5 Right
6 pol Numeric None 5 Right
7 educ Numeric None 6 Right
8 income Numeric None 7 Right
9 region Numeric None 7 Right
10 vgyesno Numeric None 17 Right
11 vg1name String 2000 None 15 Left
12 vg1catname String 80 None 11 Left
13 vg1loc Numeric 8 0 Where did yo... {1, On a vi... None 8 Right
14 vg1often Numeric 8 0 In the last ye... {1, 1 - Rar... None 9 Right
15 vg1violent Numeric 8 0 How would y... {1, 1 - Litt... None 10 Right
16 vg2name String 2000 0 What is the n... None None 15 Left
17 vg2catname String 80 0 Genre of Sec... None None 11 Left
18 vg2loc Numeric 8 0 Where did yo... {1, On a vi... None 10 Right
19 vg2often Numeric 8 0 In the last ye... {1, 1 - Rar... None 10 Right
20 vg2violent Numeric 8 0 How would y... {1, 1 - Litt... None 10 Right
21 vg3name String 2000 0 What is the n... None None 15 Left
22 vg3catname String 80 0 Genre of thir... None None 15 Left
23 vg3loc Numeric 8 0 Where did yo... {1, On a vi... None 9 Right
Data View Variable View
IBM SPSS Statistics Processor is

Figure 9.4.2 The Recode into Different Variables command

Source: Stephen Warren

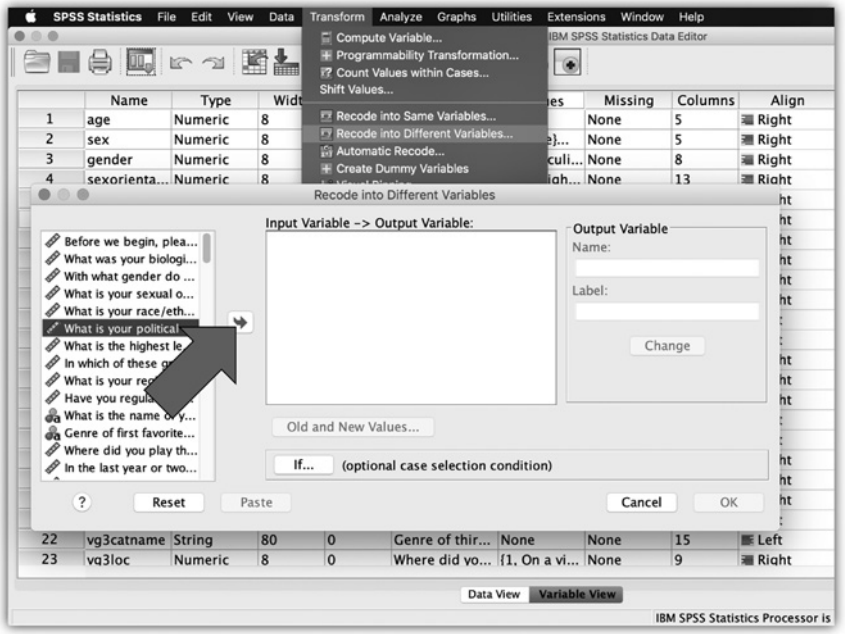
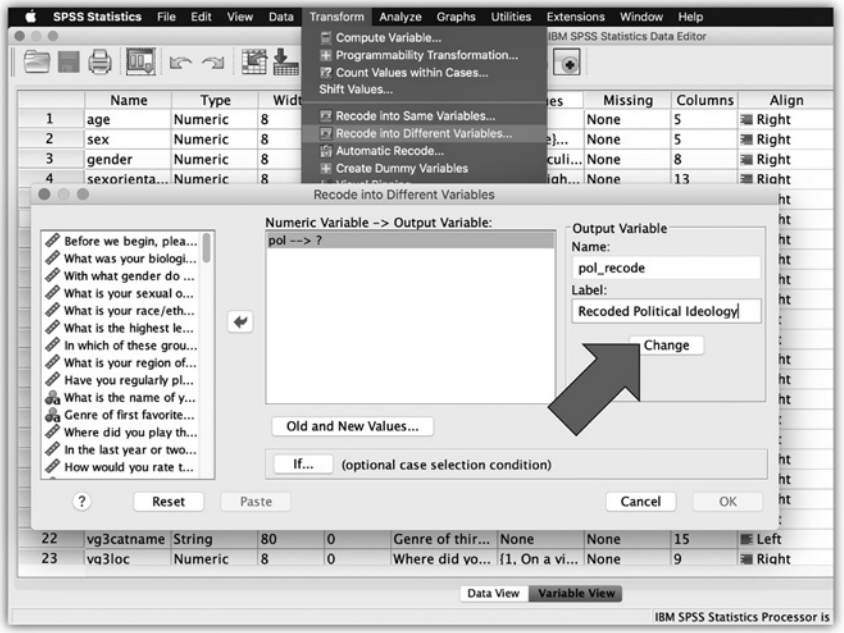

SPSS Statistics File Edit View Data Transform Analyze Graphs Utilities Extensions Window Help
IBM SPSS Statistics Data Editor
Compute Variable...
Programmability Transformation...
Count Values within Cases...
Shift Values...
Recode into Same Variables...
Recode into Different Variables...
Automatic Recode...
Create Dummy Variables
Recode into Different Variables
Input Variable -> Output Variable:
Output Variable
Name:
Label:
Change
Before we begin, plea...
What was your biologi...
With what gender do ...
What is your sexual o...
What is your race/eth...
What is your political...
What is the highest le...
In which of these g...
What is your re...
Have you regul...
What is the name of y...
Genre of first favorite...
Where did you play th...
In the last year or two...
Old and New Values...
If... (optional case selection condition)
Reset Paste Cancel OK
22 vg3catname String 80 0 Genre of thir... None None 15 Left
23 vg3loc Numeric 8 0 Where did yo... {1, On a vi... None 9 Right
Data View Variable View
IBM SPSS Statistics Processor is

Figure 9.4.3 Select the variable to recode

Source: Stephen Warren



9.4.4 Name and label the new variable being created

Source: Stephen Warren

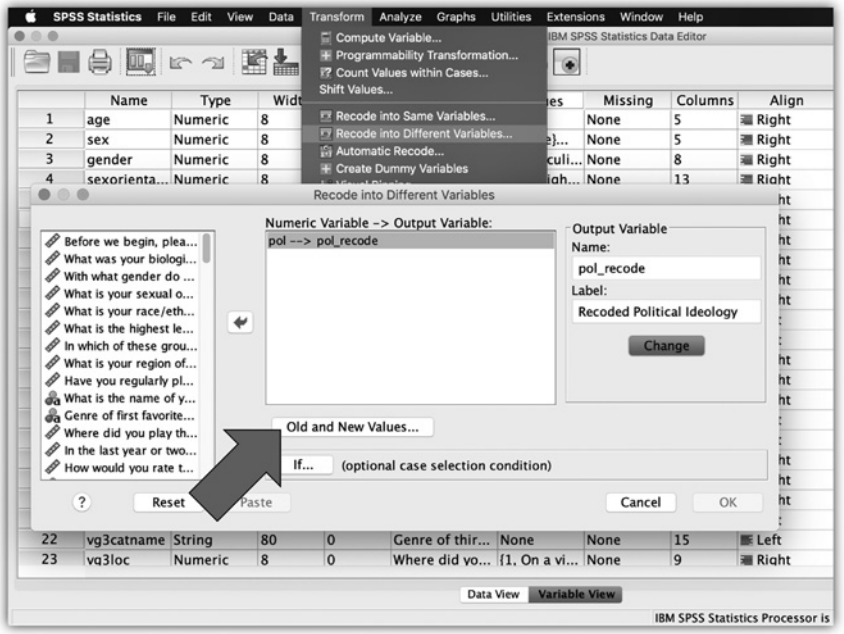


Figure 9.4.5 Click to insert old and new values

Source: Stephen Warren

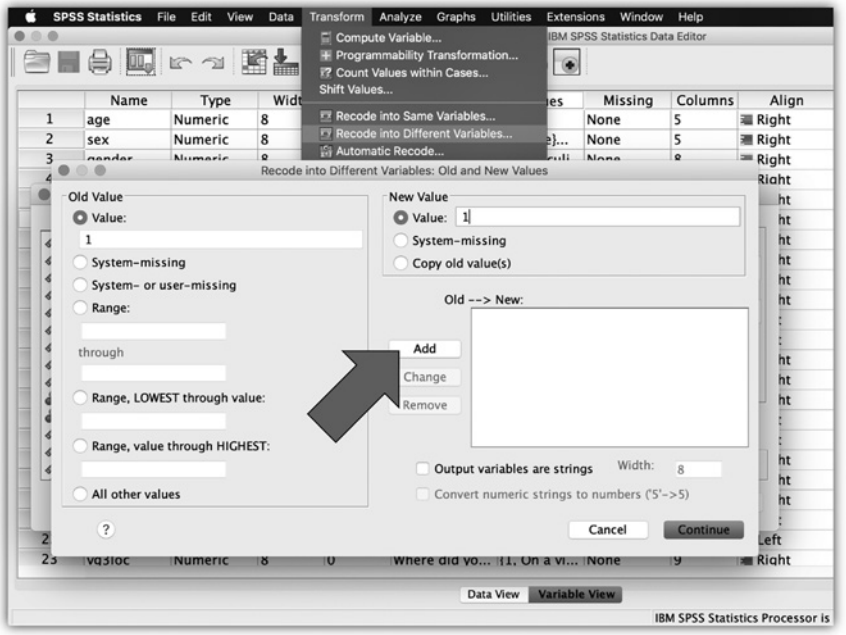


Figure 9.4.6 In this example, a value of 1 on the initial variable remains a 1 for the new variable
Source: Stephen Warren

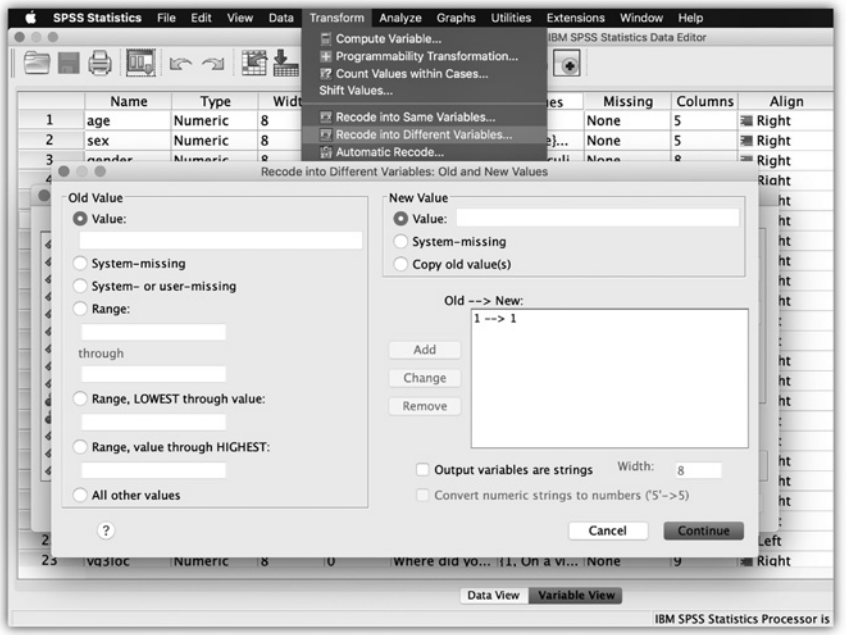


Figure 9.4.7 The old and new values specified will appear in the dialog box
Source: Stephen Warren

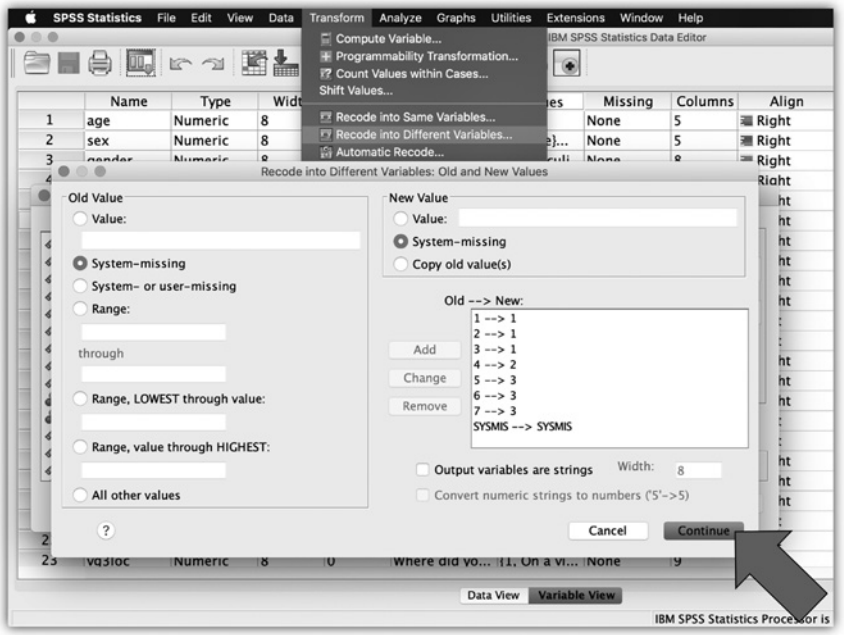


Figure 9.4.8 The dialog box now shows all of the old and new values that were created step by step

Source: Stephen Warren

Figure 9.4.9 SPSS is now ready to create the new, recoded variable

Source: Stephen Warren

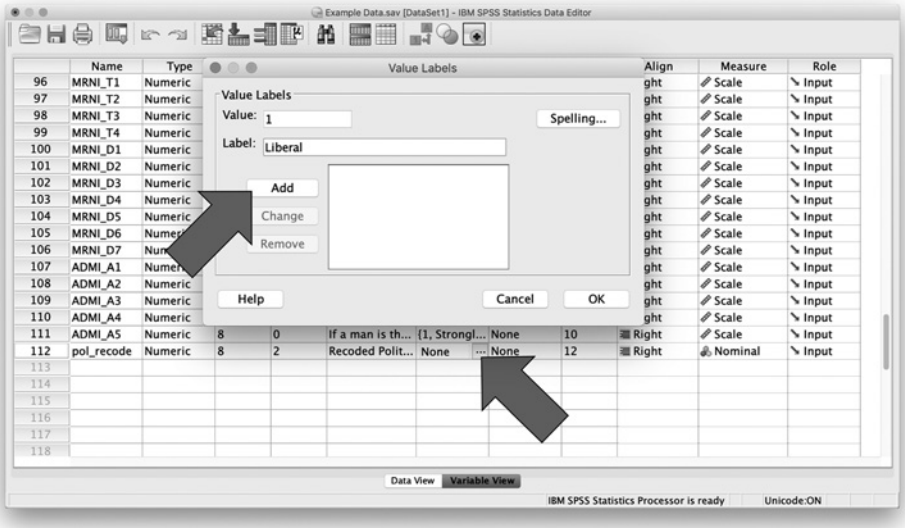


Figure 9.4.10 Add labels for the newly created recoded variable

Source: Stephen Warren

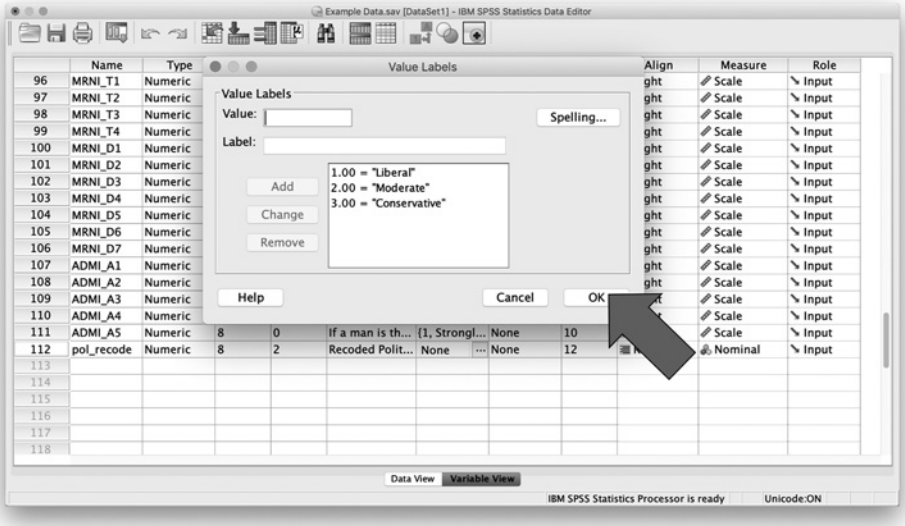


Figure 9.4.11 The final step in recoding

Source: Stephen Warren

As you can see in Figure 9.4.9, however, you do need to enter labels for the new values of the newly created variable and then click OK (Figure 9.4.10 and Figure 9.4.11). It is a good idea to run a frequency test on the newly created variable to make sure it has been formed properly, as is shown in Figure 9.4.12. Finally, Figure 9.4.13 shows the frequency table for the original variable alongside the frequency table for the new variable, and you can see how the data were collapsed from the larger number of categories with fewer responses in each to a smaller number of categories with more responses.

Creating an Index and Testing Its Reliability

As you learned in Chapter 3 on measuring variables, often researchers use a number of items to measure the same concept. Doing so improves reliability and validity. Rather than using every single one of those items in subsequent statistical analyses, researchers typically want to fold them all into one, simple, easy-to-use measure. If the multiple items all measure the same concept, then you are justified in combining them into a single measure. For instance, there are existing scales to measure Islamophobia, consisting of multiple items all designed to

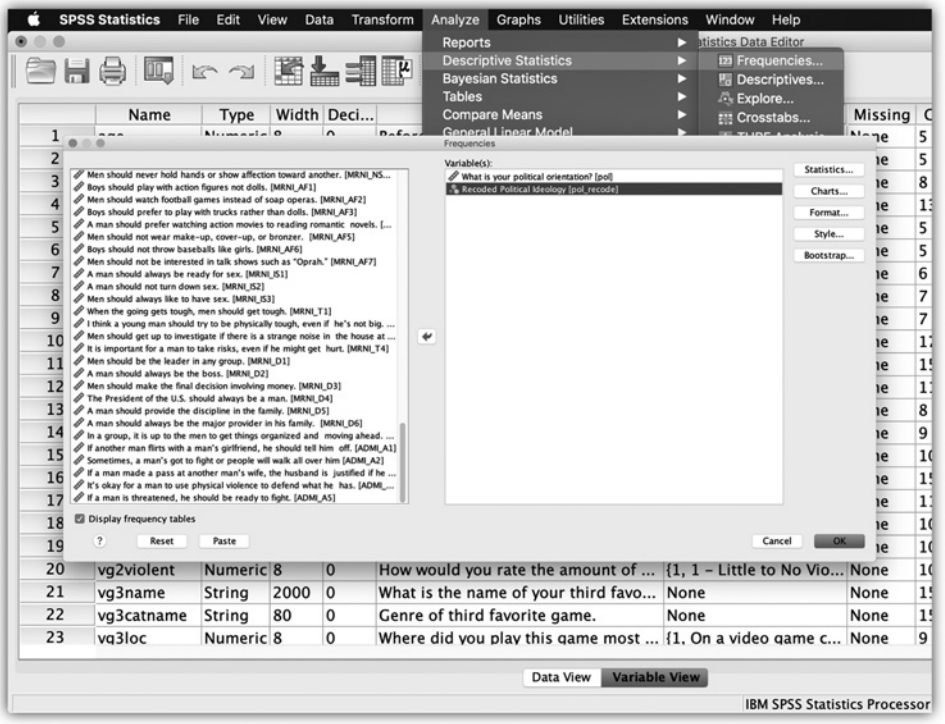

SPSS Statistics File Edit View Data Transform Analyze Graphs Utilities Extensions Window Help
Reports
Descriptive Statistics
Bayesian Statistics
Tables
Compare Means
General Linear Model
Frequencies...
Descriptives...
Explore...
Crosstabs...
Name Type Width Deci... Missing
Frequencies
Variable(s):
What is your political orientation? [pol]
Recoded Political Ideology [pol_recode]
Statistics...
Charts...
Format...
Style...
Bootstrap...
Display frequency tables
Reset
Paste
Cancel
OK
20 vg2violent Numeric 8 0 How would you rate the amount of ... {1, 1 – Little to No Vio... None
21 vg3name String 2000 0 What is the name of your third favo... None None
22 vg3catname String 80 0 Genre of third favorite game. None None
23 vg3loc Numeric 8 0 Where did you play this game most ... {1, On a video game c... None
Data View
Variable View
IBM SPSS Statistics Processor

Figure 9.4.12 Select the initial variable and the newly created recoded variable to run frequency tests

Source: Stephen Warren

Frequency Table

What is your political orientation?

		Frequency	Percent	Valid Percent	Cumulative Percent
Valid	Very liberal	32	7.7	7.7	7.7
	Liberal	66	16.0	16.0	23.7
	Slightly liberal	38	9.2	9.2	32.9
	Moderate	193	46.7	46.7	79.7
	Slightly conservative	30	7.3	7.3	86.9
	Conservative	37	9.0	9.0	95.9
	Very conservative	17	4.1	4.1	100.0
	Total	413	100.0	100.0	

Recoded Political Ideology

		Frequency	Percent	Valid Percent	Cumulative Percent
Valid	Liberal	136	32.9	32.9	32.9
	Moderate	193	46.7	46.7	79.7
	Conservative	84	20.3	20.3	100.0
	Total	413	100.0	100.0	

Figure 9.4.13 Frequencies for the initial variable and the recoded variable

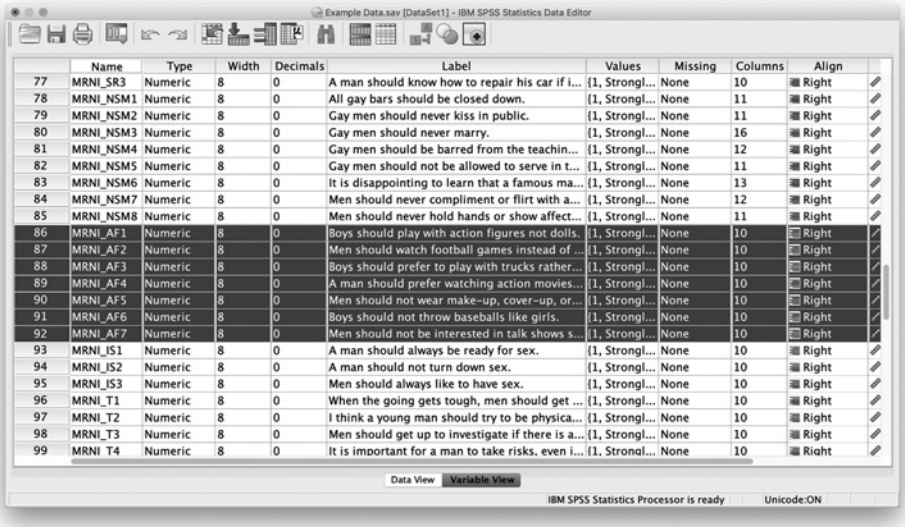
Source: Stephen Warren

tap into the phenomenon. In order to fold them all together to come up with a composite measure for Islamophobia, we must first test whether such a composite measure is reliable. A **composite measure** is what we call any measure that is made up of multiple measures. An *index* (a term often used interchangeably with *scale*) is a commonly used composite measure.

SPSS has a function called **Reliability Analysis** in which you can select all of the items that you used to measure a single concept (like Islamophobia). When you run a reliability analysis, the SPSS output will give you a score for **Cronbach's alpha** (or Cronbach's α). Cronbach's alpha ranges from 0 to 1.0, and the higher the value, the more reliably the items comprising the index hang together to capture the concept. Generally, you will want the Cronbach's alpha coefficient to be .65 or higher in order for the index to be considered reliable. If you get a result that is lower than that, rather than combine the items into a composite measure, you should perform your statistical analyses using the individual items themselves. It will be less parsimonious because there are multiple tests to run using each of the individual items rather than just one composite variable, but it is necessary if the multiple items do not hang together reliably.

The next set of screenshot visuals from SPSS shows how to test whether multiple items cohere reliably together. This is an important first step before actually combining the multiple items into an index. First, as you can see in Figure 9.5.1, you select Analyze→ Scale→ Reliability analysis. In the example we are providing from the sample data set, we are selecting the seven items that are designed to measure the Avoidance of Femininity component of the Masculine Roles and Norms Index-Revised, as you can see in Figures 9.5.2 and 9.5.3. In Figure 9.5.4, you can see the dialog box that this function produces and how to bring the seven selected items over to the top right. Next, you click the Statistics button and then ask for Descriptives for Item, Scale, and Scale if Item Removed, and hit Continue, as is apparent in Figures 9.5.5 and 9.5.6. Figures 9.5.7 and 9.5.8 show the output that SPSS creates when you enter these commands. The Item Statistics box shows the means and standard deviations for all of the seven items selected as well as the sample size (number of respondents who provided valid data for each item). The most important component of the output is the Reliability box, and the most important part of that box is the part we have highlighted. Once again, the reliability statistic is Cronbach's alpha, and the closer that number is to 1.0, the more reliably the items in the analysis cohere around a single concept. In our case, then, the Cronbach's alpha is .929, which would round to .93, which easily surpasses the .65 threshold considered sufficient for reliability. This is good news, then, for how well the seven items in question measure the Avoidance of Femininity concept, and it means that in subsequent analyses, rather than use seven separate variables, we can combine these seven into a composite measure, an index, and simply use that single index to represent all seven items.

There is one last detail to report from the output, and that is indicated by the box around the "Cronbach's alpha if item deleted" portion. This column of numbers shows us whether dropping one of the seven items would increase the reliability of the items that remain. In other words, perhaps six of the seven items do a good job of measuring the Avoidance of


Example Data.sav [DataSet1] - IBM SPSS Statistics Data Editor
Data View
Variable View
IBM SPSS Statistics Processor is ready
Unicode:ON

	Name	Type	Width	Decimals	Label	Values	Missing	Columns	Align
77	MRNI_SR3	Numeric	8	0	A man should know how to repair his car if i...	{1, Strongl...	None	10	Right
78	MRNI_NSM1	Numeric	8	0	All gay bars should be closed down.	{1, Strongl...	None	11	Right
79	MRNI_NSM2	Numeric	8	0	Gay men should never kiss in public.	{1, Strongl...	None	11	Right
80	MRNI_NSM3	Numeric	8	0	Gay men should never marry.	{1, Strongl...	None	16	Right
81	MRNI_NSM4	Numeric	8	0	Gay men should be barred from the teachin...	{1, Strongl...	None	12	Right
82	MRNI_NSM5	Numeric	8	0	Gay men should not be allowed to serve in t...	{1, Strongl...	None	11	Right
83	MRNI_NSM6	Numeric	8	0	It is disappointing to learn that a famous ma...	{1, Strongl...	None	13	Right
84	MRNI_NSM7	Numeric	8	0	Men should never compliment or flirt with a...	{1, Strongl...	None	12	Right
85	MRNI_NSM8	Numeric	8	0	Men should never hold hands or show affect...	{1, Strongl...	None	11	Right
86	MRNI_AF1	Numeric	8	0	Boys should play with action figures not dolls.	{1, Strongl...	None	10	Right
87	MRNI_AF2	Numeric	8	0	Men should watch football games instead of ...	{1, Strongl...	None	10	Right
88	MRNI_AF3	Numeric	8	0	Boys should prefer to play with trucks rather...	{1, Strongl...	None	10	Right
89	MRNI_AF4	Numeric	8	0	A man should prefer watching action movies...	{1, Strongl...	None	10	Right
90	MRNI_AF5	Numeric	8	0	Men should not wear make-up, cover-up, or...	{1, Strongl...	None	10	Right
91	MRNI_AF6	Numeric	8	0	Boys should not throw baseballs like girls.	{1, Strongl...	None	10	Right
92	MRNI_AF7	Numeric	8	0	Men should not be interested in talk shows s...	{1, Strongl...	None	10	Right
93	MRNI_IS1	Numeric	8	0	A man should always be ready for sex.	{1, Strongl...	None	10	Right
94	MRNI_IS2	Numeric	8	0	A man should not turn down sex.	{1, Strongl...	None	10	Right
95	MRNI_IS3	Numeric	8	0	Men should always like to have sex.	{1, Strongl...	None	10	Right
96	MRNI_T1	Numeric	8	0	When the going gets tough, men should get ...	{1, Strongl...	None	10	Right
97	MRNI_T2	Numeric	8	0	I think a young man should try to be physica...	{1, Strongl...	None	10	Right
98	MRNI_T3	Numeric	8	0	Men should get up to investigate if there is a...	{1, Strongl...	None	10	Right
99	MRNI_T4	Numeric	8	0	It is important for a man to take risks, even i...	{1, Strongl...	None	10	Right

Figure 9.5.1 The variables comprising the Avoidance of Femininity component of the scale

Source: Stephen Warren

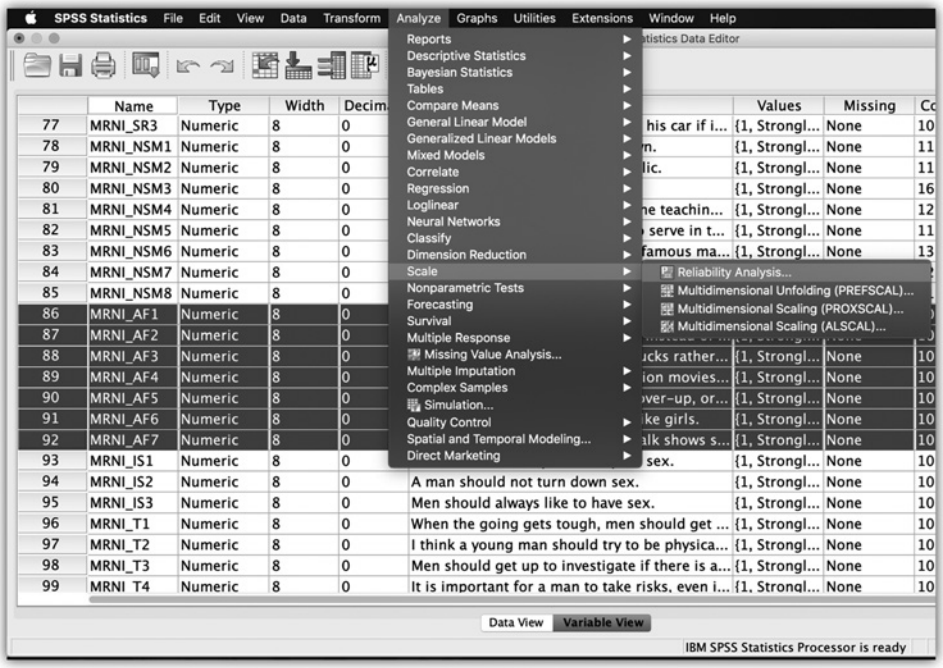

SPSS Statistics File Edit View Data Transform Analyze Graphs Utilities Extensions Window Help
Reports
Descriptive Statistics
Bayesian Statistics
Tables
Compare Means
General Linear Model
Generalized Linear Models
Mixed Models
Correlate
Regression
Loglinear
Neural Networks
Classify
Dimension Reduction
Scale
Nonparametric Tests
Forecasting
Survival
Multiple Response
Missing Value Analysis...
Multiple Imputation
Complex Samples
Simulation...
Quality Control
Spatial and Temporal Modeling...
Direct Marketing
Reliability Analysis...
Multidimensional Unfolding (PREFSCAL)...
Multidimensional Scaling (PROXSCAL)...
Multidimensional Scaling (ALSCAL)...
Name Type Width Decim Values Missing
77 MRNI_SR3 Numeric 8 0 {1, Strongl... None
78 MRNI_NSM1 Numeric 8 0 {1, Strongl... None
79 MRNI_NSM2 Numeric 8 0 {1, Strongl... None
80 MRNI_NSM3 Numeric 8 0 {1, Strongl... None
81 MRNI_NSM4 Numeric 8 0 {1, Strongl... None
82 MRNI_NSM5 Numeric 8 0 {1, Strongl... None
83 MRNI_NSM6 Numeric 8 0 {1, Strongl... None
84 MRNI_NSM7 Numeric 8 0
85 MRNI_NSM8 Numeric 8 0
86 MRNI_AF1 Numeric 8 0
87 MRNI_AF2 Numeric 8 0
88 MRNI_AF3 Numeric 8 0 {1, Strongl... None
89 MRNI_AF4 Numeric 8 0 {1, Strongl... None
90 MRNI_AF5 Numeric 8 0 {1, Strongl... None
91 MRNI_AF6 Numeric 8 0 {1, Strongl... None
92 MRNI_AF7 Numeric 8 0 {1, Strongl... None
93 MRNI_IS1 Numeric 8 0 {1, Strongl... None
94 MRNI_IS2 Numeric 8 0 A man should not turn down sex. {1, Strongl... None
95 MRNI_IS3 Numeric 8 0 Men should always like to have sex. {1, Strongl... None
96 MRNI_T1 Numeric 8 0 When the going gets tough, men should get ... {1, Strongl... None
97 MRNI_T2 Numeric 8 0 I think a young man should try to be physica... {1, Strongl... None
98 MRNI_T3 Numeric 8 0 Men should get up to investigate if there is a... {1, Strongl... None
99 MRNI_T4 Numeric 8 0 It is important for a man to take risks, even i... {1, Strongl... None
Data View Variable View
IBM SPSS Statistics Processor is ready

Figure 9.5.2 The Reliability command in SPSS

Source: Stephen Warren

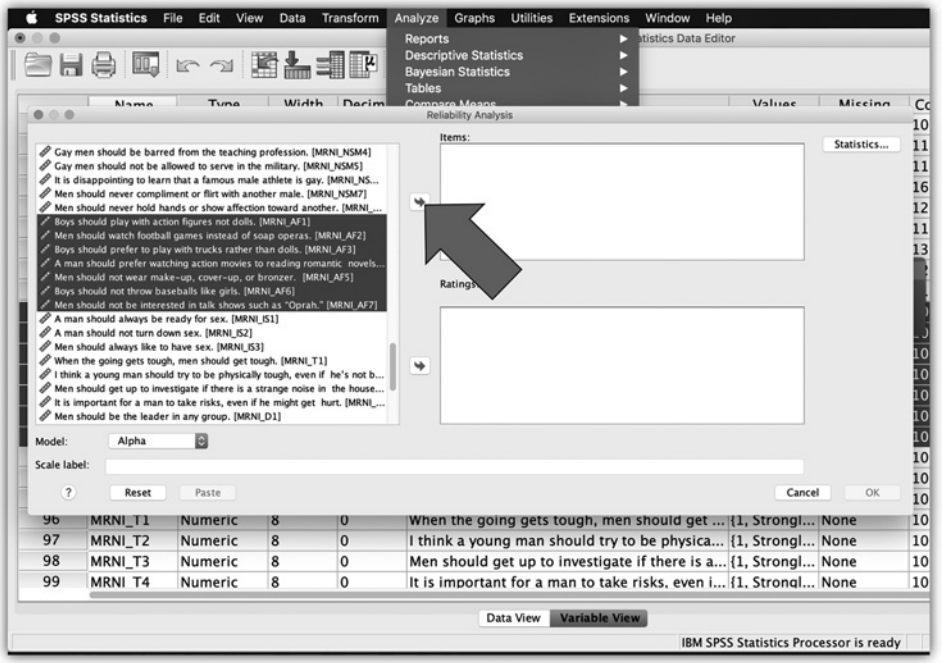

SPSS Statistics File Edit View Data Transform Analyze Graphs Utilities Extensions Window Help
Reports
Descriptive Statistics
Bayesian Statistics
Tables
Reliability Analysis
Items:
Statistics...
Gay men should be barred from the teaching profession. [MRNI_NSM4]
Gay men should not be allowed to serve in the military. [MRNI_NSM5]
It is disappointing to learn that a famous male athlete is gay. [MRNI_NS...
Men should never compliment or flirt with another male. [MRNI_NSM7]
Men should never hold hands or show affection toward another. [MRNI_...
Boys should play with action figures not dolls. [MRNI_AF1]
Men should watch football games instead of soap operas. [MRNI_AF2]
Boys should prefer to play with trucks rather than dolls. [MRNI_AF3]
A man should prefer watching action movies to reading romantic novels...
Men should not wear make-up, cover-up, or bronzer. [MRNI_AF5]
Boys should not throw baseballs like girls. [MRNI_AF6]
Men should not be interested in talk shows such as "Oprah." [MRNI_AF7]
A man should always be ready for sex. [MRNI_IS1]
A man should not turn down sex. [MRNI_IS2]
Men should always like to have sex. [MRNI_IS3]
When the going gets tough, men should get tough. [MRNI_T1]
I think a young man should try to be physically tough, even if he's not b...
Men should get up to investigate if there is a strange noise in the house...
It is important for a man to take risks, even if he might get hurt. [MRNI_...
Men should be the leader in any group. [MRNI_D1]
Rating:
Model: Alpha
Scale label:
Reset Paste Cancel OK
96 MRNI_T1 Numeric 8 0 When the going gets tough, men should get ... {1, Strongl... None
97 MRNI_T2 Numeric 8 0 I think a young man should try to be physica... {1, Strongl... None
98 MRNI_T3 Numeric 8 0 Men should get up to investigate if there is a... {1, Strongl... None
99 MRNI_T4 Numeric 8 0 It is important for a man to take risks, even i... {1, Strongl... None
Data View Variable View
IBM SPSS Statistics Processor is ready

Figure 9.5.3 Select variables from the left

Source: Stephen Warren

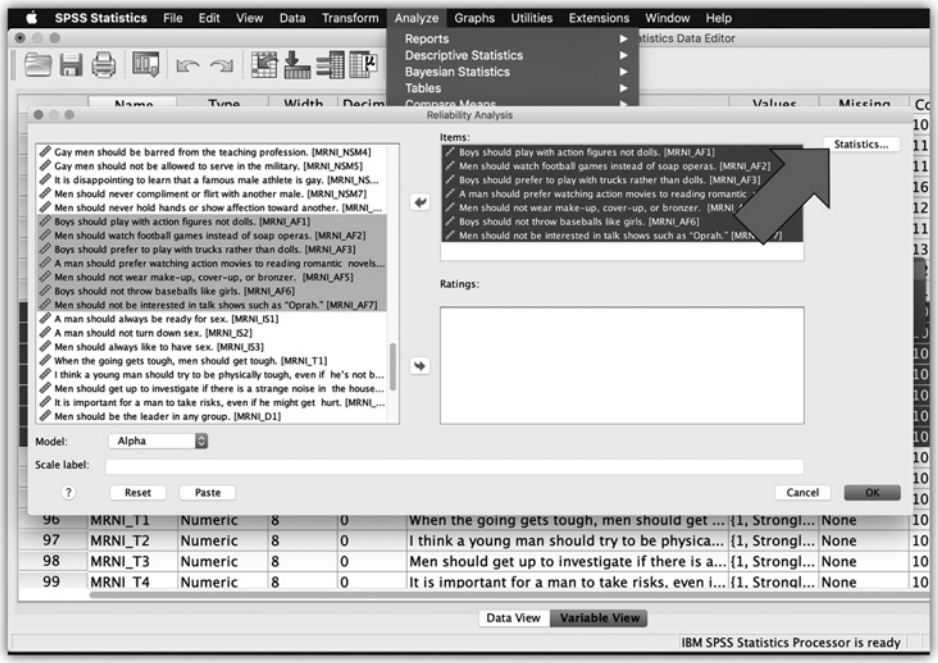


Figure 9.5.4 The selected variables and the Statistics command

Source: Stephen Warren

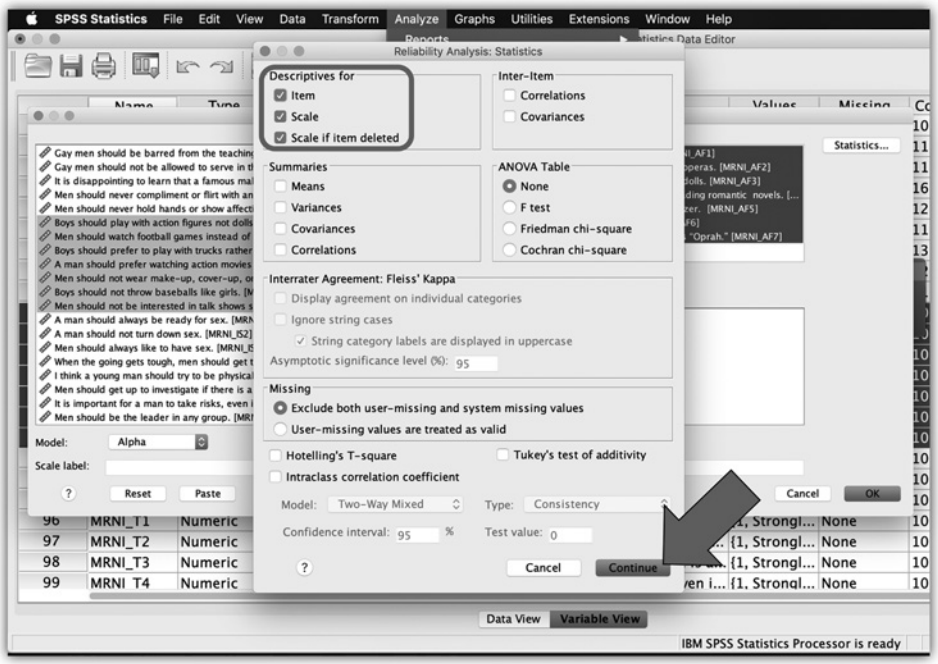
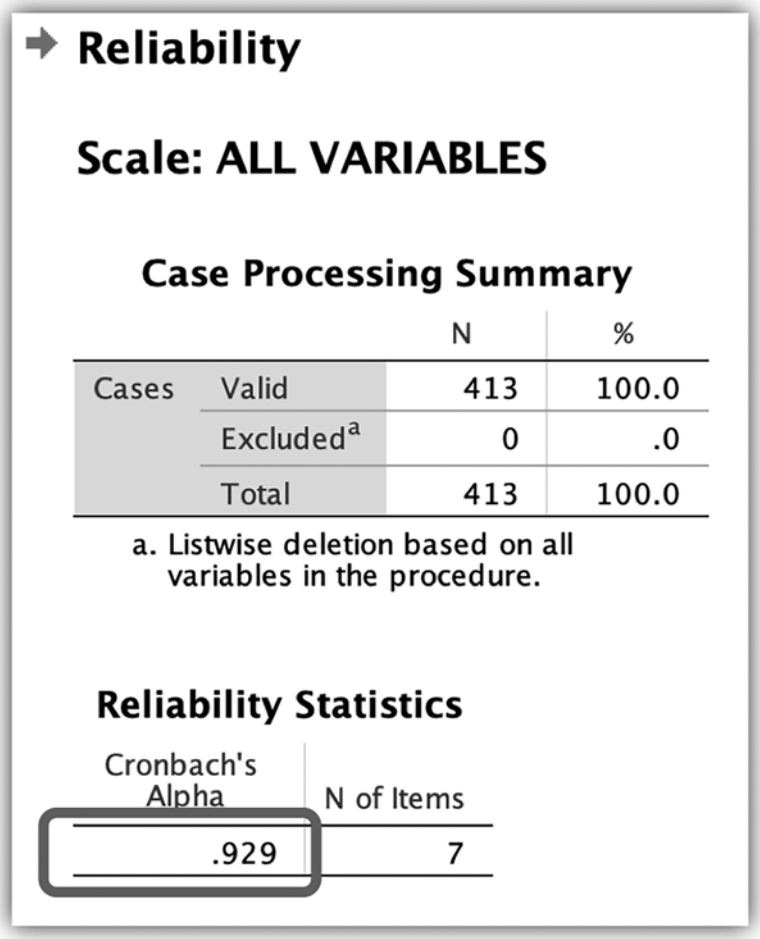


Figure 9.5.5 Options to choose in the test for the reliability of a scale

Source: Stephen Warren



Reliability

Scale: ALL VARIABLES

Case Processing Summary

		N	%
Cases	Valid	413	100.0
	Excluded[a]	0	.0
	Total	413	100.0

a. Listwise deletion based on all variables in the procedure.

Reliability Statistics

Cronbach's Alpha	N of Items
.929	7

Figure 9.5.6 Output for the Reliability test

Source: Stephen Warren

Femininity concept, but one does not. If that were the case, then, dropping that one would increase the Cronbach's alpha score. In our example, however, as you can see, that is not the case. None of the seven items should be dropped because doing so would only *decrease* the Cronbach's alpha, and, therefore, lower the reliability of the subsequent index rather than increase it.

Compute

Although we have organized this next function under a new subheading, it actually connects directly back to the earlier discussion about forming an index (and so we've numbered the

Item Statistics

	Mean	Std. Deviation	N
Boys should play with action figures not dolls.	3.54	1.962	413
Men should watch football games instead of soap operas.	3.13	1.844	413
Boys should prefer to play with trucks rather than dolls.	3.52	1.999	413
A man should prefer watching action movies to reading romantic novels.	3.02	1.795	413
Men should not wear make-up, cover-up, or bronzer.	3.72	2.142	413
Boys should not throw baseballs like girls.	3.10	1.847	413
Men should not be interested in talk shows such as "Oprah."	2.60	1.573	413

Figure 9.5.7 Output for the Reliability test, descriptive statistics for the items

Source: Stephen Warren

screenshots as an extension of the last set). There is one last step in the reliability analysis that introduces a third important way to transform your variables. It is important to note that the reliability analysis function of SPSS simply tells you whether you can or should form an index; it does not actually create the index. If you obtain a sufficiently high Cronbach's alpha on selected items that measure the same concept, then, you must then take another step, and use the **Compute** function to actually combine the seven items into a new variable.

The next five visuals in this series show how to use the compute function to combine the seven items that measure Avoidance of Femininity into a single item that is calculated from the mean scores of the seven. First, you find Compute Variable under the Transform tab, as you can see in Figure 9.5.2.1. As you can see, that opens up a dialog box that looks like a calculator and, indeed, is used just the same to choose from among many basic mathematical functions. Next, you can right click on the list of variables, which will call up a dialog box in which you can change what is displayed from the variable names to the labels, as is shown in

Item-Total Statistics

	Scale Mean if Item Deleted	Scale Variance if Item Deleted	Corrected Item-Total Correlation	Cronbach's Alpha if Item Deleted
Boys should play with action figures not dolls.	19.09	87.822	.838	.912
Men should watch football games instead of soap operas.	19.50	90.770	.806	.915
Boys should prefer to play with trucks rather than dolls.	19.11	86.377	.864	.909
A man should prefer watching action movies to reading romantic novels.	19.61	91.958	.793	.916
Men should not wear make-up, cover-up, or bronzer.	18.91	88.365	.733	.924
Boys should not throw baseballs like girls.	19.53	93.633	.712	.924
Men should not be interested in talk shows such as "Oprah."	20.03	98.455	.691	.926

Scale Statistics

Mean	Variance	Std. Deviation	N of Items
22.63	122.486	11.067	7

Figure 9.5.8 Output for the Reliability test, alpha if item deleted

Source: Stephen Warren

Figures 9.5.2.2 and 9.5.2.3. The labels are generally easier to read, which is why we are showing how to right click to see the labels here. From the dialog box on the lower right you can select the mathematical function you would like to perform. In our example, we are taking the mean of all seven items that comprise the Avoidance of Femininity scale. Figure 9.5.2.5 shows that you must name the new variable that will be created from this function (we have gone with MRNI_AF for Masculine Roles and Norms Index Avoidance of Femininity) and ensure that all seven variables of interest that you had selected are present in the upper right portion of the dialog box. This portion also shows the mathematical function selected (in this case, calculating the mean).

Indeed, **Compute** is quite a versatile SPSS function. It can create new variables through any mathematical process such as adding variables together, multiplying two or more variables, taking the average of variables, etc. In addition to making a composite measure from the average across each of the items that comprise it as we have shown in our example, other common uses include multiplying items to arrive at time estimates (like number of minutes

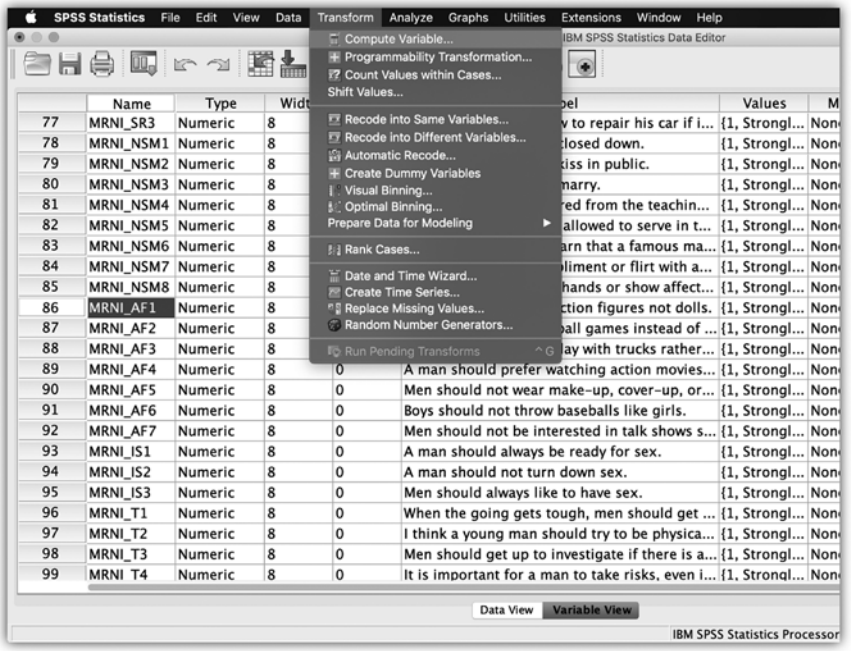

SPSS Statistics File Edit View Data Transform Analyze Graphs Utilities Extensions Window Help
IBM SPSS Statistics Data Editor
Compute Variable...
Programmability Transformation...
Count Values within Cases...
Shift Values...
Recode into Same Variables...
Recode into Different Variables...
Automatic Recode...
Create Dummy Variables
Visual Binning...
Optimal Binning...
Prepare Data for Modeling
Rank Cases...
Date and Time Wizard...
Create Time Series...
Replace Missing Values...
Random Number Generators...
Run Pending Transforms ^G
Name Type Values
77 MRNI_SR3 Numeric 8
78 MRNI_NSM1 Numeric 8
79 MRNI_NSM2 Numeric 8
80 MRNI_NSM3 Numeric 8
81 MRNI_NSM4 Numeric 8
82 MRNI_NSM5 Numeric 8
83 MRNI_NSM6 Numeric 8
84 MRNI_NSM7 Numeric 8
85 MRNI_NSM8 Numeric 8
86 MRNI_AF1 Numeric 8
87 MRNI_AF2 Numeric 8
88 MRNI_AF3 Numeric 8
89 MRNI_AF4 Numeric 8 0 A man should prefer watching action movies... {1, Strongl...
90 MRNI_AF5 Numeric 8 0 Men should not wear make-up, cover-up, or... {1, Strongl...
91 MRNI_AF6 Numeric 8 0 Boys should not throw baseballs like girls. {1, Strongl...
92 MRNI_AF7 Numeric 8 0 Men should not be interested in talk shows s... {1, Strongl...
93 MRNI_IS1 Numeric 8 0 A man should always be ready for sex. {1, Strongl...
94 MRNI_IS2 Numeric 8 0 A man should not turn down sex. {1, Strongl...
95 MRNI_IS3 Numeric 8 0 Men should always like to have sex. {1, Strongl...
96 MRNI_T1 Numeric 8 0 When the going gets tough, men should get ... {1, Strongl...
97 MRNI_T2 Numeric 8 0 I think a young man should try to be physica... {1, Strongl...
98 MRNI_T3 Numeric 8 0 Men should get up to investigate if there is a... {1, Strongl...
99 MRNI_T4 Numeric 8 0 It is important for a man to take risks, even i... {1, Strongl...
Data View Variable View
IBM SPSS Statistics Processor

Figure 9.5.2.1 The Compute command in SPSS

Source: Stephen Warren

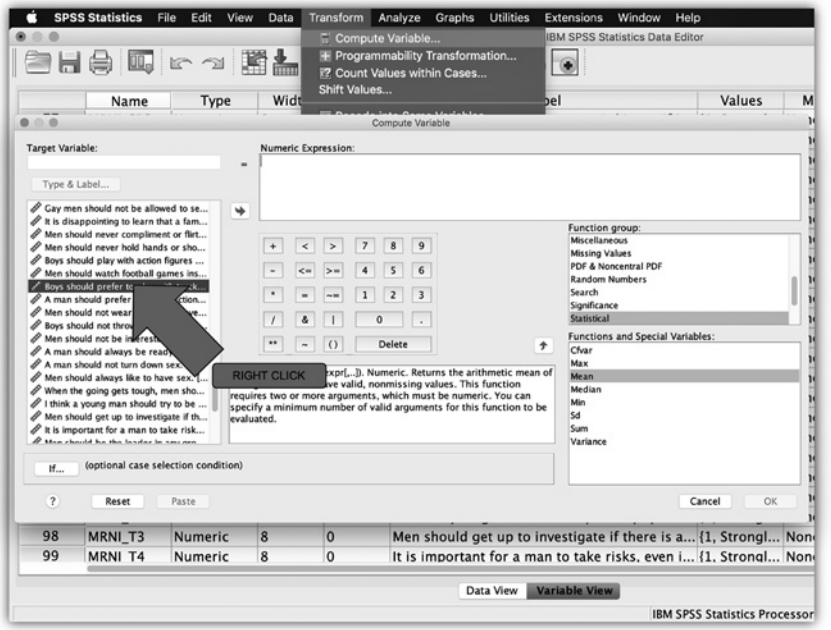


Figure 9.5.2.2 Right click to display names of variables rather than labels

Source: Stephen Warren

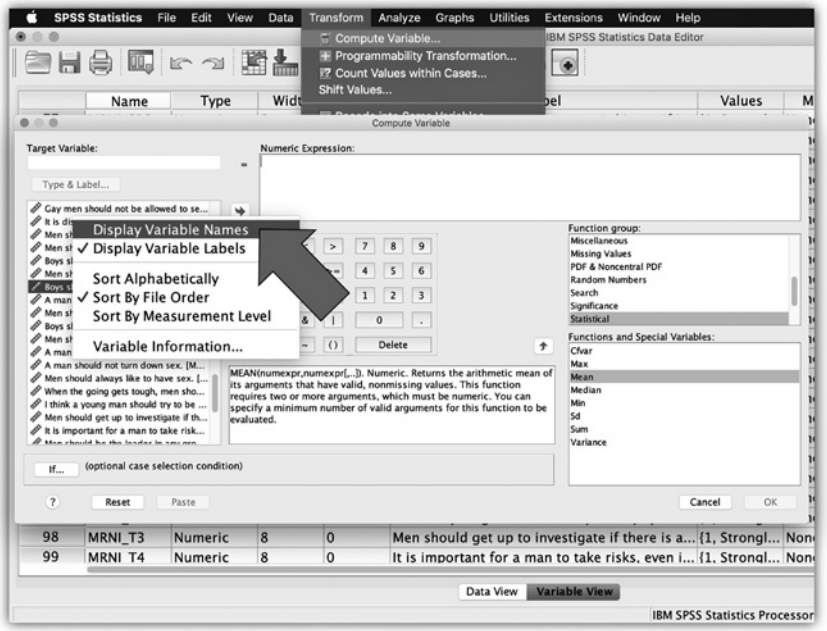

SPSS Statistics File Edit View Data Transform Analyze Graphs Utilities Extensions Window Help
Compute Variable...
Programmability Transformation...
Count Values within Cases...
Shift Values...
IBM SPSS Statistics Data Editor
Name Type Values
Compute Variable
Target Variable:
Numeric Expression:
Type & Label...
Display Variable Names
Display Variable Labels
Sort Alphabetically
Sort By File Order
Sort By Measurement Level
Variable Information...
Function group:
Miscellaneous
Missing Values
PDF & Noncentral PDF
Random Numbers
Search
Significance
Statistical
Functions and Special Variables:
Cfvar
Max
Mean
Median
Min
Sd
Sum
Variance
MEAN(numexpr,numexpr[,...]). Numeric. Returns the arithmetic mean of its arguments that have valid, nonmissing values. This function requires two or more arguments, which must be numeric. You can specify a minimum number of valid arguments for this function to be evaluated.
If... (optional case selection condition)
Reset Paste Cancel OK
98 MRNI_T3 Numeric 8 0 Men should get up to investigate if there is a... {1, Strongl... None
99 MRNI_T4 Numeric 8 0 It is important for a man to take risks, even i... {1, Strongl... None
Data View Variable View
IBM SPSS Statistics Processor

Figure 9.5.2.3 Changing display to variable names

Source: Stephen Warren

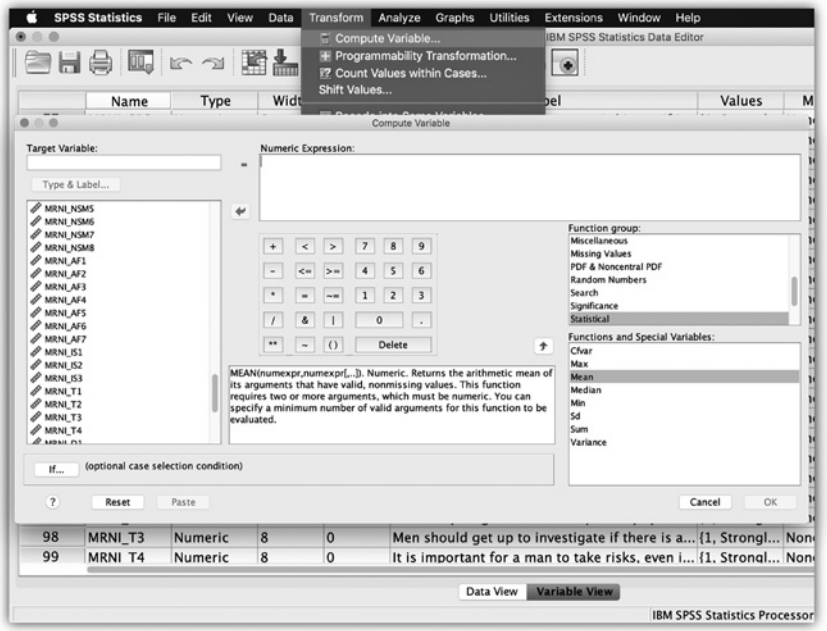


Figure 9.5.2.4 The dialog box with mathematical functions for Compute

Source: Stephen Warren

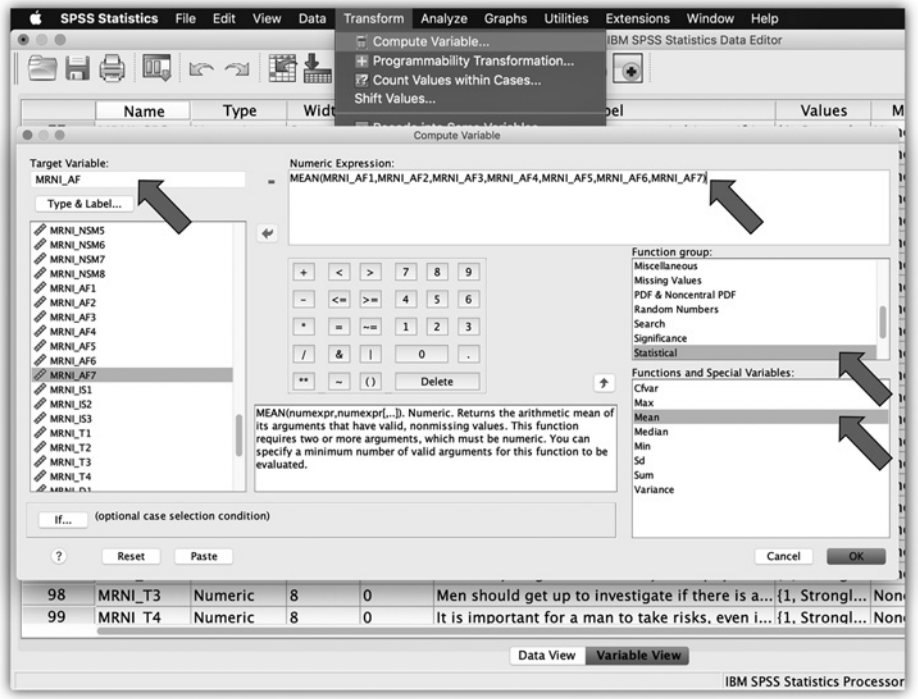


Figure 9.5.2.5 Computing the mean of multiple items

Source: Stephen Warren

per day spent on Instagram multiplied by number of days a week using Instagram to get at total Instagram use) and adding multiple items together to make an additive index.

Select Cases

Under the Data tab in SPSS, you will find the **Select Cases** function. You can use this function to temporarily isolate certain cases in your data set to look within those cases. For example, perhaps you want to just look at those who identified as politically moderate on the political ideology variable for some of your analyses. You can use the Select Cases function to choose only those who selected a 4 on the scale of 1 (very liberal) to 7 (very conservative) for that variable, and SPSS will temporarily set all others aside. While those who selected 4 are active in the data set and all others are not, you can perform any statistical analyses you would like within the active group. Once you are done with these analyses, you can go back and select all cases again to look across those with various political ideologies once again.

As you can see in the series of SPSS screenshot visuals that follow, first you choose Data→ Select Cases from the pull down menu (Figure 9.6.1). This will call up a dialog box in which you can choose Select if condition is satisfied (Figure 9.6.2). You select the variable of interest from the list of all variables in the data set on the left (Figure 9.6.3), and then use the keypad that looks like a calculator to choose what condition you would like to select. In our case, we chose political ideology = 4, selecting those who identified as politically moderate (Figure 9.6.4). Keying in this function will populate the dialog box with this information (Figure 9.6.5). Figure 9.6.6 shows what the data file looks like with the Select function active.

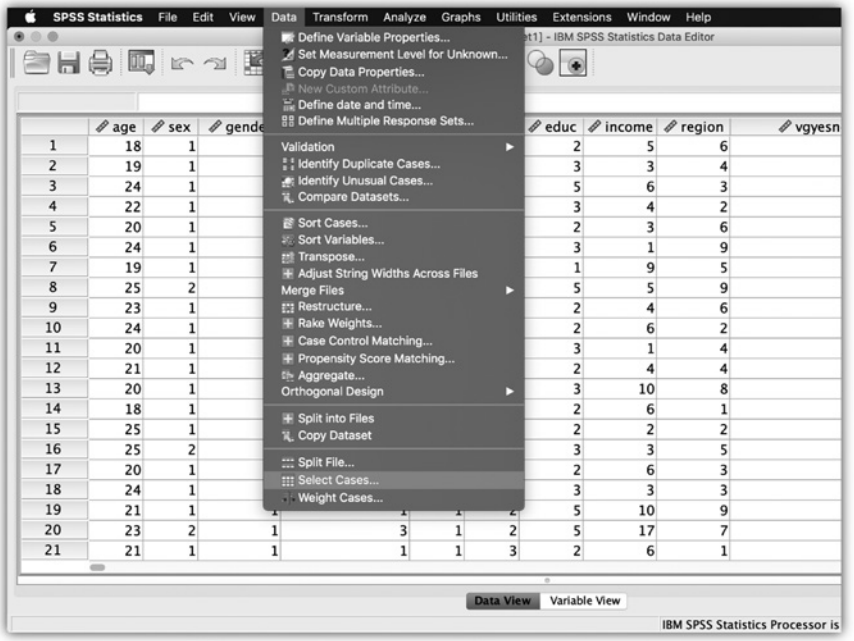


Figure 9.6.1 The Select Cases command in SPSS

Source: Stephen Warren

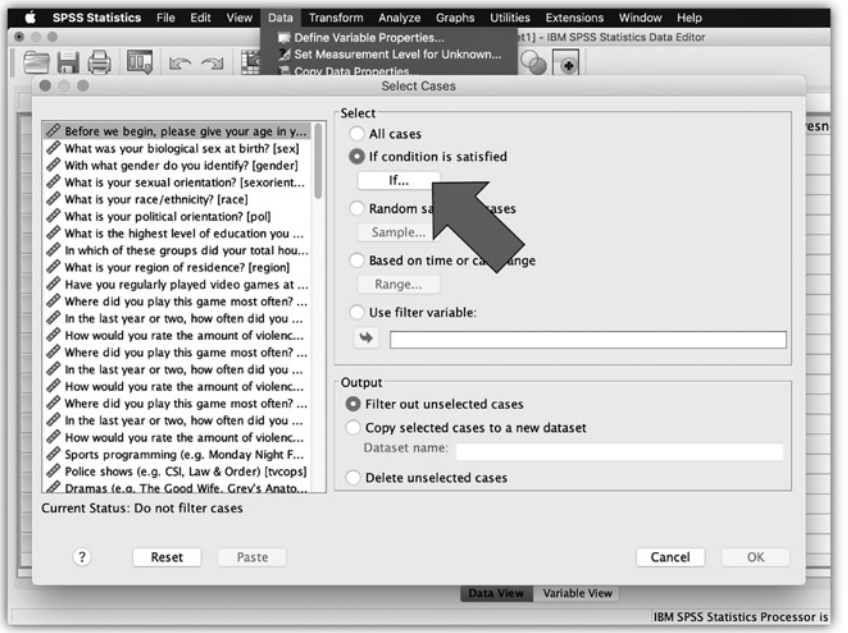

SPSS Statistics File Edit View Data Transform Analyze Graphs Utilities Extensions Window Help
Select Cases
Before we begin, please give your age in y...
What was your biological sex at birth? [sex]
With what gender do you identify? [gender]
What is your sexual orientation? [sexorient...
What is your race/ethnicity? [race]
What is your political orientation? [pol]
What is the highest level of education you ...
In which of these groups did your total hou...
What is your region of residence? [region]
Have you regularly played video games at ...
Where did you play this game most often? ...
In the last year or two, how often did you ...
How would you rate the amount of violenc...
Where did you play this game most often? ...
In the last year or two, how often did you ...
How would you rate the amount of violenc...
Where did you play this game most often? ...
In the last year or two, how often did you ...
How would you rate the amount of violenc...
Sports programming (e.g. Monday Night F...
Police shows (e.g. CSI, Law & Order) [tvcops]
Dramas (e.g. The Good Wife, Grey's Anato...
Current Status: Do not filter cases
Select
All cases
If condition is satisfied
If...
Sample...
Range...
Use filter variable:
Output
Filter out unselected cases
Copy selected cases to a new dataset
Dataset name:
Delete unselected cases
Reset
Paste
Cancel
OK
Data View
Variable View
IBM SPSS Statistics Processor is

Figure 9.6.2 Select if condition is satisfied

Source: Stephen Warren

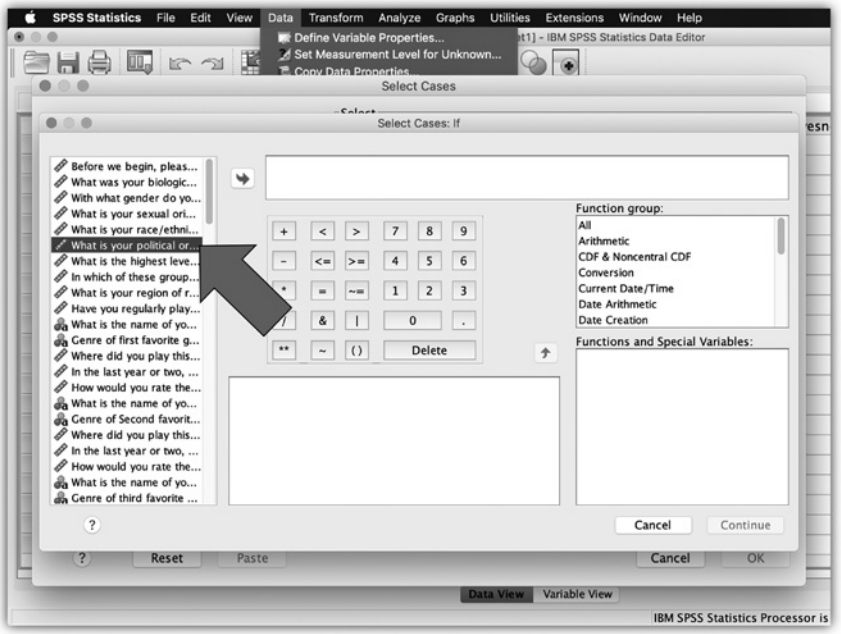


Figure 9.6.3 Identify a variable to use to determine which cases will be selected

Source: Stephen Warren

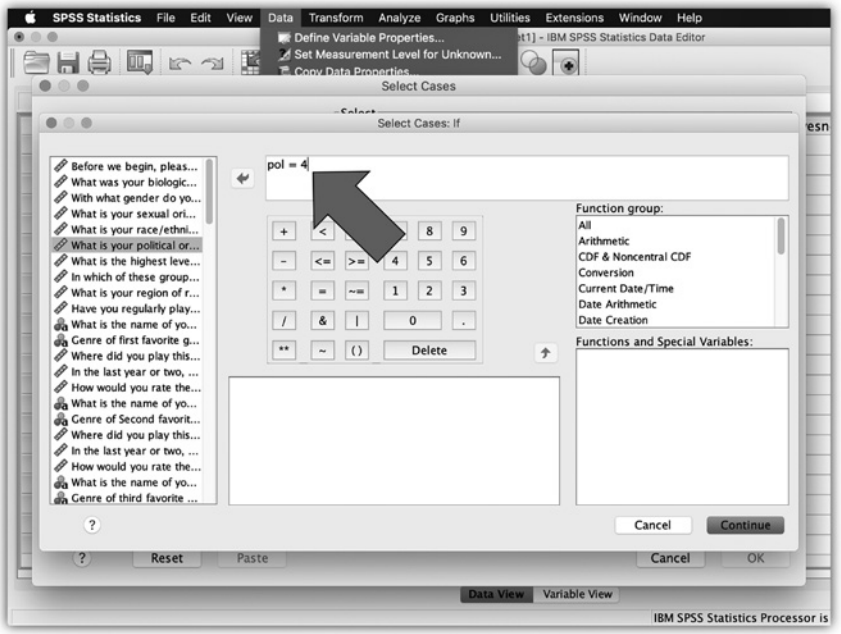


Figure 9.6.4 Choose the value that will be used to identify the selected cases

Source: Stephen Warren

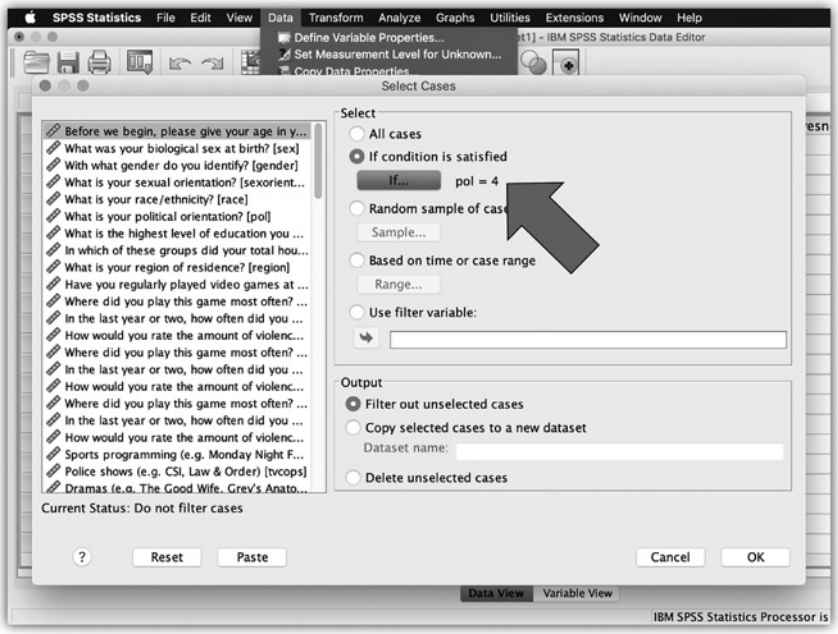

SPSS Statistics File Edit View Data Transform Analyze Graphs Utilities Extensions Window Help
Define Variable Properties...
Set Measurement Level for Unknown...
Copy Data Properties...
IBM SPSS Statistics Data Editor
Select Cases
Before we begin, please give your age in y...
What was your biological sex at birth? [sex]
With what gender do you identify? [gender]
What is your sexual orientation? [sexorient...
What is your race/ethnicity? [race]
What is your political orientation? [pol]
What is the highest level of education you ...
In which of these groups did your total hou...
What is your region of residence? [region]
Have you regularly played video games at ...
Where did you play this game most often? ...
In the last year or two, how often did you ...
How would you rate the amount of violenc...
Where did you play this game most often? ...
In the last year or two, how often did you ...
How would you rate the amount of violenc...
Where did you play this game most often? ...
In the last year or two, how often did you ...
How would you rate the amount of violenc...
Sports programming (e.g. Monday Night F...
Police shows (e.g. CSI, Law & Order) [tvcops]
Dramas (e.g. The Good Wife, Grey's Anato...
Current Status: Do not filter cases
Select
All cases
If condition is satisfied
If...
pol = 4
Random sample of cas
Sample...
Based on time or case range
Range...
Use filter variable:
Output
Filter out unselected cases
Copy selected cases to a new dataset
Dataset name:
Delete unselected cases
?
Reset
Paste
Cancel
OK
Data View
Variable View
IBM SPSS Statistics Processor is

Figure 9.6.5 The selection will appear here, as indicated

Source: Stephen Warren

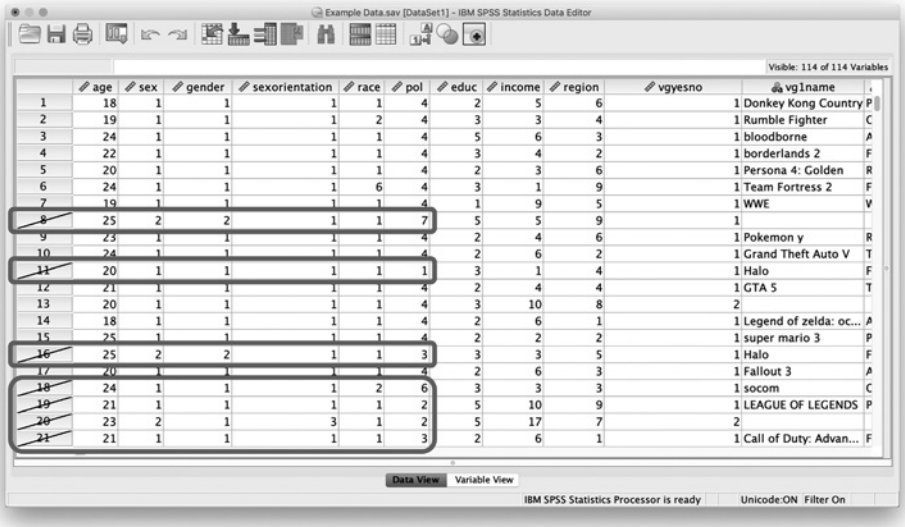

Example Data.sav [DataSet1] - IBM SPSS Statistics Data Editor
Visible: 114 of 114 Variables
age sex gender sexorientation race pol educ income region vgyesno vg1name
1 18 1 1 1 1 4 2 5 6 1 Donkey Kong Country P
2 19 1 1 1 2 4 3 3 4 1 Rumble Fighter C
3 24 1 1 1 1 4 5 6 3 1 bloodborne A
4 22 1 1 1 1 4 3 4 2 1 borderlands 2 F
5 20 1 1 1 1 4 2 3 6 1 Persona 4: Golden R
6 24 1 1 1 6 4 3 1 9 1 Team Fortress 2 F
7 19 1 1 1 1 4 1 9 5 1 WWE V
8 25 2 2 1 1 7 5 5 9 1
9 23 1 1 1 1 4 2 4 6 1 Pokemon y R
10 24 1 1 1 1 4 2 6 2 1 Grand Theft Auto V T
11 20 1 1 1 1 1 3 1 4 1 Halo F
12 21 1 1 1 1 4 2 4 4 1 GTA 5 T
13 20 1 1 1 1 4 3 10 8 2
14 18 1 1 1 1 4 2 6 1 1 Legend of zelda: oc... A
15 25 1 1 1 1 4 2 2 2 1 super mario 3 P
16 25 2 2 1 1 3 3 3 5 1 Halo F
17 20 1 1 1 1 4 2 6 3 1 Fallout 3 A
18 24 1 1 1 2 6 3 3 3 1 socom C
19 21 1 1 1 1 2 5 10 9 1 LEAGUE OF LEGENDS P
20 23 2 1 3 1 2 5 17 7 2
21 21 1 1 1 1 3 2 6 1 1 Call of Duty: Advan... F
Data View
Variable View
IBM SPSS Statistics Processor is ready
Unicode:ON Filter On

Figure 9.6.6 Only cases matching the selection will remain active in the data file

Source: Stephen Warren

The cases of those who did *not* answer the political ideology item with a 4 are crossed out, signifying that they are no longer active in the data set. Those who *did* answer 4 remain. At this point, then, you could proceed with whatever analyses you wanted to perform on only those who answered 4. Of course, selecting only those who scored 4 will severely decrease your sample size, so you may not be able to run advanced statistical tests that require large sample sizes. In any case, once you have finished with those analyses, you would go back to the Select Cases function and click on "All" cases. This will reset the data file so that all cases are active once again.

Research in Action

Statistical Test Decision-Making Guide

You want to know if two variables are related

—and they are both nominal level

— then the test to conduct is cross-tabulation with chi square.

—and they are both ordinal level

— then the test to conduct is Spearman's rho.

—and they are both interval or ratio level

— then the test to conduct is Pearson's correlation.

—and you want to add a control variable

— then the test to conduct is a partial correlation.

You want to know whether multiple variables are related to a single outcome variable

—and the outcome variable is interval or ratio

— then the test to conduct is multiple regression.

You want to know whether two groups differ

—and the dependent measure is interval/ratio

— then the test to conduct is a t-test.

—and the two groups are independent of each other

— then the test to conduct is an independent t-test.

—and the two groups are closely related or are the same people tested twice

— then the test to conduct is a dependent (also known as a) paired t-test.

You want to know whether three or more groups differ

—and the dependent measure is interval/ratio

— then the test to conduct is a one-way analysis of variance.

Inferential Statistics

Recall from Chapter 8 that when you look for patterns with two (bivariate) or more than two (multivariate) variables within your sample, you will most likely also be attempting to discover whether the results you find in the sample are likely given the null hypothesis. Therefore, when you run bivariate and multivariate statistics, you are also running inferential statistics, coming up with both an answer to the statistical test itself and an answer for whether the result is statistically significant. This would be an excellent time to refresh your memory about what statistical significance means by returning to Chapter 8.

There are many different bivariate and multivariate statistical tests you can run to test hypotheses and explore research questions. Learning how to figure out what test or tests to run is perhaps one of the most challenging aspects of learning quantitative research methods. Thankfully, there is a shortcut that you can use to distill most statistical tests into two basic types: those that you use to test whether groups differ and those that you use to test whether variables relate. We will discuss some of the main statistical tests that fall into each of these two types. We have also created a guide for choosing the right statistical tests in the Research in Action section of this chapter.

Yet, before you begin learning different statistical tests, you should probably revisit (or re-revisit!) Chapter 3, to remember that variables are measured, variously, at the nominal, ordinal, interval, and ratio levels. Some tests require variables to be at a particular level of measurement, so as you learn statistical tests, you will want to be sure you really understand and can apply those different levels of measurement. Some tests, too, require that you identify an independent variable and a dependent variable. Recall that an **independent variable** is a **predictor variable**; it is the variable that the researcher assumes is causing an influence on another variable. A **dependent variable**, also called an **outcome variable**, is what the researcher assumes is being affected or shaped by the independent variable.

Also before we begin in earnest, we should briefly explain **degrees of freedom**. Many (but not all) statistical tests require the researcher to report degrees of freedom alongside the test result. Degrees of freedom are labeled as *df*. Degrees of freedom are the number of values that are free to vary when calculating a statistic. Imagine that you have four numbers and they have to add up to 22. If the first three numbers are 12, 3, and 5, then the last one must be 2. It cannot vary. Thus, the degree of freedom in the test is 3. Three numbers can vary, one is fixed. The same logic applies in some of the tests that you will learn how to run, as you will see later in this chapter. It is standard practice to report degrees of freedom alongside many of the statistical tests we will cover in this chapter.

Finally, we should note—briefly!—that some of the statistical tests that we are about to introduce (including t-tests, analysis of variance, correlations, and regression tests) require that the variables examined in the test should be normally distributed. Normality of data should be checked prior to running the tests, then, using the tests for skewness and distribution that we have already explained. If the condition of a normal distribution of variables is not met, the researcher can either correct for the non-normality (like by getting rid of outliers) or can choose what is called a **nonparametric test** that does not require a normal distribution. A discussion of the body of nonparametric tests is a bit outside our scope here, but the interested reader can read more online.

Tests of Differences: T-Tests

Some hypotheses or research questions call for determining whether two groups differ from each other on a variable of interest. If the two groups are not closely related to each other (as in, the two groups do not constitute people who are romantic partners, or a parent and child,

or some other closely related dyad), for these hypotheses, you can use an **independent samples t-test**, also known as an independent t-test. (Please note that "t" is typically expressed with a lowercase "t" for this test). An independent t-test is calculated from the difference on some variable of interest between the two groups in addition to the size of the two groups and the amount of variation both within each group and between the two groups.

Sometimes you have two groups and they are either closely related to each other (once again, such as partnered couples or dyads of kids and parents) or the two groups in a study are actually the same people who have completed the same measure(s) twice. If this is the case, you can test for differences on a variable of interest between the two groups using a **dependent samples t-test**, also known as a dependent t-test or a paired t-test. A dependent t-test is derived from the sum of the differences between groups and the sum of the differences squared between the groups in addition to the sample size.

For both the independent and the dependent t-tests, the **grouping variable**—the one that divides the sample into two groups—is usually a nominal level variable. For instance, for an experiment, you will need to have a variable that tells you whether the participant was in the control condition or the treatment condition. This variable divides the sample into two groups (control and treatment group members) and is measured at the nominal level. Because t-tests determine whether means are different in the first group compared to the second group, the dependent variable in the test must be measured at the interval or ratio level, so that the means make sense.

We will illustrate an independent t-test visually with screenshots from SPSS because those tests are more common than dependent t-tests. First, as you can see in Figure 9.7.1, you select Analyze→ Compare Means→ Independent Samples T Test from the pull-down menu. Then you choose from the list of all variables in the data set that appears on the left which variable will constitute the grouping variable. You select that variable and place it in the bottom right of the dialog box labeled as Grouping Variable, as seen in Figure 9.7.2. Next, you have to select Define Groups, which will tell SPSS what numbers you assigned to the two groups. Typically, this will be 1 and 2, but that is not always the case. If you wanted to use political ideology, for instance, you could compare the 1s and the 7s, those with the most strongly held positions as liberals and conservatives. In the example, we measured gender identity and had only two groups that emerged, male and female. Therefore, our grouping variable is "Gender" and we arbitrarily assigned males = 1 and females = 2 when we created the data file, so we enter 1 and 2 to define the groups (Figures 9.7.3 and 9.7.4). The language of "male" and "female" labels is more often associated with biological sex than with gender identity and therefore their use here is not ideal in terms of inclusive language. Next, we select the variable(s) that we would like to consider a dependent measure in this analysis from the entire list of variables. This is the variable(s) that we will explore to see whether males and females differed on that item/those items. It is possible to select more than one such Test Variable in this analysis, but in our example, we selected just one, an estimate of video game playing hours on a given day (Figures 9.7.5). Then you hit OK, and SPSS will run the test. In this example, we are testing the following hypothesis:

H_1: Those who identify as males will report more video game playing hours on a given day compared to those who identify as females.

Figure 9.7.6 shows the SPSS output of that test, the independent t-test that measures whether the amount of video game use differs between those who identify as male and those who identify as female. The top part of the output, labeled Group Statistics, is the first place to look. It shows the mean number of hours of video game use among males and the mean number of hours of video game use among females, together with the corresponding standard

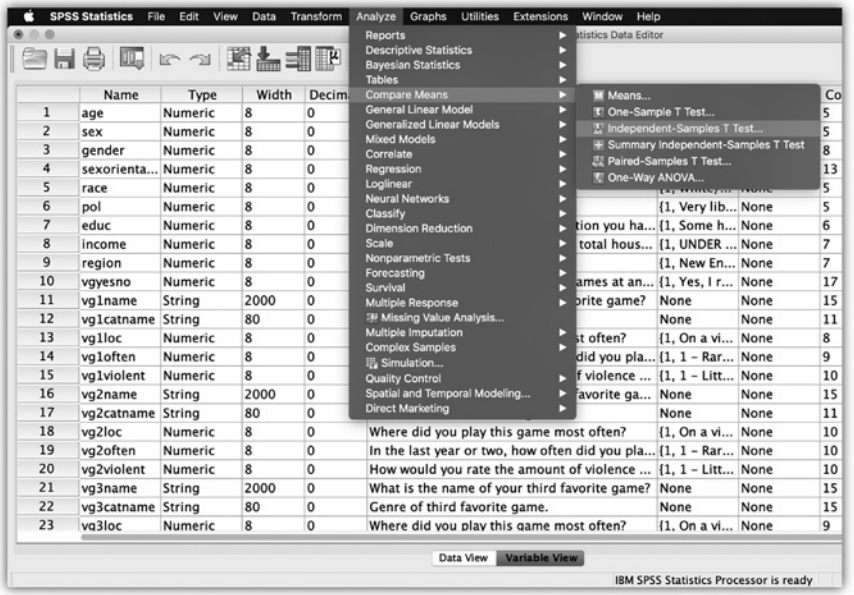


Figure 9.7.1 The Independent T Test command in SPSS

Source: Stephen Warren

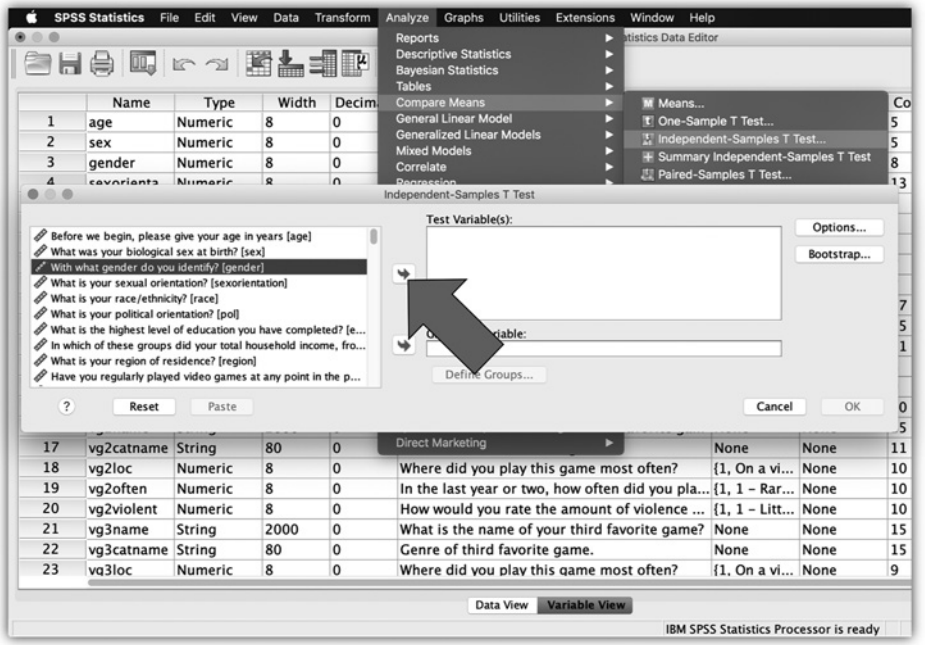

Independent-Samples T Test
Test Variable(s):
Before we begin, please give your age in years [age]
What was your biological sex at birth? [sex]
With what gender do you identify? [gender]
What is your sexual orientation? [sexorientation]
What is your race/ethnicity? [race]
What is your political orientation? [pol]
What is the highest level of education you have completed? [e...
In which of these groups did your total household income, fro...
What is your region of residence? [region]
Have you regularly played video games at any point in the p...
Options...
Bootstrap...
Define Groups...
Reset
Paste
Cancel
OK

Figure 9.7.2 Select the grouping variable

Source: Stephen Warren

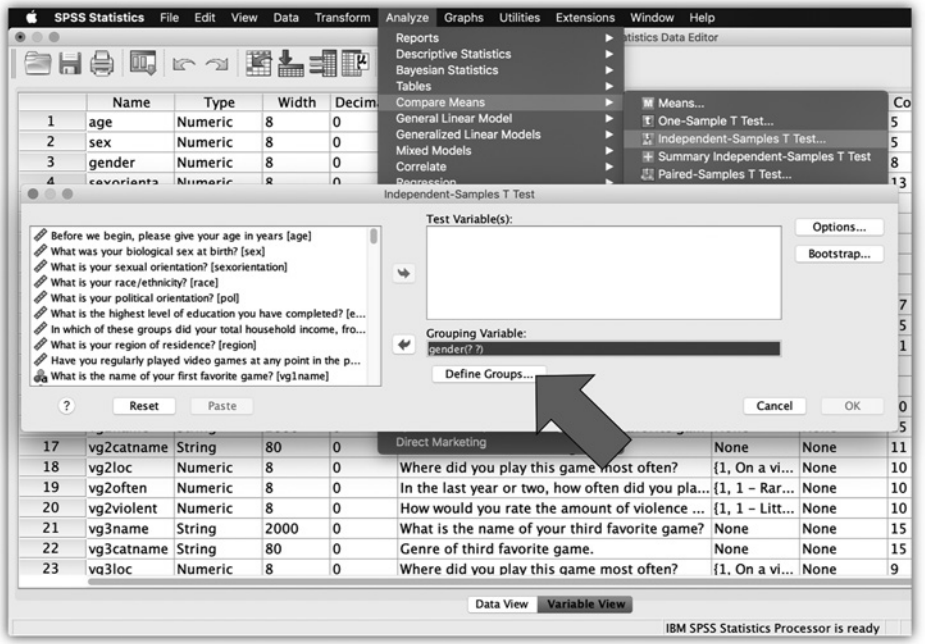

SPSS Statistics File Edit View Data Transform Analyze Graphs Utilities Extensions Window Help
Reports
Descriptive Statistics
Bayesian Statistics
Tables
Compare Means
General Linear Model
Generalized Linear Models
Mixed Models
Correlate
Means...
One-Sample T Test...
Independent-Samples T Test...
Summary Independent-Samples T Test
Paired-Samples T Test...
Independent-Samples T Test
Test Variable(s):
Grouping Variable:
gender(? ?)
Define Groups...
Options...
Bootstrap...
Reset
Paste
Cancel
OK
Before we begin, please give your age in years [age]
What was your biological sex at birth? [sex]
What is your sexual orientation? [sexorientation]
What is your race/ethnicity? [race]
What is your political orientation? [pol]
What is the highest level of education you have completed? [e...
In which of these groups did your total household income, fro...
What is your region of residence? [region]
Have you regularly played video games at any point in the p...
What is the name of your first favorite game? [vg1name]
Name Type Width Decim
1 age Numeric 8 0
2 sex Numeric 8 0
3 gender Numeric 8 0
17 vg2catname String 80 0 Direct Marketing None None 11
18 vg2loc Numeric 8 0 Where did you play this game most often? {1, On a vi... None 10
19 vg2often Numeric 8 0 In the last year or two, how often did you pla... {1, 1 – Rar... None 10
20 vg2violent Numeric 8 0 How would you rate the amount of violence ... {1, 1 – Litt... None 10
21 vg3name String 2000 0 What is the name of your third favorite game? None None 15
22 vg3catname String 80 0 Genre of third favorite game. None None 15
23 vg3loc Numeric 8 0 Where did you play this game most often? {1, On a vi... None 9
Data View Variable View
IBM SPSS Statistics Processor is ready

Figure 9.7.3 Define the groups for the grouping variable

Source: Stephen Warren

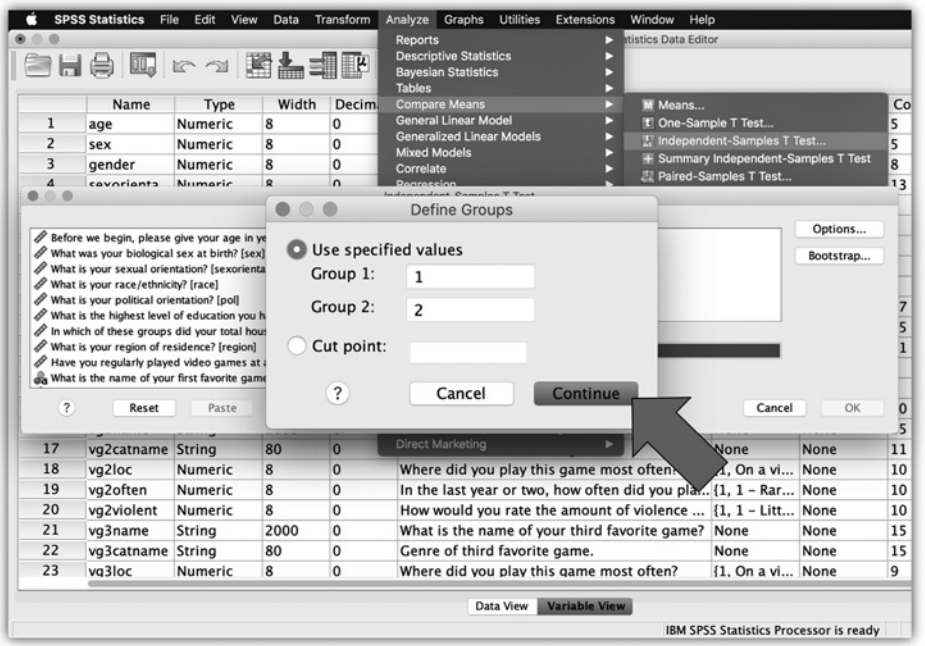

SPSS Statistics File Edit View Data Transform Analyze Graphs Utilities Extensions Window Help
Reports
Descriptive Statistics
Bayesian Statistics
Tables
Compare Means
General Linear Model
Generalized Linear Models
Mixed Models
Correlate
Means...
One-Sample T Test...
Independent-Samples T Test...
Summary Independent-Samples T Test
Paired-Samples T Test...
Define Groups
Use specified values
Group 1: 1
Group 2: 2
Cut point:
Cancel
Continue
Options...
Bootstrap...
Reset
Paste
Cancel
OK
Name Type Width Decim
1 age Numeric 8 0
2 sex Numeric 8 0
3 gender Numeric 8 0
17 vg2catname String 80 0 Direct Marketing None None 11
18 vg2loc Numeric 8 0 Where did you play this game most often? {1, On a vi... None 10
19 vg2often Numeric 8 0 In the last year or two, how often did you pla... {1, 1 – Rar... None 10
20 vg2violent Numeric 8 0 How would you rate the amount of violence ... {1, 1 – Litt... None 10
21 vg3name String 2000 0 What is the name of your third favorite game? None None 15
22 vg3catname String 80 0 Genre of third favorite game. None None 15
23 vg3loc Numeric 8 0 Where did you play this game most often? {1, On a vi... None 9
Data View Variable View
IBM SPSS Statistics Processor is ready

Figure 9.7.4 This tells SPSS that the first group was assigned a 1 in the data and the second group was assigned a 2

Source: Stephen Warren

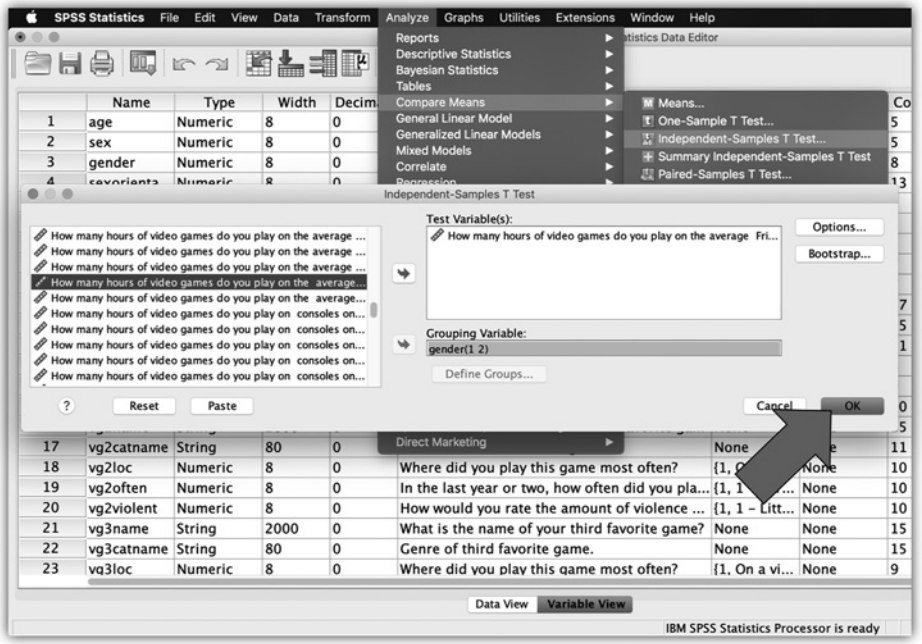


Figure 9.7.5 Select a dependent variable

Source: Stephen Warren

deviations. Just eyeballing those results, it sure looks like males outscore females on this estimate of video game use. Yet, to answer that question more persuasively, we look at the bottom part of the output. (Recall, as well, that *N* always means sample size. So, that part of the output tells us how many people in the sample identified as male and how many identified as female. You can also make note of the standard deviation numbers in the visual. You can see that there is less variability in the amount of time females reported spending on an average Friday compared to the amount of time males reported spending.)

There is an intermediary step to take before we can conclude from the data that males report spending more time on an average Friday playing video games compared to females. The independent samples t test assumes that the variances of the two groups in question (in our case, males and females) are equal, but the test can correct for the possibility that they are not. The **variance** is similar to the standard deviation in that it has to do with how spread out values are in the data, but the difference between standard deviation and variance is that the variance is calculated from squaring the standard deviation. As you can see in Figure 9.7.7, SPSS will actually give you two different *t* results, two different degrees of freedom, and two different significance levels, one set corrected for unequal variances and one not. In order to determine which set of results to use—and this is the intermediary step we mentioned—you look at Levene's Test for Equality of Variances. If the significance level of that test is $p < .05$, then you assume the variances in your two groups are unequal and you read and report the lower line for the *t* results. If the significance level for the Levene test is $p > .05$, you assume that the variances are equal and you read and report the upper line for the *t* results.

T-Test

Group Statistics

	With what gender do you identify?	N	Mean	Std. Deviation	Std. Error Mean
How many hours of video games do you play on the average Friday? Enter "0" if you do not play vi...	Male	203	3.3498	3.31824	.23289
	Female	208	.9231	1.80815	.12537

Figure 9.7.6 Examine mean scores for the two groups on the selected dependent measure

Source: Stephen Warren

Independent Samples Test

		Levene's Test for Equality of Variances		t-test for Equality of Means						
									95% Confidence Interval of the Difference	
		F	Sig.	t	df	Sig. (2-tailed)	Mean Difference	Std. Error Difference	Lower	Upper
How many hours of video games do you play on the average Friday? Enter "0" if you do not play vi...	Equal variances assumed	44.025	.000	9.236	409	.000	2.42668	.26275	1.91016	2.94319
	Equal variances not assumed			9.175	310.587	.000	2.42668	.26450	1.90625	2.94711

Figure 9.7.7 Output for the T Test

Source: Stephen Warren

In the screenshot from SPSS for our example of an independent t-test measuring Friday video game use among males and females, we can see that the Equal Variances Assumed section of the output displays a statistically significant result, as we have indicated. Therefore, we must assume unequal variance in the two groups (males and females), which means that there is more or less dispersion/spread of values in one of those groups compared to the other (not surprising given the standard deviations we saw in the preceding result). Consequently, we read the t-test result from the bottom line of the output, as we have indicated.

The most important parts of the output you obtain when SPSS runs a t-test are the *t* statistic, the degrees of freedom, and the *p* level. The degrees of freedom in a t-test are computed by taking the sample size and subtracting 1. If Levene's test indicates unequal variances, however, the degrees of freedom change from this standard. In any case, the convention when writing up the results from a t-test is to note the degrees of freedom in parenthesis after the *t* result. In our example, once again, the significance level for the Levene test (which SPSS displays as .000) is less than .05, and therefore, we report the lower line of results. Our result of $t\,(310.59) = 9.18$, $p < .001$, means that the likelihood of finding this difference in the amount of Friday video game playing between the males and females if it does not also occur in the population is less than 1 in 1,000. We would conclude, then, that the two groups are, indeed, different from one another on the variable in question.

For both independent and dependent t-tests, it is difficult to interpret the meaning of the *t* result itself, except to say that generally, the bigger the *t* statistic, the more likely that you will

have a statistically significant result. This is logical because the larger the difference between the groups, the less likely you would observe a difference between groups in the sample that is not also present in the larger population.

IMPORTANT NOTE You may have surmised that we are rounding to two decimal places when reporting our results in this chapter. That is, for the most part, the convention in the field. SPSS will often report that the significance level is .000. That does not actually mean, however, that the likelihood of observing the difference found in the sample when there is no such difference in the population is actually 0. It just means that the actual significance level is so small that it does not appear within the three decimal places that SPSS uses as the default. It is important to convert what appears in SPSS output as a p level of .000 as $p < .001$ (the smallest of the three main standards for statistical significance, as you will recall from Chapter 8) when this is the case.

Tests of Differences: Analysis of Variance

Some research designs require the researcher to look for differences on a variable of interest among three or more groups rather than two. For this type of statistical analysis, you need to run an **analysis of variance** test, abbreviated as ANOVA. There are many different types of ANOVA tests, but we will confine our discussion to what is called a **one-way ANOVA**, in which there is just one variable that organizes the sample into three or more groups for which differences on a variable of interest are tested. The ANOVA test produces an F statistic (this time signified by a capital F) and is calculated from the difference between the variability between groups and the variability within groups.

Just like with t-tests, the grouping variable in ANOVA is typically a nominal-level variable. For example, you can test whether liberals, moderates, and conservatives differ from each other on a variable of interest. Political ideology, then, is the grouping variable in this example that divides the sample into three groups and is measured at the nominal level. The dependent variable, on the other hand, must be measured at the interval or ratio level, as is the case for t-tests, as well, so that the mean is meaningful.

As you can see in Figure 9.8.1, this test can be found under the Analyze and then Compare Means tabs of SPSS. Similar to the t-test, you select a grouping variable to populate the bottom right of the dialog box, although this is called a **Factor** in this test. Also similar to the t-test you can select one or more variables to be the dependent measures to populate the upper right portion of the dialog box. You can see this in Figure 9.8.2, as well as see that you click OK once you have entered the variables. For our example, we have selected political ideology (with three groups: liberals, moderates, conservatives) as the factor and agreement with the statement "Boys should play with action figures, not dolls" (measured from 1 = strongly disagree to 7 = strongly agree) as the dependent measure. The next step is to click on the Options box and then request descriptive statistics and hit continue, as is apparent in Figure 9.8.3. We take this step so that the output will include means and standard deviations for each group in addition to the statistics that show the likelihood of observing the differences you see within those means if there were no such differences in the population. In this example, we are testing the following hypothesis:

H_1: Political conservatives are more likely than political liberals and moderates to believe that boys should play with action figures, not dolls.

The final visual in this series, Figure 9.8.4, shows the SPSS output for this one-way ANOVA test. If we obtained a result like this, first, just like we did for the t-test, we would start by

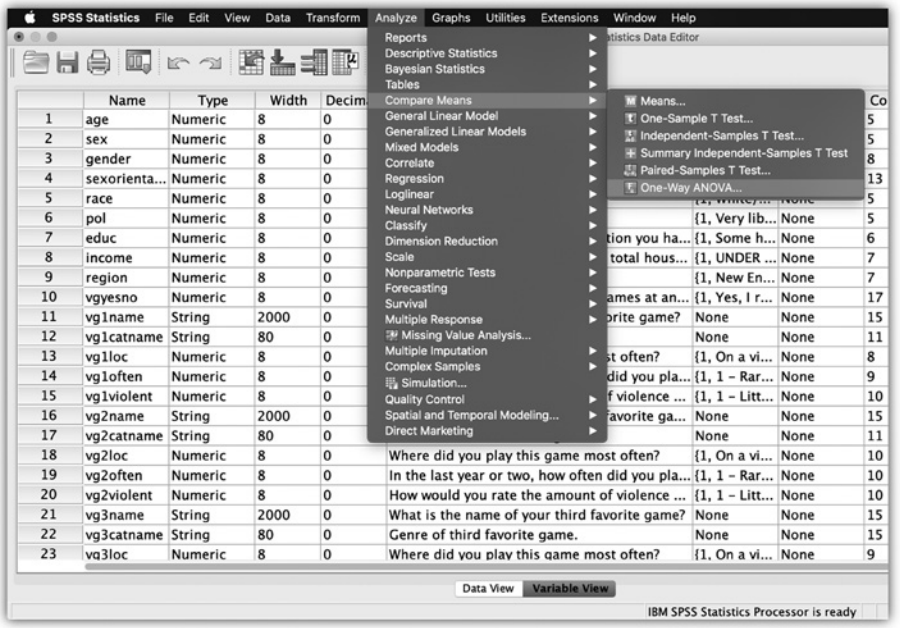

SPSS Statistics File Edit View Data Transform Analyze Graphs Utilities Extensions Window Help
Reports
Descriptive Statistics
Bayesian Statistics
Tables
Compare Means
General Linear Model
Generalized Linear Models
Mixed Models
Correlate
Regression
Loglinear
Neural Networks
Classify
Dimension Reduction
Scale
Nonparametric Tests
Forecasting
Survival
Multiple Response
Missing Value Analysis...
Multiple Imputation
Complex Samples
Simulation...
Quality Control
Spatial and Temporal Modeling...
Direct Marketing
Means...
One-Sample T Test...
Independent-Samples T Test...
Summary Independent-Samples T Test
Paired-Samples T Test...
One-Way ANOVA...
Name Type Width Decim
1 age Numeric 8 0
2 sex Numeric 8 0
3 gender Numeric 8 0
4 sexorienta... Numeric 8 0
5 race Numeric 8 0
6 pol Numeric 8 0
7 educ Numeric 8 0
8 income Numeric 8 0
9 region Numeric 8 0
10 vgyesno Numeric 8 0
11 vg1name String 2000 0
12 vg1catname String 80 0
13 vg1loc Numeric 8 0
14 vg1often Numeric 8 0
15 vg1violent Numeric 8 0
16 vg2name String 2000 0
17 vg2catname String 80 0
18 vg2loc Numeric 8 0 Where did you play this game most often? {1, On a vi... None 10
19 vg2often Numeric 8 0 In the last year or two, how often did you pla... {1, 1 – Rar... None 10
20 vg2violent Numeric 8 0 How would you rate the amount of violence ... {1, 1 – Litt... None 10
21 vg3name String 2000 0 What is the name of your third favorite game? None None 15
22 vg3catname String 80 0 Genre of third favorite game. None None 15
23 vg3loc Numeric 8 0 Where did you play this game most often? {1, On a vi... None 9
Data View Variable View
IBM SPSS Statistics Processor is ready

Figure 9.8.1 The One-Way ANOVA command in SPSS

Source: Stephen Warren

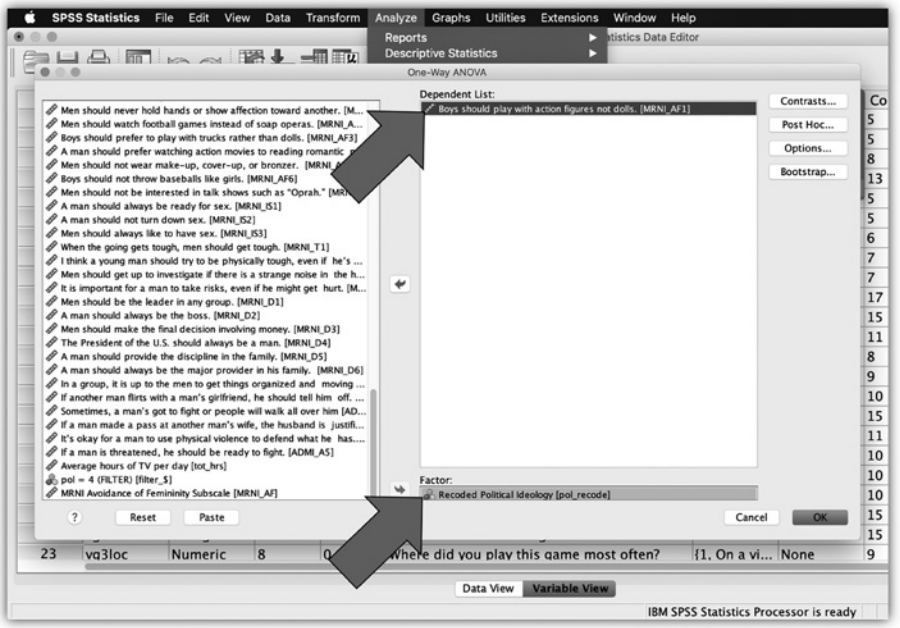

SPSS Statistics File Edit View Data Transform Analyze Graphs Utilities Extensions Window Help
Reports
Descriptive Statistics
One-Way ANOVA
Dependent List:
Boys should play with action figures not dolls. [MRNI_AF1]
Contrasts...
Post Hoc...
Options...
Bootstrap...
Factor:
Recoded Political Ideology [pol_recode]
Reset
Paste
Cancel
OK
Men should never hold hands or show affection toward another. [M...
Men should watch football games instead of soap operas. [MRNI_A...
Boys should prefer to play with trucks rather than dolls. [MRNI_AF3]
A man should prefer watching action movies to reading romantic
Men should not wear make-up, cover-up, or bronzer. [MRNI
Boys should not throw baseballs like girls. [MRNI_AF6]
Men should not be interested in talk shows such as "Oprah." [MR
A man should always be ready for sex. [MRNI_IS1]
A man should not turn down sex. [MRNI_IS2]
Men should always like to have sex. [MRNI_IS3]
When the going gets tough, men should get tough. [MRNI_T1]
I think a young man should try to be physically tough, even if he's ...
Men should get up to investigate if there is a strange noise in the h...
It is important for a man to take risks, even if he might get hurt. [M...
Men should be the leader in any group. [MRNI_D1]
A man should always be the boss. [MRNI_D2]
Men should make the final decision involving money. [MRNI_D3]
The President of the U.S. should always be a man. [MRNI_D4]
A man should provide the discipline in the family. [MRNI_D5]
A man should always be the major provider in his family. [MRNI_D6]
In a group, it is up to the men to get things organized and moving ...
If another man flirts with a man's girlfriend, he should tell him off. ...
Sometimes, a man's got to fight or people will walk all over him [AD...
If a man made a pass at another man's wife, the husband is justifi...
It's okay for a man to use physical violence to defend what he has....
If a man is threatened, he should be ready to fight. [ADMI_A5]
Average hours of TV per day [tot_hrs]
pol = 4 (FILTER) [filter_$]
MRNI Avoidance of Femininity Subscale [MRNI_AF]
23 vg3loc Numeric 8 0 Where did you play this game most often? {1, On a vi... None 9
Data View Variable View
IBM SPSS Statistics Processor is ready

Figure 9.8.2 Select a grouping variable (factor) as well as a dependent measure

Source: Stephen Warren

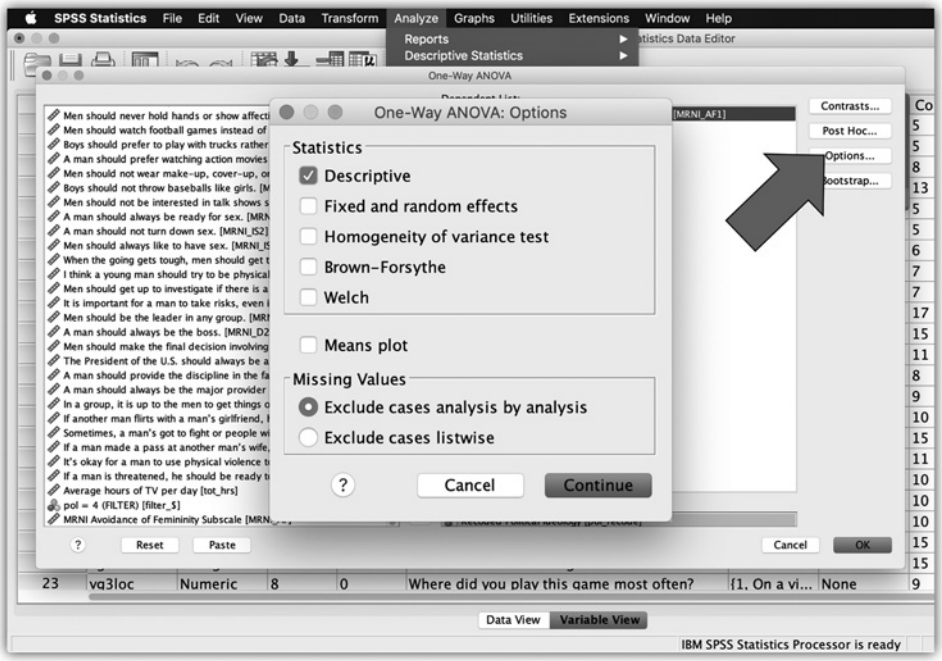


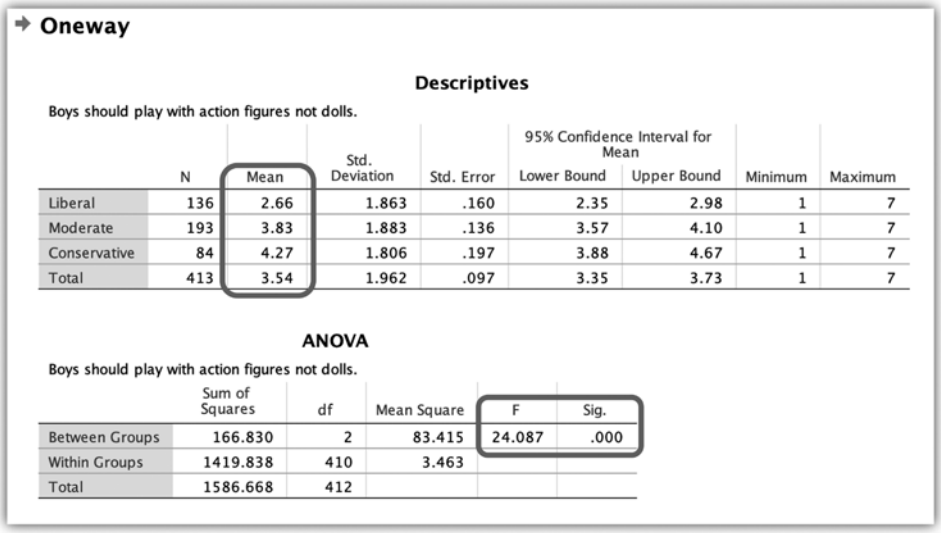
Figure 9.8.3 Select descriptive statistics to be included in the output via the Options button

Source: Stephen Warren

looking at the means. Again, agreement with "Boys should play with action figures, not dolls" was measured on a scale of 1 = strongly disagree to 7 = strongly agree, so higher means indicate more endorsement of this view. In these results, then, you can see that liberals were less likely to agree with this statement, followed by moderates, followed by conservatives, at least so it seems from the eyeball test. Once again, the bottom part of the output contains the significance level. Here $p < .001$, which indicates that there is a very low likelihood (1 in 1,000) of observing the differences in means among people with the three different political ideologies that we see in the sample when there are no such differences in the population.

Just like with the *t* statistic, it is difficult to interpret the meaning of the *F* result on its own, except to say that generally, the bigger it is, the more likely that you will have a statistically significant result. Once again, the logic is that the larger the difference observed in the sample among the groups, the more likely it is that those differences are also occurring in the population. There are two degrees of freedom reported in an ANOVA result, and they are reported in parenthesis after the *F* result, like this: $F\ (2, 410) = 24.09$, $p < .001$. The first degrees of freedom value is calculated from the number of groups in the analysis minus one. So, in this example, there were three groups in the analysis. The second degrees of freedom value is that first *df* number subtracted from the sample size. So, in this case, there was a sample size of $n = 412$.

If we had a hypothesis that predicted that political conservatives would be more likely to think boys should play with action figures rather than dolls compared to political liberals, then, we could say that this hypothesis was, indeed, supported by the data. In the output, you can see that conservatives had a stronger endorsement of this view compared to liberals and



Oneway

Descriptives

Boys should play with action figures not dolls.

	N	Mean	Std. Deviation	Std. Error	95% Confidence Interval for Mean		Minimum	Maximum
					Lower Bound	Upper Bound		
Liberal	136	2.66	1.863	.160	2.35	2.98	1	7
Moderate	193	3.83	1.883	.136	3.57	4.10	1	7
Conservative	84	4.27	1.806	.197	3.88	4.67	1	7
Total	413	3.54	1.962	.097	3.35	3.73	1	7

ANOVA

Boys should play with action figures not dolls.

	Sum of Squares	df	Mean Square	F	Sig.
Between Groups	166.830	2	83.415	24.087	.000
Within Groups	1419.838	410	3.463		
Total	1586.668	412			

Figure 9.8.4 The means for the three groups and the result of the ANOVA test

Source: Stephen Warren

the chance of obtaining this result when there is no such difference in the population is less than 1 in 1,000.

Tests of Relationships: Cross Tabulation with Chi Square

A **cross tabulation with chi square test** is used to look for relationships between two (or more) nominal level variables. Rather than dealing with means and standard deviations, then, like t-tests or ANOVAs do, the **chi square test** looks at frequencies, comparing the distribution that has been observed by the researcher in the data collected with distributions expected to occur by chance. Here is the notation for chi square: χ^2.

In order to run a chi square test, the first step is typically to construct a **cross tabulation table** with cells in the table used to categorize the observed values (meaning, the values of the variables in question found in the data) of each of the two nominal level variables. As you can see in Figure 9.10.1, you will find this function in SPSS under Descriptive Statistics → Crosstabs. Doing so will produce the dialog box you see in Figure 9.10.2, in which you select the variables you would like to use for the test. If there is a variable that you would consider to be the independent or predictor variable, the convention is to place that variable in the column position in the bottom box of the upper right portion. You place the variable that you would consider to be the dependent variable in the row position in the upper box. Next, you click on Statistics and then OK (again, as seen in Figure 9.10.2). This will produce a dialog box with many options. For our purposes for this example, we would select Chi-square, as indicated in Figure 9.10.3 and then hit Continue. Before we ask SPSS to actually run the test, there is one more intermediary step that we advise you take. You should select the Cells tab (Figure 9.10.4) and check off Column under Percentages (Figure 9.10.5), which will produce

not just counts/frequencies in each cell of the cross tabulation table but the percentage of respondents who chose each option on the variables in question. Then hit Continue, which will actually perform the test and produce the output.

Figures 9.10.6 and 9.10.7 show SPSS output associated with a cross tabulation with chi square test of whether respondents' sexual orientation was associated with their political ideology (again, two nominal level variables). In the cross-tabulation table (Figure 9.10.6), the top left cell represents the number of people (and percent of the total sample size) that identified as straight/heterosexual *and* as liberal. That is what a cross tabulation does: It shows the overlap between two variables. In fact, the entire top row shows numbers of people (and, again, percent of sample size) that identified as liberal across all of the sexual orientation possibilities in the sample. The first column (also circled) shows the distribution of those who identified as straight/heterosexual across all of the political ideology categories.

In order to determine whether the two variables are related to each other, you begin with an eyeball test of the distribution of the values, and then you look to the second part of the output. The first stage in conducting a test like this is to construct a cross-tabulation table and look for an imbalance among the cells. If the two variables were *not* related, there would be a relatively equal distribution across each of the cells of the table rather than the more lopsided numbers. Just from the eyeball test, then, it does seem that sexual identity and political ideology are related.

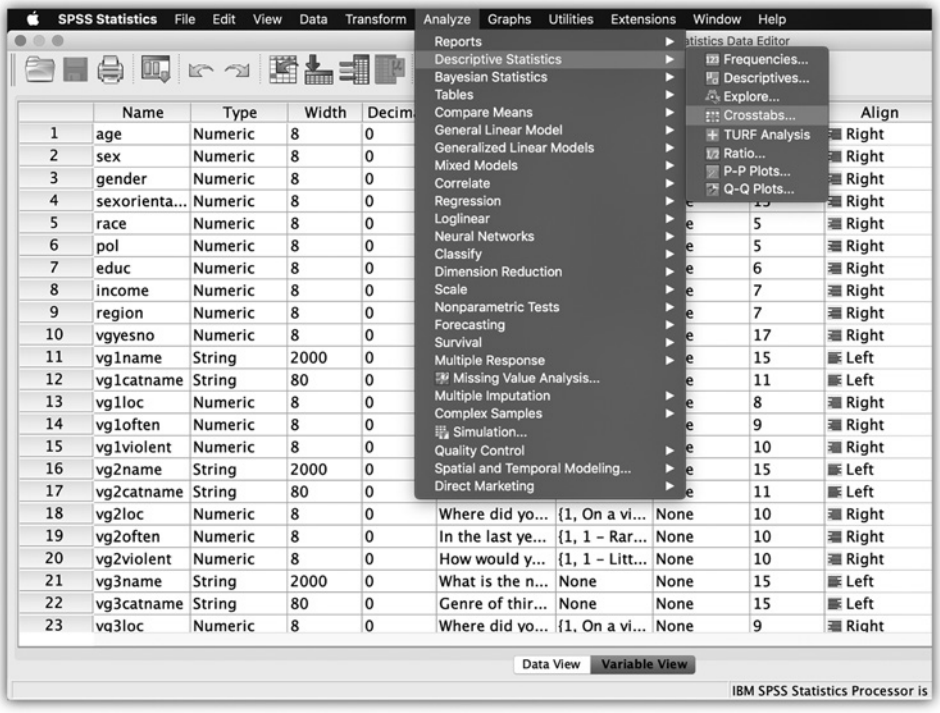


Figure 9.10.1 The Crosstabs command in SPSS

Source: Stephen Warren

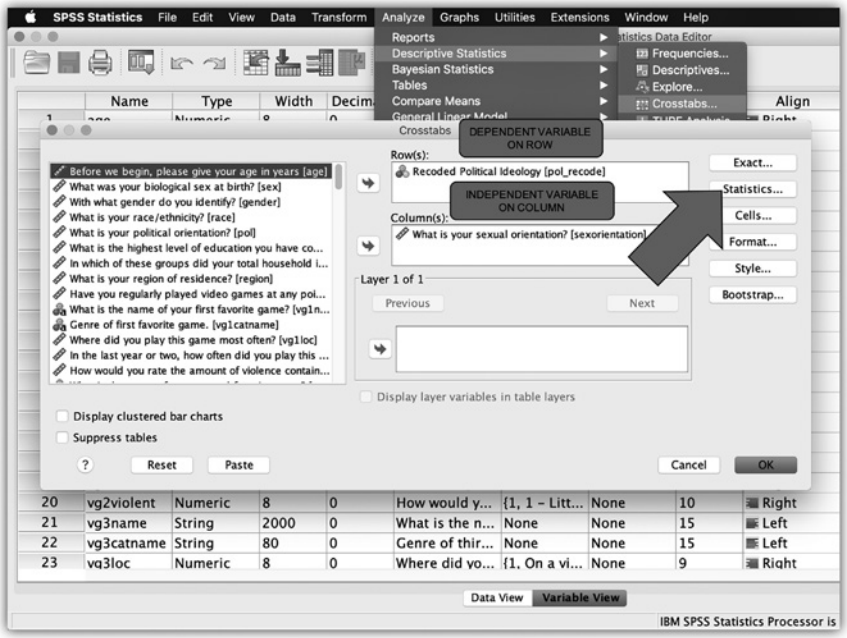


Figure 9.10.2 Enter variables for the test and select Statistics

Source: Stephen Warren

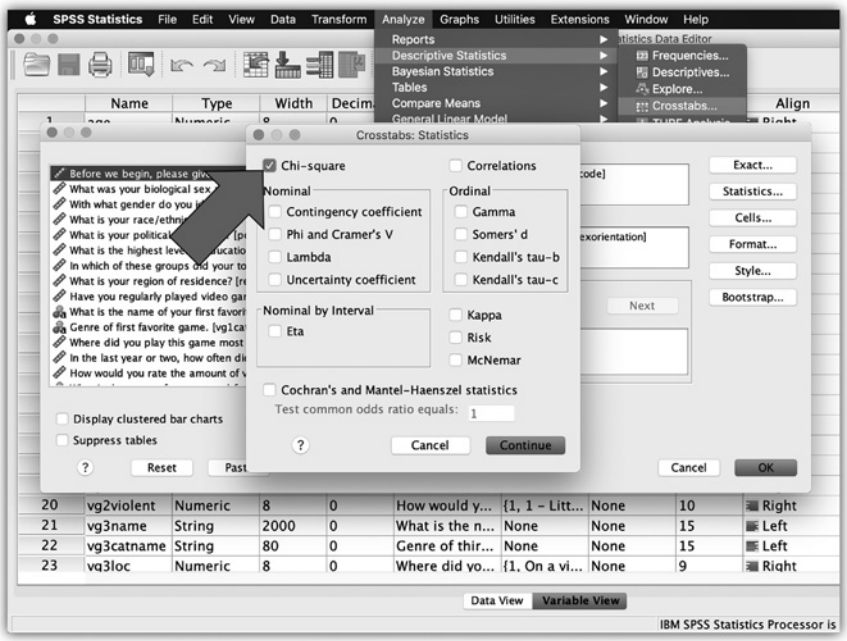


Figure 9.10.3 Select the Chi-square test

Source: Stephen Warren

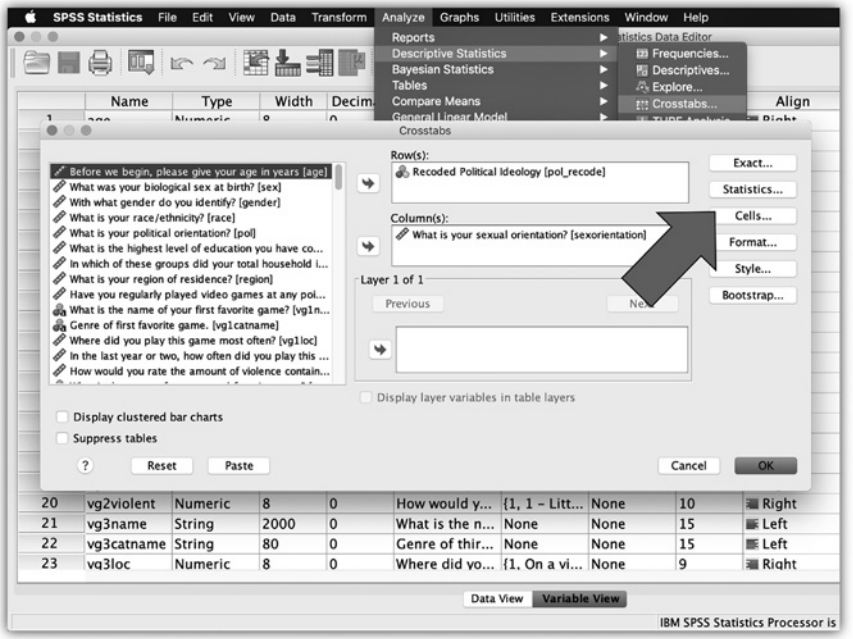


Figure 9.10.4 Select the Cells button

Source: Stephen Warren

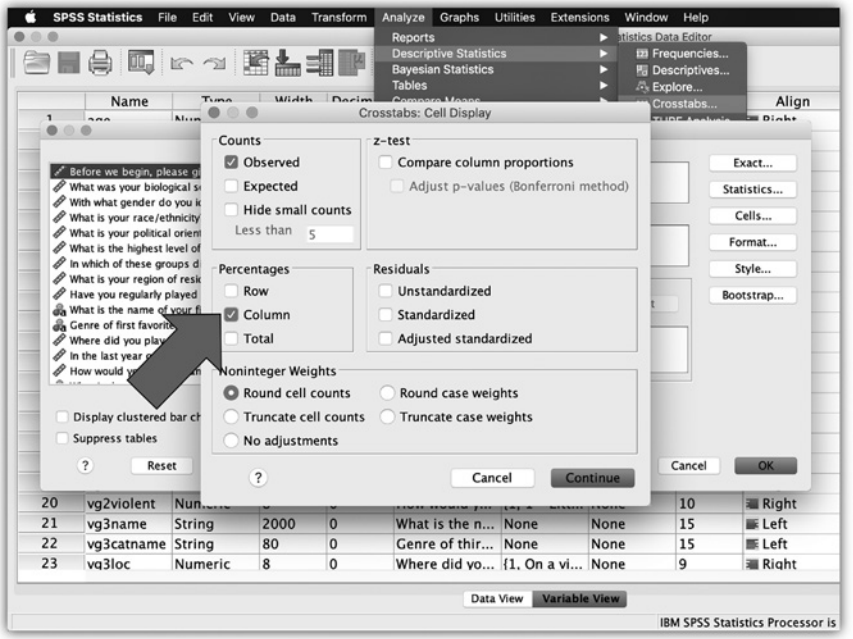
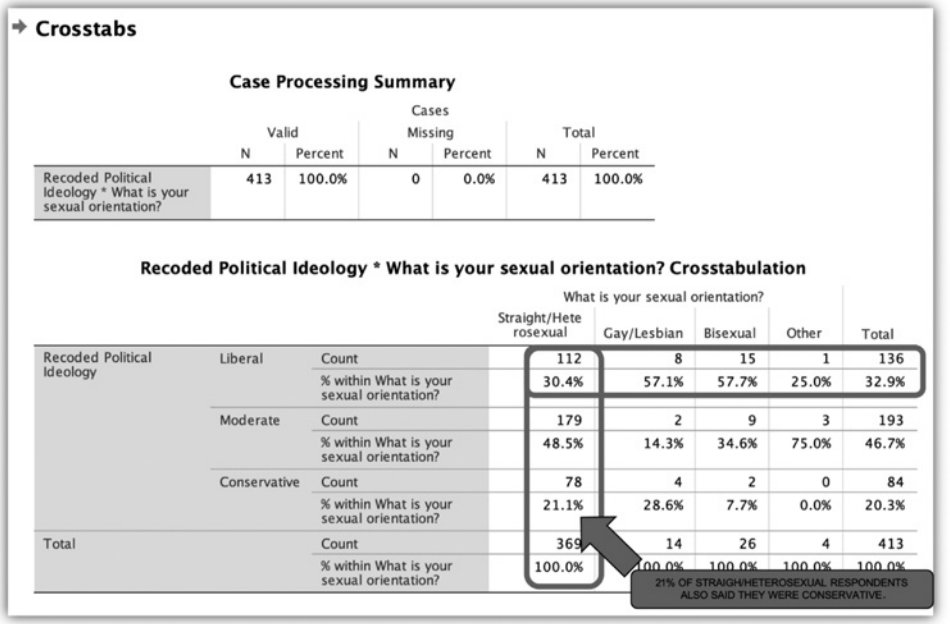


Figure 9.10.5 Select Column percentages

Source: Stephen Warren



Crosstabs

Case Processing Summary

	Cases					
	Valid		Missing		Total	
	N	Percent	N	Percent	N	Percent
Recoded Political Ideology * What is your sexual orientation?	413	100.0%	0	0.0%	413	100.0%

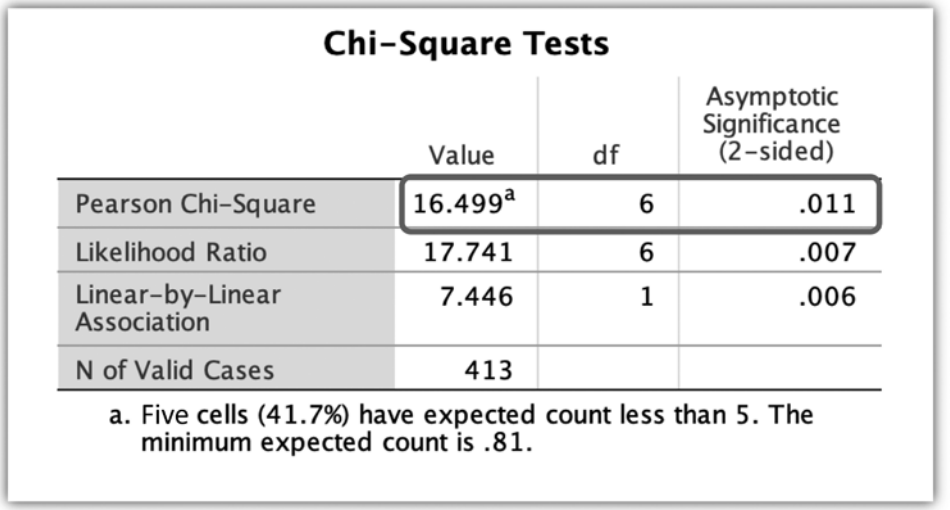
Recoded Political Ideology * What is your sexual orientation? Crosstabulation

			What is your sexual orientation?				
			Straight/Heterosexual	Gay/Lesbian	Bisexual	Other	Total
Recoded Political Ideology	Liberal	Count	112	8	15	1	136
		% within What is your sexual orientation?	30.4%	57.1%	57.7%	25.0%	32.9%
	Moderate	Count	179	2	9	3	193
		% within What is your sexual orientation?	48.5%	14.3%	34.6%	75.0%	46.7%
	Conservative	Count	78	4	2	0	84
		% within What is your sexual orientation?	21.1%	28.6%	7.7%	0.0%	20.3%
Total		Count	369	14	26	4	413
		% within What is your sexual orientation?	100.0%	100.0%	100.0%	100.0%	100.0%

21% OF STRAIGHT/HETEROSEXUAL RESPONDENTS ALSO SAID THEY WERE CONSERVATIVE.

Figure 9.10.6 Output displaying the crosstabulation

Source: Stephen Warren



Chi-Square Tests

	Value	df	Asymptotic Significance (2-sided)
Pearson Chi-Square	16.499[a]	6	.011
Likelihood Ratio	17.741	6	.007
Linear-by-Linear Association	7.446	1	.006
N of Valid Cases	413		

a. Five cells (41.7%) have expected count less than 5. The minimum expected count is .81.

Figure 9.10.7 Output for the Chi-square test

Source: Stephen Warren

To find out whether the relationship between variables that you have speculated about by looking at the distribution in the table is statistically significant, you report from the very top line of the portion of the output labeled Chi-Square Tests (Figure 9.10.7). The results show $\chi^2 = 16.50$, $df = 6$, $p = .01$, and you would report them just like that. Just like t and F statistics, χ^2 is difficult to interpret on its own, although larger values are usually associated with a statistically significant p level. The df for chi square is calculated by the number of cells minus 1 multiplied by the number of rows minus 1. The p value in our output is the most important component, then. It says that the odds of observing the association between sexual orientation and political ideology present in our results when there is no such association in the population (the chance that there is actually equal distribution across cells rather than the imbalance across cells that we found) is equal to 1 in 100. Thus, we can safely conclude that there is an association between these two variables, and the association has a particular direction: LGBTQ+ people are more likely to identify as liberal compared to as conservative. We made that observation by looking at the cells for all those who did not identify as straight and seeing whether they clustered more closely around liberal ideology rather than being more spread out across differing political ideologies.

⋆IMPORTANT NOTE⋆ The math behind chi square tests is thrown off if you have too many cells with not very many counts in them (too many underpopulated cells). That is why there is a footnote associated with the chi square result in our output. The rule is that no more than 20% of the cells should have an expected frequency of five, whereas we have 42% in our example. Before we place too much value on this result, then, we would need to correct this problem.

There are two ways of doing so. First, you could recode variables (using the process we have explained in this chapter) to collapse categories so that they now have more counts in them. This could certainly be done for the sexual orientation categories since some have so few. Or you could run a different test that is not sensitive to this issue, such as Fischer's exact test of independence. It would be good for you to practice SPSS use now with the sample data set by (1) recoding the sexual orientation variable into a new variable with fewer categories and (2) running a new cross tabulation with chi square test to see if the 20% or fewer cells with a minimum expected frequency of five issue has been resolved when using the newly recoded sexual orientation variable in the test for its association with political ideology.

Tests of Relationships: Pearson's Correlation

The next major type of bivariate and multivariate statistical tests is used to see whether two or more variables relate to one another. If variables are found to relate—with "relate" defined as whether knowing the values of one variable helps predict the values on the other—we say that they are **correlated** or associated with each other. If they are found not to relate, we say that they are **independent** of each other.

If you would like to see whether two variables are related to one another and both of those variables are measured at the interval or ratio level, you run a **Pearson's correlation test**. The Pearson's correlation test determines whether changes in the values of one variable are linked to changes in the values of another variable. It does so by calculating sums of values on each of the two variables in question, squaring those sums, and calculating the product of those sums. But again, knowing this equation is sort of like knowing how factories make sausage. You do not really have to know how to calculate correlation by hand, and perhaps, at this point in learning quantitative methods, you do not want to know. It is more important in an introductory quantitative methods context to simply know how to run this test using SPSS and to know what the output of the test means.

A Pearson's correlation test calculates a **correlation coefficient**, abbreviated with a lowercase *r*. That coefficient ranges from -1 to +1. The sign in front of the coefficient signifies whether the relationship between the two variables is negative or positive. A **negative correlation** means that as the values of one variable increase, the values of the other decrease (we can also say that these two variables are inversely related). A **positive correlation** means that as the values of one variable increase, the values of the other variable increase, as well.

The value of the coefficient represents the strength of the relationship. The closer the coefficient is to 0, the weaker the relationship between two variables. The closer the coefficient is to either -1 or +1, the stronger the relationship. Indeed, if you were to find two variables with a correlation coefficient of 1.0, that would mean that the two are perfectly correlated. Every time a value on one variable increases, a value on the other increases, as well. (The same applies to a correlation of -1.0, except in this case the two would be perfectly *negatively* correlated.) We should mention, however, that this result is much more likely to be a feature of the natural world than the social world. The social world is just too diverse and complex to have two variables be perfectly correlated.

To run a Pearson's correlation in SPSS, you go to Analyze→ Correlate→ Bivariate, as you can see in Figure 9.11.1.1. You select any two or more interval or ratio level variables that you would like to test to see whether they are correlated from the list of variables in the data set, as you can see in Figure 9.11.1.2. In our case, we have selected *Average hours playing video games per day* and, once again, agreement with the statement, "Boys should play with action figures, not dolls." You will also select Pearson under Correlation Coefficients, as we have indicated with an arrow in Figure 9.11.1.2. Then you hit OK and SPSS will run the test.

Figure 9.11.1.3 shows the SPSS output associated with this test. SPSS produces what is called a **correlation matrix**, and the diagonal of that matrix always shows each variable

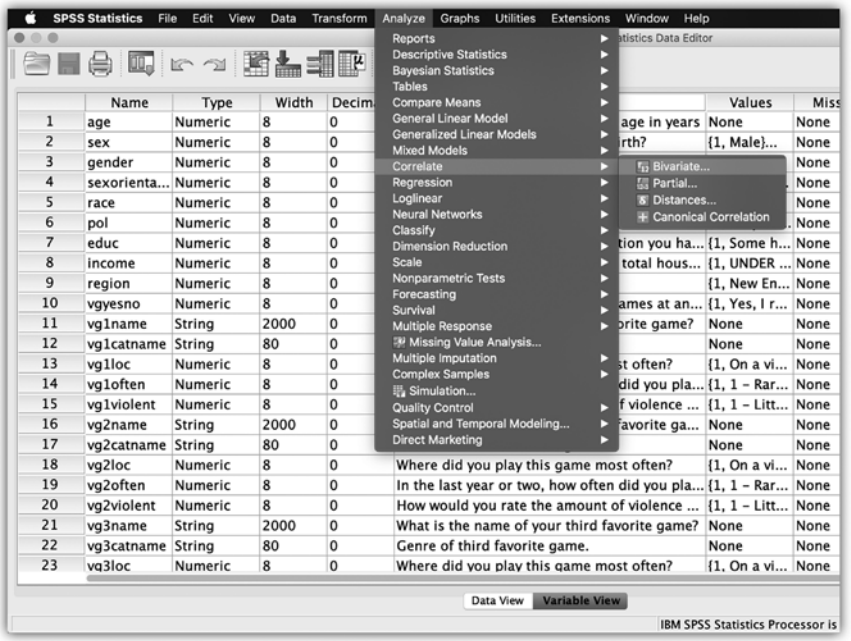

SPSS Statistics File Edit View Data Transform Analyze Graphs Utilities Extensions Window Help
Reports
Descriptive Statistics
Bayesian Statistics
Tables
Compare Means
General Linear Model
Generalized Linear Models
Mixed Models
Correlate
Regression
Loglinear
Neural Networks
Classify
Dimension Reduction
Scale
Nonparametric Tests
Forecasting
Survival
Multiple Response
Missing Value Analysis...
Multiple Imputation
Complex Samples
Simulation...
Quality Control
Spatial and Temporal Modeling...
Direct Marketing
Bivariate...
Partial...
Distances...
Canonical Correlation
Name Type Width Values Miss
1 age Numeric 8 0 None None
2 sex Numeric 8 0 {1, Male}... None
3 gender Numeric 8 0 None
4 sexorienta... Numeric 8 0 None
5 race Numeric 8 0 None
6 pol Numeric 8 0 None
7 educ Numeric 8 0 {1, Some h... None
8 income Numeric 8 0 {1, UNDER ... None
9 region Numeric 8 0 {1, New En... None
10 vgyesno Numeric 8 0 {1, Yes, I r... None
11 vg1name String 2000 0 None None
12 vg1catname String 80 0 None None
13 vg1loc Numeric 8 0 {1, On a vi... None
14 vg1often Numeric 8 0 {1, 1 – Rar... None
15 vg1violent Numeric 8 0 {1, 1 – Litt... None
16 vg2name String 2000 0 None None
17 vg2catname String 80 0 None None
18 vg2loc Numeric 8 0 Where did you play this game most often? {1, On a vi... None
19 vg2often Numeric 8 0 In the last year or two, how often did you pla... {1, 1 – Rar... None
20 vg2violent Numeric 8 0 How would you rate the amount of violence ... {1, 1 – Litt... None
21 vg3name String 2000 0 What is the name of your third favorite game? None None
22 vg3catname String 80 0 Genre of third favorite game. None None
23 vg3loc Numeric 8 0 Where did you play this game most often? {1, On a vi... None
Data View Variable View
IBM SPSS Statistics Processor is

Figure 9.11.1.1 The Bivariate Correlation command in SPSS

Source: Stephen Warren

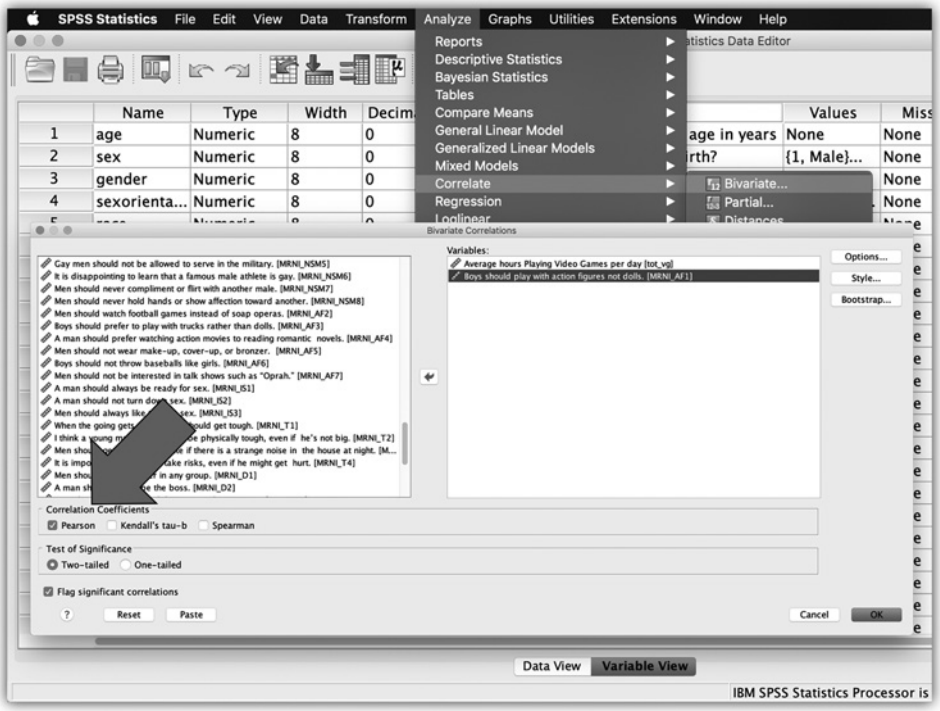
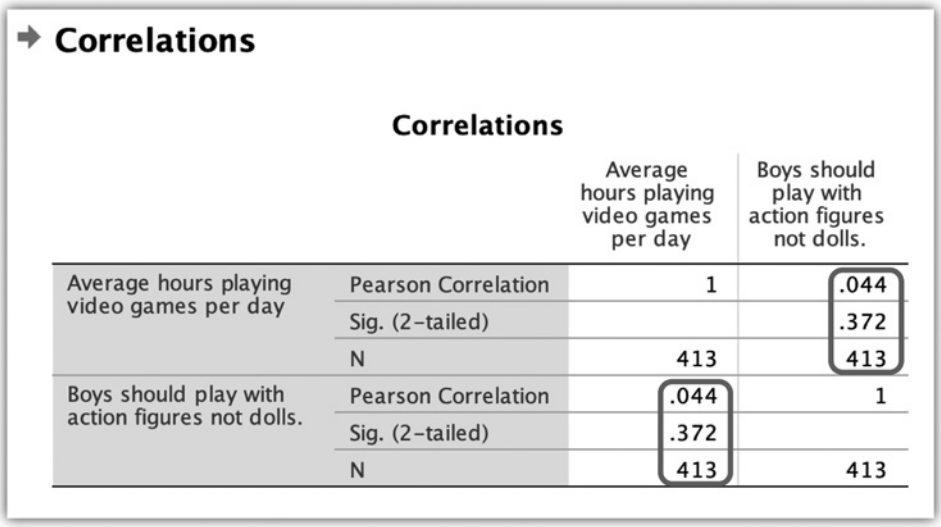


Figure 9.11.1.2 Select the variables of interest and the Pearson's test

Source: Stephen Warren



Correlations

Correlations

		Average hours playing video games per day	Boys should play with action figures not dolls.
Average hours playing video games per day	Pearson Correlation	1	.044
	Sig. (2-tailed)		.372
	N	413	413
Boys should play with action figures not dolls.	Pearson Correlation	.044	1
	Sig. (2-tailed)	.372	
	N	413	413

Figure 9.11.1.3 Output for the Pearson's correlation test

Source: Stephen Warren

correlated with itself. That is why you see the 1s on the diagonal. Of course, the video game use variable correlates perfectly with itself, as does the "boys should play with action figures" variable. But the answer to the question of whether the two correlate with each other is located in the other cells of the matrix and is circled in Figure 9.11.1.3. In this case, we would report $r = .04$, *ns*. The correlation between the amount of video game use and agreement with this statement is quite close to 0. The significance level is way over .05, which means that there is no significant relationship between those variables. If we had a hypothesis that predicted that amount of video gaming would be associated with this view of masculine gender roles, then, we would have to reject that hypothesis.

Unlike the *t* or the *F* statistic, the *r* coefficient is quite meaningful on its own since its size (or distance between 0 and either -1 or +1) determines how weakly or strongly the two variables are related. This chart indicates how researchers typically discuss the size/strength of a correlation coefficient.

Coefficient	*Interpretation*
.0	no relationship
.1 to .3	weak relationship
.4 to .6	moderate relationship
.7 to .9	strong relationship
1.0	perfect relationship

There is another helpful property of a correlation coefficient, as well. If you square the value of the coefficient, you can calculate what is called the **coefficient of determination**, which tells you how much variation in one variable is explained by the variation in the other variable. The correlation coefficient, *r*, becomes r^2. And r^2 tells us how much of Variable A is explained by Variable B. So if age and earnings, for example, have a correlation of $r = .60$, then $r^2 = .36$, which means that we can say that 36% of the variation in the earnings variable is explained by variation in the variable age. Logically, that means that 64% of the variation in earnings is *not* explained by age. Clearly, some other variables also contribute importantly to explaining earnings. This is an important cautionary remark about the fact that there is always more to the story than what any single statistical analysis can tell you about a phenomenon of interest.

Pearson's correlation analyses can also be run with what we call a control variable, determining whether any relationship first found between two variables will hold up when introducing a third. Recall from the chapter on experiments that a **control variable** is defined as any variable held constant in an analysis so that a relationship between two other variables can be clarified or confirmed. Imagine we find a correlation between the amount of ice cream consumed and the number of burglaries or other crimes committed in a study, for instance. If we enter a third variable, outside temperature, into the equation, we are likely to see any initial correlation between ice cream consumption and crime disappear. That initial relationship between eating ice cream and crime was spurious. It was explained away by the introduction of a third, control variable: hot weather. Hot weather is a cause of ice cream consumption as well as an underlying cause of crime.

The next set of SPSS output visuals shows how to run Pearson's correlation with a control variable. To do so, you select Analyze→ Correlate→ Partial from the pull-down menu, as seen in Figure 9.11.3a. Then you populate both parts of the dialog box, entering the two variables that will be tested for correlation in the top and the control variable in the bottom.

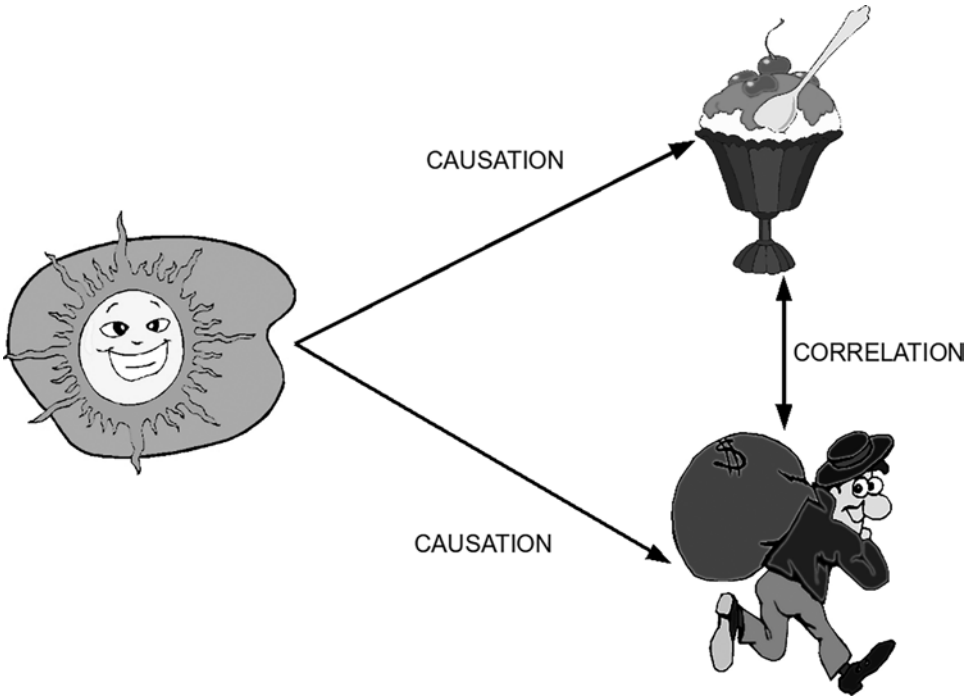


Figure 9.11.2 A reminder that correlation is not the same as causation, partly because a third variable may be at play

Source: Rcragun, https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Correlation_vs_causation.png

As you can see in Figure 9.11.3b, we have elected to determine whether the amount of time spent playing video games correlates with the amount of time spent watching TV while controlling for age, using these variables from the sample data set. Figure 9.11.3c shows the SPSS output for this test, a correlation matrix labeled to indicate that it reflects the correlation between the two variables in question while controlling for the third. How would you interpret the result, using the components of the output we have circled? Are these two forms of media use correlated with each other, even when accounting for age of the respondent?

Tests of Relationships: Multiple Regression

Regression tests are also quite flexible and potentially powerful statistical tests. In a regression test, one or more variables are entered into a statistical model as predictors of a single dependent variable. In other words, regression tests are used to explain how much of the variation in a dependent variable is explained as a function of the variation of one or more independent/predictor variables. When there is more than one predictor/independent variable, we call these multiple regression tests. Multiple regression is the test to use if you would like to explore whether and how much multiple variables predict scores on a single dependent measure.

In multiple regression, the dependent variable must be measured at the interval or ratio level and the predictors are typically measured at those same levels, as well. If the predictor

SPSS Statistics File Edit View Data Transform Analyze Graphs Utilities Extensions Window Help
Reports
Descriptive Statistics
Bayesian Statistics
Tables
Compare Means
General Linear Model
Generalized Linear Models
Mixed Models
Correlate
Regression
Loglinear
Neural Networks
Classify
Dimension Reduction
Scale
Nonparametric Tests
Forecasting
Survival
Multiple Response
Missing Value Analysis...
Multiple Imputation
Complex Samples
Simulation...
Quality Control
Spatial and Temporal Modeling...
Direct Marketing
Bivariate...
Partial...
Distances...
Canonical Correlation
Name Type Width Decim Columns Align
1 age Numeric 8 0 5 Right
2 sex Numeric 8 0 5 Right
3 gender Numeric 8 0
4 sexorienta... Numeric 8 0
5 race Numeric 8 0
6 pol Numeric 8 0
7 educ Numeric 8 0 6 Right
8 income Numeric 8 0 7 Right
9 region Numeric 8 0 7 Right
10 vgyesno Numeric 8 0 17 Right
11 vg1name String 2000 0 15 Left
12 vg1catname String 80 0 11 Left
13 vg1loc Numeric 8 0 8 Right
14 vg1often Numeric 8 0 9 Right
15 vg1violent Numeric 8 0 10 Right
16 vg2name String 2000 0 15 Left
17 vg2catname String 80 0 11 Left
18 vg2loc Numeric 8 0 Where did yo... {1, On a vi... None 10 Right
19 vg2often Numeric 8 0 In the last ye... {1, 1 - Rar... None 10 Right
20 vg2violent Numeric 8 0 How would y... {1, 1 - Litt... None 10 Right
21 vg3name String 2000 0 What is the n... None None 15 Left
22 vg3catname String 80 0 Genre of thir... None None 15 Left
23 vg3loc Numeric 8 0 Where did yo... {1, On a vi... None 9 Right
Data View Variable View
IBM SPSS Statistics Processor is

Figure 9.11.3a The Partial Correlation command in SPSS

Source: Stephen Warren

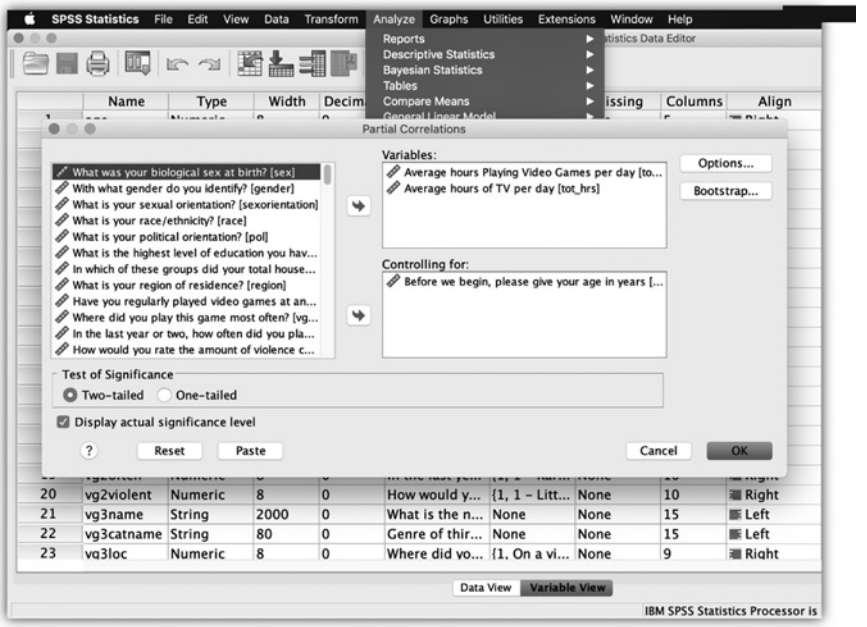
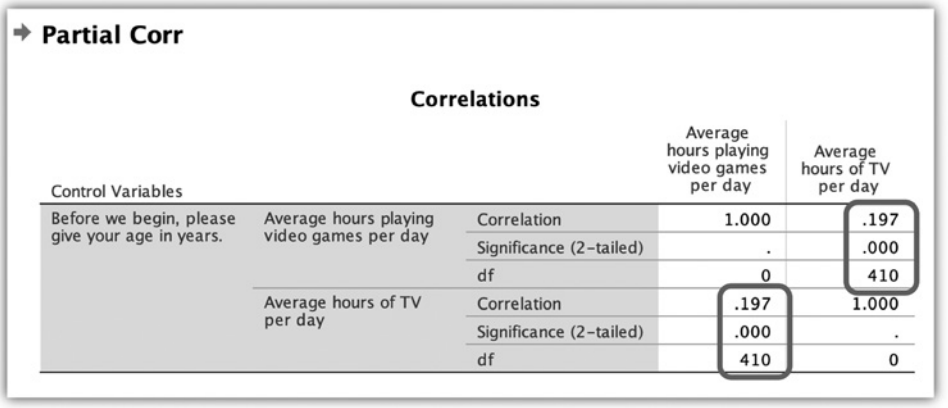

SPSS Statistics File Edit View Data Transform Analyze Graphs Utilities Extensions Window Help
Reports
Descriptive Statistics
Bayesian Statistics
Tables
Compare Means
Partial Correlations
What was your biological sex at birth? [sex]
With what gender do you identify? [gender]
What is your sexual orientation? [sexorientation]
What is your race/ethnicity? [race]
What is your political orientation? [pol]
What is the highest level of education you hav...
In which of these groups did your total house...
What is your region of residence? [region]
Have you regularly played video games at an...
Where did you play this game most often? [vg...
In the last year or two, how often did you pla...
How would you rate the amount of violence c...
Variables:
Average hours Playing Video Games per day [to...
Average hours of TV per day [tot_hrs]
Options...
Bootstrap...
Controlling for:
Before we begin, please give your age in years [...
Test of Significance
Two-tailed One-tailed
Display actual significance level
?
Reset
Paste
Cancel
OK
20 vg2violent Numeric 8 0 How would y... {1, 1 - Litt... None 10 Right
21 vg3name String 2000 0 What is the n... None None 15 Left
22 vg3catname String 80 0 Genre of thir... None None 15 Left
23 vg3loc Numeric 8 0 Where did yo... {1, On a vi... None 9 Right
Data View Variable View
IBM SPSS Statistics Processor is

Figure 9.11.3b Select variables of interest, including a control variable

Source: Stephen Warren



Partial Corr

Correlations

Control Variables			Average hours playing video games per day	Average hours of TV per day
Before we begin, please give your age in years.	Average hours playing video games per day	Correlation	1.000	.197
		Significance (2-tailed)	.	.000
		df	0	410
	Average hours of TV per day	Correlation	.197	1.000
		Significance (2-tailed)	.000	.
		df	410	0

Figure 9.11.3c Output for Partial Correlation test

Source: Stephen Warren

variables are not interval or ratio, they must be transformed before they can be entered into a regression model. To transform a nominal level variable to use as a predictor in multiple regression, for instance, you must create a dummy variable, as we explained early on in this chapter. In a **dummy variable**, one of the values of the variables is used as a reference group and is given a score of 1, and the other values are all given a score of 0. Multiple regression tests tell you how much each predictor variable entered into the model contributes to the dependent measure, one by one, as well as how much they contribute together.

Stepwise regression is a type of multiple regression in which the researcher determines the order in which to enter predictor variables, with each set of predictor variables entered in steps. When the first block of predictor variable(s) is entered, the test will give you a R^2 value, which is measured from .0 to 1.0 and tells you how much of the variance in the dependent measure is explained by the first block of predictors. When subsequent blocks are entered, the test tells you how much *additional* variance in the dependent variable—above and beyond that explained by the first block—each subsequent block explains. The first block of variables often consists of demographic variables—like gender, age, race, ethnicity, etc. The next block(s) can be any other variable or variables of interest that are thought to predict the dependent measure. The final block is usually reserved for the hypothesized predictor, because when this block is entered into the regression equation, the equation is still accounting for all other blocks that came before it, so the results will tell you once again how much *additional variance* in the dependent measure is explained by that final predictor even after accounting for all the variables already entered. It is a rigorous test of a hypothesis given that the last predictor entered has to still explain some of the variance in the dependent measure even after accounting for all of the variables that have been entered into the regression equation before it.

Figures 9.12.a through 9.12g show how to run a stepwise regression test in SPSS, as well as what components of the resulting output you report. As you can see in the first visual, you can find the test under Analyze→ Regression→Linear. The next step is to plug in the dependent measure in the top portion of the resulting dialog box, and then to enter the first variable or variables for the first block, followed by clicking on Next, as you can see in the second

visual. In our example from the sample data set, we are entering predictors to see how well they help explain the dependent variable of level of agreement with the notion that dominant masculine roles and norms emphasize Restrictive Emotionality. For Block 1, we have chosen to enter two demographic variables, age (a ratio level measure) and political ideology (measured on a seven-point scale, and therefore considered interval). In Block 2, we have entered our hypothesized predictor, amount of time spent playing video games per day (please see the third visual in this series). Since we are only using two blocks of predictor variables in this example, after entering that one, we can click OK at the bottom right rather than Next. If you were to click Next, you could enter a third block of predictors. The next step is to select the Statistics tab and check off R^2 change, as we have indicated with the arrow in the fourth visual (Figure 9.12d). Then, you click Continue and SPSS runs the test.

The output is shown in the last visuals in this series. The Variables Entered/Removed portion of the output on the top left simply summarizes the stepwise structure used to run the test (Figure 9.12e). The most important parts of the output appear in the Model Summary in the fifth visual (also Figure 9.12e). The row that says Model 1 shows how much of the dependent variable was explained by the first block of predictors, in our case age and political ideology. First, you look at the R^2 portion of that table, as we have circled, in addition to the *Sig. F* change value associated with that first R^2 result. Here we see that adding age and political ideology to the regression equation resulted in an R^2 of .077, which was significant at the $p < .001$ level. Age and political ideology, then, are, indeed, significant predictors together in the same block of views of Restrictive Emotionality in masculine gender roles and norms. The next row in the Model Summary, Model 2, shows what happened when the amount of time spent playing video games was entered into the regression equation. The R^2 associated with that variable was .099, and the significance level associated with that result was .002, as we have circled. Since .002 is a statistically significant finding, we would say, then, that video game playing was also a significant predictor of views of Restrictive Masculinity even after taking age and political ideology into account. The last important part of the Model Summary table in the third visual is R^2 change. This shows that adding the second block—which, once again, was the video game playing variable—increased the amount of variance in views of Restrictive Masculinity by .022. This makes sense since the first block (age and political ideology) had an R^2 of .077, and the second block (video game playing) had an R^2 of .099. The difference between those two values is the R^2 change of .022 (.099 minus .077).

Regression tests are based in part on analysis of variance, and the second visual from the output (the sixth one in this series, Figure 9.12f) shows the ANOVA calculations for each of the two models. You can see that these same *F* results are apparent in the Model Summary from the first output visual we have already explained. The final important aspect of the findings stems from the final visual in this series, labeled Coefficients, Figure 9.12g. This part of the SPSS output shows not just what the entire block contributed to the dependent variable but what each variable within each block contributed. It does so by providing **Beta coefficients** (abbreviated β) for each variable, which are measures of the strength of the effect of entering each variable into the equation, how strongly the variable helps explain the dependent measure. The higher the Beta coefficient, the stronger the predictor, and each Beta coefficient also has its own associated significance level.

Some people report standardized Betas in their results, others report unstandardized Betas, and still others report both. Unstandardized Betas are those produced by the raw data. Therefore, they are measured in the same units as the original measures. Standardized Betas, on the other hand, are based on **z scores**, which are transformations of raw data in which variables are changed to have a mean of 0 and a standard deviation of 1, no matter what the units among those variables were. So, which Betas should you use in your research? The advantage

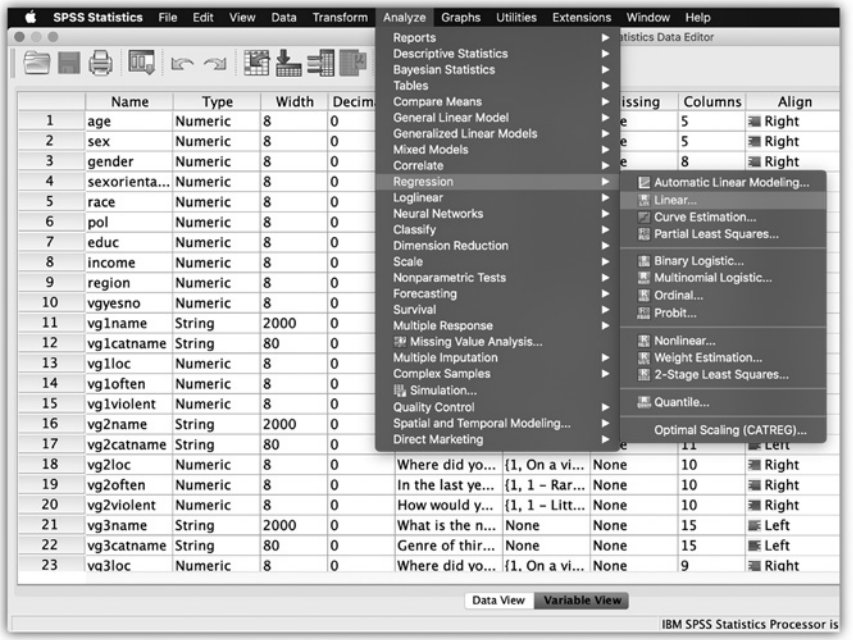


Figure 9.12a The Linear Regression command in SPSS

Source: Stephen Warren

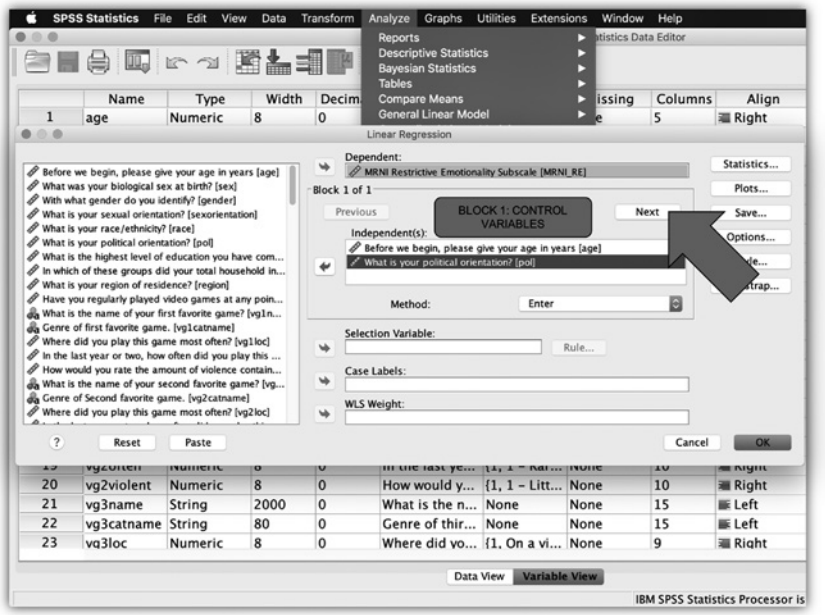


Figure 9.12b Enter the first block of variables

Source: Stephen Warren

Figure 9.12c Enter a subsequent block of variables

Source: Stephen Warren

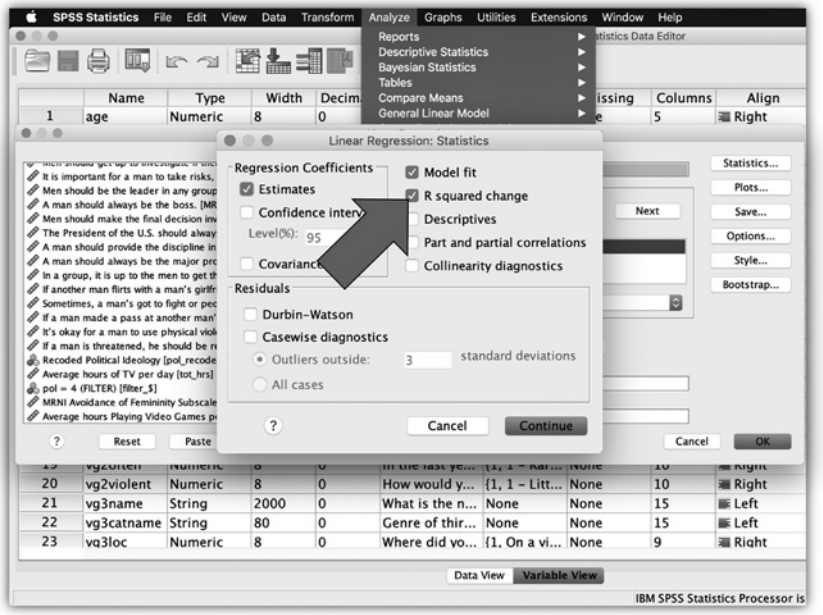
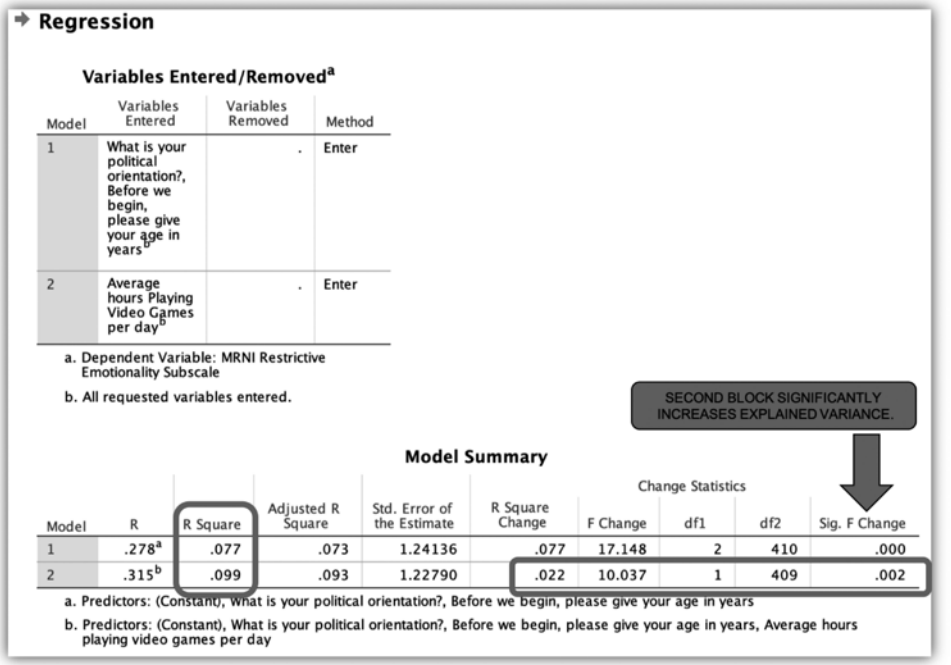


Figure 9.12d Select R squared change so that it is included in the output

Source: Stephen Warren



Regression

Variables Entered/Removed[a]

Model	Variables Entered	Variables Removed	Method
1	What is your political orientation?, Before we begin, please give your age in years[b]	.	Enter
2	Average hours Playing Video Games per day[b]	.	Enter

a. Dependent Variable: MRNI Restrictive Emotionality Subscale

b. All requested variables entered.

SECOND BLOCK SIGNIFICANTLY INCREASES EXPLAINED VARIANCE.

Model Summary

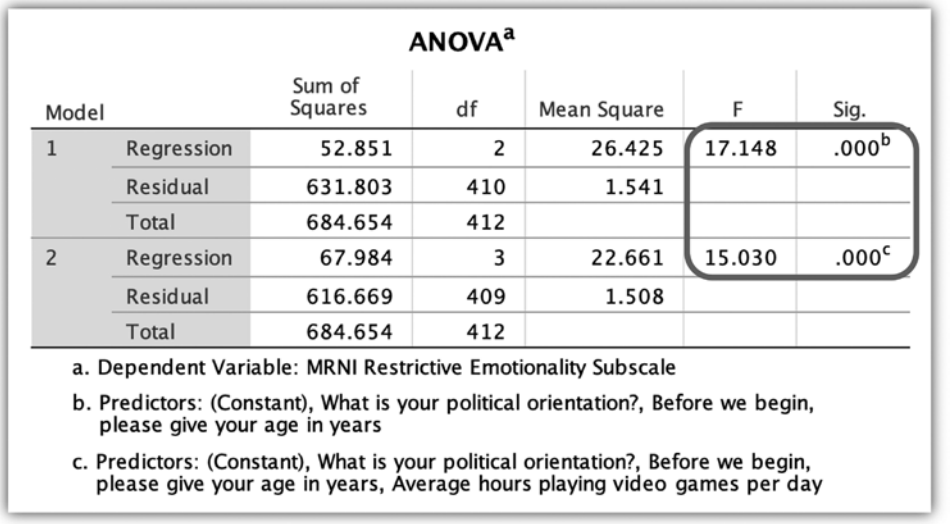
Model	R	R Square	Adjusted R Square	Std. Error of the Estimate	Change Statistics: R Square Change	F Change	df1	df2	Sig. F Change
1	.278[a]	.077	.073	1.24136	.077	17.148	2	410	.000
2	.315[b]	.099	.093	1.22790	.022	10.037	1	409	.002

a. Predictors: (Constant), What is your political orientation?, Before we begin, please give your age in years

b. Predictors: (Constant), What is your political orientation?, Before we begin, please give your age in years, Average hours playing video games per day

Figure 9.12e Output for the Linear Regression test, model summary

Source: Stephen Warren



ANOVA[a]

Model		Sum of Squares	df	Mean Square	F	Sig.
1	Regression	52.851	2	26.425	17.148	.000[b]
	Residual	631.803	410	1.541		
	Total	684.654	412			
2	Regression	67.984	3	22.661	15.030	.000[c]
	Residual	616.669	409	1.508		
	Total	684.654	412			

a. Dependent Variable: MRNI Restrictive Emotionality Subscale

b. Predictors: (Constant), What is your political orientation?, Before we begin, please give your age in years

c. Predictors: (Constant), What is your political orientation?, Before we begin, please give your age in years, Average hours playing video games per day

Figure 9.12f Output for the Linear Regression test, F statistic and other ANOVA results

Source: Stephen Warren

Coefficients[a]

Model		Unstandardized Coefficients B	Unstandardized Coefficients Std. Error	Standardized Coefficients Beta	t	Sig.
1	(Constant)	.264	.583		.453	.651
	Before we begin, please give your age in years	.080	.027	.144	3.015	.003
	What is your political orientation?	.195	.042	.223	4.666	.000
2	(Constant)	.091	.579		.157	.876
	Before we begin, please give your age in years	.083	.026	.148	3.142	.002
	What is your political orientation?	.189	.041	.215	4.556	.000
	Average hours playing video games per day	.072	.023	.149	3.168	.002

a. Dependent Variable: MRNI Restrictive Emotionality Subscale

Excluded Variables[a]

Model		Beta In	t	Sig.	Partial Correlation	Collinearity Statistics Tolerance
1	Average hours playing video games per day	.149[b]	3.168	.002	.155	.997

a. Dependent Variable: MRNI Restrictive Emotionality Subscale

b. Predictors in the Model: (Constant), What is your political orientation?, Before we begin, please give your age in years

Figure 9.12g Output for the Linear Regression test, Beta coefficients

Source: Stephen Warren

of using unstandardized Betas is that they are easier to interpret since they mirror the way that the variable(s) was measured. Yet, it is considered best practice to report standardized betas when you are comparing predictors that were measured using different units, since the z scores give them a common metric and therefore facilitate a comparison across them. Many researchers choose to report both. We have emphasized the unstandardized Betas in Figure 9.12.g, as you can see by the circle. Reading that output, then, we would report that age ($\beta = .08$, $p < .01$) is a significant predictor in the final model (Model 2), as is political ideology ($\beta = .19$, $p < .001$). Importantly for the hypothesis, amount of video game playing is also a significant predictor of views of Restrictive Emotionality in the final model ($\beta = .07$, $p < .01$). When running regression tests for your own research, you would report the Beta coefficients, the R^2, and the change in R^2 that happens from block to block when each block is entered in the equation.

Summary

We have taken you on a whirlwind tour of some of the most commonly used statistical tests in Communication and other social sciences. It is a lot to take in, we know, and we hope we

have set out the steps in a logical and easy-to-follow manner. Even though we have covered a great deal for an introductory book, we must confess that what we have explained in this chapter is only the tip of the iceberg. As you saw from the non-highlighted components of the SPSS commands we have illustrated, there are loads of other options of tests to run and ways to analyze your data using SPSS (or any other statistical package). We hope that this will be just the beginning of your own exploration of the statistical tools and approaches available to make sense of quantitative data.

In this chapter, we have introduced measures of central tendency and measures of variability and shown you how to run those tests on your own variables in SPSS. We presented a handful of the most frequently used ways to transform variables, including computing new variables from those that already exist, recoding variables, selecting cases, and creating an index (including first determining through a reliability analysis whether an index is warranted). Next, of course, we got into the details of tests of differences between and among groups and tests of associations between and among variables. When first learning statistics, it can be quite daunting to have to determine what test(s) you should run to explore your research questions and test your hypotheses. In this chapter, we have shown that selecting a test depends a great deal on what the data themselves look like, including what level of measurement each variable uses and, in some cases, how many groups are created by variables in the data. Although there may seem to be many ways to analyze data, then, the decision about how to begin is often quite straightforward, since the properties of the variables dictate the statistical approach.

If statistics really are the grammar of science, as statistician Karl Pearson said, then the best way to learn them is to use them, just like any other new language that you might learn. It certainly takes time and practice to internalize why and how you approach data analysis in particular ways, and we encourage you to keep up with that practice as your interests in quantitative research grow. We would also remind you of the link between Chapter 8 and this chapter, and say once again that it is just as important to know why you are running a particular statistical test as it is how to run it.

And it is certainly equally as important to know what to make of the results that you find. Interpretation is key. It is the way in which we communicate what we found, what it means, and why it is important. It is important not to get lost in the detail or in the mechanics of statistical analysis but rather to remember that the numbers you are crunching represent real people and/or real topics of real importance to the world.

In order for quantitative research data to be of use in social justice efforts in the wider world, it is vitally important that results of studies are clear, accurate, and precise. Given that not all readers of your research will be trained in statistics, the onus is on you to communicate your results in a manner that is both statistically defensible and readily understood. In the last chapter of this book, we discuss how to write up quantitative research for presentation, publication, for use in policy formation, and for the wider public.

Discussion Questions and Activities

1. Imagine you are an interpersonal communication scholar with an interest in family communication. You have a hypothesis that predicts that the more one's family typically engages in argumentation at the dinner table (measured by the approximate number of times per month), the more likely one is to report intention to vote in the next election (measured by the degree of likelihood on a scale of 1 to 7). What statistical test would run to test this prediction? Why did you choose that test?
2. Imagine that you are a health communication scholar running an experiment to test participants' responses to racial diversity among the characters appearing in a public service

announcement (PSA) reminding people to get a flu vaccine every year. You have three groups in your research design: those who see a PSA featuring an African American family, those who see a PSA featuring a White family, and those who see no PSA at all. You want to know whether those different types of exposure influence intention to get a flu shot this year among your research participants, which you measured as a Yes or No item. What statistical test would you run to find out the answer to your research question? Why did you choose that test?

3. Now imagine a slight change in the previous scenario. Rather than testing whether participants intend to get a flu shot, you are now interested in how important they think getting a flu shot is, on a scale of 1 to 5. What statistical test would you run to find out this answer? Why did you choose that test?
4. From your own research interests, come up with a hypothesis that you would like to test, a way to operationalize the variables you would need to test that hypothesis, and then a data analysis plan for the statistical tests you would use to find out whether your hypothesis was supported or refuted.

References

Burk, L. R., Burkhart, B. R., & Sikorski, J. F. (2004). Construction and preliminary validation of the Auburn differential masculinity inventory. *Psychology of Men & Masculinity*, *5*(1), 4–17. doi:10.1037/1524-9220.5.1.4

Hesse-Biber, S. (2012). Feminist approaches to triangulation: Uncovering subjugated knowledge and fostering social change in mixed methods research. *Journal of Mixed Methods Research*, *6*(2), 137–146.

Hesse-Biber, S., & Piatelli, D. (2012). The synergistic practice of theory and method. In S. Hesse-Biber (Ed.), *The handbook of feminist research: Theory and praxis* (2nd ed., pp. 176–186). Thousand Oaks, CA: SAGE Publications.

Hundleby, C. E. (2012). Feminist empiricism. In S. N. Hesse-Biber (Ed.), *SAGE handbook of feminist research: Theory and praxis* (2nd ed., pp. 46–64). Thousand Oaks, CA: SAGE Publications.

Levant, R. F., Smalley, K. B., Aupont, M., House, A. T., Richmond, K., & Noronha, D. (2007). Initial validation of the male role norms inventory-revised (MRNI-R). *The Journal of Men's Studies*, *15*(1), 83–100. doi:10.3149/jms.1501.83

McHugh, M. C., Koeske, R. D., & Frieze, I. H. (1986). Issues to consider in conducting nonsexist psychological research: A guide for researchers. *American Psychologist*, *41*, 879–890.

Spalter-Roth, R., & Hartmann, H. (1996). Small happiness: The feminist struggle to integrate social research with social activism. In H. Gottfried (Ed.), *Feminism and social change: Bridging theory and practice* (pp. 206–224). Urbana, IL: University of Illinois Press.

10 Mixed Methods

Triangulating with Qualitative Research

As we have seen in Chapter 1 of this book, social justice researchers often take a problem-centered approach to research with the goal of achieving social transformation. Given this goal, sometimes quantitative research methods alone are not sufficient to fully understand, explain, predict, challenge, and change social inequalities. Within social justice research, it is quite common to combine *quantitative* methods with *qualitative* methods to approach the research problem from multiple perspectives. Combining multiple research methods, also known as a "mixed methods approach," is especially useful when addressing complex communication-related social issues.

Although we have examined quantitative methods such as experiments, surveys, and content analysis in separate chapters in this book thus far, these methods can be used in conjunction with one another within a larger research project. Using different types of methods within the *same* research tradition is called a **multi-methods approach.** Thus, multi-methods approaches use multiple quantitative methods (or multiple qualitative methods) within a research project. For example, let's say that a quantitative researcher is interested in understanding anti-Chinese racism in the U.S. during the COVID-19 pandemic. They could potentially conduct a quantitative big data analysis of a hashtag such as #IamNotaVirus followed by a national survey of Asian Americans about their social media use to discuss the racist experiences they have encountered. Similarly, researchers Riva Tukachinsky, Dana Mastro, and Moran Yarchi (2017) used a multimethod quantitative approach to examine the effects of television representations of Black and Latinx characters among U.S. viewers. They first conducted a content analysis of primetime shows to note the patterns in representations of these groups. These findings were then used as predictors in the second stage of the project. In the second stage of the project, the researchers analyzed cross-sectional national survey data to examine whether exposure to these TV shows was correlated with viewers' attitudes toward Latinx and Black individuals during the same time period.

Whereas multi-method approaches use multiple quantitative or multiple qualitative methods within the same project, mixed methods approaches are slightly different. **Mixed methods** is a term specifically used for research that involves both qualitative *and* quantitative research within the same project. Mixed methods research is an approach where "a researcher or team of researchers combines elements of qualitative and quantitative research approaches (e.g., use of qualitative and quantitative viewpoints, data collection, analysis, inference techniques) for the broad purposes of breadth and depth of understanding and corroboration" (Johnson, Onwuegbuzie, & Turner, 2007, p. 123). As we have seen in Chapter 1, qualitative and quantitative research methods have slightly different assumptions, values, and orientations. By complementing one another, both approaches provide different but helpful perspectives on social issues. In general, quantitative research focuses on measuring variables, understanding statistical relationships among them, testing hypotheses, explaining relationships, and

predicting outcomes. In contrast, qualitative research emphasizes in-depth analysis, subjective evaluations, and meaning-making. Depending on the goals of a research project and available resources, social justice researchers can use a single method, multimethod, or mixed methods approach to examine social issues.

The rest of this chapter provides a framework for social justice researchers interested in using mixed methods approaches that combine quantitative with qualitative methods. We will first discuss the concept of triangulation, which helps to understand the significance of approaching research issues from multiple viewpoints. Then, we will introduce you to some common qualitative methods used in Communication research, especially for social justice. Toward the end of the chapter, we explain how, why, and when to use mixed methods research for addressing social justice issues within Communication.

Triangulation: Approaching Research from Multiple Perspectives

Triangulation is a term used to describe the combination of multiple approaches and perspectives within the same study to understand the same phenomenon. It is a commonly used strategy that allows for describing, analyzing, and decoding phenomena from multiple perspectives using multiple methods. It allows researchers to access multiple meanings, realities, and viewpoints in addressing a social issue. Triangulation is particularly helpful in social justice-related social problems that involve multiple stakeholders and long histories of injustices. Bringing in multiple research perspectives could help to address these social issues in effective and innovative ways.

There are many ways in which triangulation can be achieved, by combining data, researcher, theoretical, and methodological approaches (Denzin & Lincoln, 2005). **Data triangulation** can be achieved by gathering data about the issue or topic across time, space, and populations. Collecting data using longitudinal designs, for instance, helps researchers to examine the issue across time. Similarly, data collected across various subgroups and cultures also provides multiple perspectives. **Researcher triangulation** involves the practice of having multiple investigators and researchers examining the same social issue. For example, in Chapter 7 on content analysis, we have seen that intercoder reliability is assessed by having multiple coders examine the same texts to understand the extent of similarity in their interpretations. **Theoretical triangulation** is when a researcher examines the issue of interest using multiple theoretical perspectives to gain new insights. For instance, a researcher studying everyday sexism might examine it using two different theoretical approaches. Finally, **methodological triangulation** is when we use multiple methods within the same project to study a topic or an issue. By using multiple methods, slightly different types of questions can be addressed within the larger research purpose of the project. Perhaps the social justice research includes surveys and experiments. Or the researcher includes experiments and content analysis within their project. A key goal of methodological triangulation is to increase the validity of the phenomenon being studied by measuring and observing it from multiple methods, standpoints, and perspectives.

For the purposes of this chapter, we will focus on one type of methodological triangulation—the use of mixed methods within the same project. Mixed methods research combines quantitative and qualitative methods (Figure 10.1). Mixed methods projects could involve any quantitative method (such as content analysis, surveys, and experiments) along with any of the diverse range of qualitative methods (such as case studies, ethnography, interviewing, focus group discussions, textual analysis, and arts-based research, to name a few). Mixed method research helps researchers validate their findings, strengthen their conclusions, address contradictions, and include participants' voices in the research process. This approach facilitates

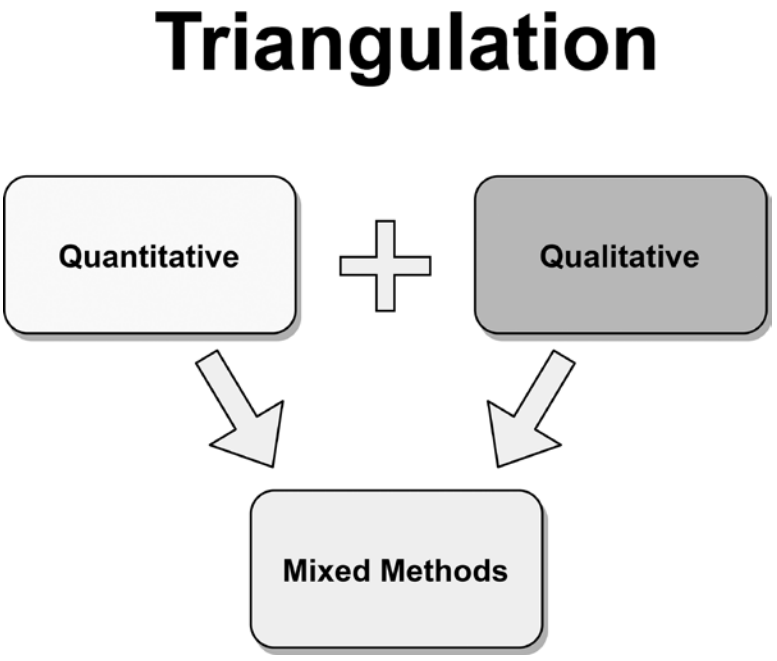


Figure 10.1 Mixed methods: triangulation by combining quantitative and qualitative methods
Source: Emily Riewestahl

greater collaboration and cooperation among researchers. However, some of the drawbacks of mixed methods research are that they could involve complex designs, may require large samples, be time-consuming, need additional funding, be labor-intensive, and involve large multidisciplinary research teams.

Mixed Methods Approaches in Communication

Mixed methods continue to be quite rare within published studies in Communication, where the norm is to use only one of the two sets of methods. Communication is often seen as interdisciplinary in nature, and there is a rich history of diverse methodological perspectives used across the qualitative and quantitative continuum. However, these strands of research have typically grown separately alongside each other, rather than being used together in the same project. While purists among both quantitative and qualitative researchers might say that quantitative and qualitative methods are like oil and water that never mix, combining these methods could be a good way to balance the strengths and weaknesses of both approaches. As we have seen in Chapter 1, quantitative and qualitative methods are both valid and helpful in addressing communication problems. It is important to understand their respective strengths and weaknesses so that they are employed appropriately at different stages of the research design process to address issues of concern to the researcher.

A key moment within Communication was the "paradigm wars" of the 1970s and 1980s between quantitative social scientists who valued positivism and scholars from critical cultural studies who used interpretive and social constructivist approaches to Communication research. (You may want to revisit Chapter 1 to recall the distinguishing features of these different paradigms.) In describing the relationship between quantitative and qualitative methods within Communication, DeCoster and Lichtenstein (2007) explain that "The quantitative-qualitative divide is sometimes stark, angry, or dismissive" (p. 228). While the so-called quantitative-qualitative divide is no longer quite as fraught and stark, there continue to be tensions and misperceptions from both sides. However, we believe that qualitative and quantitative research can complement each other and work synergistically and interactively in the study of Communication, especially as it relates to social justice issues. Approaching qualitative and quantitative research in inclusive and respectful ways can help bring about meaningful social transformation (Mertens, 2007, 2010).

While it is still not very common to combine qualitative and quantitative methods within the same research project in Communication, there is a growing realization that doing so could be beneficial to gaining deeper and broader insights, especially to address complex social issues (sometimes also known as "wicked" problems). For instance, within health communication, scholars such as Mohan Dutta (Dutta, 2008, 2018) have combined quantitative methods such as field experiments and surveys with many of the qualitative approaches that will be defined and discussed in this chapter—such as focus group discussions, participant observation, and ethnography—in community-driven research projects. Within political communication contexts, scholars such as Genevieve Johnson and colleagues (2019) have combined surveys and participant observation to examine emotions expressed by participants in citizens' groups focused on political engagement. Some media scholars, too, have used mixed methods approaches. For example, Anita Atwelle Seate and colleagues (2016) have used rhetorical analysis and experimental research to examine nationalistic themes in the promotional ads for the 2014 World Cup soccer match between the United States and Ghana.

An Introduction to Qualitative Methods in Social Justice Research

Qualitative methods have been central to social justice projects, providing unique insights and perspectives, especially in community-based projects. As we have seen in Chapter 1, qualitative methods are the dominant modes of inquiry for studying and building on critical cultural communication, feminist theory, queer theory, postcolonial theory, and critical race theory. Critical cultural approaches within Communication have relied heavily on qualitative methods to examine research questions. There is a rich and long history of the use of diverse qualitative methods in approaching social, political, and cultural issues, especially relating to race, gender, sexuality, nationality, and other social justice topics.

Recall from Chapter 1 that there are two main paradigms within qualitative research: the interpretive or constructivist paradigm and the critical paradigm. The **interpretive or constructivist paradigm** examines the processes involved in sense-making and (re)constructing meanings through everyday practices, events, situations, texts, and experiences in communicative interactions. Drawing from theories such as symbolic interactionism, phenomenology, and dramaturgy (Leavy, 2017), this paradigm emphasizes that meanings are not static and that shared meanings are constantly evolving through interactions. The second main paradigm that informs qualitative research is the **critical paradigm**. As critical social researchers interested in social justice issues, this paradigm is particularly relevant for this book. As we have seen in

earlier chapters, the emphasis of the critical paradigm is in understanding power differences, social inequalities, and structural hierarchies. It examines how power is maintained, negotiated, and resisted in various contexts, especially through justifying dominant ideologies as commonsense and as a given mode of doing things. As critical Communication researchers, qualitative research is helpful to understand how power operates within the symbolic contexts in which people are immersed.

Whereas the purpose of quantitative methods is to seek generalizable explanations for social behaviors and phenomena, qualitative research often provides rich description of complex phenomena that is narrower in scope, which cannot be conveyed quantitatively through numbers. Given the emphasis on aggregated data, quantitative research methods cannot be tailored to individual needs and contexts, thus making it hard to capture nuances and intricate details of experiences, which would be classified as outliers and irrelevant to the study from a quantitative perspective. Qualitative analyses help researchers understand the variations and complexities of everyday phenomena in their natural environments.

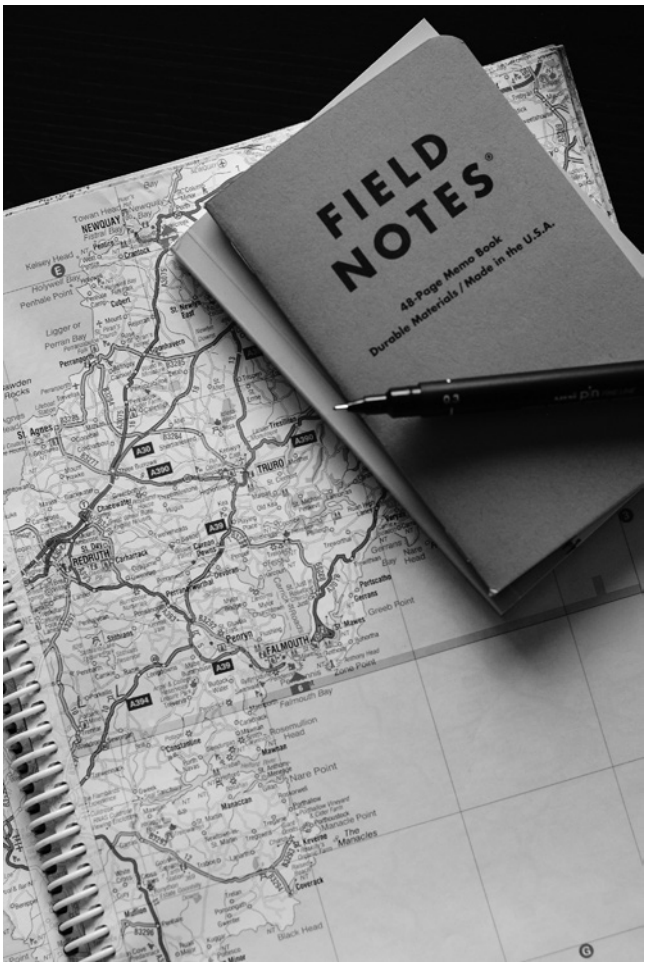


Figure 10.2 Fieldwork in a naturalistic setting

Source: Photo by Hello I'm Nik on Unsplash, https://unsplash.com/photos/YiRQIglwYig

The qualitative researcher uses **emergent design** principles, where the study can and almost always does change as the research process unfolds (Creswell, 2014). Rather than have fixed hypotheses and research procedures predetermined, there is flexibility in the research design. The researcher can also feel free to introduce new factors or procedures into the design as they deem appropriate. It tends to be more **inductive in its approach** such that the research design and the interpretation of the observations can evolve and develop throughout the research project. Hypotheses are not predetermined. Rather, observations about what is observed evolve through the process of the research study. Using an inductive approach means that theory-building is based on deep listening to the data that has been collected, including more subtle meanings that may not be readily apparent. For instance, Bates and colleagues (2019) describe how they engaged in a health communication project over a three-year period in Ecuador using focus groups, mapping of community resources, and in-depth interviews with three communities that involved dialogue, discussion, and drawing exercises. Many aspects of this research design were not predetermined but emerged as the study progressed. Even in social justice research that is not community-based, emergent design allows for greater flexibility in evolving research procedures and interpretations of the meanings as new data are collected and analyzed.

Qualitative methods focus on **naturalistic inquiry**, with an emphasis in capturing lived experiences and communicative processes. Qualitative analyses provide insights into the participants' **subjective experiences** and meanings they give to their social experiences. Additionally, especially pertaining to Communication, qualitative methods allow for participants to share their experiences, thoughts, feelings, and perspectives using their own words and phrases. In contrast, quantitative instruments such as questionnaires typically have pre-determined categories and response options that are focused on generalizability and summarizing the data using numbers.

Qualitative approaches help researchers understand and unpack the meanings that are ascribed to texts, artifacts, activities, situations, and experiences. Qualitative approaches often focus on describing and interpreting the subjective reality using "thick" descriptive data within specific cultural contexts. **Thick description** refers to close reading and detailed description of the experience, including specific contextualized information to help the reader understand the phenomenon being examined.

In qualitative research, there is an emphasis on human subjectivity and reflexivity. **Reflexivity** refers to reflections on the role of the researcher's own biases and viewpoints in shaping the data analysis and interpretations (Creswell, 2014). Unlike quantitative methods that emphasize objectivity, there is a greater sensitivity to the subjective positionality of the researcher in qualitative methods. Researchers should pay attention to how their own role in the research project might potentially influence and shape their interpretations. They not only study language and communication that is expressed but also incorporate their subjective interpretations of their observations by using their tacit knowledge such as intuition, felt emotions, and latent meanings. They look for existing patterns, significant symbols, and meanings. The researcher's own biases, perceptions, positionality, and worldviews shape key decisions in the research process.

Related to this aspect of qualitative research is **embodied practice**, which means that researchers use their own selves as research instruments rather than a survey questionnaire or dependent measures in an experiment (Schutt, 2015). They place their bodies within the context that they are studying. Even if researchers are not actively participating within a specific community for their research but instead are using case studies or analyzing textual, visual, audio, or archival documents of various kinds, the emphasis is on bringing in the subjective perceptions and insights of the researchers. Often this process involves the researcher immersing themselves into the context that they are studying for long periods of time.

Types of Qualitative Methods

In the next section of the chapter, we will review some of the most popular qualitative research methods used in Communication: textual analysis, ethnography, in-depth interviewing, focus group discussions, the case study approach, and arts-based research. There are many nuances within each of these methods, which are not covered here in depth. Given that the focus of this book is on quantitative methods, we will only provide a brief overview of a few qualitative methods here from a social science and critical perspective. There are other qualitative research methods—such as life history, contemplative research methods focused on self-inquiry and holism, and critical geomapping, which are also emerging within Communication more recently—that we are not able to cover here in this chapter, given space limitations. It is best to consult with other books devoted more in-depth to qualitative research methods to learn about the philosophy, history, design, ethics, data analysis, implementation, and dissemination of qualitative research.

Textual Analysis

Textual analysis is a useful qualitative method that was developed within Communication, Media Studies, and Cultural Studies to analyze and interpret texts within the cultural contexts in which they are produced and consumed. *Textual analysis* is an umbrella term that encompasses other types of qualitative approaches such as narrative analysis, discourse analysis, thematic analysis, rhetorical criticism, archival analysis, performance studies, interaction analysis, visual rhetoric, and so on. It is a **nonreactive** or **non-interactive** method because the texts tend to be nonliving data. Texts could be audio, visual, or multimodal audiovisual data. They could include a wide range of artifacts such as transcripts, social media posts, news articles, TV shows, films, podcasts, photographs, videos, advertisements, graffiti, murals, clothing, and so on.

Whereas quantitative content analysis focuses on categorizing, enumerating, and establishing relationships among the patterns observed in texts, qualitative textual analysis focuses on understanding how specific texts are used within specific cultures, contexts, peoples, places, and times. Beyond the texts themselves, the historical, socio-cultural, and political context in which the text is embedded is also examined in textual analysis. For instance, analyzing how gender identities are constructed through online discourses of motherhood during COVID-19, how immigrants are Othered in medical contexts, or examining hip-hop music videos through feminist lenses are some examples of how textual analysis could be used within social justice scholarship in Communication.

Researchers immerse themselves into the text to gain interpretive insights and make sense of them within specific cultural contexts. **Grounded theory** is an inductive approach to data analysis, which is commonly used in qualitative textual analysis to discover patterns through constant comparisons. Using a constant comparison approach typically means identifying themes in qualitative data by comparing each observation against all other observations to find patterns of similarities and differences. This iterative approach offers flexibility in theory-building, which is especially useful for beginning researchers. **Computer-assisted coding software** such as NVivo, ATLAS.ti, MAXQDA, NUD*IST, and Dedoose can help to save time and help to organize data. Several of these software support data visualization, multilingual analysis, annotations, and word mapping. However, this software can only aid in organizing the data. Ultimately, the analysis is to be done through subjective reading of the data by the researchers.

Figure 10.3 Organizing notes for a textual analysis project

Source: Photo by Tai Jyun Chang on Unsplash, https://unsplash.com/photos/vJfPJfq24S0

Ethnography

Ethnography is a qualitative method that involves the study of cultures through participant observation, typically over long periods of time. **Participant observation** is a commonly used qualitative method for data collection in which a researcher is both the observer of and participant in the culture that they are examining. Participant observation allows researchers to understand the nuances and complexities of a culture through observing people within their natural settings and gain first-hand experience by immersing themselves into the everyday activities of that culture. It emphasizes **naturalistic inquiry** or field research. Rooted in the ideas of phenomenology and naturalism, naturalistic inquiry involves observing and analyzing research participants in their everyday situations (Schutt, 2015). Whereas *field research* and *naturalistic inquiry* are broader terms, *ethnography* is specific to the study of cultures. Applying it to Communication scholarship, ethnographers study communication in its natural environment in terms of how people interact with one another and other artifacts within the culture. Ethnographers are interested in studying the meanings that people give to behaviors of themselves and those in their community. They examine the everyday, common, and taken-for-granted aspects of communication without any preconceived hypotheses or expectations. Ethnographers uncover latent meanings and symbol systems within the culture while still preserving the integrity of the qualities of the naturally occurring phenomena. These could include rituals, habits, routines, and patterns of language, nonverbal communication, or other behaviors of interest to the researchers.

Qualitative researchers should be aware of their **insider-outsider status**. For instance, even if a researcher might see themselves as an insider within the community they are studying, it is possible that members of the community see them more as an outsider. Although researchers might share some characteristics with the marginalized groups, there could be other aspects that they do not share, which influence insider-outsider perceptions. It is important for researchers, especially those who are committed to social justice research, to take the differences in power, status, and positionality into consideration in the research process.

While conducting ethnography, researchers have to decide the extent to which they will function as a complete observer or a complete participant in the natural setting that they are observing. A **covert observer** is one who does not participate within the culture but simply observes the group. They are publicly identified as a researcher. In contrast, the **covert participant** is a researcher who fully immerses themselves into the setting and the activities of the culture without revealing their research identity. As a participant observer, the researcher might start as a full participant and then reveal their research agenda later on because their presence as a researcher might influence how participants behave in the setting. Between these two positions there can be any number of other variations. Also, it is possible that through the course of a research study, the roles that the researcher plays change as the research evolves. Depending on the context, the researcher's positionality, the goals of the project, the socio-cultural and political contexts, and ethical aspects of the research, the researcher has to decide to what extent they would be a participant versus an observer.

Within Communication, media ethnography—and more recently, **digital or cyber-ethnography**—is a newer field of study where the role of media in everyday routines, practices, and rituals is observed. It involves observing mediated cultures, including digital and virtual spaces, to understand and account for how media users inhabit these spaces and make sense of their interactions with others. While ethnographers might not be physically present within the culture that they are studying in cyberspace, they are still embedded within the research context through digitally embodied practice. For instance, within social justice-related topics, this could involve conducting a digital ethnography of gamers committed to social change, studying hate groups online, or analyzing YouTube or social media network communities online.

Another specific type of ethnographic method is called **autoethnography**. Here the researcher uses personal, autobiographical, self-data to analyze and interpret the world around them. They connect their personal experiences to the larger socio-cultural context. In other words, the rigorous inquiry into their own experience becomes the starting point to understanding a larger issue. For example, if the researcher is interested in social justice such as health and wellness, anti-racism, sexual violence prevention, or reproductive justice, they would delve into their own experiences with the topic as a way to then systematically interpret and critique the culture, connect back with existing research, and be aware of the audience to have an impact on them. The researcher typically uses daily journaling and other memos of their experiences but could also incorporate other forms of fieldwork such as in-depth interviewing and textual analysis. While embodied practice is a part of almost all types of qualitative research, it is especially so with autoethnography, which requires **vulnerability** in digging deeper into one's experiences as well as sharing them with a broader audience, which could be an emotional experience. Therefore, researchers should make sure they are comfortable doing so and incorporate self-care practices while engaging in this type of method.

Figure 10.4 Taking notes and journaling during an ethnography study

Source: Photo by Eye for Ebony on Unsplash, https://unsplash.com/photos/7EpZ2IMxK7g

In-Depth Interviewing

In-depth interviewing is another common qualitative research method used within Communication research, including in mixed methods projects. It uses conversation between the interviewer and the interviewee as a research tool to draw on more informal storytelling and narrative approaches from daily life as compared to more structured survey designs. Interviews go deep into an individual's attitudes, beliefs, opinions, feelings, and experiences.

Unlike surveys that are more structured with close-ended options, in-depth interviewing is designed to allow participants to use their own language to provide details of meanings they ascribe to their situations and experiences. Qualitative interviews use a semi-structured format. **Semi-structured** means that although the researcher likely has a predetermined set of open-ended questions to pose, those questions are not necessarily asked in a fixed order, and there is room for probing certain answers further with follow-up questions as needed. The questions could also vary slightly from participant to participant, depending on the context and their responses. This method allows respondents to frame and respond to questions through their own words and experiences rather than the answer options decided *a priori* by the researchers, as is common in surveys and experiments.

In-depth interviewing allows the researcher to be thorough and gain a comprehensive understanding of the participant's background, experiences, and perspectives and how they make sense of them. Active listening is especially important to keep in mind while using

in-depth interviews for social justice research. Researchers should approach their interviews with humility and a willingness to accommodate the interviewee's preference as much as possible. Especially with social justice related topics, it takes time for interviewees to warm up to the researcher and build a rapport with them before discussing issues of injustices and inequalities.

Since several social connections are made through online communications, in-depth interviews are increasingly being conducted through phone, email, and video chats. Depending on the mode of interviewing, the conversations could be audio or videotaped for further transcription and analysis. However, some nonverbal communication information could get lost while using phone or email based interviewing rather than face-to-face or video chats.

Focus Group Discussions

Another type of interview technique is **focus group discussion,** which involves in-depth interviewing of several participants at the same time and in the same location. Most focus groups have about five to 12 participants. They typically meet from one to two hours to discuss a particular research topic in depth. In a group setting, people might feel more comfortable to share their perspectives freely. Focus group discussions allow for participants to listen to and build on the comments and perspectives of other participants. The discussions are facilitated by trained moderators and occasionally also include additional observers and note takers.

Figure 10.5 Focus groups provide rich qualitative data

Source: Creative Commons/Wikipedia (https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Christ_University_focus_group_6.jpg)

The design of questions for focus group discussions often follows the **funnel structure** such that broad topics that are less sensitive are discussed first before moving to more focused and specific issues. Just like with in-depth interviewing, the interview guide is semi-structured and quite fluid in format. Focus groups provide rich data with thick descriptions using the participants' own language, experiences, and viewpoints.

Typically, focus groups are homogenous groups. While conducting research on social justice topics, in particular, it is important to pay attention to **group composition** and to be sensitive to power relations and cultural differences within groups, which might hinder honest and smooth conversations. For instance, if a researcher conducts focus groups to understand how diversity initiatives are received by a campus community, it would be best to separate faculty groups from staff groups and student groups because of the power differences between these groups. Moderators should make everyone feel included and comfortable, drawing in participants who might be shy while making sure that dominant participants give more space for others to participate.

Case Study Approach

Case study is not a single method per se but is one way of approaching qualitative data analysis by examining a particular case as a whole, rather than just discrete elements. Here the "case" that is studied could be a particular organization, community, social group, family, cause, or even an individual person. The "reality" of the case is not divided up into independent or dependent variables but rather is examined more holistically as a slice of life. The case study approach typically involves a thick description of the situation or problem examined to get a sense of the standpoints of various stakeholders involved in a naturalistic setting. Case studies have especially been used in subfields such as organizational communication, marketing communication, and health communication (Ray, 2005). For example, case studies could be used to bring to light specific scenarios relating to a particular health condition, examine how a nonprofit organization dealt with crisis situations, or consider ethical dilemmas within a public relations case. Case studies have served as useful pedagogical tools in the classroom to connect theory to practice using vivid and relevant information to illustrate otherwise abstract concepts and theories.

Arts-Based Research

More recently, Communication as a discipline has started incorporating social sciences with fine arts to use aesthetics, creativity, and artistic skills to describe, evoke, and engage with research topics as well as to disrupt, question, and challenge the status quo through a critical perspective. Researchers have used such methods as poetry, photovoice, monologues, fiction, literature, and visual arts to interpret data in ways that could engage participants in meaningful ways about social issues that they care about. For instance, in the Bates and colleagues project (2019) in Ecuador, the researchers first conducted in-depth interviews, which helped guide an arts-based community project relating to healthy lifestyles. Children of the community worked on taking the discussions and dialogues around healthy living and happiness to create their artwork. They were provided with markers, crayons, colored pencils, and paper to explore ideas about their shared future/dreams as a community, ways to preserve their community culture, and on the theme of healthy living. Once the rough sketch was finalized, the artwork was created on a larger scale as a mural wall painting, which was then shared with the community for further feedback and dialogue.

Figure 10.6 One of the mural wall paintings made by Ecuadorian children in the arts-based qualitative methods project on healthy living by Bates and colleagues project (2019)

Source: Bates and colleagues project (2019)

Research in Action

The Center for Scholars and Storytellers

The Center for Scholars and Storytellers was founded in 2018 by Dr. Yalda T. Uhls, a developmental psychologist from University of California at Los Angeles who has also worked in the media industry as a film executive with leading organizations such as Sony and MGM. This center aims to connect scholars and storytellers committed to youth engagement and development. Based in Los Angeles, it draws on the expertise of people from both academia and the entertainment industry to bring about transformative changes to children and young people aged 2 to 20 years.

Mixed methods approaches such as surveys, interventions, focus group discussions, and content analysis have been routinely used by the Center for Scholars and Storytelling. The studies are typically funded using grants from nonprofits and foundations, especially those that focus on youth development. In this Research in Action spotlight, we showcase one such research project led by Dr. Uhls and team so that readers can see how mixed methods research is used to tackle communication and media issues relating to positive youth development.

This mixed methods research study was based on an initiative started by a nonprofit organization called Common Sense Media and was funded by John Templeton Foundation and the Bezos Family Foundation. The research report is titled "The Power

of Storytelling: Media and Positive Character Development" and was conducted by researchers Andrew J. Sanders, Laurel Felt, Katherine Wong, and Yalda T. Uhls (2019).

The research project aims at providing useful resources to parents and teachers of young people to use the power of storytelling and media narratives to nurture positive traits and characteristics in youth. Common Sense Media has created a ratings and tagging system to identify media content that promotes positive youth portrayals relating to character building, role modeling, and other positive characteristics. This project studies the effectiveness of this initiative using the following methods:

- Focus group discussions
- Pre- and post-exposure online surveys
- Media intervention study

The focus group discussions were conducted in English and Spanish with 24 parents of kids aged 4 to14 years across three cities. They helped the researchers understand parents' decision-making processes regarding media selection, their perceptions of how media content influences character formation in children, and their feedback about the characters selected through the Common Sense Media ratings and tagging system.

The feedback from the focus group discussions helped the researchers design an online survey that was administered at two points of time—pre-exposure and post-exposure to their online modules. The survey was designed like a self-guided online training module about the character content created by Common Sense Media. The questionnaire includes items about the media use of families and parents' attitudes about media and character development.

Finally, the survey results enabled the researchers to conduct a small media intervention study. This was similar to a field experiment in a naturalistic setting where parents and children were asked to view age-appropriate television programs that centered on positive character content. Following this television intervention, the parents and children were allowed to either have a free-flowing discussion without any guidance from the researchers or used a much more structured approach with guided discussions. The researchers analyzed the amount of discussion and also the types of topics discussed by parents and children in both these treatment conditions.

Through this research project, the researchers were especially interested in media literacy, how parents and educators could harness the power of media for social good, and work toward policies that could encourage more positive portrayals of youth in entertainment media so that media could serve as a tool for character development and individual transformation, leading to social change at the family and then community levels.

Types of Mixed Methods Approaches

There are a number of ways in which quantitative and qualitative methods can be combined within a project. Both qualitative and quantitative methods might be given equal importance in the project, or it could be that one is given more priority than the other. They might be conducted at the same time or one after the other. Indeed, mixed methods designs can be broadly divided into two types: sequential designs and concurrent designs, based on the

sequence and temporal order of the methods used within the project. **Sequential designs** are when one method precedes another such that one method is used to elaborate upon or explain the findings from another method within the same research project.

There are two types of sequential designs (Figure 10.7). One is **QUAL→QUAN** where qualitative research precedes quantitative research. For instance, questions that will end up in a survey can first be refined and fine-tuned through focus group discussions or in-depth interviews. Or a textual analysis might be conducted on stimulus materials that are then used for an experiment. Another type of sequential design is **QUAN→QUAL** where quantitative methods are conducted first before qualitative methods. In-depth interviews could be used to understand in greater depth the results from a survey that was previously conducted, for instance. Or a survey might reveal specific case studies that need to be examined more in depth as examples or as anomalies.

In contrast to sequential designs, there are **concurrent designs** where the qualitative and quantitative methods happen simultaneously or concurrently rather than one after another. Concurrent designs can be represented visually as **QUAL + QUAN** (note the + sign here instead of the → sign in the previous paragraph).

Let us take the example of an excellent social justice-oriented mixed methods project by the two authors— Sarah Jackson and Brooke Foucault Welles (2015)—who are featured later in this chapter in the Scholar Spotlight section. In their project on hashtag activism, they examined the #myNYPD hashtag, which was used by activists to highlight police brutality and racial profiling by the New York City Police Department (NYPD). Apart from analyzing

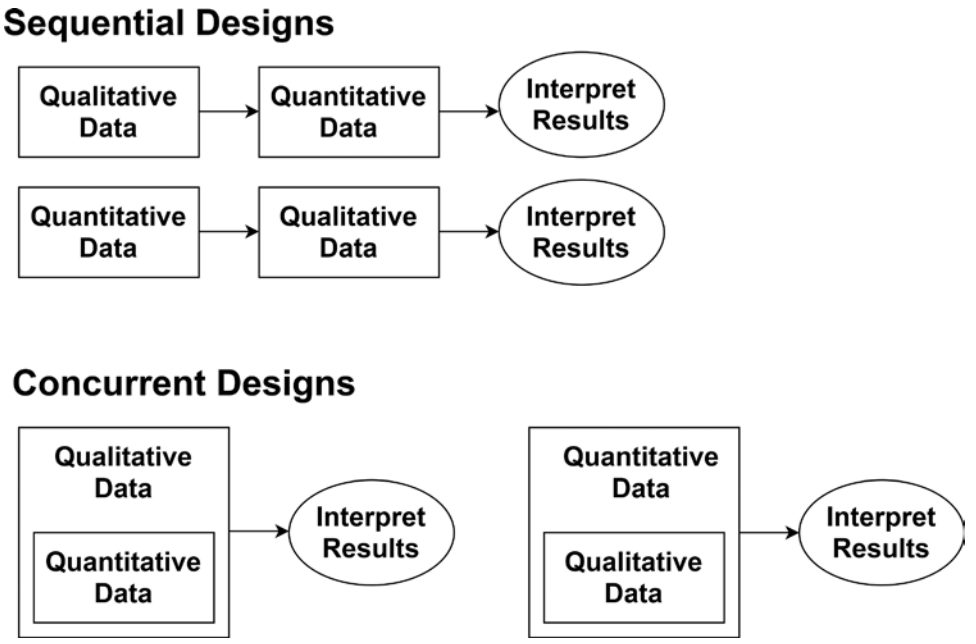


Figure 10.7 Types of mixed methods research

Source: Emily Riewestahl

Twitter data, the researchers were also interested in the mainstream news media coverage of this hashtag. In the first stage of the research project, the authors used a quantitative method called social network analysis. The social network analysis used mathematical modeling of tweets based on mentions and retweets to map out the ways that tweets clustered meaningfully together around the most popular sources of information on Twitter for this hashtag. In the next stage of the project, a sample of tweets from these key sources identified from the network analysis were analyzed using qualitative discourse analysis to make sense of how language is used to create meaning and conversations around social issues. In the final stage of the project, the researchers analyzed mainstream news outlets using textual analysis to examine how these news sources covered and framed this hashtag similarly or differently from the online media campaign on Twitter.

Another excellent example of mixed methods research on social justice issues is by Satveer Kaur-Gill and colleagues (2019) in which the researchers conduct a media framing analysis of representations of Singaporean foreign domestic workers. The discrimination against migrant domestic workers is often ignored by mainstream news discourses. Stemming from a human rights framework that takes into account everyday violence against those at the intersections of gender, domestic work, and transnational migration in Southeast Asian contexts, this study analyzes media discourses in the newspaper, the *Straits Times*. In the first phase a grounded theory approach was taken to conduct open coding of news content using an inductive method. Following this step, in the final stage, a quantitative content analysis was conducted to examine the patterns and clusters in the data.

Some designs are much more complex, combining both sequential and concurrent designs. While such studies have been conducted, they are quite rare and are resource intensive, potentially taking up several years and many researchers in the team to complete. For example, in the context of understanding public discourses on genetics, Condit and colleagues (2002) first conducted an audience analysis and then a news analysis in the second stage. Within the first stage of the project involving audience analysis, a quantitative survey of 122 undergraduate students was used concurrently with a qualitative study with a general non-student population. The survey examined audiences' perceptions about genetics. The qualitative study involved in-depth interviews with 95 participants to discuss what came to their minds when they thought about various metaphors associated with genes. Once this stage of the research project was completed, the researchers conducted a rhetorical analysis of newspaper articles published over a two-year period to understand the ways in which the media framed these issues. Finally, they conducted 16 focus group discussions to respond to some of these texts that were analyzed.

Another way to divide mixed methods designs is based on priority and importance. Within sequential designs, when one method is dominant and given priority over another, it is called a **staged design**. For instance, a sequential design where quantitative methods are prioritized over qualitative methods would be represented this way: **QUAN→qual** (note that QUAN is represented with capital letters to indicate that it was the primary method). Here the main and first method is quantitative, whereas the secondary method is qualitative. A staged design that prioritizes qualitative methods would look like this: **QUAL→quan.** Concurrent designs could also prioritize one method over another. They are referred to as **embedded designs** (QUAN + qual or QUAL + quan). For example, when within a focus group discussion participants complete a brief survey questionnaire, it would be an embedded design where qualitative methods are the primary methods within which quantitative methods are embedded.

For instance, Katharine Head and colleagues (2019), used a QUAN + qual study design to examine how cervical cancer communication and screening happens at health centers. Their study was predominantly a quantitative survey. However, they included some open-ended questions on the survey questionnaire, which were later analyzed qualitatively using textual analysis. Both the quantitative and qualitative methods were administered concurrently rather than sequentially. In contrast, Daniel Park and colleagues (2017) used a sequential QUAN + QUAL design where both survey data and focus groups were equally important to the project. This was part of a feasibility study for a new mobile app called Smartphone Medication Reminder App (SMRA) to determine whether this technology would work as an effective intervention for patients to remember to take their medication, especially within middle-aged and older patient populations with chronic illnesses. After a hands-on interactive session using the app, participants completed a survey questionnaire about their experiences. Those participants who received training to use the app were compared with those with no training. Following the survey, focus group discussions were conducted using semi-structured interviews to understand the challenges, struggles, and perceptions of participants.

Scholar Spotlight: Dr. Sarah Jackson and Dr. Brooke Foucault Welles

Sarah J. Jackson is Presidential Associate Professor at the Annenberg School for Communication at the University of Pennsylvania. A scholar of the public sphere, Sarah J. Jackson's expertise lies at the intersection of media and activism, with a focus on the ways Black and feminist activists make media and, in turn, how these groups are represented in media. She's a founding member of the Center for Critical Race and Digital Studies and board member of MediaWell at the Social Science Research Council.

Brooke Foucault Welles is an associate professor in the Department of Communication Studies and a core faculty member of the Network Science Institute at Northeastern University. Combining the methods of computational social science and network science with the theories of communication studies, Foucault Welles studies how online communication networks enable and constrain behavior, with particular emphasis on how these networks enable the pursuit of individual, team, and collective goals.

Q: What are some social justice issues that motivate you as Communication researchers?

Dr. Jackson: I chose to become a communication scholar because of deep concerns about whose voices are and are not included in our democracy and the radical power of the stories told from the margins. In my work this has meant I primarily study African American and feminist media and activism.

Figure 10.8a Scholar Spotlight: Dr. Sarah Jackson

Dr. Foucault Welles: I started my research career around the same time that online communication became widely available in the U.S. From early days of usenet groups, through I.R.C., to the social media of today, I am fascinated by the capacity of online communication to bring together and amplify marginalized voices while at the same time reproducing many of the systems of power and oppression that keep people from thriving. Finding ways to harness the social justice possibilities of the internet while managing its oppressive potential is one of the most profound challenges for communication researchers working today.

Q: When did you first start collaborating? How has your experience been working together? What are some strategies that have worked best for you in making your research collaborations work?

Dr. Jackson: We first began collaborating in 2014, and it has been a joy and built a solid friendship in the process. I think what really made it work for us is that we recognized that we each had an important set of knowledge necessary to answer questions about the power of counterpublic networks. We usually work in a shared document and outline before we jump in; it also helped that for years our offices were next door to one another.

Figure 10.8b Scholar Spotlight: Dr. Brooke Foucault Welles

Dr. Foucault Welles: Our work together started with a specific project (our #myNYPD paper) but quickly grew into a trusting friendship. This trust makes it easy to work together. We have very different areas of expertise and different ways of understanding the world, but I trust that Sarah is truly the best at what she does (and I think she would say the same of me). Because our skills are very complementary, we can hand off pieces of work we find challenging, and the other usually knows how to move things forward. It is also important to acknowledge that social justice research can be emotionally challenging. Reading thousands of tweets about things like police brutality, domestic violence, and sexual assault can be heartbreaking, enraging, and exhausting. I cannot imagine doing this work without a trusted friend to lean on when it gets overwhelming.

Q: What do you see as the role of quantitative research in furthering social justice in Communication?

Dr. Foucault Welles: We are in a paradigm-shifting moment in Communication and social justice research. For generations, we had theories that could not truly be empirically tested because we had no reasonable way to gather complex communication data. Digital communication, and the trace data it leaves behind, allows us to gather detailed records of communication across modes, scales, and levels of analysis. Quantitative and computational methods make it possible to match these data to test long-standing theories of social justice communication, as well as develop new theories inspired by patterns of communication we can now observe.

Q: How about qualitative research? In what ways does qualitative research contribute to social justice goals in Communication?

Dr. Jackson: Qualitative approaches are at the very crux of questions of power and culture in our field as Stuart Hall and so many others illustrated long ago. I believe that if our scholarship is going to document and aid movements for justice, critical qualitative scholars have already shown us the way. My hope is that these approaches will become more central to all communication education so that quantitative scholars weigh them with the same importance as their own.

Q: Based on your experiences, what are some limits or challenges of using mixed methods as a means of engaging in social justice efforts that researchers should be aware of?

Dr. Jackson: It takes longer! (As does any form of collaboration in which people have to learn to engage across approaches they might be less familiar with.)

Dr. Foucault Welles: It definitely takes longer, not only to synthesize insights across multiple methods, but also to develop a vocabulary that integrates different ways of thinking. It is not easy to write papers that include critical insights and mathematical formulas in ways that are accessible to a broad audience of scholars. As we developed our theoretical insights, we also had to develop models for talking about our work.

Q: Despite these challenges, what are some benefits of doing mixed methods research, especially as it relates to social justice?

Dr. Jackson: Some questions can be answered more fully with mixed methods research. When these questions are related to justice issues, it is absolutely worth it to use all the methods available to us to paint a fuller picture, especially when that picture will serve those working for social change and document their contributions to our world.

Dr. Foucault Welles: When mixed methods are done well, you reach a lot of different constituencies. Some people will never be motivated to act on poignant examples without numbers to back them up. Others will never believe the urgency of the numbers without compelling examples to back them up. When you bring together multiple approaches, you have the potential to convince broad audiences of the urgency of the social justice issues you study.

Mixed Methods for Social Justice in Communication: Some Considerations

As critical researchers committed to using research to dismantle oppressive structures and question hierarchies, both quantitative and qualitative methods are helpful to serve the goals of social justice, transformation, and equity. Donna Mertens, leading scholar of the transformative paradigm, defines mixed methods for social justice as follows:

> Mixed methods research, when undertaken from a transformative stance, is the use of qualitative and quantitative methods that allow for the collection of data about historical and contextual factors, with special emphasis on issues of power that can influence the achievement of social justice and avoidance of oppression.
>
> (Donna Mertens as cited in Johnson et al., 2007, p. 120)

Mixing research methods can be done for a variety of reasons, but they are all primarily related to increasing the validity and expanding the knowledge about social issues. Greene (2007) lists some of the common purposes of using mixed methods approaches:

- **Discover**: to discover new perspectives or frameworks from seemingly paradoxical or contradictory information
- **Expand**: to extend the range of inquiry to be able to answer different aspects of a problem or issue using various methods
- **Converge**: to check whether results across different methods correspond and coincide with one another
- **Complement**: to seek clarification or elaboration of the results of one method with those of another method
- **Develop**: to use the results of one method to build or inform the development of another measure or otherwise inform methodological decisions

For example, quantitative data collection such as surveys might be followed by qualitative methods such as focus group discussions to explain or make sense of the quantitative data. Alternatively, a qualitative phase of data collection such as in-depth interviews is followed by a quantitative method such as a national survey to test the generalizability of the initial qualitative findings. A well-designed and carefully thought-out mixed methods project could be the "best of both worlds," which could benefit from the insights and perspectives gained from both qualitative and quantitative research methods. However, it is naïve to assume that just because one uses mixed methods research, it automatically overcomes the drawbacks and disadvantages of using any one method. A researcher needs to carefully think about the purpose, sequence, and resources needed as they design a mixed methods project.

With the launching of a new research project using mixed methods, researchers should review the literature by searching broadly for prior quantitative, qualitative, and mixed methods research within Communication and other allied disciplines. These literature searches help researchers to get a good grasp of historical, social, and cultural contexts relating to the social issue of interest. Quantitative data such as secondary data on demographic information or prior surveys conducted on the topic or the community could be key sources of information that help to understand the issue and define the problem clearly. If the researcher is conducting community-based mixed methods research for social justice, it can be helpful to involve community members in defining the problems of concern through qualitative methods such as in-depth interviews and focus group discussions in the initial stages of the research process. For research projects focused on social justice, giving communities agency in providing input into the research process can help build trust and rapport to pick the appropriate theoretical frameworks and ask the right research questions in order to successfully bring about the transformative change they seek. We will learn more about community-based research in the next chapter.

Qualitative researchers need to be trained well to be sensitive to the context and cultures in which they are examining the phenomenon of interest and be able to understand unwritten underlying meanings. In picking theoretical frameworks that guide mixed methods projects, researchers from academic backgrounds without much contact or connection with the communities that they are examining should especially invest considerable time into this step of the research design process. Doing so can help ensure that their research is not unduly guided by their own biases and worldviews but through actively listening to the groups that they study. Doing this could be time consuming, and it is a skill that does not come easily to some researchers. For instance, if conducting an ethnographic research study, the researcher needs

to be able to facilitate the conversation, build a rapport with the participants, and put them at ease in their natural environments. Therefore, it often means that qualitative researchers not only design the studies but often personally conduct the interviews, focus groups, or ethnographic research as part of fieldwork by immersing themselves in the culture for several months, if not years. Apart from field notes and transcriptions, data management and analyses could also take a long time. Perseverance, time management, and self-care strategies are helpful to avoid burnout and to stay motivated to complete the project.

With social justice issues, it is likely that the researchers are personally invested heavily in the topic and that there is long-term involvement in the project. Because qualitative researchers who do field research become embedded within the contexts and cultures that they are studying, they need to consider how such involvement might affect them personally. Novice researchers should be aware that there could be moments of emotional conflicts, ethical dilemmas, and other unanticipated situations that might come up, especially in doing social justice research projects. Immersing themselves into the research context as a participant, for instance, could make it hard and awkward at times to step back into the role of the researcher. For example, researchers might need to get the permission of gatekeepers in leadership roles to access the populations they wish to study. However, doing so could make it hard for the researcher to critique the system or question those in such positions of authority. There is no set formula for how to manage these relationships as both a researcher and a participant. The researcher needs to balance these different roles and draw boundaries where needed to be clear on expectations. A lot of the learning comes from everyday practice and depends on the individual researcher's style and the specific culture or topic that they are studying. It would be helpful for novice researchers to anticipate such ethical challenges ahead of time and think about how they would navigate them. With practice, especially under the guidance of more experienced researchers, it is possible to navigate such situations successfully.

In terms of data collection and analysis, different types of expertise are required for quantitative versus qualitative research. For social justice issues, in particular, it is important for researchers to consider the ways in which they can bring in as much diversity as possible within the project to make sure that marginalized voices are adequately represented. Mixed methods research can be conducted by a single researcher who is well versed in design, data collection, and data analyses of qualitative and quantitative research. Typically, though, researchers with a set of research expertise—qualitative or quantitative—team up with others whose research skills complement their own and thus add to the broader understanding of the research problem. Such collaborations between quantitative and qualitative researchers can be productive and meaningful, especially if they are motivated by similar problems and social, political, or cultural issues.

Once the data have been collected and analyzed, they should be used to facilitate the transformative change on the ground that the researchers seek to bring about. Making the research findings available publicly and in an accessible manner is important to get participant inputs. Researchers could also consider ways of facilitating the social change process that could follow from the research project. For example, researchers could share research findings through social media, newspaper articles, a town hall event or blog post to facilitate conversations about bringing about social transformation. Public scholarship is one aspect of the communication of social justice research where scholarship is shared broadly beyond academic audiences through more popular outlets such as opinion pieces, documentary films, and newspaper articles. This topic will be dealt with in greater depth in the final chapter of this book.

One of the challenges of mixed methods research is that it requires time, expertise, and often sustained funding to complete. These resources might not be readily available to

researchers, especially those working on community-oriented social justice work. Some social justice issues might be urgently in need of addressing. Most community organizations simply do not have the time or money to devote to longitudinal or multi-stage mixed methods research projects. Researchers, especially early career ones, may not have time and funding to devote to long-term mixed methods projects. Another important consideration relates to ethical challenges that might arise from using complex designs in both concurrent and sequential designs where participants' consent needs to be negotiated at every stage for different methods, which might lead to sample attrition. In terms of data analysis, if the findings from qualitative and quantitative aspects of the study contradict one another, they need to be addressed and resolved. It could become difficult to compare findings from these two aspects of a project or to know how to account for such discrepancies. Such a possibility introduces yet another level of complexity that the researcher must manage while conducting mixed methods research for social justice.

Summary

Using multiple perspectives and viewpoints to approach a research problem is called triangulation. Mixed methods research allows for methodological triangulation by using both quantitative and qualitative methods to address social issues. Using mixed methods approaches can help to increase researchers' confidence in the validity of their findings, resolve or confront any contradictions and paradoxes in the data, and, from the point of view of the quantitative researcher, help bring in thick descriptive data to complement numerical data from quantitative methods. Qualitative methods are more inductive, flexible, reflexive, and subjective in their approach as compared to quantitative research methods. They are characterized by naturalistic inquiry, emergent design, embodied practice, and reflexivity. Naturalistic inquiry is studying communication behaviors and processes within the natural environments in which they occur. Emergent design is where the study hypotheses are not predetermined but evolve as the project unfolds. Embodied practice is the qualitative researcher embedding themselves as a research instrument within the subculture that they study. Reflexivity is the researcher being self-aware and self-reflective about how their worldviews, positionality, values, and biases might shape their research decisions.

Some qualitative methods such as textual analysis, ethnography, in-depth interviewing, focus group discussions, case studies, and arts-based research approaches are described briefly in this chapter. Textual analysis is a nonreactive qualitative method of subjective reading of the meanings of texts to gain insights within specific socio-cultural contexts. It often uses grounded theory as an inductive approach to analyze patterns in the data through constant comparisons. Ethnography is a qualitative method that emphasizes naturalistic inquiry through participant observations in their everyday environments to make sense of meanings that people give to behaviors of themselves and others in their community. It analyzes rituals, habits, routines, and patterns of communication and other behaviors. In-depth interviewing uses semi-structured conversational formats to draw on informal storytelling and narrative practices. Focus group discussions involve group conversations that allow participants to listen to and build on others' perspectives. A case study approach examines a particular organization, community, social group, or individual in detail through thick description and from multiple perspectives of stakeholders within that group. Arts-based research uses art techniques such as painting, photography, visual arts, and poetry to disrupt, question, and evoke feelings and thoughts, often with the intent of challenging status quo norms. These qualitative methods can overlap and be used in conjunction with one another as well as with other quantitative methods such as surveys, experiments, and content analyses discussed in previous chapters.

Mixing quantitative methods with qualitative methods can be done in multiple ways based on which method is dominant in the project as well as the sequencing of the methods. Sequential designs are when one method precedes another, often in order to elaborate, explain, or build on the previous method. Concurrent designs, in contrast, are when both the quantitative and qualitative methods occur simultaneously. Staged designs are those where one method (quantitative or qualitative) is more dominant or given greater priority than the other method. Embedded designs are a type of concurrent design where one method is given priority over the other, which is embedded within the dominant method.

Although mixed methods can be helpful in triangulation of methods to get a better grasp of social justice issues, they can also take a long time to conduct, require a lot of resources, and rely on the researcher's ability to understand, interpret, analyze, and integrate both qualitative and quantitative data. Nevertheless, mixed methods approaches can be incredibly valuable to critical social justice researchers to answer research questions with greater depth and breadth.

Discussion Questions and Activities

1. What is triangulation? Explain the different types of triangulation using theories and methods that would be relevant to the social, political, or cultural issues of interest to you.
2. How are qualitative research methods different from quantitative methods? What are the advantages and disadvantages of each of these approaches?
3. If you were to design a qualitative research study from a critical paradigm versus from an interpretive/constructivist paradigm, how would your research questions and choices differ?
4. Design a mixed methods study for a social justice topic using qualitative and quantitative methods sequentially. Explain the rationale for the sequencing. How will each stage of your project inform the next one?
5. Mixed methods research is certainly beneficial to address research questions around social justice issues. What are some challenges that a researcher might encounter while conducting mixed methods research? How might researchers overcome these challenges and anticipated problems?

References

Bates, B. R., Marvel, D. L., Nieto-Sanchez, C., & Grijalva, M. J. (2019). Painting a community-based definition of health: A culture-centered approach to listening to rural voice in Chaquizhca, Ecuador. *Frontiers in Communication*, *4*(37), 1–13.

Condit, C. M., Bates, B. R., Galloway, R., Givens, S. B., Haynie, C. K., Jordan, J. W., West, H. M. (2002). Recipes or blueprints for our genes? How contexts selectively activate the multiple meanings of metaphors. *The Quarterly Journal of Speech*, *88*(3), 303–325.

Creswell, J. W. (2014). *Research design: Qualitative, quantitative, and mixed methods approaches*. Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage.

DeCoster, J., & Lichtenstein, B. (2007). Integrating quantitative and qualitative methods in communication research. *Communication Methods and Measures*, *1*(4), 227–242. doi:10.1080/19312450701636599

Denzin, N. K., & Lincoln, Y. S. (2005). *The Sage handbook of qualitative research*. Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage.

Dutta, M. J. (2008). *Communicating health: A culture-centered approach*. Malden, MA: Polity Press.

Dutta, M. J. (2018). Culture-centered approach in addressing health disparities: Communication infrastructures for subaltern voices. *Communication Methods and Measures*, *12*(4), 239–259. doi:10.1080/19312458.2018.1453057

Greene, J. C. (2007). *Mixed methods in social inquiry*. San Francisco: Jossey-Bass.

Head, K. J., Johnson, N. L., Scott, S. F., & Zimet, G. D. (2019). Communicating cervical cancer screening results in light of new guidelines: Clinical practices at federally qualified health centers. *Health Communication*, 1–7.

Jackson, S. J., & Foucault Welles, B. (2015). Hijacking #myNYPD: Social media dissent and networked counterpublics. *Journal of Communication*, *65*(6), 932–952.

Johnson, B., Onwuegbuzie, A., & Turner, L. (2007). Toward a definition of mixed methods research. *Journal of Mixed Methods Research*, *1*, 112–133. doi:10.1177/1558689806298224

Johnson, G. F., Morrell, M. E., & Black, L. W. (2019). Emotions and deliberation in the citizens' initiative review. *Social Science Quarterly* (6), 2168–2187.

Kaur-Gill, S., Pandi, A. R., & Dutta, M. J. (2019). Singapore's national discourse on foreign domestic workers: Exploring perceptions of the margins. *Journalism*, 1–22. doi:10.1177/1464884919879850

Mertens, D. (2003). Mixed methods and the politics of human research: The transformative-emancipatory perspective. In A. Tashakkori & C. Teddlie (Eds.), *Handbook of mixed methods in social and behavioral research* (pp. 135–164). Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage.

Mertens, D. (2007). Transformative paradigm: Mixed methods and social justice. *Journal of Mixed Methods Research*, *1*(3), 212–225.

Mertens, D. (2010). Transformative mixed methods research. *Qualitative Inquiry*, *16*(6), 469–474.

Park, D. Y., Goering, E. M., Head, K. J., & Ellis, R. J. (2017). Implications for training on smartphone medication reminder app use by adults with chronic conditions: Pilot study applying the Technology Acceptance Model. *JMIR Formative Research*, *1*(1), 1–15.

Ray, E. (2005). *Health communication in practice: A case study approach*. Mahwah, NJ: Lawrence Erlbaum Associates.

Sanders, A. J., Felt, L., Wong, K., & Uhls, Y. T. (2019). *The power of storytelling: Media and positive character development*. Research report retrieved from the Center for Scholars and Storytellers Website). Retrieved November 14, 2019, from https://static1.squarespace.com/static/5c0da585da02bc56793a0b31/t/5dbc6d9522333a03a1fafeb7/1572630188288/The+Power+of+Storytelling%3A+Media+and+Positive+Character+Development

Schutt, R. K. (2015). *Investigating the social world: The process and practice of research* (8th ed.). Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage.

Seate, A. A., Rong, M., Iles, I., McCloskey, T., & Parry-Giles, S. (2016). "This is who we are!" National identity construction and the 2014 FIFA World Cup. *Communication & Sport*, *5*(4), 428–447.

Tukachinsky, R., Mastro, D., & Yarchi, M. (2017). The effect of prime time television ethnic/racial stereotypes on Latino and Black Americans: A longitudinal national level study. *Journal of Broadcasting & Electronic Media*, *61*(3), 538–556. doi:10.1080/08838151.2017.1344669

11 Community Partnerships and Participatory Research

In this book, we have presented the steps involved in designing and carrying out quantitative research as a series of factors the researcher must consider amid choices the researcher must make. What topic are you interested in? What method will you choose? How will you measure your concepts or access a research sample? What statistics will you run to understand your data? These are, indeed, decisions that researchers must make.

However, it is important to know that researchers do not always make these decisions alone, nor do they make them in a vacuum, devoid of context. In fact, when researchers make decisions about how to conduct their research they *always* do so within a particular context. At any point in time in history, communities have their own concerns, experiences, assets, and needs. To be attuned to and responsive to these concerns, experiences, assets, and needs, researchers can form partnerships that involve community members as active participants in research. Teaming up with others in the community has profound potential for understanding and intervening in oppression, injustice, and inequalities at the grass-roots level.

Social justice research often involves partnerships, participation, and collaborations between researchers and community members. Such partnerships are especially necessary if the researcher is interested in bringing about transformative, actionable change within communities. Such research is called community-based research or participatory research, although there are minor differences between these terms, which will be discussed later in this chapter. Community-based research can incorporate any or all of the methods we have described in the previous chapters. This is why we have placed this chapter toward the end of the book, after you have had the opportunity to learn about various types of quantitative, qualitative, and mixed methods research. Methods such as surveys, field experiments, and focus group discussions are especially popular in community-based social justice research.

We can trace back the roots of quantitative community-based research to the 1940s and 1950s when two women social scientists, Margot Wormser and Claire Selltiz, pioneered community self-surveys or audits (Torre & Fine, 2011). Their research helped to provide guidance on how to conduct social justice research about civil rights on topics such as housing, education, and health services. Their inclusive participatory methods focused on reaching as many community members as possible by considering as many ways as possible for including, involving, and encouraging marginalized groups to participate in the research process. Their studies were not just precursors for contemporary critical community-based participatory action research but also some early examples of social psychological research for social justice. Today, community-based research is especially popular in health-related disciplines such as public health, health disparities, nursing, health education, and prevention studies, though it has been applied in many other contexts, settings, and topics.

The current chapter will delve into some common terminology, principles, and practical suggestions to consider when designing, implementing, and assessing community-based research projects. Community-based social justice research emphasizes principles such as collaboration, participation, experiential knowledge, action-orientation, and social transformation, which will be elaborated on in this chapter. You will also learn about various types of participatory research and approaches such as the socio-ecological model, community-based participatory research, participatory action research, trauma-informed participatory approach, culture-centered approach, program intervention studies, engaged scholarship, and public scholarship. The nuts and bolts of planning and implementing community research will be discussed, from problem definition to evaluation and feedback. We will end the chapter with some practical considerations while conducting such research, such as long-term involvement, project management, and community consent.

Types of Communities

Before we get into community-based research, let us first look at the word community. **Community** is defined as a group of people who share some common characteristics such as living in the same geographic space (a particular neighborhood, campus, village, town, or state) or with similar interests or identities (a network for Black journalists, a community for indigenous media makers, a community choir for low-income immigrants, or a center for lesbian couples' counseling). Communities can include residents of a local area, industry professionals, government agencies, nonprofits, practitioners, and any groups of people or organizations that are affected by research results.

In today's mediated contexts, the word community extends well beyond a specific physical space to include **virtual communities**. Online communities where individuals make new connections, network with others, and interact about any number of topics through social media networks, mobile apps, video games, chatrooms, video chats, and so on are important to understand and pay attention to in an increasingly mediated world. Some considerations for community-based participatory research that engage with online communities include issues such as barriers to access to technology, offline versus online engagement, media literacy skills, concerns about privacy, lack of clarity about online content ownership, and lack of trust in online spaces. However, the internet and mobile phone technology in particular offer excellent opportunities to enhance collaboration and participation, access and share information, reach beyond a limited geographic area, mobilize swiftly, and reduce research costs, which are all important considerations in doing community-based participatory research (see Tami-Maury, Brown, Lapham, & Chang, 2017).

Typically, community is a term used to describe participants in the research process who are outside of higher education contexts. Often such research discusses university-community partnerships where a specific center or institute within higher education reaches out to one or two specific community-based organizations to collaborate. For instance, the first author of this book has engaged in a long-term community partnership with schools in Massachusetts in implementing media literacy programs, especially relating to social justice issues such as gender equality and violence prevention. The second author of this book has conducted community-based research on media literacy through her initiative called Media Rise (www.mediarisenow.org), which brings together researchers, artists, activists, K-12 teachers, high school students, parents, and community leaders to promote meaningful media. However, community-based research can also include the campus community or those within research organizations. Examples of this might include running a health communication campaign for students and faculty within a university or engaging students in racial dialogues about campus.

In fact, the second author of this book has founded the Difficult Dialogues Project (www.difficultdialoguesproject.org), which is a campus initiative that uses facilitated dialogues to discuss difficult topics such as racism and COVID-19 inequalities to build empathy, active listening, and bring about systemic change within higher education (Ramasubramanian, Sousa, & Gonlin, 2017).

Community-Based Research in Communication

Community-based research within Communication is particularly popular in some subfields such as organizational communication, health communication, and media literacy. It draws on methods such as engaged scholarship, program evaluation, and intervention research (which we will elaborate on in the next section of this chapter). For example, organizational communication research often involves conducting research within organizational settings outside of higher education contexts. Similarly, health communication researchers conduct community-based programs that often use intervention research or program evaluation approaches that stem from field experiments.

Each community-based research project is highly specific and tailored to a particular community, context, and problem. Most of the community-based research within Communication has been related to health communication and has used mixed methods research to evaluate health-related programs and interventions (see Obregon & Waisbord, 2012 for many examples around the globe). However, community-based research methods have also been brought to bear on other social justice issues such as gender justice, environmental issues, media literacy, immigrant rights, technology use, and political participation. One example is a study by Kate Magsamen-Conrad and colleagues (2015) that used a pretest/posttest experimental design as part of the Intergroup Communication Intervention program to test whether technology literacy among older adults in the community was influenced by four weeks of one-hour training workshops. Another example of community-based research is a project conducted by Warshel (2012) on martyrdom portrayals on television with over 400 Palestinians over a 2.5 year period. Warshel's work used a home-based survey of children's television use, multi-sited ethnography of family and media use, critical viewing analyses of television texts, and survey research with parents about their children's television viewing.

Community-based research is the primary focus of research centers such as the Center for Culture-Centered Approach to Research and Evaluation (CARE) directed by Mohan Dutta at Massey University in New Zealand. CARE researchers have studied a wide range of topics such as food insecurity among tribal communities in India, domestic worker rights, transgender sex workers' rights, and other health-related topics in Singapore, as well as topics relating to indigenous health, health and migration, and poverty in New Zealand and elsewhere. Other Communication scholars around the world have used community-based approaches to examine a variety of social justice topics such as stigma around substance abuse among street youth in Bogota in Colombia (Ritterbusch, 2016), transgender equality issues in the U.S. (Billard, 2019), post-Katrina racism (Lykes & Scheib, 2016), technology enhanced learning among youth in Australia and United Kingdom (Marshalsey & Sclater, 2019), technology use among older adults in Romania (Schiau, Ivan, & Bîră, 2018), and critical media literacy among migrant youth in Netherlands (Leurs, Omerović, Bruinenber, & Sprenger, 2018).

Socio-Ecological Approach to Social Justice Research

In order to bring about community-level changes, social justice researchers need to consider the relationship among individuals, organizations, communities, and societies. Drawing on

sociological theories, communities can be seen as lying in between smaller units of change such as individuals and larger spheres of influence such as the entire nation. The micro-level focuses on changes that need to happen with individuals in interpersonal relationships (Figure 11.1). The meso level focuses on organizational change or community-based changes. The macro level focuses on changes at the societal or global level. In order to bring about social change, it is important to consider all these nested levels of change that influence one another.

These levels of change stem from the **socio-ecological model** that recognizes that there are several circles of influence ranging from the *individual level*, the *interpersonal level* such as a peer group or family, the *organizational level* such as workplaces or schools, the *community level* such as a specific neighborhood, and finally the *public policy level* that includes societal change (Figure 11.2). This model is commonly used within health communication scholarship to consider the multiple levels of ecological contexts to address to improve public health. Whereas individual changes can be brought about through persuasion, cues to action, and social norms, community-level changes need to address more complex processes such as collective decision-making, organizational cultures, policymaking, and shared resources. At a broader societal level, social justice and systemic changes are influenced by political, legal, cultural, economic, technological, and other such macro issues. However, all of these levels are interrelated and intertwined such that they influence one another.

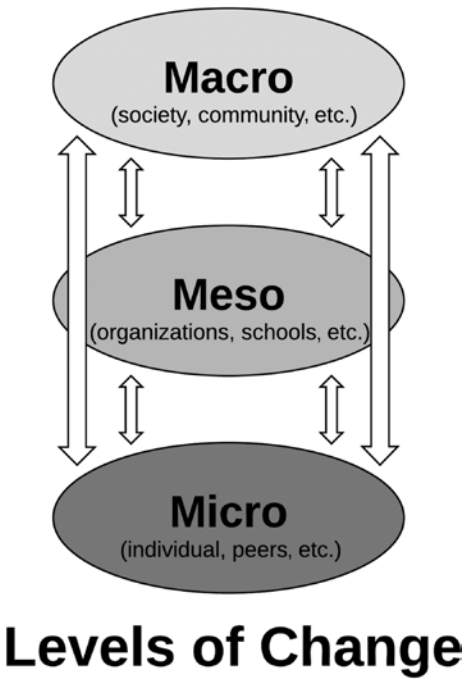


Figure 11.1 Levels of change

Source: Emily Riewestahl

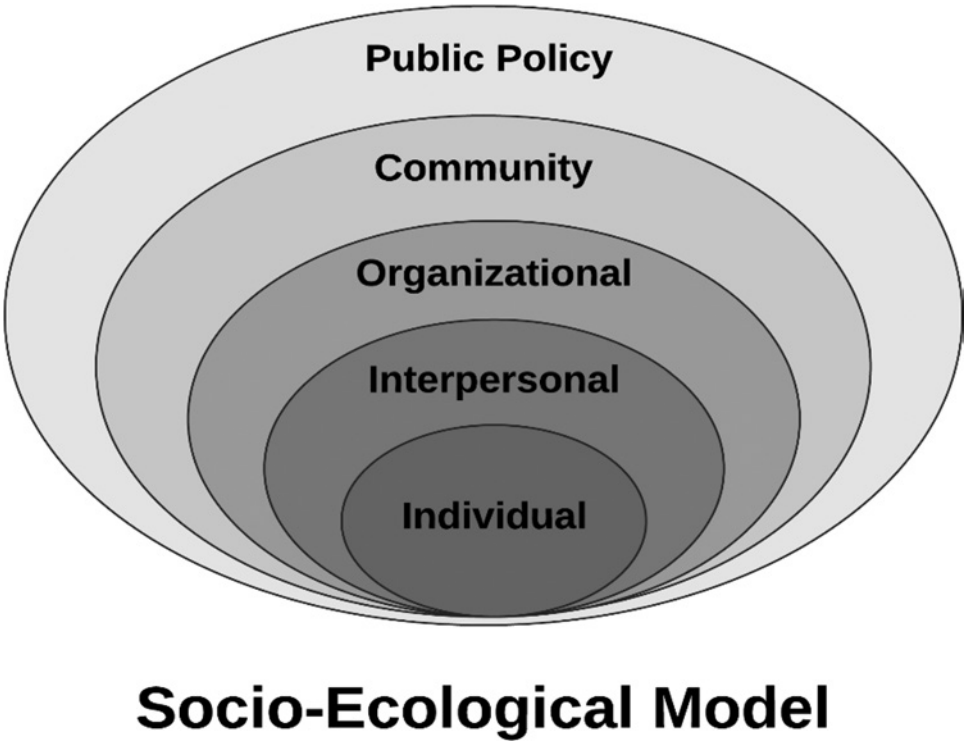


Figure 11.2 The Socio-Ecological Model

Source: Emily Riewestahl

Level of Community Participation

The level of community involvement can vary tremendously within research collaborations. Participation need not always be equal. There will be moments in the research process where there might be lesser or more involvement with the community. One can think of such collaboration as a continuum that ranges from researcher-driven projects to community-driven projects (Figure 11.3). Projects could be **community-*oriented***, where the research is oriented toward community goals but does not necessarily involve community members in the research process. Community-oriented projects are not typically conducted within community settings. **Community-*placed*** research is conducted entirely by researchers but within community settings without much involvement of the community. One can say that most field experiments and intervention research projects are community-placed projects. The level of community involvement is minimal and is limited to occasional consultations, if any. **Community-*based*** participatory research involves equal partnership where resources, credit, and power are shared equally between research investigators and community members. Finally, some community-oriented projects are **community-*driven*** in the sense that community members take the lead in the direction that the research project takes. In the rest of the chapter we will use the term *community-based research* largely to refer to those research projects where involvement from communities is quite substantial.

Figure 11.3 Level of community participation shown on a continuum from least involvement (left) to most involvement (right) of the community

Source: Emily Riewestahl

There are many different types of community-based research, which differ slightly from one another in origins, emphases, goals, and level of community involvement. They include participatory action research, community-based participatory research, program evaluation research, engaged scholarship, and public scholarship. These approaches are explained in more detail in the sections that follow.

Participatory Action Research

Participatory action research (PAR) is a type of community-based research that is directly linked to actionable outcomes for the community. It is action-oriented and aims to bring about social transformation. The community has far more involvement, participation, and influence over the research project than some other approaches discussed in this section. It has an explicit emphasis on enabling action through research. It pays careful attention to power relations and is deliberate about advocating for shared power between academics or other researchers, practitioners, and community members. Communication scholars involved in participatory action research have used it to address questions about poverty, food insecurity, affordable health care, worker rights, medical education, elder care, and climate change in communities by involving community members in the co-construction and co-design of research practices such as open forums, online spaces, photovoice techniques, geo-mapping, public dialogue sessions, focus group discussions, and survey methods.

Community-Based Participatory Research

Community-based participatory research (CBPR) is a common approach to community-based research. This can be seen as a type of social justice scholarship that focuses on bringing about community change through social transformation. CBPR projects tend to be participatory in nature, focused on transformative action, and often use mixed methods and multiple theoretical perspectives to reach their social justice goals. This means that there is active participation among researchers as well as community organizations in research design, implementation, and sharing. Community involvement has implications for every stage of the research process (Leavy, 2017). Some characteristics of CPBR are:

- Problem-centered approach that actively focuses on solving socially relevant issues
- Shared decision-making and community involvement in the research process

- Iterative approach to data collection and analysis, often using mixed methods (both quantitative and qualitative), which focuses on continuous learning, flexibility, and a focus on actionable outcomes
- Integration of formal and informal sources of information
- Emphasis on public scholarship that translates research for lay audiences

Program Evaluation Research

Apart from approaches that emphasize participation and collaboration, another important approach that has shaped community-based research is program evaluation. Program evaluation research emerges from applied social research such as intervention sciences, field experiments, policy research, and randomized control trials, especially within health, social work, and developmental communication contexts (Linfield & Posavac, 2019). When we refer to community-based programs or interventions, they could be any type of organized effort toward some shared goal. By intervention in this context, we mean direct action toward transformative social change (see Dempsey et al., 2011 for more about community, intervention, and social justice). Given our emphasis on social justice in this book, we are focusing on programs or interventions that relate to social justice goals of reducing social inequalities through more equitable distribution of shared power and resources for the overall well-being and transformation for the community. Some examples are initiatives or programs relating to violence prevention, bystander intervention training, health education, public health campaigns, media literacy, prejudice reduction, voter registration efforts, and civic engagement.

Engaged Scholarship

Engaged scholarship has often been used in applied communication and organizational communication contexts to refer to partnerships and collaborations with industry groups, policymakers, government officials, and professionals. Here, the emphasis of engagement and community involvement may or may not be oriented toward social justice. Whereas *engaged scholarship* has usually been used to refer to researcher-community partnership itself, public scholarship is slightly different. **Public scholarship** typically refers to the ways in which research is *communicated* to broad public audiences. It focuses on citizen outreach, public communication, and translation of scientific information for lay audiences. Like engaged scholarship, it also incorporates public feedback and inputs in shaping research initiatives in a collaborative manner. We will learn more about public scholarship in the final chapter.

Identifying the Topic in Community-Based Research

The first step in the research process is identifying the topic to study. In terms of selecting the research topic relating to social justice and the community to study, there is a wide range of issues and topics such as the challenges people face from a human rights (immigrant rights or LGBTQ+ rights, for instance) or justice (gender, criminal, economic, or environmental justice, for example) perspective. Your research background and specific interests within Communication—including, but not limited to organizational communication, media studies, health communication, rhetoric, political communication, journalism studies, law and policy studies—as well as your personal experiences can shape the type of community-based research project you pick to study.

Current affairs and **topicality** also shape the topics and communities that you study. For instance, the Difficult Dialogue Project on campus race relations discussed earlier was prompted after a racist incident on campus that the second author became aware of through the university president's message to denounce hate and racism. Other factors that could influence topic selection are funding opportunities that support specific community-based projects. For instance, several universities have started learning communities for researchers interested in community-based scholarship, and many foundations offer large grants to support such initiatives.

There could also be existing professional networks that you are a part of that allow you to network and form collaborations with **community-based organizations (CBOs)**. You could be part of the associations or groups based on your interests, such as a volunteer in a non-profit organization, at a food bank, or as a member of an interest group such as bird conservation society, a band, a choir, a sports team, a book club, and so on. These personal and professional networks might give you opportunities to connect with other collaborators, researchers, and community members passionate about your research projects and interests. It is also possible that the communities themselves approach a researcher to be part of their research team or that the researcher is invited to join an existing interdisciplinary team or initiative.

Working with interdisciplinary teams means taking an inclusive approach to defining the key social issues to be addressed. In identifying the topic, researchers should incorporate community perspectives, relevance, and understanding of the issue at hand beyond academic definitions, terms, and concepts. It is important to understand the problem that is affecting the community from the perspective of community members themselves. The stakeholders collaborate to identify the problems and fine-tune the goals by making visible the historical contexts that shaped the social inequities. For instance, if the intervention is about effective prevention of flu infection through vaccination, then researchers should spend some time as they design their intervention understanding how the community has historically dealt with viral infections, what were some of the previous programs and interventions conducted in the community, and what were previous experiences of the community with social science researchers.

Establishing Partnerships with Relevant Stakeholders

Once the topic is determined, researchers need to **identify the relevant stakeholders** and form partnerships with community-based organizations who are also committed to the same social justice goals as the researchers. It is important to form coalitions and partnerships with community-based organizations who share your vision for the program and are also committed to the same social justice goals that you are. Working with diverse organizations allows researchers to consider diverse perspectives that might not be immediately obvious to them. There could be several barriers for the intervention that researchers might not have considered. It also provides an opportunity for community members to express their voice and feel heard. These community organizations can also help to mobilize members to participate in the research process. The downside of involving stakeholders is that the planning process will take longer to complete. So, the researcher needs to make some trade-offs depending on the specific context and social issue that they are studying.

Community-based organizations and stakeholders can include a wide range of people and organizations such as potential participants, family members, teachers, employers, coworkers, community leaders, government representatives, authority figures, media outlets, social

advocates, and funding agencies. Community-based organizations often work with a range of service providers and experts such as legal experts, counselors, health-care providers, researchers, and educators, depending on the specific issue that they address. For example, in a school-based bias reduction intervention that the second author is involved in, the research team consists of faculty and staff (from various disciplines such as Communication, Psychology, Performance Studies, and Higher Education), instructional technology experts, pre-service teachers, Center for Teaching Excellence staff, school administrators, middle school teachers, parents, school students, and counselors. Projects relating to health communication interventions could involve public health researchers, health communication scholars, community health workers, social workers, hospital patients, clinic staff, nurse practitioners, physicians, dieticians, and so on. It is important, then, for researchers to avoid approaching a partnership by thinking that they, themselves, possess all the knowledge or that they are doing the community a favor by working with them.

Setting up a **community advisory board (CAB)** is a common research practice in projects that involve participatory methods. Such boards should be diverse and include representatives from various backgrounds and strata within the community. Developing strong and trusting relationships from the beginning of the project by involving the main stakeholders in the process is especially helpful in dealing with any difficult challenges in the research project. Taking a collaborative participatory approach to community-based research could mean involving community members of the advisory board to help with any number of topics including:

- Identifying the goals, defining the problem, and fine-tuning the research questions
- Selecting strategies to achieve the identified priorities and goals associated with the intervention
- Recruiting research participants who might otherwise be hard to reach
- Formalizing roles and responsibilities for various team members involved in the research
- Setting priorities for what the research can address based on needs assessment and shared resources available
- Identifying potential barriers to implementing the research project

It is crucial to consider what skill sets each team member brings to the table, what is at stake for them in the research, and how they might be approaching the problem at hand. In other words, community-based research values **multiplicity** or **triangulation** of perspectives, interests, and skills. Several partnerships evolve with time by building trust between researchers and community members. As Billard (2019) points out within the context of public scholarship with the National Center for Transgender Equality, doing participatory action research often means that researchers need to rethink the meaning of research, what skills they bring to the table, what counts as research, and how success is measured in that context. The participatory nature of such research means that just as academics offer new perspectives and knowledge to communities and publics, they should also be open and willing to learn about perspectives from non-academic community members.

If they are new to a community, researchers often rely on informants to gain better understanding of the cultures they are examining. **Informants** are members of the culture or community who might serve as bridges between the researcher and the community because of unique insights into the culture that, due to their positionality, they can provide. There could also be **gatekeepers** such as community leaders who might grant access to

the research space and setting. It helps to work through existing community-based partners and networks to bring about maximum impact on the social causes that the researchers are passionate about.

Deliberative democratic processes in design and implementation of research serve as mechanisms for promoting shared ownership, inclusive decision-making, and reconciliation of differences. They focus on dialogical models to discuss and resolve differences in perspectives, values, and desires of various stakeholders. Whenever possible, it would help researchers to find ways to encourage co-creation of research procedures with community members. For instance, Benjamin Bates and colleagues (2019) discuss the idea that health interventions often assume community members as passive recipients of benevolent charity of the researchers rather than seeing community members as active participants and knowledge-producers in the research process.

Research in Action

A strategic tool that can help in community-based projects is a **community asset mapping exercise**. In this section of this chapter, we will guide you through the steps to work on a community asset mapping exercise that you can conduct for any community or group with which you will be collaborating. The community mapping tool is part of a methodological and theoretical approach called Asset-Based Community Development (ABCD) model for sustainable community development. This is a grassroots and participatory approach. It focuses on using existing community assets to bring about transformative change. It was developed by Kretzmann and McKnight (1993). The Asset-Based Community Development (ABCD) model has six main assumptions:

- Everyone has gifts and assets to contribute.
- The focus should be on community strengths rather than needs.
- Existing resources can be mobilized toward community-building.
- Relationships build strong communities.
- Relationship-building occurs through active listening.
- Change should be community-driven and citizen-centered.

In the mapping exercises, one can map any number of individual and community-level assets as well as their connections and relationships across a geographic space. The map includes any number of assets such as talents, skill sets, networks, knowledge, money, time, space, and stories.

Figure 11.4 shows one possible sample map that could be helpful for you to understand how a community asset map could look like for a specific community and issue of interest.

Figure 11.4 Community asset map

Source: Emily Riewestahl

Asset mapping can be done in multiple ways. Here is one way to approach asset mapping:

- Establish the geographic boundary for the map and the region that you will focus on.
- List all the assets (skills, talents, capacities, passions, and resources) in the community that are relevant contributions to the research topic. For example, your list could include physical spaces (such as parks and transportation systems), economic assets (such as banks, grocery stores, and local businesses) and social networks (such as clubs, associations, cultural groups, and communication channels).
- Gather stories and narratives relating to the assets through archival research, oral histories, in-depth interviews, and focus group discussions to understand the context, background, and history of the research topic of interest.
- Note where there are gaps and strengths. Visually organize this information in an accessible and meaningful way to present it back to the community as a means of leveraging assets to bring about change.

Developing Research Materials for Community-Based Projects

Pretesting of communication materials is the next step, often referred to as formative research. In this stage, the research materials are tested to make sure that they are appropriate. The implementation of the intervention involves decisions such as what should be done, when, how, where, and using what resources. For example, if designing an online media literacy intervention for middle school students on prejudice reduction, the pretesting stage might involve coming up with scripts for possible scenarios that describe discrimination in school-based settings. Since it would be expensive to create video-based online media literacy modules, which would involve scriptwriting, filming, and editing, it is best to conduct some formative research to make sure that the scenarios being developed are culturally relevant, age appropriate, and credible. Such inputs from community members at these initial stages of the research process could not just help the research team save on resources but also serve as an opportunity to involve community members in meaningful ways as part of the research process in co-creating research materials. Once the researchers receive feedback from the pretesting stage on initial research materials, researchers often conduct a smaller **pilot study** at this stage by implementing the intervention on a small subpopulation before launching it fully on a large scale. At this stage, the input from the pilot study can still be used to make any needed corrections and changes.

Designing successful community-based communication interventions means listening to the community and their needs at every stage of the research process. Dutta (2008) refers to this as taking a **culture-centered approach** to participatory research with communities that centers on cultural humility and listening. The researcher needs to be sensitive to the unequal hierarchies and status differences between the researcher and the researched. It is important for researchers to be familiar with the subculture, language/dialects, and communication preferences of participants. In working with participants in the Mexico-U.S. borderlands in the South Texas *colonias*, for instance, it could mean conducting research in Spanish using face-to-face interviews rather than using phone calls or online surveys. Using inclusive and nonjudgmental language to refer to participants and their situations goes a long way in making them feel included and acknowledged. It means being explicit about recognizing cultural differences and social hierarchies to ensure that power differentials are acknowledged and discussed. Researchers should avoid using a deficit model that assumes that marginalized groups are to be blamed for their conditions and also be careful to avoid biologically essentialist theories that suggest that socio-cultural inequalities exist due to personal deficiencies or cultural inadequacies.

Researchers should prioritize **jargon-free language** in their materials. In designing questionnaires and surveys, for instance, the language of research, including consent processes, can often be highly technical, hard to read, and difficult to understand. For example, Harlyn Skinner and colleagues (2015) discuss how their research team originally used technical jargon in their study without recognizing the importance of more accessible language. With the purpose of strengthening trust between the research team and members of the community, they changed their study materials to say that they want to "learn more about genetic factors relating to health disease" instead of the previous consent form, which used words such as *genomic signatures*, *responsiveness*, *interventions*, and *CVD disparities*.

Beyond language, it is also important to consider the mode or format used to deliver questionnaires and other measurement instruments. **Universal design** principles should be considered in terms of making sure that everyone who would like to access research materials can do so. For example, using online surveys as well as printed ones in large font allows participants the flexibility to determine which mode is convenient for them to share their

information. Even small changes such as using simplicity in design, pre-testing materials, giving detailed instructions, offering the materials in multiple languages and formats, and minimizing fatigue are important considerations.

Implementation of Community-Based Research Projects

In this section of the chapter, we will focus our attention on some of the practical steps involved in implementing community-based research projects. We cannot emphasize enough the importance of having **clear research protocols** and shared agreements to be developed collaboratively as a team. This means that the nature of the relationship between the researcher and the participants, responsibilities, time commitment, and division of labor should be clarified ahead of time and throughout the research process. It would be important to consider how to make decisions, how to interact and communicate with one another, and what values are shared. Interpersonal and inter-organizational issues such as disagreements, refusals, noncooperation, and dissent are common in community-centered research and need to be addressed with transparency and fairness. For instance, community members and industry collaborators might have different scheduling expectations and work ethics compared to researchers from academe. Therefore, it is vital to have discussions on these issues as part of the implementation of the research project.

It is important for researchers to discuss with community members **practical barriers** such as accessibility, transportation, time availability, and financial costs that come in the way of research participation. Some challenges could relate to difficulties in getting to the venue; arranging for alternative care for loved ones such as elders, pets, or young children; and finding time between multiple jobs and roles to participate in the research. For instance, for the second author's Media Rise project, she often needs to locate free, accessible, convenient, and safe spaces for community members to meet. She also plans for transportation to and from the venue, childcare support for parents, refreshments for attendees, and access to technology.

Given the inherently participatory nature of community-based research studies, researchers who use methods such as surveys or field experiments, for instance, should consider using community-based organizations and other networks to reach out to groups that are traditionally left out of data collection. As we have seen in Chapter 4 on sampling, **inclusive approaches to sampling** are not just important in community building and action-orientation in social justice projects, but they also help increase generalizability, representativeness, and external validity of the research study. It is important to understand cultural expectations, social norms, and power differences in terms of who among the community has voice, power, and access to participating in research in active ways. Factors such as severe weather, religious holidays, migratory patterns, and political climate can significantly influence sampling. Quantitative critical researchers should find ways to overcome these barriers to allow for a greater number of community members to share their perspectives in the researchers' studies.

Since community-based research is sometimes long-term in nature, **community consent** is negotiated multiple times from community members before, during, and after the research project. Informed consent is vital to obtain from community participants before the start of the research project, as it helps to communicate and set reasonable expectations. Community members should be involved in determining risks, harms, benefits, discomforts, and adverse effects. Working in collectivist communities could mean that familial, tribal, and other social affiliations take precedence over individual preferences in influencing decisions about research participation and the consent process. Informed consent, under such circumstances, might not necessarily be discussed only at the individual level but also with the community as a whole at multiple stages of the research. For example, while conducting research with first

peoples and tribal communities, it is important to preserve and honor indigenous protocols, including getting community consent from intertribal IRB ethics boards (Kelley, Belcourt-Dittloff, Belcourt, & Belcourt, 2013; Lambert, 2014).

When working with stigmatized communities who are often invisible and underrepresented in academe, it is important to make space for the voice of community members to be heard within scholarship. Identifying and bringing attention to community members through research could serve as a powerful way of acknowledging and validating the wisdom and expertise within historically marginalized communities. However, naming community experts publicly in the research could also open up the possibility of gaining negative attention, which could lead to challenges such as conflict, embarrassment, threat, withdrawal of resources, and injury. Moreover, researchers have to be careful not to speak for others or inadvertently represent minoritized voices from a position of superiority. Therefore, decisions about whether participants should remain anonymous, be addressed using pseudonyms, or be explicitly identified have to be made with great care and thought, balancing risks of potential harm with benefits that come from recognition, validation, and affirmation of community expertise.

Evaluation and Feedback in Community-Based Research Projects

In applied communication contexts, social justice researchers are often interested in assessing the impact of interventions in the real world. We could think of any community-based research program or intervention as a field or natural experiment (see Chapter 6 for experiments). Using a pretest/posttest experimental design model is quite popular. This often means using time-series longitudinal assessment to monitor the effects of the intervention on key outcome variables. The independent variable is the program or intervention or treatment. An intervention could be a media literacy program conducted in middle school, a health campaign on HIV/AIDS prevention, or a diversity training program for employees. The dependent variables are the effects and outcomes on participants. These could be a range of variables such as knowledge, attitudes, beliefs, and behaviors that are affected by the intervention (for example, changes in critical media viewing after a media literacy intervention, adoption of safe sex practices after being part of a HIV/AIDS prevention campaign, or more inclusive attitudes after being part of a series of diversity training workshops in an organization). However, it is not always possible to conduct a pretest/posttest design field experiment nor always feasible or practical to have a control group. In these cases, even a single group post-only design could help evaluate the effectiveness of a community program in reaching its goals, but it is not possible to establish causality using such quasi experiments and pre-experimental designs (see Chapter 6 on experiments).

Researchers should have an **evaluation plan** for assessing whether the community-based project has reached its intended goals and aims. Taking a participatory collaborative approach to evaluating community-based projects means that the evaluation plan reflects the goals and needs of community stakeholders. The evaluation team can involve a large team including such people as researchers, teachers, parents, administrators, social workers, policymakers, government officials, technicians, and professionals, depending on the nature of the project. A common misconception among many is that evaluation is conducted only after a program has been implemented to check whether the outcomes have been achieved. Yet, as we have established, evaluation is often done at the initial formative research stage, as well.

An important aspect of evaluation of community-based research projects is bringing the data back to the community and members of the partnership to get their inputs and collectively discuss and interpret the findings. This step is referred to as **participant or member**

checks, when researchers include community members and research participants within the research process by giving them drafts of their research reports, notes, and transcripts to receive feedback from them. This step is especially helpful with social justice research, which often deals with sensitive information, to make sure that there are no misrepresentations or misunderstandings relating to the data that are being collected and distributed.

The evaluation plan should include **program outcomes** that are identified as goals to be achieved. It is important to think about the outcomes at the individual as well as community level. These could include short-term or intermediate-term goals such as increased self-efficacy, individual-level outcome measures, and shared research partnership. They can also lead to long-term changes such as policy changes, shared power, capacity building, greater equity, more access to resources, and other community-level measures of well-being and social transformation. For each of these goals, it would help to articulate how and why they are important and what the desired outcome would look like.

Researchers could use information from many different sources to collect data that could be relevant in designing, implementing, and assessing community-based projects. Some sources of information could include participants in a community-based program, staff and leaders within community-based organizations, researchers and experts on the topic, and other significant community stakeholders. Depending on the project and resources available, here are some types of assessment information that could be collected from various sources to evaluate the effectiveness of the community project:

- Artifacts and archival data (such as newspapers, yearbooks, syllabi, etc.)
- Internal reports of community-based organizations
- Publicly available records
- Community-level data (may or may not be publicly available)
- Similar programs or initiatives conducted in other communities
- Published research on the topic, including measures and tests used in prior studies
- Social media networks such as Facebook and Twitter

In Chapter 10, we discussed the importance of multiplicity of methods and the need for triangulation. Researchers should consider multiple measures and methods for the same source of information. Depending on the research questions and stage of the project, they could use focus group discussions, surveys, or in-depth interviews with various groups such as potential participants, program participants, staff members, and other stakeholders. For instance, they could do an audit of internal records in conjunction with in-depth interviews with program staff. Community organizations often do not have large amounts of resources for research. Therefore, researchers should strive to use only those measures and methods that would be helpful, valid, reliable, and credible. When there are multiple team members and stakeholders, there could be a tendency to include measures that are only tangentially helpful to the research questions and goals. In terms of quantitative methods, most interventions set out with clear and measurable objectives, and therefore, the outcome variables are compared to baseline pretest measures to keep track of how the intervention is working for the community.

Making Research Findings Available to Communities

Communities should also be incorporated into the distribution and dissemination of research results. Ideally, findings should be made publicly accessible through multiple formats such as photo exhibitions, pamphlets, blogs, websites, panel discussions, newspapers, radio channels, social media, etc. to highlight social issues to community members, policymakers, change

Research in Action

Here are some helpful web resources relating to program evaluation and assessment of any community-based initiative. Although many of them are from health communication contexts, they can be applied to any topic or community context:

1. **American Evaluation Association (AEA**) (www.eval.org/): This organization serves as a hub for evaluation research in a variety of contexts such as collaborative and participatory evaluation, health evaluation, democracy and governance, disabilities and underrepresented populations, higher education, crime and justice, data visualization, environmental program evaluation, feminist issues, and indigenous people in evaluation. It has an online public library and also offers a tip a day for members.
2. **The Centers for Disease Control's Performance and Evaluation Office** (www.cdc.gov/eval/framework/index.htm): This office provides important toolkits and resources for developing effective program evaluation in public health related contexts in a systematic way. It includes the "Framework for Program Evaluation in Public Health" and standards for effective evaluation of health interventions.
3. **School-Based Interventions** (www.interventioncentral.org/): This site provides guidance, toolkits, measures, and manuals for researchers, teachers, and school administrators designing interventions relating to literacy, childhood health, bullying, and other topics related to children and youth.
4. **Office of Adolescent Health** (www.hhs.gov/ash/oah/): The U.S. Department of Health and Human Services has an office devoted to adolescent health that offers several examples of programmatic initiatives, evaluation, research, resources, and training relating to such topics as teen pregnancy, teens and tobacco use, teen mental health, and teens and sexual health.
5. **Domestic Violence and CPBR Resources** (https://cbprtoolkit.org/): For those committed to addressing domestic violence related issues in the community, this web resource has tools and resources. These tools are tailored toward emerging scholars working in community, practice-based, academic, and policy settings.
6. **The Association of Asian Pacific Community Health Organizations (AAPCHO)** (www.aapcho.org/resources_db/cbpr-toolkit/): In collaboration with the National Association of Community Health Centers, this organization provides resources to researchers interested in working with medically underserved populations, such as Asian Americans, Native Hawaiians, and other Pacific Islanders.

agents, government officials, and other stakeholders who could help to reduce inequalities. From a social justice perspective, community-based research projects are action-centered. Therefore, research does not end simply with journal articles, conference papers, or reports that summarize findings. The research needs to bring about transformative action and help address the community-identified problem. In other words, the research often serves as a catalyst to bring about new actions, plans, policies, and strategies for social change. Communication scholars might also consider going beyond traditional academic conferences and journals to bring research to relevant stakeholders outside the discipline and academe.

An important consideration is whether the community members are to be considered authors or participants, depending on their level of involvement in the research process. Good research authorship practices require that authors be involved in design, data collection, writing, revising, and final approval. Those scholars who value relational ethics might reject hierarchical notions of what it means to be an expert. They could do so by involving research participants at several crucial decision-making stages, including and even as co-authors. This could mean publishing their work in open-access journals or making their research available through op-ed pieces or blog posts that are free to access. In the next chapter of this book, you will learn more about the role of quantitative research in policy-making and the ways in which one can translate research for a more general audience to make research-based insights available in multiple, alternative, and accessible formats to the public. Chapter 12 will go more in depth about various ways in which researchers could make their research available to a broader public.

Practical Considerations in Community-Based Research Approaches

Community-oriented participatory research involves long-term time investment and sometimes also financial commitment, which could also affect work-life balance, health, and personal relationships. Quantitative criticalist scholars might run into dangerous and challenging situations as part of their activism that could involve direct violence or threats against them. Resisting the status quo means challenging authority figures and those in positions of power. For instance, if you are a researcher studying LGBTQ+ rights or reproductive justice, it is not uncommon to run into challenges both from the community that you are studying and even perhaps the institution that you are affiliated with. Community-based social justice researchers could experience serious physical, emotional, and psychological discomfort and stressors. It could mean putting physical bodies on the line at the forefront of protests.

Despite researchers' best efforts, it is not possible to anticipate all the risks and benefits to the participants. Therefore, it is equally important to be ready for unanticipated research experiences that take researchers by surprise and need to be addressed through flexibility and reflexivity. Emergent research design is especially helpful while conducting social justice research in partnership with communities, where there could be unanticipated (or even anticipated) changes to the research design that are responsive to the changing needs, expectations, and goals of the community or organization with which the researchers are collaborating. For instance, the staff turnover within social justice community organizations could mean having to start afresh with establishing relationships with the organizations. Similarly, if community-based participatory research involves service learning using student researchers, there could be turnover in terms of new students each semester who need to be trained again to work with a specific community-based project.

Nevertheless, with the right type of support, quantitative criticalist scholars can bring about meaningful and significant transformative change through community-based applied Communication research. Social justice scholars could champion the use of research findings to uplift and serve the communities with which they work. They can help bring about policy changes, build capacity, and harness existing resources within the community to address long-standing challenges. They could also assume an advocacy role to encourage the utilization of research results to develop long-term policies and programs for the betterment of the community and human condition at large. Indeed, community-based social justice research often blurs the boundaries of research, teaching, service, and community work. When done right, it can serve as one of finest examples of transformative and impactful scholarship, which is not just necessary but vital for society.

Scholar Spotlight: Dr. A. Susana Ramírez

Figure 11.5 Scholar Spotlight: Dr. A. Susana Ramírez

A. Susana Ramírez is Associate Professor of Public Health Communication at the University of California in Merced. In 2019–2020, she was Visiting Professor at the Nacional Autónoma de México (UNAM), through the University of California Education Abroad Programs. She is a social scientist whose research at the intersection of communication science, public health, and Latinx health focuses on communication in the service of social justice and health equity.

Q: Could you please share a little bit about your journey into community-based research? Was there a specific moment when you decided that this is what you wanted to do?

Dr. Ramírez: My commitment to community-engaged research stems from my dissatisfaction with large national datasets to answer my research questions. In my doctoral training, I learned about race in the media and health disparities and the ways in which communication could both contribute to disparities but also help these, and I started asking questions based on my own experiences as a Mexican child raised in the United States. What I found was that most of the research either ignored ethnic identity or focused on the challenge of linguistic translation for Spanish-speaking populations. Based on my own experiences, I knew this was incomplete. But when I used a variety of national datasets to test hypotheses about the nature of the acculturation process—and how that affects the way Latinx perceive health information as relevant—I realized how limited the "nationally representative" data were. The results didn't make sense: They were inconsistent and counterintuitive. So coming out of my postdoctoral training at the National Cancer Institute, I looked for a faculty position where I could connect with a diverse Mexican American population to help me refine and test my hypotheses. Today I sit in a department of public health sciences, and I am interested more broadly in the transnational flows of communication, people, and products and population health and doing community-engaged research with a population that lives this transnational life helps to make my work more relevant than ever.

Q: There are many related terms such as community-based participatory action research, intervention research, participatory action research, social justice scholarship, activist scholarship, engaged scholarship, translational scholarship, and so on within Communication. Which of these terms do you most closely identify with and why?

Dr. Ramírez: I describe myself as a scholar committed to social justice. I practice community-engaged scholarship, which I distinguish from community-based participatory research (CBPR). CBPR really has to be driven by the community, whereas community-engaged scholarship is in partnership with and sensitive to the community, but it can be investigator-driven. My goal is to advance the science of communication—so that practitioners of public health communication can "do" communication better and so that the development of policies and systems that create a just world will be informed by science.

Q: What are some of the main challenges in doing community-based research? What can be done at the disciplinary and institutional levels to better support this type of scholarship?

Dr. Ramírez: Community-engaged research is time-consuming and political in a way that traditional scholarship is not, and both of these differences can have material consequences on junior scholars' career advancement. For example, to do good community-engaged research, you need to be authentically engaged in the community. That means you show up to community events, you participate on local advisory boards and councils, and you help community organizations even when you aren't directly benefiting from the activity. All of these activities are time-consuming and represent time that a researcher could have spent writing a paper that will be helpful for promotion. But also, the authentic relationships take time to develop. You can't expect that most communities—especially if you work with marginalized groups—will immediately grant you the kind of entry that you need to do meaningful work. You need to earn their trust over time. Again, that time—and it might be years!—means that you aren't doing the research and publishing that you need to be doing to advance on the traditional academic timeline.In terms of the politics of community-engaged research, the world gets very small when you start interacting with a community. There are informal and formal leaders with long histories in any community, and you want to be very careful as you start getting to know folks so that you don't end up unintentionally aligned with factions that might make it difficult for you to proceed in the future.

Q: What practical advice and tips do you have for budding scholars interested in community-based participatory research?

Dr. Ramírez: Don't do it till you have tenure! I'm only kind of kidding—scholars who are interested in community-engaged work face real barriers to promotion and tenure in the current system. But if junior scholars are committed to this work, then there are some tips I can offer. First, don't try to do everything yourself. Partner with someone at your institution who has longstanding relationships with the communities you want to work with. If they have existing data, see if you can use it in a new way, but make sure it is relevant for your own body of work. That both helps with building the relationships by showing your commitment to the community and keeps you looking productive on the CV. If that doesn't exist, then you're going to have a harder time. Find existing data sets that you can keep using to publish—and share these studies with the community you are getting to know and be known by.

Summary

Community-based projects are common in social justice research, although they are still somewhat rare within Communication as a discipline. Community-based research projects vary greatly in terms of topics, communities, level of community involvement, and types of methods used. They often use mixed methods approaches that combine quantitative and qualitative methods such as participant surveys, in-depth interviews, focus group discussions, archival methods, and field experiments. Community is typically understood to be participant groups outside of academe. They can include both "real world" and virtual communities such as residents of a local area, government agencies, businesses, professional networks, schools, libraries, interest groups, volunteer organizations, and so on.

Community-based projects tend to be problem-centered, participatory in nature, and action-oriented toward transformative social change. Taking a socio-ecological approach, social justice researchers often need to influence several layers or spheres of influence from micro-level individual factors to macro-level societal factors. There are many different types of community-based research approaches including community-based participatory research, participatory action research, trauma-informed participatory research, program evaluation research, engaged scholarship, and public scholarship. Community-based participatory research (CBPR) involves the community throughout the research process on socially-relevant issues through participatory methods and shared decision-making. Participatory action research (PAR) is similar to CBPR but is more explicitly action-oriented and critical in its approach in terms of bringing about social transformation. Program evaluation research stems from field experiments and intervention sciences, focusing on organized programmatic initiatives with shared goals. Engaged scholarship refers to partnerships and engagement formed and maintained between researchers and non-academic stakeholders in the research process. It need not be action-oriented or social justice-oriented, unlike PAR, which tends to be explicitly social justice-oriented. Public scholarship focuses on public input and outreach of research to wide groups of citizens.

The level of participation of communities could vary within research collaborations. Community-*oriented* research projects are oriented toward addressing community issues but typically do not involve community members. Community-*placed* research projects are conducted within community settings, and the community is minimally involved in research processes. Their largest role is as participants. Community-*based* participatory research is typically set within communities and also involves community in various stages of the research project. Finally, community-*driven* research projects are those where community members take the lead in the research process.

Typically, in community-based research projects, after determining the initial topic of interest, the key stakeholders are identified and community partnerships are formed between researchers and community-based organizations. It is also possible that community-based organizations already have some programmatic initiatives in place that are evaluated and assessed by the researchers. Problem identification and understanding of key concepts is done collaboratively through locating and summarizing relevant bodies of both formal and informal knowledge.

Research design, study materials, and evaluation are conducted with cultural sensitivity in collaborative ways, with the aim of taking an action-oriented programmatic approach to social justice issues. Inclusive methods of recruitment and retention of study participants, building trust and rapport, making long-term commitment, and emphasizing multiplicity of methods and viewpoints are emphasized in this approach. Pretesting and pilot-testing of program and research materials are aspects of formative research to get input early in the research

process. Evaluation of community-based programs needs to clearly articulate program outcomes in the short and long term at the individual and community level. Several sources of information such as public records, newspaper articles, social media, interview data, surveys, feedback forms, and the like can help assess whether an initiative or program is creating a positive change, as intended. Project materials and goals can be fine-tuned and improved based on evaluation research. Research findings are ideally shared in multiple, alternative, and publicly accessible formats such as opinion pieces, blogs, social media posts, newsletters, photography, performances, brochures, documentary films, and the like, beyond traditional publications in scholarly outlets such as journals and conferences.

Although community-based research involves many challenges and potential risks such as long-term involvement, emotional stress, physical discomfort, and unanticipated research experiences in the field, these things can also be extremely meaningful, impactful, and transformative, bringing about long-term positive change.

Discussion Questions and Activities

1. Let's focus on a social justice topic that interests you. In a sentence, explain the main topic that you would like your research to address. Now determine who would be the key stakeholders with whom you would have to collaborate and form partnerships to effectively address the topic that interests you. Next, what are the resources available to you that you could leverage? These resources could be personal knowledge and skill sets, or more broadly they could be other community resources, funding opportunities, and professional/personal relationships to which you have access.
2. How is an action-oriented approach different from other approaches to research? In what ways can the community be involved in understanding and defining the key issues at stake?
3. Find an existing traditional research study done in a university setting such as a lab-based experiment, content analysis, or survey methods. After reading this chapter, how would you redesign the same study if you were to address this same research question in a broader community context with non-academic stakeholders in mind? What would be some important changes you would make to the design?
4. Keeping the principles of mixed methods research discussed in the previous chapter in mind, pick two or three methods (such as surveys, experiments, content analysis, arts-based research, archival research, textual analysis, focus group discussions, ethnography, and so on) that would be most helpful to you for a community-based project that you are interested in. Why did you choose these methods, and how will they work together within the specific community and topic that interests you?
5. Imagine that you have been invited by a local community-based organization to serve as a research consultant. They are going to launch a sexual violence prevention campaign. Using the information, you have learned in this chapter and elsewhere in this book, design a pretest/posttest field experiment to evaluate the success of the program. What are some considerations that come to mind as you design such a study?

References

Bates, B. R., Marvel, D. L., Nieto, C. P, & Grijalva, M. J. (2019). Painting a community-based definition of health: A culture-centered approach to listening to rural voice in Chaquizhca, Ecuador. *Frontiers in Communication*, *4*(37). doi:10.3389/fcomm.2019.00037

Billard, T. J. (2019). Out of the tower and into the field: Fieldwork as public scholarship in the face of social injustice. *International Journal of Communication*, *13*, 3512–3528.

Dempsey, S., Dutta, M., Frey, L. R., Goodall, H. L. D., Madison, S., Mercieca, J., . . . Miller, K. (2011). What is the role of the Communication discipline in social justice, community engagement, and public scholarship? A visit to the CM Café. *Communication Monographs*, *78*(2), 256–271. doi:10.1080/03637751.2011.565062

Dutta, M. J. (2008). *Communicating health. A culture-centered approach*. Malden, MA: Polity Press.

Kelley, A., Belcourt-Dittloff, A., Belcourt, C., & Belcourt, G. (2013). Research ethics and indigenous communities. *American Journal of Public Health*, *103*(12), 2146–2152. doi:10.2105/AJPH.2013.301522

Kretzmann, J. P., & McKnight, J. L. (1993). *Building communities from the inside out: A path toward finding and mobilizing a community's assets*. Evanston, IL: Center for Urban Affairs and Policy Research, Northwestern University.

Lambert, L. A. (2014). *Research for indigenous survival: Indigenous research methodologies in the behavioral sciences*. Pablo, Montana: Salish Kootenai College Press.

Leurs, K., Omerović, E., Bruinenberg, H. & Sprenger, S. (2018). Critical media literacy through making media: A key to participation for young migrants?. *Communications, 43*(3), 427-450. https://doi.org/10.1515/commun-2018-0017

Leavy, P. (2017). *Research design: Quantitative, qualitative, mixed methods, arts-based, and community-based participatory research approaches*. New York: Guilford Press.

Linfield, K. J., & Posavac, E. J. (2019). *Program evaluation: Methods and case studies* (9th ed.). New York: Routledge.

Lykes, B. M., & Scheib, H. (2016). Visual methodologies and participatory action research: Performing women's community-based health promotion in post-Katrina New Orleans, *Global Public Health*, *11*(5–6), 742–761. doi:10.1080/17441692.2016.1170180

Magsamen-Conrad, K., Dowd, J., Abuljadail, M., Alsulaiman, S., & Shareefi, A. (2015). Life-span differences in the uses and gratifications of tablets: Implications for older adults. *Computers in Human Behavior*, *52*, 96–106. doi:10.1016/j.chb.2015.05.024

Marshalsey, L., & Sclater, M. (2019). Arts-based educational research: The challenges of social media and video-based research methods in communication design education. *International Journal of Art and Design Education*, *38*, 723–739. doi:10.1111/jade.12252

Obregon, R., & Waisbord, S. (2012). *The handbook of global health communication*. Hoboken, NJ: Wiley-Blackwell.

Ramasubramanian, S., Sousa, A. N., & Gonlin, V. (2017). Facilitated difficult dialogues on racism: A goal-based approach. *Journal of Applied Communication Research*, *45*(5), 537–556. doi:10.1080/00909882.2017.1382706

Ritterbusch, A. E. (2016). Exploring social inclusion strategies for public health research and practice: The use of participatory visual methods to counter stigmas surrounding street-based substance abuse in Colombia. *Global Public Health*, *11*(5–6), 600–617. doi:10.1080/17441692.2016.1141971

Schiau, I., Ivan, L., & Bîră, M. (2018). Involving older people in participatory action research: An example of participatory action design. *Romanian Journal of Communication and Public Relations*, *20*(1), 11–24. doi:10.21018/rjcpr.2018.1.250

Skinner, H. G., Calancie, L., Vu, M. B., Garcia, B., DeMarco, M., Patterson, C., et al. (2015). Using community-based participatory research principles to develop more understandable recruitment and informed consent documents in genomic research. *PLoS One*, *10*(5), e0125466. doi:10.1371/journal. Pone.0125466

Tami-Maury, I., Brown, L., Lapham, H., & Chang, S. (2017). Community-based participatory research through virtual communities. *Journal of Communication in Healthcare*, *10*(3), 188–194. doi:10.1080/17538068.2017.1337604

Torre, M. E., & Fine, M. (2011). A wrinkle in time: Tracing a legacy of public science through community self-surveys and participatory action research. *Journal of Social Issues*, *67*, 106–121. doi:10.1111/j.1540-4560.2010.01686.x

Warshel, Y. (2012). It's all about Tom and Jerry, Amr Khaled and Iqra, not Hamas's Mickey Mouse: Palestinian children's cultural practices around the television set. *Middle East Journal of Culture and Communication*, *2*, 211–245.

12 Communicating Research for Publication, Policy, and the Public

In this book, we have discussed how to design and carry out a quantitative research study with a critical consciousness, taking care to be inclusive, ethical, and just. Equally important for the potential of quantitative social science to harness the "power of numbers"—to identify and help address social injustices and imbalances in power—is how that research can be used. The researcher concerned with social justice ideally not only designs and carries out research with a critical consciousness but also facilitates the application of that research in direct efforts to intervene in social issues and inequalities.

Engaging in research for social justice does not mean taking shortcuts in the standards and practices associated with quantitative methodology. To the contrary, in order for quantitative research to be of use in social justice pursuits, it must be sound social science. To that end, the research will typically follow the procedures associated with publication. Published research is understood to have withstood the rigorous process of scientific peer review. Therefore, published studies are generally considered more authoritative compared to unpublished studies.

Yet, if researchers only pursue the publication of their research in academic journals and other scholarly outlets, the utility of that research for real-world problems and possibilities is likely to be quite limited. For the most part, the readers of academic journals and other scholarly outlets are academics themselves, rather than policy makers, members of nonprofit or community-based organizations, and other potential change makers. Therefore, researchers committed to social justice are often motivated to do what they can to get research into the view of members of the public and/or into the hands of change makers.

In Chapter 11, we explored community-engaged research, one avenue toward producing research that has a direct bearing on real-world issues and concerns. In this chapter, we discuss two other avenues: writing for the general public and writing for the purpose of shaping policy. Given the importance of publishing research, too, however, for both the status of many researchers themselves and the stamp of approval such a process signifies for the research, we begin with a detailed discussion of writing for scholarly publication.

Across all three of the types of writing discussed in this chapter—for publication, for the public, and for policy—one fundamental goal is the same: clarity. In this chapter, we emphasize clear and precise writing for the three purposes we have outlined.

Writing for Publication

Publication is typically the primary goal of scholarly research for a number of reasons. First, publishing research is an important way in which scholars exchange ideas and findings with one another. Through this process, knowledge is created and disseminated, building an ever-increasing body of evidence. In other words, we develop what we know about topics and themes in large part because of the availability of the scholarly evidence associated with

those topics and themes. We cannot learn from research that takes shape only as a file on the researcher's computer or an idea in a researcher's mind. Rather, that research has to see the light of day in some type of published form.

Second, in many cases, researchers who are associated with colleges and universities sometimes must publish in order to obtain job security and advance their careers within the existing reward structures. At many colleges and universities, research must be published in order for the researcher to secure tenure and promotion, since publishing research demonstrates that the researcher is making an active contribution toward the production of knowledge. Tenure, in turn, protects the researcher, for the most part, by providing a secure position in which the researcher can enjoy academic freedom.

Academic freedom means that one is able to pursue research and teaching without fear of punishment, censorship, rebuke, or retaliation. A fundamental principle in the creation and distribution of knowledge, academic freedom ensures that academics can pursue even ideas that are controversial, are not in the interest of colleges or universities themselves, or otherwise push against dominant systems and structures. This principle is especially important for social justice research since such research is positioned in opposition to power structures that promote and protect injustices and inequalities. Ideally, a university-based researcher would immediately and automatically enjoy academic freedom, but sometimes the researcher does not perceive or experience such freedom before tenure or some other long-term commitment to employment is established. The American Association of University Professors defines academic freedom as "the indispensable requisite for unfettered teaching and research in institutions of higher education" (www.aaup.org/our-work/protecting-academic-freedom). Its policy document states:

> Institutions of higher education are conducted for the common good and not to further the interest of either the individual teacher or the institution as a whole. The common good depends upon the free search for truth and its free exposition.
>
> (1940 *Statement of Principles on Academic Freedom and Tenure*, www.aaup.org/our-work/protecting-academic-freedom)

The third reason to seek publication of research is that the publication process ideally functions as a way to separate out more credible evidence compared to less. As you will read, published work has undergone close and careful scrutiny before making its way to the page. This scrutiny both recognizes strong research and helps create it, since the feedback obtained when a paper is under review for publication can provide guidance for improvement.

Forms of Academic Writing

Once you have designed and carried out a study, there are a number of forms the resulting written report of that study can take, even within the category of writing for publication as opposed to writing for policy or for the general public. Common forms include conference papers, posters, and/or presentations; book chapters; books; and articles in academic journals. We will briefly discuss each, although our emphasis will be on journal articles, since that tends to be the most frequently chosen avenue for publication among quantitative social scientists, including those in Communication.

Many times the first step to take upon the completion of a research study is to submit that study to be considered for selection for presentation at a **conference**. The International Communication Association, the National Communication Association, and the other

disciplinary and co- or cross-disciplinary organizations that we have discussed throughout this book typically convene an annual meeting, at which new research is presented to an audience of conference goers largely consisting of colleagues in the field. This is a wonderful opportunity to network and exchange ideas, research approaches, and findings among those with shared interests, and the feedback on a study received through this process is often used as a step in strengthening that study prior to the pursuit of publication.

Indeed, a research paper submitted to a conference is often quite similar in nature to a paper submitted for consideration for publication in a journal. It will traditionally have the same elements: abstract, introduction, literature review, methods, results, and discussion, as well as references and, frequently, tables and figures (all of which are outlined in detail later). Often, there will be a page or word limit imposed. Quite similar to the process used to consider a paper for publication in a journal, typically, conference papers are submitted anonymously (without the author[s]' name[s]) and then distributed to a number of peer reviewers (often two or three) whose identities are unknown to the author(s). The peer reviewers provide feedback on the paper and recommend for or against its acceptance for the conference. It is also possible that the researcher submits a proposal or an extended abstract rather than a full paper for consideration for presentation at a conference.

If accepted, there are usually two different presentation mechanisms. For a **conference paper presentation**, the paper will be presented orally by its author(s) alongside a small number of somewhat similar papers, with time provided for open question and answer and, sometimes, formal remarks from a scholar assigned as a respondent for the session. The oral presentation is often supplemented with a PowerPoint or Google slides display of key aspects of the paper and is typically timed (with 10–15 minutes as a typical length). For a **conference poster presentation**, a hard copy, large-format visual display of the key features of the paper is made, and the author(s) stands in front of the display to field questions and engage in conversations about the research with poster session attendees (Figure 12.1). Sometimes, respondents are assigned to these sessions, as well, and therefore in addition to impromptu conversations with conference goers, more formal feedback might be communicated to the authors by the person in this role. Conferences may also convene virtually (as was the case during the COVID-19 pandemic, for instance) rather than face to face.

Some research papers or summaries of research take the form of **book chapters** in an edited book, appearing alongside related chapters under a shared topic. If a scholar's own research is quite extensive or, perhaps, has a number of related components, it may be suitable to take the form of an **authored book**. An authored book has a single author or co-authors who write the entire manuscript. Books are quite common in the humanities, and therefore an emphasis on this form can be found in the areas of the Communication discipline that draw from more humanistic intellectual traditions. Although not unheard of, a book-length treatment of quantitative research is rarer in published Communication scholarship compared to a book-length treatment of qualitative research. Indeed, most authored books that feature quantitative research do not emphasize a single, original research project but rather synthesize, critique, and review a vast body of research.

For quantitative approaches to Communication, the **journal article** is typically considered the coin of the realm. Academic journals are published periodically online and/or in print and feature research and other forms of scholarship in article form. The nature and scope of quantitative research makes the journal article a good fit as a publication outlet, since journals vary in word or page limit but often allow about 25 pages of text (with additional references, tables, and figures) for each paper that they accept.

A large and growing number of academic journals are devoted to or otherwise open to considering Communication research for publication. There are also academic journals dedicated

Figure 12.1 Conference presentation

Source: Wikimedia commons

specifically to social justice research. Academic journals typically have statements of "aims and scope" that describe the sort of research they tend to focus on or favor for publication. They also have guidelines for authors to follow when submitting research. This information is found on the journal's website and is important to read before deciding what journal to submit research to, as ideally there would be a close fit between the focus of the journal and the study itself.

With a large number of possibilities, it can be challenging to figure out which journal to choose when submitting a study. In addition to reading information on journals' websites such as aims and scope, four quick guidelines can help in the decision:

- If you think a particular journal might be a good fit**, read some recent articles that were published in that journal**. Do you think your study is on par with those recently published studies? Is your paper similar in some way? If so, those are good indications that this journal is, indeed, a good place to try.
- **Look at the studies included in the literature review and cited in the reference section of your paper**. In what journals were those studies published? Perhaps one of those outlets would be a good fit for your paper, since the journal published one or more prior studies that were similar enough to warrant their inclusion in your literature review.
- **Read the list of editorial board members published on the journal's website**. From what you know or can find out about the editorial board members' own research, do at least some of them do somewhat similar sorts of studies as the one you are submitting? Once again, if the answer is yes, that is another indication of a good fit.

- **Talk to your colleagues or, if you are a graduate student, your advisor, committee members, and other professors** about your paper and what journal they would recommend for it. Better yet, ask a trusted colleague to read your paper and then suggest one or more journals that might be a good fit.

It is important to know that nearly all academic journals require that the papers submitted by authors for consideration for publication not be submitted simultaneously to any other journal or publication outlet. Rather, academic journals tend to require exclusive consideration of a paper for publication. This means that once you have chosen a journal to submit a paper to, you must await the publication decision from that journal.

Elements of a Journal Article

As you learned in Chapter 1, there are a number of basic elements of a quantitative research paper that is written with the goal of publication in a journal. Of course, a research paper must have a **title**. Titles for academic papers should communicate clearly what the paper is about, but also be concise. The title should contain some of the keywords associated with the paper, in part so that if the paper gets published, it can pop up in online searches, such as through Google Scholar. A common convention that academics use in titling their papers is separating two clauses with a colon, the first clause perhaps more attention-getting and interesting and the second more informative and descriptive.

Here are some examples of titles we have used in our own research:

Saleem, M., Wojcieszak, M. E., Hawkins, I., Li, M., & Ramasubramanian, S. (2019). Social identity threats: How media and discrimination affect Muslim Americans' identification as Americans and trust in the U.S. government. *Journal of Communication*, *69*(2), 214–236.

Saleem, M., & Ramasubramanian, S. (2019). Muslim Americans' identity management strategies in response to media stereotypes and discrimination. *Media Psychology*, *22*(3), 373–393.

Ramasubramanian, S., & Miles, C. (2018). Cross-national comparative framing of news stories about the Syrian refugee crisis: Arabic versus English newspapers. *International Journal of Communication*, *12*, 4488–4506.

Scharrer, E., & Blackburn, G. (2018). Cultivating conceptions of masculinity: Overall television use, genre viewing, and perceptions of norms regarding masculine gender roles. *Mass Communication & Society*, *21*(2), 149–177.

Blackburn, G., & Scharrer, E. (2018). Video game playing and beliefs about masculinity among male and female emerging adults. *Sex Roles: A Journal of Research*, *80*(5/6), 310–324.

Sekarasih, L., Scharrer, E., Olson, C.J., Onut, G., & Lanthorn, K. (2019). Effectiveness of a school-based media literacy curriculum in encouraging critical attitudes about advertising content and form among boys and girls. *Journal of Advertising*, *47*, 362–377.

The **abstract** appears at the beginning in published form but is often written last. The abstract is a summary of the main components of the research: its theory, methods, key findings, and importance. There is typically a rather tight word limit for the abstract imposed by the publication outlet. The task for the researcher, then, is to distill the research down to its most important parts.

Figure 12.2 Some quantitative research will be communicated in books or book chapters
Source: Morten Oddvik, www.flickr.com/photos/mortsan/4570359817

Here are two abstracts from our research to show as examples:

> This content analysis updates the literature regarding gender and the depiction of housework in television commercials by exploring not just the distribution of chores but also the success or failure of chore performance. A sample of 477 commercials featuring domestic chores that aired in a week of primetime television programming on all of the broadcast networks was analyzed. Among the key findings: Male characters' performance of chores was often humorously inept as measured by negative responses from others, lack of success, and unsatisfactory outcomes. These depictions have important implications for the learning of gender roles from television exposure.
>
> (From "Working hard or hardly working? Gender, humor, and the performance of domestic chores in television commercials" by Erica Scharrer, D. Daniel Kim, Ke-Ming Lin, & Zixu Liu, *Mass Communication & Society*, 2006)

> This paper uses survey methods (N = 385) to examine the underlying processes through which U.S. fans create meaningful relationships with Japanese media characters.

> Specifically, this study tests an integrated model linking character perceptions, wishful identification, and parasocial relationships in the context of fans of shōjo, a heroine-centric genre of Japanese anime. Results suggest that liking a heroine's pro-social traits leads to greater wishful identification and more intense parasocial relationships with the heroine. Theoretical implications for reception studies and intercultural entertainment, and practical implications for role-modeling effects of positive female characters on young audiences are discussed.
>
> (From "Japanese anime heroines as role models for U.S. youth: wishful identification, parasocial interaction, and intercultural entertainment effects" by Srividya Ramasubramanian and Sarah Kornfield, *Journal of International and Intercultural Communication*, 2012)

Following the abstract in a published piece, the author writes an introduction. The **introduction** establishes the topic of the paper, often framed as an open question or a statement of the problem. An introduction should capture the interest of the reader, and therefore it should establish not just what the research is about but why the reader should care about the research. This latter issue—why the reader should care about the research—is associated with its **social significance**, its relevance to and importance for the world around us. Clearly, when conducting research with an interest in social justice, writing convincingly about why the reader should care about the study is a critically important step.

As discussed in Chapter 1, the next element of a research paper is the literature review. The purpose of the **literature review** is to establish context for the study at hand by discussing relevant prior studies and concepts to establish how the new study fits in with what is already known. Research studies are similar to interlocking puzzle pieces, and in order to successfully place a new piece of the puzzle into a place where it fits well, you must know the layout of the closest surrounding pieces.

One common strategy is to demonstrate through the writing of the literature review that the current state of knowledge on the topic is somewhat limited. Therefore, the study that you have undertaken in the paper is argued to fill an important gap, settle an unresolved matter, establish a new context in which to test an existing theory, or otherwise address the limits of the knowledge to date. Literature reviews are often somewhat critical in nature, therefore, identifying both strengths and limitations of prior studies as well as strengths and limitations of the body of knowledge stemming from those prior studies as a whole.

Literature reviews are typically organized by subsections, so that the existing research is divided up into logical, coherent subtopics that build together to establish the foundation for the study at hand. This helps communicate to the reader how various sub-topics and sub-themes can be brought together to establish the foundation for the study at hand. It is typical to end with the subsection that is most relevant to the study, as you can see reflected in the examples of labels used for subsections of the literature review that we have provided here from our sample studies.

From the "Working hard or hardly working? Gender, humor, and the performance of domestic chores in television commercials" study:

> *Social Statistics Regarding Gender Roles*
> *Gender Roles in Television Commercials*
> *Linking Humor and Gender Role Activity in Commercial Content*

From the "Japanese anime heroines as role models for U.S. youth: wishful identification, parasocial interaction, and intercultural entertainment effects" study, in which two levels of subheadings are used:

Japanese Animation and U.S. Audiences
An Integrated Model of Wishful Identification and Parasocial Interaction

Wishful Identification
Parasocial Interaction
The Hypothesized Model

The next step in the sequence of elements of a quantitative research paper is the **statement of the hypotheses and research questions** (Figure 12.3). As you learned in Chapter 8, the hypotheses and, if applicable, the research questions come after the literature review because they should stem logically from the literature review. In other words, the predictions made

Figure 12.3 Parts of a research paper

Source: BohatALA, https://bohatala.com/parts-of-a-research-paper/

in the hypotheses should be based on the patterns found in prior studies or prior tests of the theory. Those patterns will have been communicated in the literature review.

Following the statement of the hypotheses and research questions, the **methods section** appears next. Clarity and comprehensiveness are key in this section so that the reader can know exactly how (and why) each step of the research process was carried out. The concepts at play in the literature review should be the same or very similar to the concepts at play in the methods section.

Some components of methods sections are common to quantitative research papers regardless of the specific method (experiment, survey, content analysis, etc.) employed. Methods sections for quantitative research papers typically have a subsection about the **sample, participants, and/or the sampling process**. Many of the aspects of Chapter 4 in this book will be reflected in the write-up of this subsection. For a content analysis, for instance, you would describe how and why you chose the particular texts that comprise the sample and how many texts you wound up with for the analysis (sample size). For both experiments and surveys, the sample will consist of the research participants, and in this subsection of the methods section you would explain how and why you invited particular people to participate as well as how many agreed and did, indeed, participate (sample size, recruitment, and response rate).

Methods sections for quantitative research papers also typically have a subsection on **measures**, in which you explain how concepts were operationalized (recalling the lessons of Chapter 3). For content analyses, this is where you would explain the coding scheme in detail. As you may recall, the coding scheme outlines the conceptualization and operationalization of the variables measured in the study. For surveys, the measures are the items used on the questionnaire that respondents filled out, and in this subsection you would explain from where those measures were derived (Were they used in prior research? By whom? Or did you create them for your own purposes? What principles guided their creation?) and why they are reliable and valid measures of the underlying concepts at play in the research. For experiments, as you learned in Chapter 6, the measures may take the form of self-report items on a questionnaire (similar to surveys) or may be observations of some kind. In either case, the measures must be fully explained in this subsection of methods, and it should be clear why the use of those measures, in particular, is an effective way to measure the concepts being tested in the research.

Research that involves human subjects will also have a statement in the methods section about the protocol used to establish research procedures associated with the **protection of human subjects**. For instance, most academic journals require that researchers state whether the research has undergone review by the Institutional Review Board and has been approved, sometimes even noting the date on which the approval was received. Somewhat relatedly, also for any research involving human subjects, the methods section should contain information about what the participants were told about the study when they decided whether to participate or not.

Methods sections for quantitative research studies also might have a **data analysis plan**, sometimes (but not always) labeled as such using a subheading. In this section, the plan for what statistical procedures and tests will be conducted to test the hypotheses and explore the research questions are communicated to the reader. Sometimes the software programs (like SPSS) used to perform those statistical procedures and tests will be noted here, as well.

Other components of methods sections are likely to be unique to the specific research method employed.

- For content analyses, there should be a subsection on **intercoder reliability** that reports how and for how long coders were trained to do the coding, the number of coders, any

salient aspects of the coders themselves (like whether they were also authors on the study or, perhaps some aspect of their identities such as their gender), how intercoder reliability was calculated (from what portion of the sample and how that portion of the sample was chosen, what formula was used), and the evidence for the degree to which intercoder reliability was established for each variable.

- For experiments, there should be a subsection on the **procedures** used in the study, including what stimulus or stimuli were used (and why); the order in which research participants were asked to do particular tasks (like fill out a pre-test questionnaire or be given the stimulus followed by the administration of a questionnaire); the results of a manipulation check, if relevant (in which participants are asked, after the fact, whether they did find the stimulus to have the properties the researcher assumed it had); and whether and how participants were debriefed (meaning that they were told the purpose of the research, after the fact).

The next section in the typical organization of a quantitative research paper is the **results section**, and this is where the statistical findings are communicated. It is common practice to begin this section with descriptive statistics—often labeled as such—to detail the means and standard deviations or the frequencies associated with each main variable. Any data reduction or transformation is typically outlined next (and, again, is often organized under a subheading), followed by the main statistical analyses. When reporting the main statistical analyses, it is important to include all of the components for each type of statistical test that we outlined in Chapter 10. This typically entails the result for the test statistic itself, the degrees of freedom associated with it (when relevant), and—importantly—the associated probability level. It is also vitally important to link results back to hypotheses and research questions, making it abundantly clear in the write-up whether the findings allow hypotheses to be supported or rejected or what specific answers they provide to each of the research questions posed.

When writing the results section of a research paper, you will most likely also create tables and/or figures to visually display key findings. **Tables** are a way to place the most important numerical results from statistical tests in a well labeled and easy-to-read display using rows and columns. **Figures** do not just contain numbers (as tables do) but rather illustrate findings through graphs, maps, charts, or other images. Tables and figures are used to supplement the text-based write-up of results. Therefore, in the place in the results section where you are discussing particular findings that also appear in a table or figure, you would refer the reader to the table or figure in question, typically through the use of the phrase "see Table 1" or "see Figure 1." Indeed, the tables appearing in the paper are numbered sequentially (from Table 1 to Table 3, for instance, if you have three tables) and should be discussed in that same order in the paper. (In other words, in results, do not start with a discussion of Table 3. Start with Table 1.) Figures are treated in exactly the same manner and are typically numbered separately from tables. Although tables and figures are discussed in the text using phrases like "see Table 1," it is standard practice for the tables and figures themselves to appear at the end of the paper, after the references, with each table or figure on its own page.

In fact, there are standard formats for reporting the relevant parts of the statistical tests that we introduced in Chapter 9 and for crafting tables and figures. Many journals that publish quantitative Communication research require that APA style guidelines are followed, and therefore that is a good resource to consult. Examining the format and contents of tables and figures in prior published work can also be a big help in guiding your own creation of these key features of a quantitative study.

The **discussion section** is the last major section of a quantitative research paper. In this section, you step back from the specificity of the quantitative results and interpret the main

patterns and findings using more of a "big picture" lens. You explain in words rather than with numbers and statistical tests what the most important results are, what they mean, and why the reader should care about them. A discussion section typically has the following components:

- *Summary of major results*: Typically, discussion sections begin with a brief account of the most important findings from the study. Once again, when you write about the findings this time, you do so without the specific numbers associated with those findings, focusing, instead, on the overall patterns gleaned from the specific numbers.
- *Interpretation of major results*: Woven together with a statement of the most important findings is interpretation of those findings, answering the question: What does it all mean? In interpreting findings, oftentimes you will cautiously speculate about the implications of the results, using phrases like "This appears to suggest that" or "This may have occurred because." In fact, if hypotheses were not supported by the data, it is customary to speculate about why that may have been the case in the discussion section. If hypotheses were supported, speculation may also be called for, as you explain what such support means for the extension of theory and research in the topic area.
- *Connection back to literature review and theory:* Particular former studies from the literature review should be referenced in the discussion section once again, but this time in direct connection with the *findings* of the current study. If the current findings align with findings from past research, you discuss that here. If the current findings conflict with former findings, you discuss that here, as well, and you speculate as to why that might be the case. Sometimes, a small number of entirely new former studies from the body of literature (i.e., those that were not in the literature review) are brought in to this part of a discussion section, as well, if they turn out to be relevant in light of the findings.
- *Discussion of real-world implications*: Given that social justice research, in particular, strives to be action-oriented, it is also important to establish what the findings mean for the work of organizations, the formation of policies, the practices of companies or communication industries, and other real-world considerations.
- *Identification of limitations of the study and call for future research*: Every study is limited in some way, and it is always best to be straightforward and self-aware about those limitations, discussing them in this component of the discussion section. Often, the limitations are a good way to transition into calling for future research. In calls for future research, the researcher suggests what subsequent studies could or should do in order to follow up on the current study, addressing its shortcomings or extending knowledge further in light of what was found.
- *Drawing conclusions: Final statement of strengths/contributions of the study at hand, and final statement of its importance*: In addition to limitations, every study also has its strengths, and it is good practice to end the write-up of your paper with a reminder to the reader of the contributions that the study has made (despite its flaws). It is also a good idea to emphasize once again why the topic is worth pursuing in ongoing research. A study ends with conclusions of this sort, which can be thought of as key take-away messages.

After the discussion section, the **references** appear, beginning on a new page. The references are organized according to an accepted style guide such as APA, Chicago, or Modern Language Association (MLA). As we mentioned, most quantitative research in Communication uses APA style, and that is the style used in this book, as well. It is important to make sure you are using the most recent version of the style guide and applying it consistently, not just to the reference section but to all components of the written research paper.

Peer Review

The chief reason why published research is generally regarded as more trustworthy than unpublished research is because published research has undergone **peer review** (Nicholas et al., 2015). Peer review is the process by which a research paper is assigned (by the editor of the academic journal, for instance) to be carefully assessed by two, three, or more experts in the field. The peer review process is typically a double-blind review: The identities of both the authors and the expert reviewers are unknown to the other. The expert reviewers provide detailed feedback on the strengths and limitations of the research and on the paper itself and decide whether to recommend that it be:

- Accepted for publication
- Revised and resubmitted for continued evaluation
- Rejected

Alas, the third possibility—rejection—is the most common response. Academic journals receive many more submitted research papers than they are able to publish. In fact, some of the most selective journals in the Communication field may have acceptance rates of around 10%. Part of surviving and thriving as a researcher involves being able to deal with rejection and cultivating the resilience that it takes to keep trying to get one's work published even against such daunting odds.

The second possibility, receiving a "revise and resubmit" invitation to make changes to the paper in light of the detailed feedback received and submit it for continued consideration for publication, does not guarantee that the paper will be accepted. The author may receive a set

Figure 12.4 Pro-science protest

Source: Takver from Australia, www.flickr.com/photos/takver/33824095770/

of detailed reviews, make revisions and resubmit, and still possibly have the paper be rejected or receive *another* set of reviews to respond to, as well. Even after two (or more!) rounds of revision, it is possible (although, thankfully, relatively unlikely) that the piece will be rejected. Yet, a revise and resubmit decision allows for continued opportunity for improvement to the paper which, ideally, gets the author closer to a favorable publication decision.

Despite the merits of peer review, there are certainly drawbacks, as well. Reviews are not always helpful. Sometimes they are off base or they contain erroneous assumptions. Sometimes they are unduly harsh. Sometimes they are too vague to be of much value in improving the paper. Sometimes, reviews received from two or more anonymous reviewers conflict with each other. Sometimes reviewers display bias against the research topic, the research method, the theory, or some other aspect of the paper. And many times the peer review process takes quite a while to unfold, and the author is anxious for an outcome. This time-consuming process can be especially frustrating for researchers working with community partners or on timely real-world issues, as is often the case with researchers committed to social justice.

Limitations of the Publication Landscape

It is important to know that some librarians, researchers, and scholars are pushing back against the structures of the academic publishing industry. Currently, a small number of publishers own a majority of the journals in which academic research is published. Elsevier, the largest publisher of academic journals, for instance, is responsible for the publication of some 3,000 journals, accounting for about 18% of all research published across the world (Resnick & Belluz, 2019). A 2014 report published by the National Communication Association showed that the majority (61%) of Communication journals are published by either Sage or Taylor & Francis, also fairly large publication houses. NCA, ICA (again, International Communication Association), and AEJMC (Association for Education in Journalism and Mass Communication) sponsor their own journals, as well, sometimes in partnership with a publishing house.

Published articles often appear behind a **paywall**, which means that in order for most users—including members of the general public—to access the articles, they must pay a fee. This is a limitation especially relevant to social justice research, since unequal access to resources is a fundamental justice-related principle. University libraries also pay potentially quite large **subscription fees** to publishers to allow their users to access many published articles without the users themselves having to pay. In just a single example, for instance, the University of Virginia paid Elsevier $1.83 million for its journals in 2018 (Resnick & Belluz, 2019). As of February, 2020, the University of California system has dropped its subscription to Elsevier journals, a subscription that brought a price tag of about $11 million annually (Resnick & Belluz, 2019).

It may surprise you to know that authors do not receive any money for having their research published in academic journals, even though it is their work being published. And, indeed, the peer review process discussed earlier is also a service that academics typically provide for free. Why, then, would an academic researcher continue pursuing the publication of their research in academic journals owned by the major publishing companies? Mostly because the major publishing companies own many of the more prestigious journals, and many academics operate within university structures and cultures that have incentives associated with having their work appear in these outlets.

Given this context, it is perhaps unsurprising to discover that there has been a growing movement to chip away at the dominance of the major publishing companies. The open science movement has paved the way for the growth of **open access** journals, those freely available to users. There is a wide array of open access journals, and the variation in their

approaches to publishing can be difficult for researchers to negotiate. Although many do use the peer review process that is largely considered the gold standard in publishing, some do not, and therefore there may be a concern that research appearing in the latter is not fully vetted. Some open access journals are published online only, sidestepping the costs for publishers associated with print-based publishing. In the early days of online journal publishing, there was widespread bias against such journals, with many assuming online journals were not as reputable as print-based journals. Some of that bias may linger today. Still other open access journals offer a hybrid model, in which authors can pay a fee (covered either by the authors themselves or by their institution) to have their work be published as open access.

Figure 12.5 Cartoon showing the 'publish or perish' culture of academia

Source: CartoonStock.com

Researchers tend to be wary of paying for any aspect of the publication process, partly because they fear doing so will erode the rigors of peer review (Nicholas et al., 2015). For your information, the International Association of Media and Communication Research (IAMCR) keeps a list of open-access journals in the field on its website, as well: https://iamcr.org/open-access-journals.

Standard publication agreements used by academic journals usually do not allow the final, published version of articles to be shared freely but often do permit a less formal pre-publication version to be posted online to allow wide and free access. Thus, some researchers are also making prepublication versions of their academic papers available for users to access for free, as well. In fact, online platforms such as ResearchGate or Academia.edu are sites on which research can be shared, as long as doing so does not violate publication agreements. University libraries may often host prepublication versions of researchers' studies on their websites, too.

Finally, there are concerns, as well, about the culture created by a system that pushes researchers to be published and/or to be published in particular journals in order to advance in academia. One possibility is that such a culture creates the temptation for researchers to fudge their data, make up their findings, or otherwise engage in **unethical research practices**. Reliance on the current system of considering publication in highly selective journals as the most important way to gain status in academia has been implicated in a number of high profile cases of **data fabrication** or **data falsification**, such as changing results to make them appear statistically significant or supportive of hypotheses (called **p-hacking**), or otherwise trying to game the publication system. We discussed the possibility of pre-registering hypotheses in Chapter 8, which is one safeguard against questionable research practices such as these.

Writing for the Wider Public

Writing for publication can be a necessary condition as well as a rewarding experience for many researchers. We would argue, however, that it is not sufficient for those striving to have their work matter for the greater good. Given how difficult it is to get research published, it is tempting to have publication signal the end of a research project. Yet especially if a researcher has already secured a stable position or otherwise has the freedom to think outside of the "publish or perish" system, a great deal of good can be gained through wider efforts of research dissemination, community dialogue, and social action. We agree with health systems researchers Gavin Bennett and Nasreen Jessani (2011) who state, "Successful publication on the part of research is not 'job finished.' It is 'job started.' . . . to drive the research findings

Figure 12.6 Some researchers use social media to engage with a wider public

Source: MKH Marketing, https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Social_media_class.jpg

to wherever they need to be to provide real and maximum benefit to policy, to practice, to people" (p. xxii).

A very important goal of social justice research is to break the boundaries associated with "the ivory tower" of academia. Social justice research often has a goal of co-producing knowledge with community partners and/or bringing knowledge back to the people. Knowledge is not just produced for the purpose of the researcher's advancement and filed away; it is put to use. There are many tools available to meet these goals. In this chapter, we will focus on a short selection.

Blogs are usually informal and conversational in tone, making them a good way to distill, describe, and discuss research evidence and commentary in an easy-to-follow and engaging manner. Blog posts by academics are often evidence-based, which may set them apart from purely opinion-based writing. Most blogs are interactive, meaning that readers of the blog can post comments and the researcher can comment on those comments, allowing for dialogue. This is important in that it reminds us that, from a social justice perspective, "writing for the public" should ideally be a conversation rather than a one-way process in which the researcher simply imparts wisdom or research-based insights.

Blog posts should have attention-getting titles, should be relatively short (often 800 words or so), may feature visuals, and—although they can vary in tone from more to less formal—should generally avoid the sort of dense and impersonal writing that marks a great deal of academic work (Mollett, Brumley, Gilson, & Williams, 2017). Blogs that have attracted many users may also capture the attention of journalists at more traditional news organizations, opening up the opportunity to reach public audiences even further. The researcher posting the blog can tag the journal in which the article was published or can share the post on social

Figure 12.7 Writing for the public

Source: https://pxhere.com/en/photo/710512

media. Platforms available to create blogs include WordPress, Blogger, and Medium. On the downside, blogs do take effort to create as well as sustain.

Here is a short list of blogs and/or organizations that host blogs that may be relevant to those studying Journalism, Communication, and Media Studies:

- PRESSTHINK by New York University Professor Jay Rosen
- Journalism Research News
- Online Journalism Blog
- Poynter Institute
- Knight Center for Journalism in America at University of Texas Austin
- How Fantasy Becomes Reality by Fielding Graduate University Professor Karen Dill-Shackleford
- Organizational Communication Research Center blog from the Institute for Public Relations
- The Oxford Internet Institute
- The Centers for Disease Control's blog for Health Communication
- The Director's blog of the Health Communication Center at the University of Texas at Austin's Moody College of Communication
- The Campaign Workshop Blog
- The Project on Ethics in Political Communication
- The Center for Political Studies, a joint project from the University of Michigan and the Institute for Social Research
- The London School of Economics, Media@LSE
- Media Shift
- GLAAD
- Name It. Change It., from She Should Run and the Women's Media Center
- Adbusters
- Muslimah Media Watch
- Speak Schmeak

And there are many blogs about academic writing and or thriving in academia, including the Academic Writing Blog (through the Academic Writing Success organization), The Research Whisperer, From PhD to Life, PLOS ECR (for early career researcher), and Get a Life PhD. *Inside Higher Ed* and the *Chronicle of Higher Education* also both feature blogs.

Social media, including Twitter, Facebook, YouTube, LinkedIn, and Instagram, are also used by researchers to inform audiences of new research and/or to comment on issues and topics of the day. Incorporating photos or videos can help such posts gain attention and can illustrate key points or themes. Hashtags can be used in some platforms to identify key words in the content of the post, which can help make those posts more prominent in searches. A researcher can participate in social media communities associated with the professional organizations in Communication such as NCA and ICA.

Websites are also useful tools for researchers to post descriptions of their area(s) of expertise, information on what they are currently working on, and recently published research (perhaps in pre-print form). Linking to journals, conference websites, or other web locations of interest is also a good idea. Blog posts can be uploaded here, as well, and those might recount recent invited lectures, participation in on-campus events, or other activities. Compared to blogs, websites tend to be updated less regularly (although they certainly should still be updated), to adopt a one-way dissemination of information (as opposed to something more interactive), and often are more formal (Mollett et al., 2017). Websites also tend to cost more

than blogs to create and maintain. Many universities allow faculty members to host their personal websites on the official pages associated with the university or department. Please see www.drsrivi.com for Prof. Ramasubramanian's website.

Despite the advantages of using these internet-based tools, there are drawbacks, as well. The main limitations researchers identified with using social media, in particular, to disseminate research findings were that (1) such a practice is not typically valued within the institutional culture of higher education, (2) there is no equivalent to peer review that can act as a means of determining the quality of what is being disseminated, and (3) some see more potential threats to their reputations from the use of social media than benefits (Nicholas et al., 2015).

Indeed, researchers may be wary of feeling obligated to engage with broad publics on top of all of the other expectations and requirements associated with their careers (Mollett et al., 2017). They wisely ask whether such efforts are valued in their employer's reward structures. In other words, if a researcher is trying to get tenure and/or be recognized for meritorious performance, will a blog post count toward their case? How much will it count relative to other (perhaps more traditional) scholarly forms? These are important questions to ask, and the answers to these questions are likely to vary widely across different contexts or at different stages of a researcher's career.

It is also important to acknowledge that some academics have been penalized by their institutions for comments they have made on social media. Still others have received racist, sexist, or other hateful comments on social media platforms (Carrigan, 2016). Finally, some academics are also uncomfortable with the goal of public engagement because they associate such efforts with self-promotion. In fact, some academics judge those who engage broadly with the public as somehow inferior or less "pure" in motives. On the other hand, William Tyson (2010), author of *Pitch Perfect: Communicating with Traditional and Social Media for Scholars, Researchers, and Academic Leaders*, suggests that researchers think of public engagement as less about promoting themselves and more about bringing to light the ideas and issues at stake in the research. With such a view, engaging with the public is not "shameless self-promotion" but rather is about the collective good.

Scholar Spotlight: Dr. Karen Dill-Shackleford

Karen Dill-Shackleford, Professor of Media Psychology, Fielding Graduate University, studies the potential for media storytelling to immerse audiences and otherwise shape their daily lives. The author of the books, *How Fantasy Becomes Reality* and *Finding Truth in Fiction* (with Cynthia Vinney), the editor of the *Oxford Handbook of Media Psychology* and *Real Characters*, and the author of many journal articles, Dr. Dill-Shackleford is also committed to public engagement as well as bringing research to bear in policy making. She gave expert testimony before Congress on the topic of media violence in 2000 and on misogyny in rap music lyrics in 2007. She currently writes two blogs, one for *Psychology Today* and one for Oxford University Press as part of Academic Insights on the Thinking World. She has also written for health-care practitioners in the journal, *Pediatrics*, and has recorded a TEDx Talk called *Sherlock Holmes and Harry Potter are Real* (www.tinyurl.com/SherlockHarryPotter).

Q: In your career, you often find ways to bring ideas and evidence from research to either policy making contexts or to forms (like blogs or a TEDx Talk) where you have the potential to reach a general audience. Why have you prioritized this sort of work?

Figure 12.8 Scholar Spotlight: Dr. Karen Dill-Shackleford

Dr. Dill-Shackleford: That's a great question because academics are often rewarded for publishing in scientific journals more than in forums that reach a more general audience. I have indeed prioritized communicating science in the public interest even knowing that it takes time away from doing and publishing research. I do it because I think the research that my colleagues and I do can actually make a difference in people's everyday lives. I know that I reach a wider and more diverse audience through these types of forums. When I write a blog entry or give a talk for a general audience, I'm thinking about that one person who might learn something that's useful to them that they might not have heard otherwise. Is reaching that one person important? Absolutely; it's everything.

Q: In your experience providing expert testimony to Congress, have you found that quantitative research evidence, in particular, has an important role to play? Why? How have policy makers responded to this sort of evidence?

Dr. Dill-Shackleford: Scientists strive to answer the burning questions in their field with hard evidence. We take an educated guess, but then we gather data to find out if there's really reason to believe what we guessed to be true. I've found that there's a general acceptance of the idea that evidence is important. Experimental evidence is valued because it's the main method we have of finding out what causes something to happen. I do think this kind of quantitative data is highly valued even outside of science. I have been surprised to learn that non-scientists do not necessarily interpret quantitative results in the same way that scientists do. For example, the first time I testified before Congress, the American Psychological Association cautioned me that members of Congress do not necessarily

understand the data the same way that scientists do. In that case, I had to figure out how to explain it so that non-scientists would understand what was most important.

Q: What are the opportunities and drawbacks for researchers who want to get their research and the research of others into the hands of change makers, such as practitioners, policy makers, or non-profits?

Dr. Dill-Shackleford: One of the challenges is what I explained earlier: that you must realize that your work needs to be translated for the audience you are speaking to. You also work to make that message engaging. This need for science to be communicated in a clear and engaging way is why the Alan Alda Center for Communicating Science was started at Stony Brook University (see aldacenter.org). Though communicating science in the public interest can be a challenge, it also has the potential to be some of the most rewarding work you can do. For example, knowing my work would be used by organizations like the Kettering Foundation, the U.S. Congress, or by pediatricians (via the journal *Pediatrics*) gives me a sense that I am sharing good ideas from science with the people who can make practical use of them.

Although we do not have the space to discuss more visual rather than text-based communicative forms, it is also important to acknowledge that documentary film, theater, digital storytelling, photo exhibitions, and other visual communicative forms are frequently used in social justice research contexts, as well. As a follow up to Chapter 11, too, we should point out that sharing research findings with community participants, community partners, and other stakeholders through such means as offering town hall sessions or making guest visits to organization's meetings are best practices.

Engaging with the News Media

Researchers can be among the expert sources called upon to comment on current topics and events in the news. Occasionally, too, a researcher's own study may be deemed newsworthy, and journalists may seek out a researcher to discuss that study. Researchers appearing in the news have an excellent opportunity to reach a wide public audience. They can provide interpretations and discussion of timely and socially significant issues and show the public how research (theirs or others') informs those issues.

Tyson (2010) has found that journalists often conduct Google searches for scholars who might serve as **news sources**, in addition to reading the content of other news and information outlets, and asking other experts for recommendations. When they reach out to scholars, journalists are looking for someone (1) who will respond promptly, (2) who is clear about what they have to say, and (3) who can speak specifically on the matter the journalist is writing about. Longer-term relationships form, as well, when researchers become known to journalists as reliable sources of good insights.

Researchers being interviewed as news sources should follow a number of guidelines. They should refrain from providing lengthy, drawn out answers to journalists' questions and, instead, should get right to the point. They should be as engaging as possible. They should do their best to answer the question at hand but be sure, also, to use journalists' questions as opportunities to focus on what they themselves want to say. In other words, they can direct the conversation with the journalist to a point they want to make, a research pattern they want to emphasize, or a recommendation that they think is justified based on the evidence. They

should avoid jargon, as well as avoid focusing on too many of the more technical details related to research. They should always be truthful, even if that means answering some journalists' questions with "I don't know," or turning down an interview request if they do not feel confident on the subject.

To assist with the translation of Communication research into more easily digestible, "bite size" summaries, researchers at Radboud University in the Netherlands developed a website called **Bitescience** (www.bitescience.com). Journalists (and others) can read succinct, clearly written summaries of research findings on a number of topics on the site. The Bitescience mission statement reads:

> Communication and media researchers are continuously gathering valuable insights on how individuals, organizations, and societies use, create and are affected by communication through traditional and new media. These insights are highly relevant for communication professionals, policy makers, and the general public. Unfortunately, academic research is often not accessible to nonacademic audiences. Scientific reports are not only difficult to find and get access to; they are often too complex and, let's face it: a bore to read. Therefore, the mission of Bitescience is to provide access to the vast body of scientific expertise about communication and media and to present it in an attractive manner.

Another option for researchers to reach the general public is to write **opinion pieces** or **editorials** (also known as op-eds) for news outlets. Once again, to increase the odds that an editorial will be chosen for publication, the researcher should write it in a clear, engaging style and should connect research evidence with current controversies, issues, topics, or events. For any type of news coverage, then, often researchers should think about a *hook*, a way to connect the research to a current event, issue, topic, controversy, or concern.

The Conversation is an online publication that features "crossover" writing by academics providing evidence-based commentary on current and ongoing issues to a broad audience. Founded in Australia in 2011 and now appearing in eight countries, *The Conversation*'s tagline "Academic rigor. Journalistic flair." communicates well the approach taken by the editorial staff. Academics pitch their ideas for such writing via *The Conversation's* website, https://theconversation.com/us. After a successful pitch, the academic writer works with an editor to ensure the article is engaging and readable. Articles appearing in *The Conversation* can also be picked up by other news outlets, further expanding reach. The first author of this book published an essay, titled *Why are sitcom fathers still so inept?*, just before Father's Day in 2020, for instance, and it garnered over 90,000 readers on *The Conversation* site itself or in one of the outlets in which it was republished (Figure 12.9).

Despite the potential benefits of such opportunities to reach a broad public, there are challenges, as well. One much-discussed issue is the difficulty of reconciling the built-in uncertainty of scientific research with the more unambiguous answers that journalists may seek. In the book, *The Public Professor: How to Use Your Research to Change the World*, economist M.V. Lee Badgett (2015) cautions researchers communicating to the general public to be aware of the tendency to add **caveats** to just about everything they say. Badgett writes, "The need to hedge comes naturally to us because of our professional scientific process and standards: We can never know anything with absolute certainty. . . . In the larger world, though, I think it's safe to say that the caveats that academics use drive the media and most other nonacademics crazy" (p. 121). Badgett argues for a position in the middle ground, keeping only the most important caveats in place as we speak about research to journalists and/or the wider public and being bold enough to draw conclusions while still acknowledging complexities.

Why are sitcom dads still so inept?
From Homer Simpson to Phil Dunphy, sitcom dads have long been known for being bumbling and inept.
But it wasn't always this way. Back in the 1950s and 1960s, sitcom dads tended to be serious, calm and wise, if a bit detached. In a shift that media scholars have documented, only in later decades did fathers start to become foolish and incompetent.
Author
Erica Scharrer
Professor of Communication, University of Massachusetts Amherst
Disclosure statement

Figure 12.9 An essay published in "The Conversation"
Source: Stephen Warren

Some studies have found that journalists do tend to present research evidence in relatively unambiguous terms, leaving out the disclaimers that scientists often use to discuss research (Brechman, Lee, & Cappella, 2009; Jensen, 2008). Journalists may do so because they want to ensure that their news stories are easily understood by members of the public (Ebeling, 2008). The onus falls on the researcher, then, to explain even the uncertainties and the complexities of the research evidence clearly and plainly. One way to ensure that one is doing so is to avoid the use of **jargon** or other language that is difficult to understand. Academics may be so accustomed to using certain highly specialized words and phrases that they may lose sight of the possibility that non-specialists have no idea what those words and phrases mean.

Researchers may fear that they will be **misquoted**, quoted out of context, or otherwise not represented well in the final news story. Somewhat relatedly, academics or other researchers may be surprised to find that a rather lengthy conversation they had with a journalist has been reduced down to only one or two short quotes. Sometimes, in fact, journalists interview a researcher as a source and then decide not to use the information gleaned from that interview at all. These possibilities are, for the most part, out of the control of the researcher. All the researcher can do is try to be a good source—responding clearly and accurately with engaging answers to journalists' questions—and then let the chips fall as they may.

One very practical potential difference between journalists and researchers is their **sense of time and their response to deadlines**. Often, when journalists reach out to researchers

as potential news sources, those journalists need a reply within a short timeframe, since they are working on deadlines to produce their content. Researchers, on the other hand, may find those inquiries from journalists occur at inopportune times, may not be as inclined to respond immediately, and may be more used to a slower deadline schedule.

Finally, in terms of advice to researchers for engaging with journalists and attempting to get news coverage of their new research findings, you should know that most colleges and universities have news office staff members who can help. If you are affiliated with a college or university, get to know the staff at the news office, share your most important new findings with them, think about ways that your research fits with events and topics in the news, and reach out to news office staff then. They can help you write a press release, or better yet, write one for you. A **press release** is a succinct, attention-getting written announcement of something newsworthy that is sent to journalists to inform them. There are also resources available online to assist a researcher in writing a press release. Staff can also help you prepare for an interview, contact news outlets, and perhaps even put you in touch with journalists that they know.

Inside Higher Ed reporter Robert Kelchen (2018) issued these five media engagement tips for academics that serve as good take-aways from this section:

1. "Work on being comfortable speaking to broad audiences.
2. Make yourself known to members of the media.
3. Be available on fairly short notice whenever possible.
4. Think about other potential sources who can also talk about the topic.
5. Realize that not every interview ends up with your name in lights."

Writing to Shape Policy

Public policy is an important arena in which knowledge garnered through Communication scholarship can be put to good use. Broadly defined as the development of laws, rules, recommendations, and courses of action, as well as the principles that underlie them, policies shape daily life and society as a whole. By doing research to shape or to respond to policy, researchers committed to social justice and/or public action can make a direct impact. Such efforts are also another means of making sure that research and knowledge are public resources, benefiting the people.

Governmental and legislative processes are major aspects of public policy formation, and, indeed, most of our discussion in this chapter will be about researchers engaging with that type of policy. The Federal Communications Commission, the Federal Trade Commission, the Surgeon General's Office, and Congress are examples of U.S. governmental bodies whose work is or has been relevant to Communication research. As we will show in this chapter, Communication researchers (1) have been called upon to help shape the work of these bodies while members of those bodies are in the process of making their decisions and (2) have studied the impact of the policies formed by these bodies after that they have been implemented.

Lavis and colleagues (Lavis, Lomas, Hamid, & Sewankambo, 2006) have identified a useful way of thinking about the possibilities available to researchers to participate in policy processes:

Push: The researcher pushes out information pertaining to their research to policy makers or other research users, presenting it in forms those policy makers/users can readily access.

Pull: The policy maker/research user seeks out the researcher, asking for evidence or information needed for particular initiatives.

Exchange: Policy makers/research users and researchers form reciprocal, mutually beneficial relationships.

Integrated: Partnerships between researchers and policy makers/research users are supported through wider systems, such as institutions that broker and help sustain such partnerships.

An example of an integrated approach is **Research4Impact**, an initiative co-founded by Cornell University Professor of Government Adam Seth Levine, Columbia University Political Science Professor Donald P. Green, and University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign Political Science and Statistics Professor Jake Bowers. Research4Impact engages in "matchmaking" across social scientists, policy makers, and practitioners, helping establish and maintain relationships between and among individuals across the divides of theory and practice and supporting such partnerships through workshops and information sharing. Their vision, "A world in which people with diverse forms of expertise seamlessly learn from each other, particularly those working to understand and solve complex social problems" (www.r4impact.org/welcome), expresses well why such partnerships can have an impact.

Building relationships between researchers and policy makers has been identified as the single most important predictor of the ability of research to inform action through policy (Innvaer, Vist, Trommald, & Oxman, 2002). The degree to which research is timely and relevant is also a vitally important predictor of success in making research meaningful in the realm of policy. **Relevance** pertains to the alignment between the nature and topic of the research and the needs and priorities of the policy maker. **Timeliness** often calls for a "rapid response" on behalf of the researcher, understanding that policy makers have their own timelines and perhaps more immediate needs. Having the right evidence at the right time for policy making may seem difficult to achieve, but if ongoing relationships with policy makers are formed, researchers' understanding of these moments will be facilitated.

Forms and Guidelines for Policy-Related Writing

Writing for the policy making process can take a number of forms. **One pagers** are ideal for busy policy makers, as they establish the issue clearly and succinctly and list a small number of key take-away messages associated with the issue. **Executive summaries** (typically around three pages) provide more detail and discussion of the issue, using brief summaries and descriptions of research evidence to show why action is needed and/or why we might expect a particular action to have a particular outcome. **Full papers** or **reports** (usually around 20 to 25 pages in length) are the most detailed, establishing the issue in a fuller and more contextualized manner and showing extensive, highly descriptive evidence in favor of action. Some of these formats are also known as **policy briefs**, and the Research in Action component of this chapter contains some examples of these forms.

Researchers can weigh in on a specific piece of proposed legislation or a specific issue or topic by providing **expert testimony** to legislators, either in writing, in person, or both. **Amicus briefs** (or *amicus curiae*, translated as "friend of the court") are written recommendations or arguments submitted to a court in the process of deciding a case. In these briefs, research studies can be cited and discussed in the process of making an argument or a recommendation.

In any and all of these forms, a number of qualities of writing are important. Start and Hovland (2004) put forth the AIDA rule to guide such writing:

- Attract the **attention** of the intended target audience.
- Spur **interest** in the evidence being communicated.
- Spark the audience's **desire** to act on the issue.
- Propose a specific course of **action**.

Research in Action

In spring 2017, the first author of this book, Erica Scharrer, participated in the Fellowship Program of the Public Engagement Project at UMass Amherst. The Public Engagement Project helps faculty reach broader publics through writing policy briefs and networking with advocacy organizations and policy makers; using communications channels such as blogs, op-eds, or other forms; and practicing being a good expert news source in interactions with journalists, www.umass.edu/pep/fellowship-program.

Here is the one-pager that Prof. Scharrer brought with her for one-on-one discussions with legislators at the Massachusetts State House, followed by the expert testimony she submitted in association with a pending state bill. She teamed up with representatives of the organization Media Literacy Now for additional visits to the state legislators. Check out the advocacy work that Media Literacy Now does to work toward establishing media education in K-12 schools through policy formation, https://medialiteracynow.org/.

Supporting Media Literacy Education In Massachusetts Schools

Teens spend nearly nine hours per day on recreational media use. Younger children spend just under six.[1] Although there are many positives associated with media use, fake news, cyberbullying, commercialism, violence, and stereotypes all pose risks. **Media literacy,**

designed to teach students to access, analyze, evaluate, and create media in all its forms[2], provides skills for the 21st century.

I support two bills and would be happy to assist in their creation or implementation. Current pending legislation in Massachusetts:

Bill S278

- **Focuses on civics and news media literacy**
- **Calls for Department of Elementary and Secondary Education (DESE) to create curriculum piloted on a voluntary basis and assessed**
- **Has the goal of requiring news media literacy in all schools**

Bill 3556

- **Spans media literacy and digital citizenship more broadly**
- **Calls for DESE to establish an advisory committee and report to Committee on Education regarding best practices**
- **Asks each city/town/school to develop its own policies and practices for implementation and review them annually**

We know media literacy education works. According to research findings, students who participated in a media literacy curriculum in MA**:**

- **Are better able to identify problematic aspects of violent media depictions (such as violence being accompanied by rewards or being done by likeable characters)**[3] **and are more critical of violence in advertising.**[4]
- **Recognize and critique gender stereotypes in movies, TV programs, and video.**[5]
- **Understand how advertisers make unhealthy foods and smoking look appealing.**[6]
- **Write their own "Online Constitutions" for themselves and their classmates to follow to engage safely and civilly on social media platforms.**[7]

Other states are adopting broad media literacy education standards and practices:

- Washington has a law that calls for an advisory committee to meet with school personnel to develop and implement curricula on safe technology use, digital citizenship, and media literacy.
- California has pending legislation to create a model curriculum for grades 1–12 and integrate media literacy into social studies curricular frameworks. The Dept. of Ed. would make resources and training opportunities available for teachers.

For more information, contact:

Erica Scharrer, Professor, Department of Communication,
University of Massachusetts Amherst.

[1] Common Sense Media 2015; [2] Center for Media Literacy; [3] Scharrer, *Journal of Mass Media Ethics*; [4] Sekarasih Olson, Onut, Lanthorn, & Scharrer, *Journal of*

Advertising; [5] Walsh, Sekarasih, & Scharrer, *Journal of Children & Media;* [6] Bickham & Slaby, *Journal of Children & Media*; [7] Scharrer et al., *Media education for a digital generation*.

Testimony for House Bill 3556

Senator Chang-Diaz and Representative Peisch, thank you for allowing me to submit this written testimony today in support of House Bill 3556, *An Act relating to digital citizenship and media literacy in public schools*.

My name is Erica Scharrer; I am a professor in the Department of Communication at the University of Massachusetts Amherst. I have been a faculty member at UMass for 17 years, and I study the role of media in the lives of young people. I am the former chair of the Children, Adolescents, and Media division of the International Communication Association, and I have research expertise on the benefits of media literacy education (MLE).

Graduate students, undergraduate students, and I offer a media literacy program at ——— Elementary School every spring, reaching over 60 sixth graders each time. We have also visited a number of additional schools in western Massachusetts in the past to carry out and study students' responses to various media literacy lesson plans, including in these locations, xxxxx, xxxxx, xxxxx, xxxxx, xxxxx, and xxxxx.

Based on a review of our research and that of others, we can conclude that media literacy education does indeed bring important benefits to students. Some examples of evidence from our studies include:

- After participating in a curriculum designed to promote critical thinking about media violence, students became better able to identify problematic aspects of violent media depictions (such as violence being accompanied by rewards or being done by likeable characters).[1]
- A sample of fourth grade and sixth grade students became more critical of violence in advertising after participating in MLE. The girls, but not the boys, also became more critical of gender stereotypes in ads.[2]
- For two of three conflict scenarios we posed (outlining a hypothetical conflict and asking what students would do in that situation), students became more likely to choose a non-aggressive response following participation in a media literacy program on media violence and interpersonal conflict.[3]
- Students demonstrated an ability to recognize and critique stereotypes in movies, TV programs, and video games in open-ended writing assignments.[4]
- After discovering that students were more likely to intervene in cyberbullying if a friend rather than a classmate was implicated, students created "constitutions" to govern their own and others' online civility and safety.[5]

Our own research typically focuses on violence or gender stereotypes, but there is also evidence from other researchers that MLE lessons impact students positively

on other media-related topics as well, including topics related to news and politics or health:

- David Bickham and Ronald Slaby found fifth grade students became more able to understand how advertisers make unhealthy foods and smoking look appealing after participating in an MLE curriculum.[6] They, too, are Massachusetts-based, both affiliated with the Center on Media and Child Health at Children's Hospital Boston.
- Se-Hoon Jeong and colleagues analyzed 51 studies and found effects of MLE on knowledge and attitudes about media, perceptions of media realism and of media influence, and ability to critique media. Importantly, positive outcomes were found for students of various ages and for various MLE topics.
- The Jeong and colleagues' study found that longer MLE curricula were more impactful, which suggests that if Massachusetts were to develop a systematic, widespread, and lasting approach to MLE in schools, positive outcomes would be facilitated.

From the basis of my expertise, I would make two key recommendations for MLE implementation. First, I have found that a curriculum that acknowledges the positive aspects of media in addition to pointing out the negatives is important to promote critical thinking. Second, I believe that active learning, hands-on application of MLE principles, and interactive dialogue are effective pedagogical approaches for MLE, as well.

I have been following with interest the example provided in the state of Washington, where media literacy education legislation has recently been signed into law.[8] With the passing of H3556, Massachusetts would join Washington at the forefront of states providing their citizens with the teaching and learning skills that are vital for success and well-being in the 21st century.

In conclusion, I find H3556 to be a comprehensive bill highly responsive to the needs of the Commonwealth's students, educators, and all of its citizens as we face an increasingly technological and media-driven world. Supporting and developing the ability of K-12 students to think critically, deeply, and carefully about the content they create and encounter through the internet, social media, television, video games, mobile media, audio media, and print is vitally important. I believe we should do everything we can to support digital citizenship and media literacy education, and H3556 is an important step in that direction.

Thank you for the opportunity to testify, and I am happy to assist in any way that you and your colleagues would find useful.

Contact information:

Erica Scharrer, PhD; Department of Communication; S330 Integrative Learning Center University of Massachusetts Amherst; Amherst, MA 01003

[1]Scharrer, *Journal of Mass Media Ethics*;[2] Sekarasih, Olson, Onut, Lanthorn, & Scharrer, *Journal of Advertising*;[3] Scharrer, *Journal of Media Literacy Education*;[4] Walsh, Sekarasih, & Scharrer, *Journal of Children & Media;*[5] Scharrer et al., *Media education for a digital generation*;[6] Bickham & Slaby, *Journal of Children & Media*;[7] Jeong, Cho, & Hwang, *Journal of Communication*;[8] see www.usnews.com/news/best-states/washington/articles/2017-04-21/new-law-promotes-media-literacy-internet-safety-in-schools.

Examples of Quantitative Communication Research Connected to Policy

Communication researchers and those from allied disciplines have provided evidence-based perspectives on a number of issues and topics at stake in public policy formation. Here is a handful of examples of the ways that quantitative research, in particular, has been used to address communications and media policy questions. We recognize that this list is U.S.-based and therefore limited in scope, but we hope it will illustrate this type of work, nonetheless.

- Northwestern University Professor Ellen Wartella was a member of the U.S. Surgeon General's Scientific Advisory Committee on the Causes of Youth Violence in 2000 and has testified before Congress on multiple occasions, including regarding the Children and Media Research Act in 2004, Children's Television Practices Act of 1988, and the Children's Education TV Act of 1985, and she testified before the Federal Trade Commission on Children and Television Advertising in 1979.
- University of Arizona Professor Dale Kunkel has served as a Congressional Science Fellow and has also testified on a number of media and children-related topics and initiatives, including before the U.S. Senate Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation on the effects of media violence on children in 2007.
- Media psychologists submitted amicus briefs on both sides of the issue when the U.S. Supreme Court ruled in 2011 on a California law that banned the sale of M-rated (M for Mature) video games to minors.
- Rutgers University Department of Journalism and Media Studies Professor Amy Jordan has studied outcomes associated with the Telecommunications Act of 1996 mandate that television sets contain the v-chip, a computer chip able to block out programs deemed too sensitive for children by parents and caregivers, such as those containing violence. This research was also cited in an *amici curiae* signed by the American Academy of Pediatrics, the Parent Teacher Association, and other organizations in 2008 and presented to the Supreme Court to provide context about children and media policy as the Court decided the *Federal Communications Commission* v. *Fox Television Stations* case.
- Catherine J.K. Sandoval (2011) of the Santa Clara University School of Law studied FCC-supplied data for patterns associated with media ownership by racial minorities in collaboration with the advocacy organization Free Press. An important observation from this work found that when television and radio stations are owned by people of color, the content itself tends to be more diverse.
- Graciela León Orozco (2011), Associate Professor and Coordinator of the School Counseling Program in the Department of Counseling at San Francisco State University, conducted a mixed methods (survey and interview) analysis of the ways in which one particular radio station was serving the needs of the local community in Appalachia.
- The research on Muslim Americans' coping responses to media stereotypes conducted by Muniba Saleem of the University of Michigan and Srividya Ramasubramanian of Texas A&M and the second author of this book published in 2019 was cited as part of two *amicus curiae* briefs submitted to the Ninth Circuit court and the U.S. Supreme Court in the *State of Hawaii* v. *Trump* case 585 challenging the travel ban against Muslim-dominated countries.
- The Spotlight Scholar feature of this chapter includes Professor Karen Dill-Shackleford's reflections on her experience providing expert testimony on misogyny in rap music lyrics.

Despite the historical presence (and the continuing promise) of such efforts, in the book *Communications Research in Action: Scholar-Activist Collaborations for a Democratic Public Sphere*, Philip M. Napoli and Minna Aslama (2011) point out that:

> Communication researchers' interactions with—and contributions to the work of—the public interest and advocacy communities has historically been sporadic at best, with many analysts identifying a persistent scholar-activist divide that has limited the extent to which communications researchers and advocates work collaboratively to solve pressing social problems.
>
> (p. 1)

Indeed, the benefits as well as the drawbacks of researcher-advocacy organization partnerships are well illustrated in the observations of Katherine Heinz, Professor of Communication at Santa Clara University, and Christina Romano Glaubke, of the advocacy organization Children Now (2011). They teamed up to submit evidence-based comments to the FCC on the ways that easing media ownership rules affects TV program offerings for children. They report, "This voice did not go unheeded. When the FCC issued their rulemaking on June 2, 2003, they adopted one of Children Now's recommendations and inserted the only public interest provision to protect educational programming for children" (p. 75). Heinz and Romano Glaubke worked together once again to gather content analysis data comparing children's programs in seven local markets from 1998 to 2006. Heinz discusses both the frustrations and the triumphs that the partnership provided in helping research have an impact in conversations with industry executives:

> This is not to say that discussions were always fruitful, or even cordial, but they happened. And I'm quite sure that they wouldn't have—or I wouldn't have been a part of them—if it weren't for the partnership developed between me and Children Now. I have no illusions that I would have sat at the table with heads of ABC Entertainment, Nickelodeon, or the WB Network to discuss the media in the lives of children if it had not been for this collaboration. After all, industry folks don't pick up the *Journal of Communication*.
>
> (Heinz & Romano Glaubke, 2011, p. 82)

Summary

Publication of research in the form of a book, chapter, or journal article typically brings with it a seal of approval that the research in question is solid, trustworthy, and credible. In this chapter, we have walked through the main components of a quantitative research project earmarked for publication in an academic journal and discussed, as well, both the merits and the drawbacks of the process of peer review. Titles, introductions, literature reviews, methods sections, results, tables and figures, discussion sections, and references are the key components of a quantitative paper. They are used to present an original research study and place it within the larger context of the existing knowledge on the topic. In doing so, knowledge builds piece by piece, study by study.

Yet, "even the most brilliant scientific paper becomes something useful only when it is planted in the mind of someone with the power to do something about it" (Bennett & Jessani, 2011, p. 129). We have discussed in this chapter, as well, the ways in which Communication researchers can collaborate with others and/or work independently to bridge the "know-do" gap, bringing evidence and data in conversation with policies that have been formed or are

currently forming. Such efforts provide excellent opportunities for research to have an impact at the same time that they demand humility, flexibility, and the investment of time and effort on behalf of researchers. They also demand that the researcher be versatile in the manner in which they communicate, depending on the audience and the context in which they are communicating.

Finally, we have discussed avenues to bring scholarly insights and evidence to the attention of the public through legacy and digital media outlets. For traditional news media in addition to blogs, websites, and social media posts, messages should be crafted with the interests and needs of audiences in mind as well as based on the logic of particular communication channels. Relationships with journalists and engagement with the public are built on connection, listening as well as speaking, and establishing credibility, reliability, and trust. Meaningful action is co-created.

Overall, then, there are opportunities and challenges for researchers attempting to make research useful for reaching change makers, members of advocacy groups, policy makers, and/or the wider public. As Badgett (2015) writes, even when academics are committed to public engagement, "their heavy workloads, the lack of support for engagement, and the decline of tenure-track jobs . . . make public engagement difficult" (p. 16). We hope this chapter has provided tools, considerations, information, and perhaps even inspiration useful to researchers interested in navigating writing and communicating for publication, policy, and the public. Indeed, for social justice researchers, these efforts are particularly important since they ensure a close connection between the "scholarly" world and the world around us.

Discussion Questions and Activities

1. Find a research article that was published in an academic journal on a social justice-related topic of interest to you. Think about how the article is organized through the use of headings and subheadings. Read each section and see whether the authors have included the information you would expect to find, given the discussion in this chapter.
2. Find two or three academic journals that you think might publish research in your area of interest. Read about the journals on their websites, studying the editorial board, aims and scope, and other features. Then, look up a recent article published in each journal or, better yet, an entire issue of the journal to see what sorts of research the journal is publishing.
3. What do you think are the pros and cons (or opportunities and challenges) of publishing research in traditional academic outlets like scholarly journals compared to disseminating research online through blogs or social media? If you plan to be a researcher for your career, how will you approach these options?
4. Find a blog on a social issue that you care about written by an academic, and study it for the manner in which research is discussed. What tone and style does the author use? How does the author discuss evidence? What visuals or other features are there? Did the blog spur a dialogue, as seen through comments?
5. Find a partner and role play an interview between a journalist and a researcher who is serving as an expert news source, switching roles after the first role play so that each of you has a turn to be the journalist as well as the researcher. When you are the journalist, anticipate the sort of questions that might be of interest to a news audience. When you are the researcher, think about being clear, concise, and engaging, redirecting when necessary and otherwise following the advice offered in the chapter.

References

Badgett, M. V. L. (2015). *The public professor: How to use your research to change the world*. New York: New York University Press.

Bennett, G., & Jessani, N. (2011). *The knowledge translation toolkit: Bridging the know-do gap. A resource for researchers*. Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage.

Brechman, J., Lee, C. J., & Cappella, J. N. (2009). Lost in translation? A comparison of cancergenetics reporting in the press release and its subsequent coverage in the press. *Science Communication*, *30*, 453–474.

Carrigan, M. (2016). *Social media for academics*. London: Sage.

Ebeling, M. F. E. (2008). Mediating uncertainty: Communicating the financial risks of nanotechnologies. *Science Communication*, *29*, 335–361.

Heinz, K. E., & Romano Glaubke, C. (2011). Big media, little kids: The impact of ownership concentration on the availability of television programming. In P. M. Napoli & M. Aslama (Eds.), *Communications research in action: Scholar-activist collaborations for a democratic public sphere* (pp. 71–87). New York: Fordham University Press.

Innvaer, S., Vist, G., Trommald, M., & Oxman, A. (2002). Health policy makers' perceptions of their use of evidence: A systematic review. *Journal of Health Services Research & Policy*, 7(4), 239–244.

Jensen, J. D. (2008). Scientific uncertainty in news coverage of cancer research: Effects of hedging on scientists and journalists credibility. *Human Communication Research*, *34*, 347–369.

Kelchen, R. (2018, August 16). *Five helpful media engagement tips for academics*. Retrieved February 7, 2020, from www.insidehighered.com/advice/2018/08/16/advice-academics-dealing-news-media-opinion

Lavis, J., Lomas, M., Hamid, M., & Sewankambo, N. (2006). Assessing country-level efforts to link research and action. *Bulletin of the World Health Organization*, *84*, 620–628.

Mollett, A., Brumley, C., Gilson, C., & Williams, S. (2017). *Communicating your research with social media: A practical guide to using blogs, podcasts, data visualizations, and video*. London: Sage.

Napoli, P. M., & Aslama, M. (2011). *Communications research in action: Scholar-activist collaborations for a democratic public sphere*. New York: Fordham University Press.

Nicholas, D., Watkinson, A., Jamali, H. R., Herman, E., Tenopir, C., et al. (2015). Peer review: Still king in the digital age. *Learned Publishing*, *28*, 15–21. doi:10.1087/20150104

Orozco, G. L. (2011). Measuring community radio's impact: Lessons on collaboration. In P. M. Napoli & M. Aslama (Eds.), *Communications research in action: Scholar-activist collaborations for a democratic public sphere* (pp. 139–156). New York: Fordham University Press.

Ramasubramanian, S., & Kornfield, S. (2012). Japanese anime heroines as role models for U.S. youth: Wishful identification, parasocial interaction, and intercultural entertainment effects. *Journal of International and Intercultural Communication*, *5*(3), 189–207.

Resnick, B., & Belluz, J. (2019, July 10). The war to free science: How librarians, pirates, and funders are liberating the world's academic research from paywalls. *Vox*. Retrieved December 10, 2019, from www.vox.com/the-highlight/2019/6/3/18271538/open-access-elsevier-california-sci-hub-academic-paywalls

Sandoval, C. J. K. (2011). Minority commercial radio ownership: Assessing FCC licensing and consolidation policies. In P. M. Napoli & M. Aslama (Eds.), *Communications research in action: Scholar-activist collaborations for a democratic public sphere* (pp. 88–113). New York: Fordham University Press.

Scharrer, E., Kim, D. D., Lin, K. M., & Liu, Z. (2006). Working hard or hardly working? Gender, humor, and the performance of domestic chores in television commercials. *Mass Communication & Society*, *9*, 215–238. doi:10.1207/s15327825mcs0902_5

Start, D., & Hovland, I. (2004). *Tools for policy impact: A handbook for researchers*. Overseas Development Institute. Retrieved September 28, 2020, from https://cas.cgiar.org/sites/default/files/pdf/156.pdf

Tyson, W. (2010). *Pitch perfect: Communicating with traditional and social media for scholars, researchers, and academic leaders*. Sterling, VA: Stylus Publishing.

Index

Page numbers in *italics* indicate a figure on the corresponding page.

abstract, research paper 327
academic freedom 324
academic writing, forms of 324–327; authored book 325; book chapters 325; conference paper presentation 325; conference poster presentation 325; conference presentation 324, 326; journal article 325
access to information 111
accidental or intentional oversight 25–26
activist scholarship 8
affirmative action policies 113
aggregation of numerical data 18, 183–185
ahimsa (non-violence) 23
aided recall 111
Algorithms of oppression: How search engines reinforce racism (Noble) 178
Allen, M. 12
American Evaluation Association (AEA) 316
American National Election Studies 105
amicus briefs 346
Analysis of Variance (ANOVA) 254–257; Factor 254; one-way 254
anonymity 101–102
applied research 2, 20, 126
a priori design 19
a priori power analysis 91
archives 165
arts-based research 287–288, 298
assent 29
Asset-Based Community Development (ABCD) 310
asset-based thinking 40
Association for Education in Journalism and Mass Communication (AEJMC) 34, 335
Association of Asian Pacific Community Health Organizations (AAPCHO) 316
Association of Internet Researchers (AoIR) 34
attributes 50
attrition 108, 150
Auburn Differential Masculinity Index–Aggression 207
authored book 325
autoethnography 284
Automating inequality: How high-tech tools profile, police, and punish the poor (Eubanks) 178
Avoidance of Femininity 207, 235, 239–240

Babbie, E. 64, 89
back translation 104
Badgett, M.V. L. 343, 353
basic research 2, 126
Basics of social research, The (Babbie) 64
Bates, B. R. 281, 287
Bayesian statistics 195
Bell curve: Intelligence and class structure in American life, The (Herrnstein and Murray) 26–27
Belmont Report 27–30
Ben-David, A. 49
beneficence 28
Beta coefficients 269
Bickman, L. 108
big data 41, 175; data analysis 177; critiques of analysis 176–178
bioethics 42
biophysiological measures 146
Bitescience 343
bivariate statistics 187
Black Lives Matter movement 1, 85
Black Panther 69
blogs 338
Bond, B. J. 66–68

Carragee, K. M. 60
case study approach 287
categorical variables 55
causality, criteria for establishing 128–129
causal mechanism 129
cause or predictor variable 127
cause variable 127
census 75
census studies 100
Center for Culture-Centered Approach to Research and Evaluation (CARE) 38, 303
Center for Scholars and Storytellers 288–289
Center for the Study of Women in Television and Film 174

Centers for Disease Control's Performance and Evaluation Office 316
central limit theorem 86
central tendency 211–218
chi square test 257–262
closed-ended measure 51, 52–55
cluster sampling 82
codebook 159
coders, train 162
code sheet 160
code switching 47
coding 53; and coders 158–159; \ scheme 159
coefficient of determination 265
coercion 29
cognitive interviewing 116
Cohen, R. L. 8
Cohen's kappa 171
cohort studies 107
Cole, E. R. 69
collectively exhaustive 110
communication: as listening *37*, 39; content 154
communities: defined 302; online 302; research findings 315–317; types of 302–303; virtual 302
community advisory board (CAB) 309
community asset map 310, 311
community-based organizations (CBOs) 308–309
community-based participatory research (CBPR) 8, 306–307
community-based research 6, 301, 303; in communication 303; funding opportunities 308; gatekeepers 310; identifying the topic 307–308; informants 310; multiplicity 309; practical considerations in 317; topicality 308; triangulation 309
community-based research projects: clear research protocols 313; community consent 313; culture-centered approach 312; evaluation and feedback in 314–315; evaluation plan 314; implementation of 313–314; inclusive approaches to sampling 313; jargon-free language 312; participant or member checks 314–315; pilot study 312; practical barriers 313; pretesting of communication materials 312; program outcomes 315; research materials for 312–313; universal design 312
community consent 313
community participation, level of 305–307; community-based participatory research 306–307; community-driven projects 305; community-oriented projects 305; community-placed projects 305; engaged scholarship 307; participatory action research 306; program evaluation research 307
composite measure 113, 234
composite sample 165
computational analytics 42
compute 238–243
computer-assisted coding software 282
computer-assisted telephone interviewing (CATI) 117
concepts 48
conceptualization 48
conceptualization of variables 159
conceptual (or theoretical) definition 49
concurrent designs 290
Condit, C. M. 291
confederates 142
conference presentation 324, 326; paper 325; poster 325
confidence interval 89
confidence level 89
confidentiality 102
confounding variables 128
constant 50
constructed sample 165
constructivism 7
constructivist paradigm 7, 279
content analysis 154–155; archives 165; automated 175; big data analysis 176–178; codebook 159; coders 158–159; code sheet 160; coding 158–159, 162; coding scheme 159; composite sample 165; conceptualization 159; conceptualization of variables 159; datafication 176–178; defined 155; descriptive categories 159; digital and interactive media 175–176; electronic databases 165; hypotheses/research questions 159; intercoder reliability 162, 168–169; latent content 163; literature review 159; longitudinal sample 165, 166; manifest content 163; operationalization 159; pilot testing 162; rationale 159; sampling 161; sampling considerations in 164–166; sampling in 164–166; for social justice 156–158; sound observations 162–164; SPSS intercoder reliability calculations 172; steps involved in 159–160; strengths 157; supervised 176; train coders 162; unitizing step 168; unit of analysis 159, 166–168; unsupervised automated 176; weaknesses 157
content validity 63
contingency questions 113
continuous variables 56, 209
Contrast Analysis of Semantic Similarity (CASS) 176
control group 127
control variables 128, 265
convenience sampling 83
Conversation, The 343–344
correlation coefficient 263
correlation matrix 263
Costanza-Chock, S. 121–123
counts 158
covert observer 284
covert participant 284
Credo for Free and Responsible Communication in a Democratic Society 34
criterion-related validity 62
critical consciousness 12, 15
critical data studies 178
Critical Media Effects Framework 69
critical paradigm 7, 279
Cronbach's alpha 64, 234
cross-cultural survey research 102–104; back translation 104; language 103; political barriers 102

cross-cultural survey studies 102
cross-sectional vs longitudinal survey designs 106–108; cohort studies 107; panel studies 107–108; trend design 106–107
cultural humility 37
culturally inclusive language 40
culturally-sensitive survey design 103
cultural responsiveness 37
culture-centered approach 312
cyber-ethnography 284

data: collection 14; fabrication 337; falsification 337; reduction 204; triangulation 277
datafication, critical approaches to 176–178
Data for Black Lives 9
Data.gov 105
data reduction and transformation 226–247; compute 238–243; creating index and testing reliability 233–238; recode 226–233; Select Cases 243–247
Davis, S. Dr. 222–226
debriefing 141, 147, 152
deception 140
DeCoster, J. 279
deductive process 6
deductive reasoning 18–20; *a priori* design 19
deficit-based thinking 39–40
degrees of freedom 248
deliberate fraud 25
demand characteristics 147
demographic questions 68
dependent samples t-test 249; *see also* t-tests
dependent variables 127, 248
descriptive statistics 195, 204
dichotomous variable 56
dictionary-based approach 175
digital and interactive media 175–176; computer algorithms 175; dynamic nature of 175; massive amounts of data 175; sentiment analysis 176
digital ethnography 284
Dill-Shackleford, K. 340–342
dimensions 49
diminishing returns 90
directional research hypothesis 189
discussion 14
discussion section, research paper 332
Dixon, T. 169–170
Domestic Violence and CPBR Resources 316
Dominance 207
double-barreled items 109
double-blind experimental designs 146
double negatives 109
dummy variable 208, 268
Dutta, M. J. 12, 38–39, 312

editorials 343
effect variable 127
electronic databases 165
electronic surveys 118
embedded designs 291
embodied practice 281
emergent design 281
empathetical technologies 42
engaged scholarship 8, 307, 320; *see also* public scholarship
epistemology 6
Erba, J. 92
ethical misconduct 25, 45
ethical principles 23, 26, 33
ethical research guidelines, types of 33–35; personal ethics 34–35; procedural ethics 33–34; professional ethics 34
ethical violations 26–27, 45
ethics 23; accidental or intentional oversight 25–26; accountability, principles, integrity, and values *25*; of care 36; codification of 23; deliberate fraud 25; ethical violations in scientific research 26–27; fabrication of data 26; falsification 25; of the heart 38; misconduct 25; and social justice research 23–26, 35–36
ethnography 279, 283–284; autoethnography 284; covert observer 284; covert participant 284; cyber 284; digital 284; insider-outsider status 284; naturalistic inquiry 283; participant observation 283; taking notes and journaling 285; vulnerability 284
exclusion, avoiding 39–40
executive summaries 346
exhaustive 54
experimental group 127, 132
experimenter effects 145
experiments 126–127; in causation and causal mechanisms 128–130; classroom 127; generalizability of 150–151; internal validity of 149–150; intervention 126; for social justice research 136–137; test research hypotheses 126; theoretical mechanisms 126; *see also* field experiments; pre-experiments; quasi-experiments; true experiments
experiments, conducting 139–148; biophysiological measures 146; confederates 142; controlling for extraneous variables 145–146; debriefing 147; demand characteristics 147; double-blind 146; experimenter effects 145; field experiment 142; Hawthorne effect 145; manipulating independent variable 141–144; manipulation check 143; matching procedure 145; measuring the dependent variable 146–147; observational data 146; obtaining consent 140–141; physiological measurement 147; randomly assigning participants to conditions 144–145; recruiting participants 140; role-play scenarios 142; self-reports 146; stimulus material 141; strength of manipulation 143; threshold effects 143
expert testimony 346–350
external validity 75, 150
extraneous (or third) variables 128

fabrication of data 26
face-to-face interviews 117

face validity 62
factor 254
factorial design statement 132
factorial experiment 132–133, 151
falsification 25
feedback 116
feeling thermometer *59*
Feminism counts: Quantitative methods and researching gender (Hughes and Cohen) 8
fence-sitters 112
field experiments 135; *see also* interventions
field research 283
floaters 112
focused time periods 111
focus group discussions 286–287; funnel structure 287; group composition 287
forced-choice items 112
formative research 312
Fraser, G. 19
Frey, L. R. 60
full papers or reports 346

Gandhi, M. 23–24
gender: categories 17; identity 69; pronouns 17
generalizability 75, 78
generalizability of experiments 150–151; external validity 150; internal validity 150; naturalistic settings 150; sample representativeness 150
General Social Survey (GSS) 105
Gilliam, L. 33
Glass, R. D. 33
Google Forms 118
G*Power 92
Greene, J. C. 296
grounded theory 282
grouping variable 249
Guillemin, M. 33

hate speech 49
Hawthorne effect 145
Health Information National Trends Survey (HINTS) 105, 115
Herrnstein, R. J. 27
Hippocratic Oath 23
histograms 214
Hughes, C. 8
hypermasculinity 50, 165
hypotheses 14, 190–192
hypothesis testing 188–190

inclusive research samples 39
independent samples t-test 249; *see also* t-tests
independent variables 127, 128, 248, 314
in-depth interviewing 285–286
indicators 49–50
Indigenous statistics: A quantitative research methodology (Walter and Andersen) 97
individual data points aggregated together 183–185
inductive approach 6, 281
inferential statistics 195, 248–273; degrees of freedom 248; dependent variable 248; independent variable 248; nonparametric test 248; outcome variable 248; predictor variable 248; t-tests 248–254
informed consent 29, 30–33
insider-outsider status 284
Institutional Review Boards (IRBs) 27–30, 33, 45
instrumentation 149
integrity 23
intercoder reliability (ICR) 64, 162, 168–169; best practices for 172; Holsti's formula for 170; official test for 162; pilot testing of 162; SPSS calculations 172
intergroup anxiety 129–130
internal consistency 64
internal validity of experiments 149–150
International Association for Media and Communication Research (IAMCR) 34
International Communication Association (ICA) 33, 34, 324
interpretive paradigm 279
intersectionality 69, 184
Inter-University Consortium for Political and Social Research 105
interval variables 56–57
intervening variable 129
interventions 126–127, 135
interviewer-administered surveys 117
introduction, research paper 329
Israel, M. 25
item nonresponse 119–120

Jackson, S. J. 292–295
jargon-free language 312, 344
Jhally, S. 10–11
Johnson, G. 279
journal article, elements of 325, 327–333; abstract 327; data analysis plan 331; discussion section 332; figures 332; intercoder reliability 331; introduction 329; literature review 329; measures 331; methods section 331; parts of a research paper 330; procedures 332; protection of human subjects 331; references 333; research 328; results section 332; sample, participants, and/or the sampling process 331; social significance 329; statement of the hypotheses and research questions 330; tables 332; title 327
justice 28

Kaur-Gill, S. 291
King, Martin Luther, Jr. 23
Kinsey Institute for Research in Sex, Gender, and Reproduction 105

labeled or unlabeled response 111
Lahman, M. K. E. 34, 37
language 103; *see also* culturally inclusive language
latent content 163

Lauzen, M. 173–174
Lichtenstein, B. 279
Likert scales 56, 110
literature review, research paper 329
longitudinal sample 165
longitudinal survey designs 106

Magsamen-Conrad, K. 303
mail surveys 118
making inference 195–200; levels of statistical significance 196; probability value 195–198
manifest content 163
manipulation check 143
marginalized groups 8, 36, 40
margin of error 90
Matamoros-Fernandez, A. 49
maturation 149
McLaren, L. 11
mean 212
measurement 47–48, 68–70; error 108; steps 48
measurement levels 55–60; categorical variable 55; continuous variable 56; dichotomous variable 56; feeling thermometer 58, *59*; interval 56–57; Likert scale 56, 58; modern approaches 57; nominal 55; ordinal 56; ratio level 57–58
measures of central tendency 211–218; histograms 214; mean 212; median 212; mode 212; outliers 213; skewness 214
measures of variability 219–222; standard deviation 219; valid percentage 222
Mechanical Turk (MTurk) 104, 118
media: ethnography 284; literacy 347–348
Media Education Foundation (MEF) 10
median 212
Media Rise 302
mediating variable 129
mediator *versus* moderator variables 130
methodological triangulation 277
methods 14
metric variable 56
Milgram experiments 26
minoritized groups 93–97
Minority Data Resource Center (MDRC) 105
misconduct 25
missing values 210–211
mixed methods 276, 289–292; challenges of 297–298; in communication 278–279; concurrent designs 290; embedded designs 291; purposes of 296; research 5–6; sequential designs 290; for social justice 295–298; staged design 291; *see also* triangulation
mode 212
moderating variables 129
moderators 129
morality 23
Mosher, D. L. 50
multi-methods approach 276
multiple regression 266–273; Beta coefficients 269; dummy variable 268; stepwise regression 268; z scores 269
multiplicity 309
multistage sampling 82
multivariate statistics 187
Murray, C. 27
Muslim ban 76
mutually exclusive 54, 110

National Center for Health Statistics 106
National Commission for the Protection of Human Subjects 27
National Communication Association (NCA) 33, 34, 43, 110, 185, 223, 324, 335, 349
National Opinion Research Center (NORC) 104
naturalistic inquiry 281, 283
naturalistic settings 150
news media 342–345
news sources 342
New York City Police Department (NYPD) 290
nominal variables 55–56
nondirectional research hypothesis 189
nonequivalent comparison group 134
non-interactive method 282
nonparametric test 248
nonprobability sampling 83–85; convenience 83; purposive 84; quota 84; snowball 85
nonreactive method 282
nonresponse 108, 119
normal distribution 86, 88
null hypothesis 189
Null Hypothesis Significance Testing (NHST) 195
numbers, power of 8–10, 73, 323
Nuremberg Code 26

objectivity, principle of 15–16
observational data 146
Office of Adolescent Health 316
omnibus surveys 104–105
one-group pretest posttest pre-experiment 134
one pagers 346
one-shot case study 135
one-way ANOVA 254
online media sites 25
online surveys 118
open-ended measure 52
open science movement 188, 335–336
operational definitions 49
operationalization 47–48
Operationalization of Race and Ethnicity in the U.S. Census 61
operationalizing indicators 49–50
opinion pieces 343
optimal sample size 90
ordinal variables 56, *57*
othering, avoiding 36, 68–70
otherness 47
outcome variable 127, 248
outliers 213
oversampling 93–95

Paluck, E. L. 135
panel studies 107–108

paradigm 6
parameter 85
Park, D. Y 292
parsimony 182
partial correlation test 265, 267–268
participant observation 279, 283
participant or member checks 314–315
participatory action research (PAR) 306
participatory research 301
Pearson's correlation test 262–266; coefficient of determination 265; control variable 265; correlation coefficient 263; correlation matrix 263
peer review 334–335
personal aspirational ethics 35
personal ethics 33, 34–35
personal interviews 117
Pew Research Center 88, 106
p-hacking 337
physiological measurement 147
Pitch perfect: Communicating with traditional and social media for scholars, researchers, and academic leaders (Tyson) 340
policy: briefs 346; research 8
policy-related writing: amicus briefs 346; building relationships 346; executive summaries 346; expert testimony 346; forms and guidelines for 346–347; full papers or reports 346; one pagers 346; policy briefs 346; quantitative communication research, examples of 351–352; relevance 346; Research4Impact 346; timeliness 346
political barriers 102
Ponterotto, J. G. 11–12
poor sampling 108
population 74
positivism 6–7
post-positivism 6–7
posttest-only control group design 132
power: statistical 91; analysis 91; of numbers 8–10, 73, 323
Power of numbers for social justice, The 8
predictor variable 248
pre-experiments 134; one-group pretest posttest 134; one-shot case study 135
pre-/posttest control group design 133
press release 345
pretest 70
pretesting of communication materials 312
principle of objectivity 15–16
probability: textbook 87; value 195–198
probability sampling 79–83; bias 79; cluster 82; multistage 82; random selection 79; sampling frame 79; simple random 79–80; stratified random 79; systematic 79
probability value (*p* value) 196–198
procedural ethics 33–34
procedures, research paper 332
process consent 29
professional code of ethics 34
professional ethics 33, 34
pro-science protest 334
publication, writing for 323–335; academic freedom 324; academic writing, forms of 323–335; journal article, elements of 327–333; peer review 334–335; writing for the public 337–340
publication landscape, limitations of 335–337; data fabrication 337; data falsification 337; open access 335; paywall 335; p-hacking 337; subscription fees 335; unethical research practices 337
public data 42
publicly accessible datasets 104–105
public policy 345–346
Public professor: How to use your research to change the world, The (Badgett) 343
public scholarship 8, 307
public spaces 25
purposive sampling 84

qualitative methods 5; constructivist paradigm 279; critical paradigm 279; embodied practice 281; emergent design 281; fieldwork 280; inductive approach 281; interpretive paradigm 279; naturalistic inquiry 281; reflexivity 281; in social justice research 279–281; subjective experiences 281; thick description 281
qualitative methods, types of 282–288; arts-based research 287–288; case study approach 287; ethnography 283–285; focus group discussions 286–287; in-depth interviewing 285–286; textual analysis 282
qualitative research 5
Qualtrics 118
quantitative communication research: bioethics 42; computational analytics 42; connected to policy 351–352; data use and storage 42; ethical considerations 41–42; privacy 42; public data 42
quantitative criticalism 11–13; critical consciousness 12; definitions of 12; interrelated pursuits 13
quantitative criticalist 11
quantitative research 1–2, 4–5, 18, 41, 74, 183; aggregation of numerical data 18; in communication 41; critical consciousness 15; data collection 14; deductive reasoning 18–20; discussion section 14; hypotheses 14; key features of 12, 13–15; methods 5, 14–15; principle of objectivity 15–16; review of the literature 13; scientific method 13–14; statistical procedures 14; vs qualitative research 4
Quantitative research methods for communication (Wrench, Thomas-Maddox, Peck Richmond, and McCroskey) 63
quasi-experiments 134
questionnaire 112; accessible 114–115; pretesting 116; universal design 114
quota sampling 84

Ramasubramanian, S. 113
Ramírez, S. 318–319
random assignment 131–132
ratio variables 57–58
recode 226–233

recoding variables 204
references, research paper 333
reflexivity 37, 281
relational ethics 37
reliability 63–66; Cronbach's alpha 64; defined 63; intercoder 64; internal consistency 64; split-half method 64; test-retest method 63; validity and 64–66
Reliability Analysis 234
reliability validity dartboard 65
representativeness of samples 75, 78–79
research: ethics 34, 45; hypothesis 188, 198; methods 2; paradigms 6, 7; participants 25; question 192; *see also* directional research hypothesis; nondirectional research hypothesis
Research4Impact 346
researcher triangulation 277
respect 28
response style bias 113
Restrictive Emotionality 207, 269, 273
results 14
results section, research paper 332
reverse coding 114
review of the literature 13
Rhetoric Society of America (RSA) 34
Rog, D. J. 108
role-play scenarios 142

Saleem, M. 76–77
samples: confidence in 88–90; and populations 74–75; representativeness 75–79; size, determining 90–92
sampling 73, 161; in content analysis 164–166; error 86; frame 79; generalizability of findings 75; generalization 78; methods 86; minoritized groups 93–94; ratio 82; research, realities of 92–93; weighted 94–95; *see also* nonprobability sampling; oversampling; probability sampling
Satyagraha 23
satya (truth) 23
scale or index 113, 233–238
School-Based Interventions 316
science, advocacy, and practice 13
Science journal 16
Scientific American 16
scientific method 13, 14
scientific research, history of ethical violations in 26–27
screening or filter questions 113
Select Cases 243–247
selection threat 149
self-administered surveys 117
self-reflexivity 36–37
Self-Reliance 207
self-reported survey 99
self-reports 146
semantic network approaches 176
sequential designs 290
simple random sampling 79–80
Sirkin, M. 50
skewness 214, 218
skip pattern 113
Smartphone Medication Reminder App (SMRA) 292
snowball sampling 85
social desirability bias 112
social justice 68–70; movements 35–36; word cloud 62
social justice research 2, 7, 301; cultural responsiveness in 36–37; ethics and 23–26, 35–36; experiments for 136–137; qualitative methods in 279–281; quantitative analysis 9; role of surveys in 101–102; self-reflexivity 36–37; socio-ecological approach to 303–304; surveys 101–102; types of 7–8; *see also* activist scholarship; applied research; community-based participatory research; engaged scholarship; public scholarship; translational research
social media 339; literacy 337; sites 25
social network analysis 291
social science research: approaches to 4–6; description 4; evaluation 4; explanation 4; exploration 2; methods 2; purpose of 2–4; transformation 4; *see also* community-based research; qualitative research; quantitative research
socio-ecological approach to social justice research 303–304
socio-ecological model *305*
Solomon four-group design 133
Southwell, B. 137–139
split-half method 64
staged design 291
stakeholders, identifying 308–310
standard deviation 219
standard error 88
Stanford prison experiments 26
statistic 86
statistical analysis 182
Statistical Package for Social Sciences (SPSS) 203, 204–205; ANOVA 254–257; avoidance of femininity 207; chi square test, cross tabulation with 257–262; composite measure 234; compute function 238–243; conducting analyses 205; continuous variable 209; correlation matrix 263; creating indices 204; Cronbach's alpha 234; data cleaning 204; data collection 204; data entry 204; data file, creating 205–210; data reduction 204; data reduction and transformation 226–247; Data View 206; descriptive statistics 204; dominance 207; dummy variables 208; Factor 254; importance of sex 207; Import data 205; index and testing reliability, creating 233–238; intercoder reliability calculations 172; interpreting results 205; label 208; measures of central tendency 211–218; measures of variability 219–222; missing values 210–211; multiple regression 266–273; name variables 208; naming variables 204, 208; negativity toward sexual minorities 207; open file 205; Pearson's correlation test 262–266; quantitative data, creating and analyzing 204–205; recode 226–233; recoding variables 204; Reliability

Analysis 234; restrictive emotionality 207; Select Cases 243–247; self-reliance 207; statistical tests 204; stepwise regression 268; toughness 207; t-tests 248–254; variable type 204; variable values 204, 208; Variable View, features of 206, 209–210; variance 252; writing up results 205
statistical power 91
statistical procedures 14
statistical significance 194, 195, 198–200
statistical significance, levels of 196
statistical test decision-making guide 247
statistics 1, 187–188
stepwise regression 268
stimulus material 141
Straits Times 291
strata 80
stratified random sampling 80–81
strength of manipulation 143
subjective experiences 281
supervised content analysis 176
Survey Monkey 118
survey response rates 118–120; item nonresponse 120; noncontact 119; nonresponse 119; poor sample coverage 119
surveys 99; advantages of 100–101; appropriate response options 110–111; biased items, avoiding 109; collectively exhaustive response options 110; composite measure 113; confusing phrasing, avoiding 109; contingency questions 113; cross-cultural survey studies 102–104; disadvantages of 100–101; double-barreled items 109; double negatives 109; face-to-face interviews 117; interviewer- administered 117; labeled or unlabeled response options 111; Likert scales 110; mail 118; measurement error 108; mutually exclusive response options 110; nonresponse 108; online 118; organizing items in right order 112–114; personal interviews 117; poor sampling 108; questionnaire 112, 114–116; reliable and valid survey measures 108–112; responses to survey items 111–112; response style bias 113; reverse the polarity 114; scale or index 113; screening or filter questions 113; self-administered 117; self-reported 99; skip pattern 113; social desirability bias 112; in social justice research 101–102; telephone interviews 117–118
systematic sampling 80, 82

telephone interviews 117–118
testing 149
test-retest method 63
textual analysis 282, 283
theoretical triangulation 277
thick description 281
threshold effects 143
time series experimental design 135, 152
title, research paper 327
tokenism 40
topicality 308
topic modeling approaches 176
translational research 8
treatment group 127
trend design 106
trend studies 106–107
triangulation 277–278; community-based research 309; data 277; methodological 277; researcher 277; theoretical 277
true experiments 130–134; comparison groups 131; factorial experiment 132; random assignment 131; temporal order (or time order) 131
t-tests 248–254; dependent samples 249; grouping variable 249; independent samples 249; variance 252
Tuskegee Syphilis Study 26, 28, 45
Type I error 193
Type II error 193

UMass Amherst Logo 347
UNESCO Institute for Statistics 106
unethical research practices 337
unit nonresponse 119
unit of analysis 159, 166–168
univariate statistics 187
universal design principles 114, 312

validity 60–63; content 63; criterion-related 62; face 62; and reliability 64–66; *see also* external validity
valid percentage 222
values 51
variables 50; grouping 249; naming 204, 208; values 204, 208; *see also* dependent variables; independent variables
variance 252
virtual communities 302
voice 52
voluntary participation 26
vulnerability 284

Warshel, Y. 303
web-based surveys 118
websites 339
weighting 94–95
Welles, B. Foucault 292–295
Wired magazine 16
Wrench, J. S. 63
writing for public 337–340; blogs 338; editorials 343; jargon-free language 344; news media 342–345; opinion pieces 343; press release 345; public policy 345–347; sense of time and response to deadlines 344; social media 339; websites 339

Yogasutra 23